





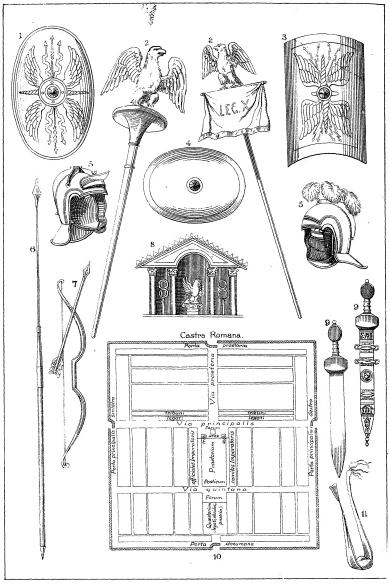
Imperator. 2. Legatus. 3. Centurio. 4. Lictor. 5. Signiferi.
 Buvinator. 7. Tubicen. 8. Vexillum. 9. Aquila.



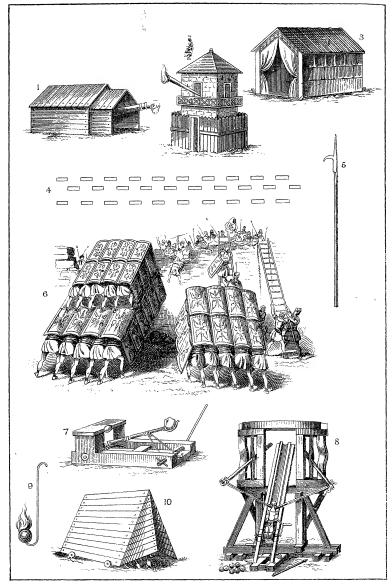


Slinger. 2. Light-armed Soldier. 3. Soldier of the Legion.
 4. Surcinae. 5. Cavalry.

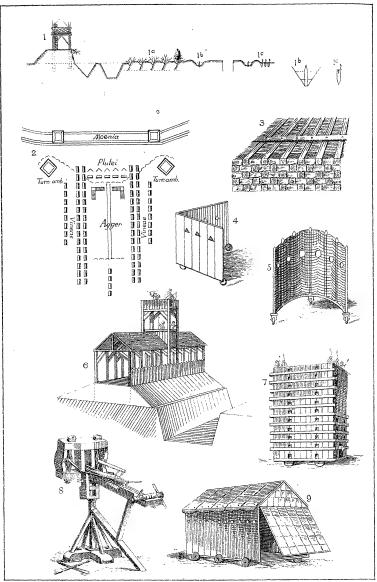




Clipeus. 2, 2. Eagle of the Legion. 3. Scutum. 4. Parma.
 5, 5. Cassis. 6. Pilum 7. Arcus, Sagitta. 8. Sacellum.
 9, 9. Gladius. 10 Roman Camp. 11. Funda.



1. Testudo arietaria. 2. Fire-signal Tower. 3. Tabernaculum.
4. Order of Battle. 5. Falx Muralis. 6. Testudo. 7. Onager. 8. Ballista.
9. Glans fusili ex Arqilla. 10. Testudo fossaria.



1. Casar's Intreachments before Alesia (VII. 70): 1a, Cippi, 1b, Lilia, 1c, Stimuli.
2. Agger, etc. 3. Gallic City Wall. 4, 5. Plutei. 6. Vallum with Passage-ways and Towers. 7. Turris Ambulatoria. 8. Catapu'ta. 9. Vinea.

# C. IULI CAESARIS

## DE BELLO GALLICO LIBRI VII

# CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

WITH

An Introduction, Notes, and Vocabulary

ΒV

FRANCIS W. KELSEY

UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN

SEVENTH FDITION

Boston
ALLYN AND BACON
1895

Copyright, 1886, By Francis W. Kelsey.

University Press:
John Wilson and Son, Cambridge.

# CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION:	
I. GAIUS IULIUS CAESAR:	£
i. Life of Caesar	Ε
ii. Caesar as a General	3
iii. Caesar as a Politician	3
iv. Caesar as a Man of Letters	7
II. THE ROMAN ART OF WAR IN CAESAR'S TIME:	
i. Organization of the Army	ί
ii. The Weapons, Standards, and Musical Instruments 23	3
iii. Provisioning and Pay of the Soldiers	3
iv. The Army on the March	)
v. The Army in Camp	ί
vi. The Army in Battle Array	3
vii. Operations against Fortified Places 32	ļ
viii. The Roman War-Ships 36	ć
III. THE THEATRE OF THE GALLIC WAR:	
i. Gaul	3
ii. Germany	
iii. Britain	
IV. CONTENTS OF THE DE BELLO GALLICO:	•
The Dates, General Summary 49	
TEXT:	)
Books I—VII	ſ
<i>H</i> ===	٠
NOTES:	
То Воок І	
То Воок II	
То Воок III	
То Воок IV	
То Воок V	
То Воок VI	
To Book VII	,
On the Study of Caesar	,
HELPS TO THE STUDY OF CAESAR	)
IDIOMS AND PHRASES	
TT	

# ILLUSTRATIONS AND PLANS.

PLAT	E I.	Attack on a Besieged City.						
"	II.	II. Officers; Standards and Musical Instruments of the Roman Army.						
"	III.	Soldiers of the Roman Army.						
"	IV.	Weapons; Plan of the Roman Camp.						
44	V.	Military Engines, Testudo, etc.						
"	VI.	VI. Siege works, Rampart of Camp, etc.						
		PAGE						
$_{ m Map}$	of Ga	ul						
Rom	an Ga	lley						
C. Ju	ılius C	aesar facing 47						
_	_							
PLAN	1 I.	Caesar's Line of Works along the Rhone below						
		Geneva facing 50						
"	II.	The Battle with the Helvetii						
"	III.	The Battle between Caesar and Ariovistus " 72						
"	IV.	The Battle at the Aisne 80						
46	v.	The Battle at the Sambre						
**	VI.	The Siege of the Town of the Aduatuci " 90						
"	VII.	The Campaign against the Veneti						
" 7	III.	Sections of the Bridge across the Rhine following 112						
"	IX.	View of the Bridge over the Rhine " 112						
"	X.	The Siege of Avaricum facing 178						
"	XI.	Gergovia						
"	XII.	Expedition of Labienus against Lutetia " 196						
" >	XIII.	The Engagement at the Vingeanne " 200						
" 2	XIV.	The Siege of Alesia						
		The top of the Plans lies toward the north.						

### NOTE TO TEACHERS.

THIS edition of Caesar's Gallic War aims not only to aid the pupil in gaining a practical mastery of the Latin, but also to bring before him such explanatory and illustrative matter as shall awaken his interest in what he reads, lead to an intelligent grasp of the subject-matter, and help him to form a right method of classical study. In college class-rooms the masterpieces of ancient literature are no longer read merely as exercises in parsing and translation; the same methods of broad and sympathetic, yet exact and thorough study which characterize college work may be also successfully applied in preparatory and high-school classes.

The Introduction to this edition contains a brief estimate of Caesar's life-work, viewed in its several aspects, a condensed discussion of the Roman Art of War in Caesar's time, an outline of the geography of the regions most frequently referred to in the Gallic War, and a general view of the contents of the seven books. The latter part of the Introduction may perhaps be taken up with profit in regular lessons, along with the reading of the text. There is always an advantage in the *systematic* study of a topic or group of topics.

In the Text consonant i has been printed instead of j. That j should be discarded from the texts of classical Latin writers is generally admitted; and most editions of all except Caesar have only i. It is far better for the pupil, however, to become accustomed to the correct orthography at the very beginning of his Latin reading, than to run the risk of being confused later on in his course by the change from j to i. The spelling of Gallic proper names has in several cases been altered, to accord with

the results of recent investigations; for the researches of Glück, Desjardins, and others have shown that many of the current spellings are wrong.

In reading Caesar with classes many teachers prefer to take up Book II. before Book I. With this in view the Notes to Book II. have been made both full and elementary, with numerous grammatical references. But for those who do not follow this plan, the Notes to Book I. also have been made full, especially on passages of indirect discourse. To guide the pupil, the editor has ventured to make some suggestions on the study of Caesar, which will be found on page 377. The importance of adopting a correct method of work at the outset cannot be overestimated. It is hoped that the table of Idioms and Phrases will be found helpful in training to both flexibility and accuracy of translation. The pupil should commit to memory the more common idioms. The Vocabulary has been prepared, as the Introduction and Notes, with the design of giving to the pupil such assistance as he needs and such knowledge as he can digest.

The teacher will find the interest and profit of the study of Caesar enhanced if, instead of reading the first four books in course, he make for his classes a series of selections, covering the best portions of the whole work. As such a course of reading, the following selections are suggested:—

BOOK I., the Title and Chapter 1.

II., entire.

I., Chap. 2-54, The Wars with the Helvetii and with Ariovistus.

III., Chap. 7-16, The Campaign against the Veneti.

IV., Chap. 1-36, The Expeditions to Germany and to Britain.

V., Chap. 1-23, The Second Expedition to Britain.

VI., Chap. 12–24, The Customs of the Gauls and Germans contrasted.

VII., Chap. 69-90, The Siege of Alesia.

The works to which the editor has been most indebted in the preparation of this book are the editions of Caesar by Nipperdey, Holder, Kraner, Doberenz (Dinter), Peskett, Moberly, and Long; Rüstow's Heerwesen und Kriegführung, Wagler's Hilfsbüchlein, Napoleon's Jules César, and the Géographie Historique of Desjardins. The Plates are after those of Rheinhard, with some modifications. The Plans are based upon those in Napoleon's

Atlas, with various changes introduced from Rustow, von Goeler, von Kampen, and Rheinhard. Special mention of indebtedness is due to Eichert's Vollständiges Wörterbuch zu den Schriftwerken des C. J. Cäsar, and to Creak's Complete Dictionary of Caesar's Gallic War. A selected list of works useful for the special study of Caesar is given on page 379.

The editor takes pleasure in expressing his obligations to Prof. D. Y. Comstock, of Andover, Mass., who has carefully examined the MS. and proofs, and made many suggestions and additions; to Prof. A. G. Wilson, of Lake Forest, Ill., and other friends, for suggestions and criticisms.

FRANCIS W. KELSEY.

LAKE FOREST, ILLINOIS, June 24, 1886.

#### NOTE TO FOURTH EDITION.

In sending forth this new edition of the "Gallic War" the editor desires to make grateful acknowledgment of the suggestions and corrections, offered by teachers and friends, many of which have been incorporated, particularly in the Notes.

F. W. K

Ann Arbor, Michigan, December, 1889.

#### NOTE TO SEVENTH EDITION.

The editor is indebted to Mr. William H. Honey and Mr. Anthony Pratt for the references to Professor Bennett's Latin Grammar given in this edition; and to Miss Mary L. Miner, of the Detroit High School, for the revision of the references to the Allen and Greenough Grammar.

F. W. K.

Ann Arbor, June 1, 1895.



## INTRODUCTION

#### I. GAIUS IULIUS CAESAR.

#### i. LIFE OF CAESAR.

Gaius Iulius Caesar was born July 12, in the year 100 before Christ.¹ He was thus six years younger than Cicero and Pompey. His family belonged to the old nobility of Rome, the patrician order. Several of his ancestors had won distinction in the service of the state; but his father had held no higher office than that of practor. Of his early youth nothing is known except that he was taught at his own home by Gnipho, a celebrated rhetorician of the time, and dabbled in verse-making. As his parents were wealthy, we may suppose that he received under private masters the usual training of the time in grammar, numbers, music, and physical exercises.

Caesar's life was cast in a period fraught with great changes for the Roman state. The former adjustment of authorities, the old-time balancing of the elements of power that had brought to Rome both strength and security, had given place to violent party strifes, which threatened the very existence of the government. The city was crowded with turbulent throngs of poor citizens, who most of the time received grain from the public treasury at a rate much below cost, and who were easily bribed by men desiring political elevation. With this needy populace all those of humbler station sympathized and voted; thus the bulk of the popular party was made up. Opposed to this was the old aristocracy, which jealously guarded its ancient

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> Some authorities put the date two years earlier:

privileges. Its stronghold was the Senate. Besides these parties there were the capitalists who wielded vast influence and sided sometimes with the one, sometimes with the other, as self-interest directed. Amid intrigues for power, things had come to such a pass that any great and successful party leader had all his own way and might become virtually supreme. Notwithstanding the risk and uncertainty, politics were thought the only field of activity not beneath the dignity of a young Roman of standing.

When Caesar became old enough to take an active interest in public affairs, Marius, his uncle by marriage, was at the head of the popular party. With this, therefore, his lot was naturally cast. In 83 B.C. he married the daughter of L. Cinna, one of the bitterest opponents of the aristocracy. The following year Sulla returned from a series of victories in the East and restored the power of the Senate, wreaking vengeance upon all its political enemies. Caesar was bidden to put away his wife. He refused, and his life was endangered. He went into hiding, once indeed having purchased his life from a man coming to kill him. After a time, through influential friends, pardon was obtained from Sulla, who granted it with the remark that 'in that young Caesar there were many Mariuses.' Caesar at once left Italy, and served with the army in Asia till Sulla's death, in 78. At the siege of Mitylene he so distinguished himself that a civic crown, made of oak-leaves, was awarded him.

Returning to Rome, he accused first Cn. Dolabella, and afterwards C. Antonius, of extortion in provincial management. At that time the bringing of delinquent officials to justice was a common way of introducing one's self to public notice and winning favor. Though both Dolabella and Antonius were acquitted, Caesar showed great oratorical power, and in prosecuting them attracted much attention. Wishing to perfect himself in oratory, in 76 he set out for Rhodes, to study under Molo. Near Miletus his vessel was captured by pirates; he was kept a prisoner on the island of Pharmacusa until a ransom of fifty talents (over fifty thousand dollars) was paid. But as soon as he

was set free he manned some ships, took the pirate stronghold, and crucified his captors, — as he had jokingly told them, when with them, that he would do.

During the next sixteen years Caesar followed the regular course of political promotion, ignoring no means by which he might make himself popular. He bestowed gifts with a lavish hand, assumed the debts of bankrupt young nobles who had squandered their inheritance, gave largesses to the people. own means were soon expended; he borrowed vast sums at exorbitant rates of interest, with the design of getting reimbursement from the spoils of office. He was first elected military tribune; then, in 68, quaestor, going with Antistius Vetus into Spain. Three years later he was curule aedile, with Bibulus as colleague. In this office, by most extravagant expenditures on public games and buildings, he raised the enthusiasm of the populace to the highest pitch. He even dared by night in the Capitol to set up the statues of Marius and some representations of victories in the Jugurthine and Cimbrian wars; and the people wept for joy at the revival of old memories. By some he is thought to have been connected with the Catilinian conspiracy; but of this evidence is lacking. In 62 he obtained the office of praetor, in the discharge of which, amid scenes of violence, he carried himself with firmness and dignity. The next year he was governor of Spain, where he won distinction by subduing several wild tribes. He returned to Rome in the summer of 60, having abundant means of satisfying his creditors, and was decreed a public thanksgiving for his victories. He was soon elected consul.

For some years Pompey had been the most prominent man in Rome. His successes in the campaign against the pirates and the war with Mithridates had made him the national hero. But in the qualities needful for a political leader he was utterly lacking; so that even from his own party, the aristocratic, he was unable to win either the recognition he desired or the privileges to which he was entitled. More than once the Senate snubbed

him outright. Here Caesar saw his chance. Relying on his own popularity, he proposed to Pompey that they work in harmony, and by uniting their influence accomplish what either might desire. Pompey agreed; and with these two Crassus, the wealthiest man of Rome, was joined, making a political coalition really supreme, which is known as the First Triumvirate. It had no official existence; it was simply a political ring, of only three members but of vast power. To cement the union further, Pompey married Caesar's daughter Julia. During his consulship, among other measures Caesar caused a law to be passed regarding the division of the public lands, which, though bitterly opposed by the Senate, pleased the people greatly. With his aid, too, Pompey gained the favors previously denied. At the close of his consulship Caesar easily obtained for five years the government of both Cisalpine and Transalpine Gaul and Illyricum, as it was the custom to give ex-consuls the charge of provinces.

Nine years were devoted to the subjugation of Transalpine Gaul. The first summer (B.C. 58) Caesar drove back to their homes the Helvetii, who had attempted to migrate to the west of Gaul, and annihilated the army of the German king, Ariovistus. The following year he subdued the Belgic tribes in the north. The third campaign (B. C. 56) was against the tribes of northwest Gaul, that had leagued together to resist him. During this year Caesar renewed his compact with Pompey and Crassus, who agreed to see to it that his command should be prolonged for five years longer. A part of every winter he spent in Cisalpine Gaul, so as to be near Rome and retain his influence in home politics: it was against the law that a provincial governor having an army should enter Italy while in office. In 55 Caesar chastised several German tribes, and crossed over to Britain. The campaign of the next summer was principally against the Britons, part of whom he reduced to nominal subjection. the fall a division of his army in Gaul was cut off by a sudden uprising of the enemy. In 53 Caesar had to face a general rebellion of the subject tribes, which, however, he speedily

crushed. But the next year almost all Gaul rose against him, and under the leadership of Vercingetorix taxed his powers to the utmost. He finally prevailed; and after the fall of Alesia, B.C. 52, the strength of the Gauls was forever broken. In the eighth campaign, summer of 51, he reduced the tribes one by one to complete subjection. The following spring he left his army and came up into Cisalpine Gaul. Here he resolved to remain till the expiration of his command in 49, returning to Transalpine Gaul only for a short time during the summer to review the troops.

During Caesar's absence in Gaul Crassus had been defeated and killed in the East, thus putting an end to the Triumvirate, and with it to the harmony between Caesar and Pompey. The latter began to view Caesar's successes with distrust and alarm. He entered into alliance again with the aristocracy. The Senate in Pompey's interest passed a decree that both he and Caesar should give up a legion for service in the East. For some years Caesar had had one of Pompey's legions: this was now demanded back. Caesar let it go, and one of his own too, without a complaint, although the intent of the whole action was evidently to weaken his forces and annoy him. As it was not lawful for him to proceed in person to Rome, he stationed himself in Ravenna, the town of his province nearest the Italian boundary. He sent agents and friends to the City to negotiate for him, to try to offset the influence now openly brought to bear against him. Pompey and the Senate both hated and feared him. A decree was soon passed that Caesar should disband his army by a certain date, or be considered an outlaw. state of public affairs at that time this was simply to wrest from him the fruits of his hard-won successes, without leaving him even a guaranty of his personal safety. Caesar hesitated. The Senate voted, further, that "the consuls should provide that the state receive no hurt," which is like a proclamation of martial law in our day. This was virtually a declaration of war against Caesar, inspired by the jealousy of his opponent. Caesar at once

with one legion crossed the Rubicon, the boundary of his province. Soon all Italy was in his power, — Pompey, the Senate, and their followers having fled to Greece. After arranging matters at Rome to suit himself he went to Spain, where lieutenants devoted to Pompey had a strong army. They were soon crushed. On his return the siege of Massilia (Marseilles), which had closed its gates to him on the way out, was ended by the capture of the city.

Caesar now gathered his forces in Greece, to meet his enemies there. For some time the two armies faced each other at Dyrrhachium; but Caesar was soon obliged to withdraw into the interior. The decisive battle was fought August 9, B.C. 48, near the city of Pharsālus, in Thessaly. Caesar's forces numbered about twenty-two thousand men, of which one thousand were cavalry; Pompey had forty-seven thousand infantry and seven thousand cavalry. But superior generalship and the courage of desperation won the day against overwhelming odds. The Senatorial forces were entirely routed. Pompey fled to Egypt, where he was treacherously murdered. Caesar also went to Egypt, where he became involved in difficulties known as the Alexandrine War. Putting an end to these he proceeded to the neighborhood of Carthage, where Cato and Scipio had raised a force against him. He won a complete victory over them at the battle of Thapsus, B. C. 46.

Caesar was now everywhere master. In accordance with legal forms he promulgated several laws of great benefit to the people. He reformed the calendar; in memory of this, the name of the month in which he was born was changed to *Iulius*, our July. In the year 45 a large army was collected in Spain, and commanded by the two sons of Pompey. Caesar marched against it, and at the battle of Munda totally defeated it. On his return to Rome the Senate, whose members were mainly of his own choosing, loaded him with honors. By conferring upon him all the important offices it centred the whole authority in his hands. His tenure of power was marked by clemency

towards former opponents, and by the forming of vast projects for the public weal, few of which were ever realized. A league was formed to take his life. The conspirators were led to the crime by different motives, part by personal jealousy and hatred, part by a patriotic desire to restore the old republican constitution in full force, part by ambitious designs upon the spoils of state. So on March 15 B. C. 44, as Caesar had just entered the Senate house, he was set upon with daggers, and fell pierced by twenty-three wounds. But the plans of the murderers all miscarried. Not one of them died a natural death; and before many years Caesar's nephew and heir, Octavius, afterwards called Augustus, was Emperor of the Roman world.

Caesar was tall and of commanding presence. His features were angular and prominent. He had a fair complexion, with keen, expressive black eyes. In later years he was bald; at no time of life did he wear a beard. Though endowed with a constitution naturally by no means robust, he became inured to hardship, and exhibited astonishing powers of endurance. In matters of dress he was particular to the verge of effeminacy. His private life was not free from the vices of his time.

Of all the Romans Caesar was without doubt the greatest. In him the most varied talents were united with a restless ambition and tireless energy. While deliberate and far-seeing in the forming of his plans, in carrying them out he often acted with a haste that seemed like utter recklessness. He could command, could witness unmoved, scenes of the most shocking cruelty; yet none could be more forgiving, or more gracious in granting pardon. Believing with the Epicurean philosophy, that death ends all and life is worth living only for the pleasure to be gotten out of it, he mingled freely with the dissolute society of Rome; yet when it was time for action he spurned indulgences, gave himself to the severest toil, endured without a murmur the most trying privations. Denying the power of the gods, early in life he became a priest of Jupiter; later, high priest. But

in regard to all these things we may say that his faults were those he shared in common with his age; his genius belongs to all ages. Chateaubriand declares that Caesar was the most complete man of all history; for his genius was transcendent in three directions, in politics, in war, and in literature. Let us try to form some estimate of this threefold life-work by considering Caesar specially as a General, as a Politician, and as a Man of Letters.

#### ii. CAESAR AS A GENERAL.

CAESAR was the greatest general Rome produced. His military genius did not display itself, as did that of Hannibal or Napoleon, in the masterly use of strategy and the introduction of new tactics; but taking the Roman art of war as he found it, he brought it to the highest perfection. The Romans, at all periods of their history, relied for victory not so much on brilliant feats in arms as on the rigid discipline, power of endurance, and persistent courage of their soldiers. ability to make his men do more and endure more for him than they would under any one else lies a chief secret of his success. He had the rare power of binding his army to him with a devotion that nothing could destroy. In almost every campaign he fought against vastly superior numbers and the most serious disadvantages. For his troops there were long marches, heavy burdens, the constant labor of fortifying, wellgrounded fears of the enemy often increased tenfold by exaggeration; yet confidence in their leader inspired them with ever fresh zeal; and addresses from time to time, reminding them of what he expected of them, fired their courage to the utmost. To this unflagging faithfulness, this unswerving allegiance to him and his cause that he had the faculty of calling forth, fully as much as to skilful handling of forces on the field of battle, his victories were due.

On the other hand, the longer men served under him the more confidence he placed in them; and he did not hesitate to

tell them how much he relied on them. Instances of special courage on the part of legions, companies, or individuals, he made note of, and commended. He made his men think that he was personally interested in each one, — just as Napoleon used to go among the common soldiers and inquire into their welfare. He knew every centurion by name, and when the battle was hottest he would rush into the ranks and call out to them individually, urging to greater effort. In campaigns he was most careful of the lives of his men, never exposing them to unnecessary risks. Slight delinquencies of conduct he often overlooked; but his general system of discipline was most strict. Active warfare was confined almost entirely to the summer months. During the winter the troops were placed in stationary quarters, where they were kept from idleness by constant drilling. These winter camps, though often distributed about the enemy's country in order to inspire awe, were nevertheless located away from cities, that the soldiers might not become effeminate by being brought under corrupting influences, nor form attachments with those in whose region they were placed. In this way Caesar avoided one of the fatal mistakes of Hannibal, who in the winter allowed his army to revel in the luxuries of South Italy. No matter how well trained a force may be, in a campaign of hard fighting it becomes demoralized, partly by reason of the gaps in the ranks caused by losses, partly on account of irregular movements and constant effort toward adaptation to new circumstances. Caesar made his winter encampments a source of fresh strength. From them his soldiers went forth with recruited powers, confident from the experience of past campaigns, and hardened by training. Thus Caesar "made his army as it were a body, of which he was the soul." He did not command his men to advance, but to follow, and more than once exposed his life by fighting like a common soldier in the front ranks.

The military movements of Caesar, as of Napoleon, were characterized by an incredible swiftness. He often appeared

in the vicinity of the enemy, or gained possession of important points, before the news had spread that he was on the march. Thus he not infrequently caught his adversaries unawares, found them with scattered forces, and gained a victory before they could come together. As a consequence, in many cases a panic was excited that paralyzed the efforts of the foe and resulted in greater advantage to Caesar than the winning of several battles. When he felt himself too weak in numbers to assume the offensive with the force at hand, he would gain time by parleying, declaring that he must have opportunity for deliberation, while in reality he was awaiting reinforcements, or completing preparations for active measures. Like Grant, he had the power of keeping to himself his designs. His most trusted officers rarely knew his plans till called upon to execute them. He seems to have thought that the best way to assure the secrecy of a project was to carry it out as soon as formed. At any rate, his movements often appeared rash. In the end, however, results revealed his superior judgment and foresight.

But no matter how rapidly Caesar advanced, he was always careful to keep up connection with his base of supplies. For these he relied in the Gallic war partly on the Roman province, partly on friendly tribes, and partly on the hostile region through which he was marching. That there might be no failure in the regular transportation of supplies to the front he took every precaution. He left no points in possession of the foe behind him; he so secured the route by garrisons at strategic points that in case of defeat he could retreat in safety. Thus, instead of crossing the Rhine by boats, as he could easily have done, he built bridges each time, and left them strongly guarded while he went over into Germany. Once sufficiently near the enemy, his usual practice was to choose immediately a favorable location and fortify a camp. Then by sallies with cavalry he tried to cut off the supplies of the enemy and force them to attack him on his own ground. In this respect his tactics were defensive rather than offensive, and uniformly successful. He never stopped to besiege a town if he could well avoid it, knowing that a crushing defeat in the field opens the gates of cities. Yet no one was more skilled in the conducting of operations against fortified places than he. The siege of Alesia was one of the most remarkable recorded in history. Sometimes by a feigned retreat, or by marching to one side of the direct route, he drew the enemy away from a point he wished to take, then by a reverse movement fell on it suddenly before they could come to the rescue.

None understood better than Caesar how to follow up a victory and turn it to the best advantage. In pursuit of the fleeing he sent detachments of cavalry, and on all sides struck heavy blows before the enemy could gather again or get new courage. Occasionally he authorized indiscriminate slaughter, or the general sale of captives into slavery; but he was not cruel by nature, and in making slaves of those spared by the sword he acted in accordance with the universal custom of antiquity. In the civil war he was more compassionate toward the vanquished than any of his contemporaries. In the Gallic war, on conquering a state he usually took under his protection one of the parties in it, placing it in charge of the government, bound thus by strong ties to himself. His organizing power displayed itself in the bringing of order out of chaos; while his firmness and moderation won the respect, if not the esteem, of those he made subject. When he left Gaul and engaged in the war with Pompey the country was not only once for all subdued, but even contained a strong party devoted to his interests.

The military successes of Caesar have been sometimes attributed to the lack of generalship on the part of his adversaries. This is not just. To say nothing of the fact that in the civil strifes the best warriors of Rome were pitted against him, two at least of his northern foes, Ariovistus and Vercingetorix, were men of great natural powers of organization and leadership, consummate masters of the tactics with which they were familiar. The numbers of the barbarian armies were almost beyond

compute, their courage well-nigh invincible. From traditions of Gallic invasions the Gauls had become the bugbear of the Roman soldiery; and even Caesar's men at first trembled before their great size and ferocious aspect. They were by no means the undisciplined savages that they are sometimes thought to have been. The Gauls used the Greek alphabet; and in civilization were far in advance of the early Britons and Germans. In the earlier campaigns they showed lack of military organization; but in the last years of the Gallic war their troops were organized, armed, and drilled after the Roman fashion, and proved almost a match for the invaders. Sometimes Caesar diminished the awe of his soldiers by trial skirmishes, that the mettle of the enemy might be tested, and the confidence of his army strengthened before the general engagement.

No, the reasons for Caesar's pre-eminence as a general must be sought, not in the weakness of his enemies, but in himself, in his singular power of controlling and organizing men, in his quick and comprehensive grasp of circumstances and ready adaptation to them, in his knowledge of human nature and his penetration as shown specially in his selection of officers, in his ability to make skilful use of the Roman tactics. But behind all these qualities there was another that defies analysis, that enabled him always to turn things to his own advantage: shall we not call it genius? Many generals have studied Caesar's Memoirs most carefully as a military manual; some have even taken copies with them on campaigns. As the greatest general of all the Romans, Caesar takes rank among the most famous military leaders of the world. He will not suffer by comparison with Alexander the Great, with Hannibal and Napoleon, Grant and Von Moltke; but the modern warrior whose qualities of leadership and generalship most resemble Caesar's is England's "Iron Duke," Wellington.

#### iii. Caesar as a Politician.

THE political character of Caesar has long been a subject of controversy. According to some he was a monster of crime, with hardly a redeeming quality; deliberately sacrificing the liberties of his country to an inordinate ambition. Others portray him as a broad-minded statesman, who saw that in the anarchy arising from the strife of parties Rome's great need was a single controlling will; who, to give peace and order to his distracted land, made himself its master. Both these views are extreme and unjust. The one emphasizes the destructive side of Caesar's character, while the constructive side is ignored; the other projects upon him that profound knowledge of the tendencies of the Roman state which the philosophers of history have been eighteen centuries in acquiring. His character presents, indeed, many apparently conflicting elements. But upon careful study it is evident that in the main he acted in accordance with the spirit of his age; that though his motives may not always have been patriotic, he was in reality a benefactor of his country; and that the true significance of his career becomes apparent only when it is considered as the final outworking of a principle that in times past had been asserting itself more and more in Roman politics, - the principle of Imperialism.

In entering the arena of political life Caesar no doubt both followed his own inclinations and chose the course reckoned most proper for a Roman youth of fortune and high position. At that time, owing to the proscriptions of Sulla, there was in the popular party a dearth of leaders, which gave ample room for the exercise of his powers. The methods which he employed to make himself the people's favorite, judged by modern standards, were in the highest degree objectionable. Still, they were the usual methods of his time; while in restoring the statues of Marius to the Capitol he showed a deep insight into the real feelings of the masses as well as a knowledge of the ways of reaching the popular heart. Few of his contemporaries had

so great regard for the formalities of the law as he. Even at the trial of the Catilinian conspirators he argued on legal grounds that the accused should not be put to death improperly. The formation of the First Triumvirate was a shrewd move, fraught with momentous consequences. It reveals rare sagacity and foresight; but it had no more and no less significance than the forming of political rings to secure the rewards of office in our day. It proposed not to subvert but to direct the government, and at the same time to turn to private advantage the influence and emoluments of official positions.

The means by which Caesar was enabled finally to obtain the supreme power was the conquest of Gaul. From early times the Gauls, pressed by the tribes beyond, had occasionally made incursions into Italy; and now Roman colonists in southern Gaul were continually harassed. To protect these the rest of the country must be subdued. It is said that Caesar undertook the task of bringing Gaul into subjection in order to acquire a military power with which to overthrow the home government. Can this be the true explanation of his motives? How could he expect in the subduing of a wild northern country to develop a force able to cope with a government that had behind it Pompey, conqueror of rich provinces in the East? More likely he planned the Gallic campaigns as an important service to the state. If he should be successful in carrying them out, he would gain a still higher place in the affections of the people, and would add one more laurel to his political honors. Because his remarkable ability as a general soon won for him extraordinary successes, which he afterwards employed to further his own ends, we have no right to suppose that his aim from the beginning was to obtain the supreme power, and the conquest of Gaul the means he took to accomplish it.

The death of Crassus left Pompey and Caesar without rivals in political power. The latter, as master of Gaul, found himself much more nearly on a level with the "great man of Rome" than ever before. A mutual jealousy soon provoked a collision. Pompey undoubtedly had the advantage; for while he was

administering a powerful command in Spain through his lieutenants, he was in person at Rome, at the centre of affairs, acting as sole consul by the desire of the people; but Caesar was outside the limits of Italy. As a matter of fact, Rome was under Pompey's control. So it was at Pompey's bidding that the Senate ordered Caesar to disband his legions and resign his command. Caesar was placed in a difficult position. In obeying this decree he would give up everything to his opponent and make himself a political cipher, with but small prospect of ever regaining his former influence. His enemies had woven a net around In refusing to obey he would give to the Senate a chance to declare him a traitor, and to his adversary an opportunity of attacking him in the name of the state. Yet simple justice required that all which might be demanded of the one should be demanded of the other also. So at least Caesar thought; and he acted accordingly. If he had previously fought for fame and influence, he must now fight for self-preservation. An appeal to arms was his only means of defence. Delay was dangerous; he decided on immediate action. If an appeal to arms against the existing authority is ever justifiable in the case of an individual, the crossing of the Rubicon, that first aggressive step of the movement which resulted in Caesar's elevation to supreme power, was attended at least by palliating circumstances.

But in this contest there was a deeper significance than the elevation or overthrow of an individual. Whoever conquered would be king. There were certain tendencies in the Roman state that rendered a monarchy inevitable. Rome was at first a municipality; her government, a group of institutions developed by and adapted to a city population. When she extended her boundaries she conquered cities, and her government thus had to deal with a collection of municipal organizations similar to her own. The consequence was a constant tendency toward disintegration, — toward the separation of this combination of units into its original elements. Opposed to this localizing tendency there was necessarily developed a contrary drift toward centralization. It was found that a body composed of many

inharmonious members needed a single will. In times of extreme danger the state was obliged to put almost absolute power into the hands of a dictator. The people thus became familiar with the prerogatives of royalty under a different name. Meanwhile the influx of wealth after the period of conquest, the development of large landed estates which absorbed the small farms of the peasant class, and the excessive employment of slave labor which was reducing the free classes within ever narrower limits, gave prominence to individual aspirants to power who made the state a republic only in name. Gaius Gracchus for a time held virtual sovereignty. Marius was supreme for five years. Sulla was as really a king as if he had worn the purple. Matters at length had come to such straits, that the very existence of the state demanded a king. There was needed a strong, centralized government, capable of repressing anarchy at home and of enforcing respect abroad.

The murder of Pompey left Caesar without a rival; and under the forms of the old constitution he became in truth monarch of Rome. Thus had he who at first cherished no more ambitious aim than to become a political leader, risen by the force of circumstances to the absolute mastery of the Roman world. His short administration revealed in him statesmanship of a high order. Under him the state enjoyed a larger measure of prosperity than before for many decades; and his untimely end only renewed the political disturbances that he had sought to repress. Endowed with such deep insight into men and things, Caesar must have foreseen, faintly at first perhaps, but more and more distinctly as time passed on, what would be the end of the course he was pursuing, — as the traveller sees through the breaking mist the summit toward which the upward path is leading. We claim for him, however, that he did not definitely contemplate the subversion of the liberties of the Commonwealth; and that, guided by an overruling Providence, he accomplished an important work for the Roman state and for humanity. Certainly few men have left so strong an impress upon the history of the race as he. The calendar, as

reformed by him, is still in use in Greece and Russia. His name has become a designation of imperial authority, and remains to-day in the word *Kaiser*, the official title of the emperors of Germany and Austria; some think also in the Russian *Czar*. Political writers, too, use the word *Cæsarism*. What a life, able not simply to make for itself a place in the records of history, but even to hand down a name as synonymous with the highest power!

### iv. CAESAR AS A MAN OF LETTERS.

CAESAR had a natural taste for literature. He enjoyed the best educational advantages of his time in rhetoric and elocution; but the freshness, directness, and vigor of his style indicate not so much careful training as an inborn power over language. As an orator he was considered second only to Cicero. It is to be regretted that none of his orations have come down to us; from the fragments that survive, we know that his manner of speaking was terse, logical, earnest, and convincing. Even during the busiest periods of his life he kept up literary pursuits. He composed a treatise on grammar (De Analogia) while crossing the Alps. He wrote also a tract 'Against Cato,' and a work in sixteen books on 'Auspices.' All these, as well as his poems, have been lost. But his most important writings, which still survive, were the 'Commentaries on the Gallic War,' in seven books, describing the conquest of Gaul; and 'Commentaries on the Civil War,' in three books, giving an account of the struggle with Pompey. These works, as the name indicates (Commentarii, that is, notes or jottings, comments, 'Memoirs'), were not intended to be formal historical treatises, but were written in great haste in the midst of the campaigns described, and given to the world rather as rough first draughts, as a general's diary, than as complete and finished productions. An eighth book was afterwards added to the 'Gallic War' by Aulus Hirtius; other hands, too, extended the 'Civil War,' by adding narratives of Caesar's military operations in Egypt, Africa, and Spain.

The style of the 'Memoirs' has always been much admired, Cicero, although a political enemy of the author, did not hesitate to say of them: "They are worthy of all praise. They are unadorned, straightforward, and elegant, every embellishment being stripped off as a garment. Caesar desired, indeed, to furnish others who might wish to write history with material upon which they might draw; and perhaps men without good taste, who like to deck out facts in tawdry graces of expression, may think that in this he has done a kindness, but he has deterred men of sound sense from trying to improve on them in writing. For in history a pure and brilliant conciseness of style is the highest attainable beauty." The manner of expression, although so condensed, is most clear, and often vivid. It stands as a warning to those who think that a simple, direct, and forcible statement of facts can be made more effective by the use of many words and high-sounding phrases. The same unaffected directness of language is a noticeable characteristic of Grant's memoirs.

Although Caesar is everywhere, as a matter of course, the principal figure in the 'Memoirs,' he throws himself into the background, making prominent the deed rather than the doer. He speaks of himself usually in the third person, — a mode of expression as rare in personal narrative in his time as to-day. More surprising still is the fact that one finds no bitter aspersions upon his enemies, no extravagant commendations of friends, no professedly special pleas to justify his course. The reasons for important movements are always stated, but in such a way that they seem to have grown out of the attendant circumstances, and to have forced on action; so that no man of discretion could have done otherwise than he did. In all this there is the highest skill. While keeping himself free from all expressions alike of malice and of self-glorification, he draws the reader along with him, arouses sympathy, and wins to his own view; thus he justifies his course tenfold more effectively than if he were to excite the reader's opposition or suspicion by violent statements, or had adopted a more direct way of pleading his course. Little doubt that behind both the 'Gallic' and the 'Civil War' there lay a political purpose, to set a favorable explanation of his career before the eyes of his fellow-countrymen and of posterity. But does this affect the truthfulness of his statements?

In writing his 'Memoirs' Caesar had to deal with several classes of facts. First, especially in the 'Gallic War,' there was a vast fund of information about the strange peoples with Most of these were previously whom he came in contact. unknown to the Romans. Caesar was a close and careful observer. He made minute inquiries not only into the numbers and military prowess of his foes, but also into their manner of life, their customs, and religious beliefs. In him, with the circumspection and foresight of the general was united the eager desire for knowledge of the man of science. His nature was averse to the marvellous. The pages of few ancient writers who present accounts of new peoples are so free from the improbable. Whenever possible he got his information directly, at first hand. In a few instances he seems to have become possessed of erroneous views; but as a whole his statements about lands and peoples are, no doubt, thoroughly trustworthy. Then, there were the accounts of his military operations, of the general conduct of his campaigns. The accuracy of these has hardly been called in question; while the surveys and excavations carried on under the direction of the Emperor Napoleon III. have furnished in many cases a remarkable confirmation. Finally, there remain the more particular descriptions of battles, sieges, and the like; of successes and defeats. These affect reputation; here if anywhere we should look for untruthfulness. Did Caesar, as some have thought, magnify his victories and cover up his defeats? There is no evidence that he did. The Besides, with tone throughout his works is candid and fair. these things most of his readers were familiar by means of reports brought from the field. Falsifying under such circumstances would have been downright folly, would have excited all manner of derision, and have entirely defeated the writer's purposes. Possibly now and then Caesar colored his narrative a little, or purposely omitted something: his general reliability we have not the slightest reason to doubt. His statements of his motives of action in certain cases, bearing in mind the circumstances, we are at liberty to accept or reject as we choose; his veracity in regard to facts should not be impugned without good reason. From whatever standpoint viewed, his works are of great interest and value. The *De Bello Gallico* in particular deserves to be carefully studied, as a masterpiece of concise and spirited writing, as casting light upon the beginnings of the history of Northern Europe, and as revealing the modes of thought and action of one of the world's greatest men.

## II. THE ROMAN ART OF WAR IN CAESAR'S TIME.

### i. ORGANIZATION OF THE ARMY.

THE Roman army consisted of three parts, — the Infantry (pedites, or simply milites), the Cavalry (equites or equitatus), and the Commissariat, or Baggage-train (impedimenta).

1. The Infantry. — The main body of the infantry was divided into legions (legiones). The number of men in a legion varied according to circumstances; for the killed or disabled were not replaced by recruits enrolled in the same legion, but when an accession of strength was received new legions were formed. Generally the longer a legion remained in service the smaller it became. The average number of men in Caesar's legions was 3,600. The legion was divided into ten cohorts, or battalions (cohortes), of 360 men each. The cohort contained three maniples, or companies (manipuli), having each thus 120 men. Those belonging to the first, the second, and the third maniples respectively were sometimes designated as hastati, principes, and triarii; but in Caesar's time, the old distinctions in equipment and service formerly implied by these names no longer existed. The maniple was divided into two centuries (ordines), of sixty men each.

Outside the legions were, — a. The *evocati*. These were veterans who had served their full time, but had volunteered for further service. They were held in honor, and had several privileges, such as immunity from picket-duty and work on fortifications. They were not attached to any particular corps, but had a place near the commander, from whom directly or through a lieutenant they received their orders. b. The light-armed troops (*milites levis armatura*). These were slingers and bowmen, and were always drawn from foreign peoples. In the earlier times the legions were composed only of Romans; later, others were admitted.

Citizens entered the service not by volunteering, but by being summoned and chosen through levies (*delectus*) held usually at Rome. A Roman could be called out any time between the ages of seventeen and forty-six. The regular period of service was twenty years in the infantry and ten years in the cavalry.

The officers were of three classes, — centurions, military tribunes, and lieutenants. a. Centurions, or captains (centuriones). These led the centuries; there were consequently two in each maniple, six in each cohort, and sixty in the legion. lowest in rank was the second centurion of the third maniple of the tenth cohort, the highest was the first centurion of the first cohort, called primi pili centurio, or primipīlus. The primipilus had a place in the war council. As a mark of authority the centurions carried a stick in the right hand. plate II. 3.) b. Military Tribunes (tribuni militum). were six in number to each legion, stood in rank above the centurions, and commanded in turn. In Caesar's army they were of little importance, because most of their authority and duties were given over to the lieutenants. c. The Lieutenants, or legates (legati). These ranked next to the general. They carried a sceptre, and wore a purple robe with gold trimming. They held no particular division of the army as their permanent command, but were placed in charge now of this, now of that undertaking, sometimes over one legion, sometimes over several. They directed the movements of cavalry as well as infantry. The general (imperator), inasmuch as he held military authority (imperium) directly from the state, was on formal occasions accompanied by lictors (hictores), who bore an axe in a bundle of rods as symbolic of his power. (See plate II. 4, 2.)

2. The Cavalry. — Caesar's cavalry was drawn from allied and subject peoples, the officers only being Romans. It was distinct from the legion, and of secondary importance. It probably numbered on the average 3,300 to 4,000 men, separated into divisions (alae) of 330 to 400 men. The divisions were composed of squads (turmae) of thirty-three to forty horsemen, these last of decuries of ten or more. The higher officers

of the cavalry were the cavalry prefects (*praefecti equitum*); the under officers were the decurions (*decuriones*). (See plate III. 5.)

3. The Commissariat, or Baggage-Train. — This consisted of a great number of beasts of burden and wagons, with the drivers and other drudge-folk (calones). Thus the tents, hand-mills, bridge material, engines of war, extra weapons, and all other needful military stores were conveyed. Each legion had a separate baggage train. When accompanied by this on the march it was called (legio) impedita, "encumbered;" when without, expedita, "unencumbered." From impedimenta, or baggage of the legion, sarcinae, the private luggage of each soldier, which he himself carried, should be carefully distinguished. Besides the calones, and just above them in position, were the artisans (fabri), — carpenters, blacksmiths, and the like.

### ii. THE WEAPONS, STANDARDS, AND MUSICAL INSTRUMENTS.

The **weapons** of Caesar's army were of two kinds, offensive and defensive. The offensive weapons were the javelin and the sword; the defensive were the helmet, the shield, the greaves, and the cuirass, or coat of mail.

1. Offensive Weapons. — a. The javelin. Of this there were four varieties, — pilum, iaculum, hasta, lancea. The pilum was a strong and heavy pike, the principal weapon of the legion soldiers. It consisted of a square shaft of wood four feet long, to the end of which a sharp but strong iron point, like a bayonet, was securely fastened. The entire length of the pilum was six feet; its weight was ten to eleven pounds, — about that of the guns furnished by the United States Government and most European nations to their infantry. The pila were thrown only at short distances, and often the first hurling decided the battle. The iaculum was a lighter dart; the hasta, a long spear adapted specially for stabbing; the lancea, a light spear, a lance, often with a broad point like an arrow-head. These three weapons were used by the cavalry and the light-armed troops. Some of the latter also carried bows and arrows (arcus, sagitta) and even

slings (funda). (See pl. IV. 6, 7, 11, and pl. III. 1.) b. The Roman sword (gladius) was short (not over two and a half feet long), almost as wide as the hand, two-edged, and pointed. It was thus better adapted for stabbing than for slashing, though used for both purposes. (See pl. IV. 9.) It was kept in a light scabbard fastened to a belt (balteus), which was not passed around the waist as our soldiers have it, but over the left shoulder. (See the two right-hand figures in pl. III. 1, soldiers of the legion.) The cavalry men had a sword somewhat longer than that described above.

2. Defensive Weapons. - The legion-soldiers were protected by, — a. A brazen helmet (cassis) ornamented with a crest of red or white feathers (crista). (See pl. IV. 5.) b. A cuirass (lorīca), made of leather simply, or of leather with strips of metal fastened on about the waist and shoulders, or of scales of metal, or of a single brazen plate fourteen inches square over the breast. (See pl. II. 3; III. 3.) c. Greaves, reaching as high as the knee (ocreae), worn as a rule only on the right leg. d. An oblong shield, or buckler (scutum), almost a man's height, made of boards fitted together, covered with leather and having a broad rim of metal running around the edge. (See pl. IV. 3.) Another variety of shield sometimes used by the infantry was the clipeus, which was of bronze and oval in shape. (See pl. IV. 1.) Both scutum and clipeus were variously ornamented, with representations of thunderbolts, symbols of the legion, and the like The light-armed troops carried a small shield almost round, or target (parma), and seven light spears. and wore upon the head a helmet of leather with or without metal framework (galea). (See pl. IV. 4, 5.) The cavalry also had the galea and the parma, with greaves of leather. (See pl. III. 5.) The soldier wore beneath his armor a thick woollen under-garment, reaching nearly to the knees (tunica). His shoes were much like sandals with heavy soles, held on by bands over the ankle. His cloak (sagum) was of heavy woollen stuff, usually a single piece of cloth, fastened across the shoulders by a clasp and open in front. It served him as a blanket

also; and in battle it was thrown off, so as not to hinder free movement. The cloak of the general or high officer (paludamentum) was of finer texture and ornamented. (See pl. II. 1, 2.)

The standards (signa) of the Roman army were many in number, and of a great variety of forms. The most important was the legion eagle (aquila), of gold, silver, or bronze, with expanded wings, and of the size of a dove. In times of peace it was kept in the temple of Saturn at Rome; on the march and in battle it was borne aloft on a strong pole in the maniple of the primipilus; in camp it was taken off the pole and placed in a little shrine, where it became an object of veneration. (See pl. IV. 2, 8.) The loss of the eagle was reckoned the deepest disgrace. The ancient Persians also had a golden eagle as the royal standard; and to-day the eagle holds an important place among the military emblems of Austria, Russia, Germany, France, and the United States. The cohort had several standards, at least one to each maniple; thus the manipuli are sometimes called signa. They were of many different shapes and designs, representing a wolf, a serpent, a dog, an outstretched hand, the goddess of victory, etc. Underneath frequently were placed as ornaments figures of victorious crowns, metallic disks having in relief the face of the commander, the number or name of the company, and the like. Sometimes the name and number of the legion, cohort, or maniple were indicated on a banner under or over the figure. (See pl. II. 5; pl. IV. 2.) It is probable that the standard of the first maniple of the cohort was also the standard of the cohort. The standard-bearers in general were called signiferi; but the bearer of the legion eagle was given the special name aquilifer. The chief standard-bearers often wore a bear or lion skin over the head to make them look ferocious. (See pl. II. 5.) vexillum was a square or oblong banner used for many purposes. A large red vexillum was placed over the general's tent as a signal to break camp. A similar banner of red or white was carried by the cavalry squads, by the evocati, and on war-ships. (See pl. II. 8, pl. III. 5.)

By means of the standards the movements of troops were largely directed. Hence arose many peculiar expressions, unintelligible without a recognition of this fact. Thus signa inferre means "to advance;" signa referre, "to retreat;" signa convertere, "to face about;" signa efferre, or signa castris vellere, "to march out of camp;" ad signa convenire, "to assemble." Those who fought in the front ranks, before the standards, were called antesignani.

The musical instruments of Caesar's army were of three kinds, — the tuba, the cornu, and the bucina. The tuba, "trumpet," was straight, with funnel-shaped opening, and had a deep tone. It was used to give military signals, such as to form, to advance, to retreat. The cornu and bucina were curved, and had a shriller note. The bučina, "clarion," was sounded to mark the watches, — as at noon, sunset, midnight. The cornu, "horn" (made originally of buffalo horn), gave the classicum, a signal by which the army was called together to hear an address from the commander or a sentence of death pronounced. On the march signals were given by the tuba; in battle, by the The horn-blowers were called from the cornu and bucina. names of their instruments, tubicines, bucinatores and cornicines. (See pl. II. 6, 7.) In Caesar's day the lituus, a kind of horn curved at the larger end like the butt of a pistol, was sometimes used by cavalry. Its tone was harsh and high. not spoken of by Caesar. The Romans never had a regular system of music as we have, with different instruments playing different parts. They understood only intervals and melody, not harmony.

### SUMMARY.

#### iii. PROVISIONING AND PAY OF THE SOLDIERS.

Caesar took every precaution to have ample supplies always at hand. The care of the stores was in the hands of a quaestor, with his staff. Not bread, or even flour, but grain (frumentum), usually wheat, was served out to the soldiers for rations. they themselves ground with handmills (molae manuales) and prepared for food, by boiling into a paste or by making into bread without yeast. The grain was portioned out every fifteen days, and on the march each soldier carried his share in a sack. The amount furnished does not seem large when we reflect that the men lived almost exclusively on a vegetable diet. The allowance for the fifteen days was two Roman pecks (modii), about half a bushel by our measure. As the weight of this was not far from thirty pounds, the soldier had about two pounds per day. On difficult or forced marches extra rations were served out. If the soldier desired to do so he could trade off his grain for bread, or buy other articles of food from the numerous traders (mercatores), who accompanied the army and had a flourishing business. When wheat was scarce, barley (hordeum) was substituted. Rations of barley were also frequently served out as punishment for slight offences. In traversing an enemy's country fresh meat was often obtained in abundance. The horses of the cavalry-men and the beasts of burden were fed on barley; but on expeditions green fodder was usually found.

Previous to Caesar's time the pay (merces) of the legionsoldier was about  $6\frac{1}{4}$  cents per day. Caesar doubled this; so that in his army the soldier received  $12\frac{1}{2}$  cents per day, the centurion 25 cents,—about \$46 and \$92 per year respectively. But in successful campaigns the soldiers had a share of the booty (praeda), consisting largely of captives, who were sold as slaves. These were bought up on the spot by the traders, and thus readily turned into cash. Sometimes Caesar gave money realized from the sale of booty (praemium); thus after the conquest of the Bituriges he promised the common soldiers

200 sesterces (about \$8.00) apiece, the centurions 2,000 sesterces (about \$80.00). As other rewards (praemia), the commander could grant to those not Romans the right of citizenship, and to Romans of low degree the right of wearing a gold ring. He could also make special gifts (dona), such as military decorations of metal for the breast (phalerae), corresponding to our medallions; chains (torques); rings for the arms (armillae); little silver or gold spears (hastae purae) or shields (parmae purae); sacrificial bowls (paterae sacrificiales); grain and wine; several kinds of crowns of oak-leaves, or even wrought with gold (coronae). The crown of laurel leaves was bestowed on the victorious commander. At the close of his period of service (twenty years for the infantry, ten years for cavalry), or on reaching his fiftieth year, the soldier who had served well was entitled to an honorable discharge (missio honesta). When released on account of health or disablement he received an invalid's discharge (missio causaria). The general sometimes granted a discharge by favor (missio gratiosa). On account of cowardly or disgraceful conduct the soldier was deprived of his weapons and driven from the camp (exauctoratio ignominiosa), or in extreme cases put to death.

### iv. THE ARMY ON THE MARCH.

On the march the army usually advanced in three divisions,—the van (agmen primum), the main force (exercitus, agmen legionum), and the rear (agmen novissimum).

The van was made up of light-armed infantry and cavalry, and had three special functions, — a. To spy out the country through scouts (exploratores); to report the presence of the enemy and any other important information or discoveries; and when in the vicinity of the foe to ascertain his strength, disposition, and the like. The desired knowledge was frequently obtained by capturing in sudden sallies peasants and stragglers, and obliging these to reveal the facts, even by means of tortures. b. To hold an attacking force at bay until the legions

could form in battle-order, and to guard the crossings of rivers. c. To hinder the escape of a fleeing enemy till the main force could come up and complete the victory.

The main force marched sometimes in a single column, each legion followed by its own baggage-train; sometimes in a column with the baggage-trains of all the legions together; sometimes in battle array with the baggage under strong guard at some distance, either on one side or behind. The last order of march was observed only when in the neighborhood of a threatening foe.

The rear was made up either of cavalry and light-armed troops or of legion-soldiers, detached from the main force to repel any attack from behind. In dangerous regions, where the nature of the country allowed, a hollow square was formed. In such cases a part of the main force drawn up in battle-order in three ranks took the front; a like detachment held the rear; two other detachments, generally of the cavalry and light-armed troops, closed in the sides. In the middle of the figure thus formed the baggage-trains were placed.

The regular day's march (*iter iustum*) was from six to seven hours long. The start was usually made at sunrise; but in special emergencies the army got under way at midnight, or two or three o'clock in the morning. The distance ordinarily traversed was thirty thousand paces (*passus*), between 15 and 20 miles; the Roman military pace was shorter than the common *passus* (cf. N. to p. 48, 16). But on forced marches (*itinera magna*) of eight to twelve hours much greater distances were made, — as fifty thousand paces. Rivers were crossed by means of bridges, either permanent or hastily constructed, and by fording.

On the march the soldier carried, besides his food-supply, his cooking utensils (vasa), his arms, blanket, and two rampart stakes (valli). The luggage was done up in a tight bundle (sarcinae; see pl. III. 4), which was fastened to a forked pole, and thus raised over the shoulder. This arrangement was introduced by Marius, in memory of whom soldiers so equipped were called "mules of Marius" (muli Mariani). The helmet

was hung by a cord from the neck, the other weapons disposed of in the most convenient way. When it rained, the oblong shields (scuta) were put over the head like a roof. The entire weight of each legion soldier's burden must have been from fifty to sixty pounds,—and much more than this when, on special service, rations were served out for twenty or twenty-five days. The infantry of our day are not expected to carry more than forty-five pounds apiece. When preparing for battle the legion soldiers cast off their luggage, either leaving it in camp or depositing it in heaps in a guarded place.

### v. THE ARMY IN CAMP.

The Roman camp was laid out, fortified, and guarded with great care. Even when the army was to remain in a place but a single night the same precautions were taken as if a stay of weeks was intended. When the army was on the march, men were sent forward to choose a suitable location for a camp and measure it off (castra metari; the surveyors were called castrorum metatores or mensores). Whenever possible, a site was selected on a slight elevation (locus superior), with abundance of water and of wood for fuel near at hand. The proximity of a dense forest or overhanging mountain was avoided, that a favorable opportunity of attack might not be given to the enemy. When possible, the rear or one side was placed facing a river.

The camp was usually square or oblong; in a few cases we read of camps of other shapes adapted to the nature of the ground. First an embankment was thrown up on all sides. Outside of this was a ditch, from which the earth for it was taken. On the outer edge of the embankment a row of strong stakes or palisades (valli) was driven firmly in. The rampart thus made (vallum) was several feet high and wide enough for the soldiers to stand on behind the palisades. The ditch (fossa) was from nine to twelve feet wide, and from seven to nine feet deep. When the army expected to remain in the same place for a long time (castra statīva), sometimes watch-towers were

added at certain intervals, and the intervening spaces further protected by a roof. (See pl. VI. 6.) The labor of fortifying a camp was prodigious; the ease and quickness with which the work was done are a testimony to the endurance of the Roman soldiers. The system was in every way productive of the best results. It lessened greatly the chances of successful night attacks by the enemy; and it made the army more independent, ready to stand wholly on the defensive if need be. Modern generals are returning in this respect to the Roman tactics, and while in the enemy's country they rarely pass a night without throwing up breastworks and making use of whatever means of fortifying may be at hand. In our recent War for the Union not infrequently barrels or hogsheads filled with earth took the place of the Roman rampart.

The camp had four gates (see pl. IV. 10). That in the direction of the advance, toward the enemy, was called the porta praetoria; the one opposite to this, at the rear, porta decumana; those on the right and left side respectively, as one faced the front, porta principalis dextra and porta principalis sinistra. The last two were connected by the chief street (via principalis), from the middle point of which another street (via praetoria) ran to the porta praetoria. Parallel with the via principalis on the side towards the rear ran another important street, the via quintana. In the middle of the camp a large oblong space was set off for the general's tent, the headquarters (praetorium). Behind this was the quaestor's place (quaestorium). Just inside the porta decumana were the booths of the traders. Inside the rampart, between it and the tents, a vacant space two hundred feet wide was left for wagons and animals. The remaining room in the inclosure was systematically divided, so that every maniple knew its place and could find its quarters at once. The tents were of leather, of the shape of huts (see pl. V. 3). Each was calculated to hold ten men; but a centurion seems generally to have had one to himself. In a hostile region a strong guard was always kept before the gates; and the entrances were made more easily defensible by a winding

approach. The night, from sunset to sunrise, was divided into four watches (vigilia), called prima nox, nox concubia (ending at midnight), nox media, and gallicinium. The password of the sentinels, different each night, was written on slips of wood, given by the commander to the military tribunes, and passed by these to the men on duty.

The winter quarters (hiberna, or castra hiberna) were made more comfortable than the ordinary encampments, by the substitution of rude huts for tents. Many Roman camps became the nucleus of permanent settlements, which exist still in cities of to-day. In several towns which originated thus the plan of the Roman camp can be clearly seen in the arrangement of streets and the surrounding wall. The most marked instance of this is in the city of Chester, England, the name of which also is derived from castra (so too Rochester, from Rodolphi castra, "Rudolph's Camp," and all names of cities ending in -chester; compare Lincoln, from Lindi colonia). An idea of the size of a Roman camp may be gained from the fact that Chester contains about thirty-five thousand inhabitants, most of whom live within the limits of the wall that replaced the ancient rampart. The four gates remain, doubtless, in the places designated by the Roman surveyors. The two main streets were levelled by the Romans, and where they cross at right angles the rock was cut down four to ten feet. Many relics of antiquity have been dug up in and about the town.

#### vi. THE ARMY IN BATTLE ARRAY.

The usual battle order of the legion-soldiers was a threefold line (acies triplex) made by arranging the maniples in three rows or ranks. Between the maniples of each row there was left space about equal in width to the face of the maniple; and the maniples of each row stood opposite the vacant spaces of the other row nearest to it, like the squares on a checker-board (see pl. V. 4). If the front rank was hard pressed, either it retreated into the spaces of the second, or the maniples of the

second advanced into the spaces of the first and bore the brunt. The third rank took up its position a little farther behind the second than the second behind the first, so that it could be readily ordered to any point where help might be most needed. The soldiers of this rank waited on one knee with their shields in front of them until bidden by the commander to rise (consurgite, triarii!) and charge. If the enemy threatened from different quarters at the same time, the form of the front was Thus at times the line of batvaried to suit the circumstances. tle presented the shape of a hollow square, a circle, a half moon, etc. The place of the light-armed troops and cavalry was on the wings; that is, on the right and the left of the front presented by the legion-soldiers. They opened the engagement by skirmishing, prevented flank movements of the enemy, drew on themselves the brunt of the attack if the legions wished to take another position, and were employed in various other ways as occasion demanded. The cavalry in particular followed up the victory.

# vii. Operations against Fortified Places.

The taking of walled towns was accomplished either by sudden storming without long preparation (oppugnatio repentina), or by regular siege (obsidio, or obsessio). The former was not attempted unless there was good prospect of success. In such cases the forces rushed forward, tried to batter down the gates, fill up the moat (fossas complere), mount the walls with ladders (scalae),—in short, endeavored in every way to get into the place. The siege was a work of months. It aimed to hedge in the enemy and bring him to terms through starvation, or to destroy his defences or make them useless by means of counterworks. After the enemy had been so weakened that an attack would probably reduce him, and after the preparations were completed, a final assault was made.

The siege was begun by extending a line of works (circumvallatio), in case the nature of the site allowed, entirely around the place to be reduced. Then a high and wide mound

of earth and timber (agger) was begun just outside the reach of the enemy's weapons, and gradually prolonged directly toward the city wall, and raised until the top was on a level with this, or even higher. In the agger there were passage-ways through which the materials for the structure could be safely carried. The workmen at the front were protected by movable breastworks (plutei; see pl. VI. 4, 5), or by sheds resting on wheels (vineae; see plate VI. 9), made of timber or of raw-hides stretched over thick wickerwork. Rows of vineae were placed along the sides of the agger to afford passage-ways to the front (see pl. VI. 2). High movable towers (turres ambulatoriae) were filled with soldiers and brought up near the walls (see pl. VI. 7; pl. I). In the lowest storey of the movable tower, or under a separate roof, was the battering ram (aries), an enormous beam with a metallic head swung against the walls with terrific force (see pl. V. 1). There were also several kinds of machines (tormenta) for hurling great missiles against the wall or over into the city. Of these the most important were: a. the catapult (catapulta; see pl. VI. 8) for shooting immense arrows; b. the ballista (ballista; see pl. V. 8), which was constructed on the same principle as the catapult, but cast stones instead of arrows; its missiles often weighed a hundred pounds or more, and could be thrown any distance up to half a mile; c. the wild ass (onager; see pl. V. 7) which hurled stones and masses often to immense distances.

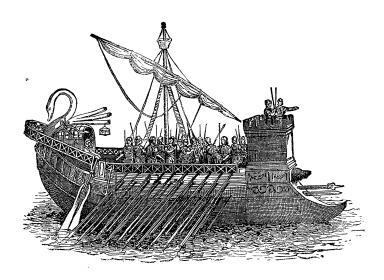
The other operations of the siege varied according to circumstances. Where the ground allowed, the walls were undermined and tunnels run under the town. Meanwhile, of course, the besieged were not idle. Mines they met by counter-mines. With great hooks they tried to catch the head of the battering ram and hold it, or let down masses of wood or wickerwork along the side of the wall to deaden the force of the blow. By frequent sallies (eruptiones) they endeavored to destroy the works of the besiegers, drove the workmen from their posts, hurled fire-brands into the sheds, towers, and even into the agger. Sometimes the work of weeks or months was thus in a short time destroyed.

Owing to the amount of wood used the danger from fire was ever great. Not infrequently even parts of the agger were burned. When a breach had been made in the wall, or a gate battered down, an attack was begun on all sides where it was thought possible to force an entrance. Effort was made to connect the agger or towers with the top of the wall by means of planks and beams thrown across (see pl. I). Whole maniples, by holding their oblong shields close together above their heads, formed a testudo, under cover of which they marched up to the walls and tried to scale them, or entered the breach (see pl. V. 6). The shields were so firmly held that a second detachment sometimes mounted over the heads of the first, and in a few instances even war-chariots were driven over the testudo. The name testudo was also employed to designate a peculiar form of the vinea used by the besiegers (see pl. V. 10). So carefully planned were their works, so powerful their military engines, and so irresistible their onset, that the Romans rarely failed in reducing a city which they had determined to take.

### viii. THE ROMAN WAR-SHIPS.

The war-ships (naves longae) of Caesar's time rarely had more than a single sail, and were propelled mainly by means of oars. There were usually three rows or banks of oars one above the other (triremes); but we read of vessels with one, two, four, and even five banks of oars. The rowers kept time to the sound of a horn or click of a hammer. The rudder (gubernaculum) was not like those of to-day, but consisted of a wide blade like a large paddle thrust down into the sea on one or both sides of the stern. The anchor was much like those of our time. At the prow, just above the water, was the ship's beak (rostra), consisting of one or more sharp metal-pointed beams thrust out some distance, the aim of which was to pierce the side of the enemy's vessel. On the fore part of the ship there were usually a tower from which missiles could be hurled over into a vessel near at hand, a lot of grappling hooks by which the opposing

ship might be seized, and a movable bridge that could be thrown across in boarding. The stern was often ornamented with a swan's head and other devices. The ships had particular names, as Aquila, Apollo, Spes, and the like. The flag was square or oblong (vexillum); that of the admiral's vessel was distinguished by a purple color. The size of the war-ships varied greatly; the average length of the triremes was perhaps a hundred and fifty feet, - breadth, twenty feet. Ships built for quick movement, for inspecting the enemy's strongholds and harbors, and similar undertakings (naves actuariae), were smaller and lighter. The despatch vessels (naves tabellariae) were very narrow and carried many sails, being provided generally with but one bank of oars. The Roman naval tactics consisted mainly in either propelling a vessel with great force against a rival and crushing the side, or in catching hold of the hostile craft with hooks, pulling alongside, springing over on it, and settling the conflict with a hand-to-hand fight. The admiral was called praefectus classis.



# III. THE THEATRE OF THE GALLIC WAR.

#### i. GAUL.

# 1. The Land and the Peoples of Gaul.

The word Gallia was used by the Romans in three different ways. a. In its broadest sense it included Gallia Cisalpīna, north Italy, and Gallia Transalpīna, a vast region which comprised all of France, the greater part of Switzerland, and the western portion of Germany, with Holland and Belgium. b. In a narrower sense Gallia embraced only Gallia Transalpina; with this meaning we use the word "Gaul." c. In its most restricted use Gallia was applied to the land of the Galli, the middle part of Gaul. In Caesar, Gallia alone usually refers to Gallia Transalpina, "Gaul." According to him it falls into three parts: a. The land of the Belgae, in the northeast, between the Seine, the Marne, and the Rhine. b. The land of the Celtae, or Galli, in the central part between the Seine, the Marne, and the Garonne. c. The land of the Aquitani, in the south, between the Garonne and the Pyrenees. these divisions, however, properly belonging to Gaul, but before Caesar's time already subject to the Romans, was the Province (provincia) lying along the southeast coast, and extending for some distance back into the interior. (See map).

The chief mountains of Gaul were: a. Alpes, the Alps, of which the western and southern part (the French and the Swiss Alps) were known to Caesar. b. Mons Cevenna, the Cévennes, west of the Rhone. c. Montes Pyrenaei, the Pyrenees, on the border towards Spain (Hispania). d. Mons Iura, the Jura, between the headwaters of the Rhone and the Rhine. e. Mons Vosegus, the Vosges, north of the Jura, and west of the Rhine. f. Mons (and Silva) Arduenna, Ardennes, on both sides of the Meuse.

The most important rivers of Gaul were: a. Rhodănus, the Rhone, which flows through the Lake of Geneva (Lacus Lemannus), and empties into the Mediterranean near Marseilles (Massilia): tributaries, Arar, Saône; and Isăra, Isère. b. Garumna, Garonne, on which was situated the city Tolosa, Toulouse. c. Liger, Loire, with the town Cenăbum (Orléans). d. Sequăna, Seine, on which was Lutetia Parisiorum, Paris; tributary, Matrona, Marne. e. Scaldis, Schelde. f. Mosa, Meuse, or Maas; tributary, Sabis, Sambre. g. Rhenus, Rhine; tributary, Mosella, Mosel.

In Caesar's time all Gaul except the Province was occupied by tribes more or less barbarous, which were divided into three great groups. The most powerful were,—

- (1). In the land of the Belgae: a. The Trevěri, along the Mosel. b. The Remi, between the Meuse and the Seine (hence the name of the city Rheims). c. The Bellováci, north of the Seine (Beauvais). d. The Ambiāni, north of the Bellováci (Amiens). c. The Nervii, along the Schelde. f. The Aduatúci, along the Sambre; these were of German origin. g. The Eburones, along the Meuse. h. The Morĭni, in the neighborhood of Calais. i. The Menapii, on the plain between the lower part of the Meuse and the Schelde.
- (2). In the land of the Celtae, or Galli: α. The Helvetii, in Switzerland. b. The Sequăni, along the Arar; chief city, Vesontio, to-day Besançon. c. The Aedui, between the Saône and the Loire; chief city, Bibracte, Mont Beuvray. d. The Senŏnes, about the upper part of the Seine; city, Agedincum. e. The Carnūtes, on both sides of the Loire; city, Cenăbum, Orléans. f. The Arverni (compare the modern name Auvergne), in and about the Cévennes Mountains; city, Gergovia. g. The Biturĭges, in the most central part of Gaul; city, Avarĭcum, Bourges. h. The Lingŏnes, about the sources of the Meuse and the Seine; city, Alesia, Alise. i. The Parisii, in the region of Paris. j. The Veněti, along the west coast, in Brittany.
- (3). In the land of the Aquitani there were many small tribes, of which only a few are worthy of special mention:

a. The Sontiātes, along the Garonne.
b. The Vocates, northwest of the Sontiates.
c. The Tarusates, southwest of the Sontiates.
d. The Tarbelli, along the west coast near the Pyrenees.

The Belgae and the Celtae belonged mainly to the great Keltic (or Celtic) stock of peoples, which is a branch of the Indo-European family. Hence these had at least a remote kinship with the Greeks and the Romans. The Aquitanian tribes were of different origin, and connected with the Iberians of Spain. Their descendants still survive in the Basques of the Pyrenees.

These many peoples, or states (civitates), of Gaul were constantly at war with one another, the stronger striving to extend their sway, the weaker to regain or maintain their independence. In each tribe usually there were two factions, each contending for the mastery. Changes of rulers were very frequent. The power was everywhere in the hands of the nobles and the Druid priests. The common folk were in a condition little better than slavery. This unsettled state of society enabled Caesar not infrequently to further his own ends, by setting one people or one party against the other.

The Druids had great influence. Above the individual, above the state, as endowed with authority from the unseen world they awed into submission the fierce spirit of a people that acknowledged no other control. They alone had knowledge; from generation to generation they handed down by word of mouth a body of doctrines about the universe and life. Believing in the transmigration of souls they exhorted men not to fear death, since immortality must follow. To the Druids was entrusted the administration of justice. Whoso obeyed not their decrees was ever after treated as an outcast. Once a year Druids from all parts of Gaul met in the land of the Carnutes, and settled difficulties between tribes as well as individuals. In Caesar's time the great stronghold of Druidism, however, was not Gaul but Britain. The Gauls were then degenerating. The growth of towns and the increase of wealth had made the distinctions of classes very marked, while the decline of society was hastened

by corrupting contact with the Greeks. The masses were in absolute dependence upon the nobles, in a kind of feudal relation.

# 2. History of Gaul.

From a very early period Gauls in great numbers had occasionally invaded or threatened Italy and the countries of the East. Rome itself was sacked by a horde of them under Brennus in B.C. 300; and for nearly three hundred years after that, only the most strenuous efforts kept them at bay. In the third century before Christ a great multitude of Gauls pressed on to Asia Minor and settled there; their descendants were the Galatians, to whom Paul wrote. Yet about 600 B.C. a company of Phocaean Greeks from Asia Minor founded Massilia, and held in subjection a considerable district around it. In 122 B.c. the Romans secured a firm foothold in Gaul by founding the colony of Aquae Sextiae, now Aix, near the south coast. Soon Marseilles, by a nominal alliance, became tributary to Rome, and the surrounding region was organized into a province. now became the seat of war with invading Gauls and Teutons, till the great victory won by Marius at Aix B.C. 102.

The first opportunity Caesar had for interfering in the affairs of Gaul outside the Province was afforded by the attempt of the Helvetii to leave their country and seek a new home to the westward. Soon after, he was asked by several tribes to aid them against the German king Ariovistus. Thus becoming involved in the matters of Gaul, on one pretext or another he pushed his claims and conquests until all the land was in his power. The most formidable foes he met were, besides Ariovistus, the Aeduan Dumnŏrix; Indutiomărus, the leader of the Trevĕri; Ambiŏrix, prince of the Eburones; and greatest of all, Vercingetŏrix.

After the conquest many Roman colonies were settled in Gaul. The country was rapidly Romanized. It was divided by Augustus into four provinces: *a. Narbonensis*, which in territory was the same as the former Provincia; capital, *Narbo*, now

Narbonne. b. Lugdunensis, which included most of the central and the eastern parts of Gaul; capital, Lugdūnum, now Lyons. c. Aquitania, covering not merely the old land of the Aquitani, but the country north as far as the Loire. d. Belgica, comprising the rest of Gaul not belonging to the other provinces. The original speech was replaced by the Latin. Roman institutions became everywhere established. The remains of the Roman structures, — amphitheatres, theatres, aqueducts, and the like, — in South France particularly, are most imposing. In Paris one is still shown the now crumbling arches of a Roman bath.

With the downfall of the Roman Empire in the fifth century of our era Gaul was overrun by German tribes, who settled in it as conquerors, not destroying the inhabitants, but holding these as a subject population. The Franks were among the most powerful of the invaders, and gave their name, first, to a district in the northern part; later, to the whole country. From the imposing of new authorities upon an old firmly-established political and social organization arose the Feudal system, with its many gradations of rank and subdivisions of territory, with its restless, turbulent spirit and tendencies to disorder. In the ninth century Gaul formed a part of the empire of Karl the Great (Charlemagne). When this fell to pieces the land was rent with turmoils for several hundred years, until out of the various discordant elements the French monarchy was developed. became a republic in the latter part of the last century, and has vacillated between monarchy and democracy ever since.

But amid all these changes, from the Roman period till now, there has been a continuity of life, language, and institutions. The Latin gradually became transformed into the French. The origin of many a local custom to-day is to be sought in remote antiquity. Many a town of France has in its municipal organization peculiarities that point back to the laws of the Roman Empire. It is said that not a few of the territorial divisions of the French Republic are on the old boundary lines of Gallic tribes; that down to 1789, indeed, the local limits of Gaul remained substantially unchanged. Physically, politically, and

socially the French show the traits, tendencies, and spirit of their Gallic ancestors. Other race elements have been infused, yet the Gauls form the basis of the French nation. On the heights of Alise (ancient *Alesia*), where the bravest and noblest of the Gauls made the last struggle for freedom, there is a monument, the inscription on which translated reads, "Napoleon III., Emperor of the French, to the memory of Vercingetorix." This is not misplaced sentiment; the French have still the same love of glory and love of freedom that urged on Vercingetorix.

### ii. GERMANY.

Before Caesar's time Germany (Germania) was to the Romans an unknown land. Caesar himself has left but little information about it. According to him its boundaries were the Rhine and the Danube. Through the whole country stretched a vast forest (Silva Hercynia), sixty days' journey long and nine days' journey wide. Of the peoples the most important were: a. The Suebi, Swabians, in the middle of the country, powerful and much feared on all sides. b. The Ubii, dwelling next to the Rhine, friendly to Caesar. c. The Sugambri, north of the Ubii. d. The Usipetes, north of the Sugambri. e. The Cherusci, between the Elbe and the Weser. The Sugambri and the Usipetes, being driven out by the Suebi, came over into Gaul, whence they were forced back by Caesar. victories over the German tribes were gained under Augustus and others of the early Emperors, but the country was never subdued by the Romans, except the borders along the Rhine and the Danube. There are remains of an old Roman tower and aqueduct at Mainz (French, Mayence). A Roman colony was founded where Vienna now stands, and Trajan built a road along the Danube.

#### iii. BRITAIN.

THE British Isles (Lat. *Britannia*, *Britannicae Insulae*) were early known to the Greeks through the Phoenician traders, but Caesar is the first ancient writer who gives any account of them

from personal observation. In neither of his expeditions to England did he penetrate far into the country, and not a few of the statements he makes about it are inaccurate or erroneous. He thought the land stretched much farther than it does to the southwest, and lay towards Spain. The principal tribe in his time was the Trinobantes, who lived north of the Thames (Tamesis). Of Ireland he knew nothing further than the name (Hibernia), and that it was about half the size of Britain proper. England was thoroughly subdued by the Romans in the latter part of the first century A.D. Many traces of Roman towns, roads, and other evidences of occupation are still to be seen. From the Latin strata our word "street" directly comes. In the fifth century England was overrun by Low-German tribes, among them the Angles and Saxons, who form the basis of the English people.

# IV. CONTENTS OF THE 'DE BELLO GALLICO.'

The seven books of the Gallic War cover each the history of a year; the eighth book, added by Hirtius, extends over two years. Thus:—

Воок	B.C.	A.U.C.	Consuls.
I.	58	<b>6</b> 96	L. Calpurnius Piso, A. Gabinius.
II.	57	697	P. Cornelius Lentulus Spinther, Q. Caecilius Metellus Nepos.
III.	<b>5</b> 6	698	Cn. Cornelius Lentulus Marcellinus, L. Marcius Philippus.
IV.	55	699	Cn. Pompeius Magnus, M. Licinius Crassus.
V.	54	700	L. Domitius Ahenobarbus, Appius Claudius Pulcher.
VI.	53	701	Cn. Domitius Calvinus, M. Valerius Messala.
VII.	52	702	Cn. Pompeius Magnus, Q. Metellus Scipio.
VIII.	51-50	703-4	Ser. Sulpicius Rufus, M. Claudius Marcellus. L. Aemilius Paullus, C. Claudius Marcellus.

Only the general contents of the separate books are here given. For fuller outline consult the running summary in the text.

# Воок І. 58 в.с.

Introductory: Gaul in Caesar's time. Chapter 1.

- i. The War with the Helvetii. 2-29.
- ii. The War with Ariovistus. 30-54.

# Воок II. 57 в.с.

- i. Conspiracy of the Belgae. The War. 1-33.
- ii. Expedition of P. Crassus to the Western Coast 34.
- iii. Events after the Reduction of the Belgae. 35

# Воок III. 56 в.с.

- i. The War in the Alps. '1-6.
- ii. The War with the Veněti. 7-16.
- iii. The War with the Venelli. 17-19.
- iv. The Operations of P. Crassus in Aquitania. 20-27.
- v. The Expedition of Caesar against the Morini and the Menapii. 28-29.

## Воок IV. 55 в.с.

- i. The War with the Usipetes and the Tencteri. I-I5.
- ii. Caesar's Expedition against the Germans. 16-19.
- iii. Caesar's first crossing over to Britain. 20-36.
- iv. The Uprising of the Morĭni and Menapii. 37-38.

# Воок V. 54 в.с.

- i. Caesar's Second Expedition to Britain. 1-23.
- ii. The War with Ambiŏrix. 24-54.
- iii. The Revolt of the Treveri. 55-58.

# Воок VI. 53 в.с.

- i. General Uprising in Gaul. 1-8.
- ii. Expedition against the Suebi. 9-28.
- iii. Punishment of Ambiŏrix and the Eburones. 29-44.

# BOOK VII. 52 B.C.

The League of all Gaul, under the leadership of Vercingetorix. against Caesar; the final supremacy of Caesar. 1–90.





That Julius Caesar was a famous man; With what his valour did enrich his wit, His wit set down to make his valour live: Death makes no conquest of this conqueror; For now he lives in fame, though not in life.

RICHARD III., act iii. sc. 1.

suae civitatis imperium obtenturus esset; non esse dubium, quin totius Galliae plurimum Helvetii possent; se suis copiis suoque exercitu illis regna conciliaturum confirmat. Hac oratione adducti inter se fidem et iusiurandum dant, et regno occupato per tres potentissimos ac firmissimos populos totius 5 Galliae sese potiri posse sperant.

IV. Ea res est Helvetiis per indicium enuntiata. Moribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinclis causam dicere coëgerunt. Damnatum poenam sequi oportebat, ut igni cremaretur. Die constituta causae dictionis Orgetorix ad iudicium omnem 10 suam familiam, ad hominum milia decem, undique coëgit, et omnes clientes obaeratosque suos, quorum magnum numerum habebat, eodem conduxit; per eos, ne causam diceret, se eripuit. Cum civitas ob eam rem incitata armis ius suum exsequi conaretur, multitudinemque hominum ex agris magistratus cogerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspicio, ut Helvetii arbitrantur, quin ipse sibi mortem consciverit.

# The Helvetii get ready; they plan to go through the Province.

V. Post eius mortem nihilo minus Helvetii id, quod constituerant, facere conantur, ut e finibus suis exeant. Ubi iam se ad eam rem paratos esse arbitrati sunt, oppida sua omnia, 20 numero ad duodecim, vicos ad quadringentos, reliqua privata aedificia incendunt, frumentum omne, praeterquam quod secum portaturi erant, comburunt, ut domum reditionis spe sublata paratiores ad omnia pericula subeunda essent; trium mensum molita cibaria sibi quemque domo efferre iubent. 25 Persuadent Rauricis et Tulingis et Latobrigis finitimis, uti ecdem usi consilio oppidis suis vicisque exustis una cum eis proficiscantur; Boiosque, qui trans Rhenum incoluerant et in agrum Noricum transierant Noreiamque oppugnarant, receptos ad se socios sibi adsciscunt.

VI. Erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo exire possent: unum per Sequanos, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iuram et flumen Rhodanum, vix qua singuli carri ducerentur; mons autem altissimus impendebat, ut facile perpauci prohibere possent; alterum per provinciam nostram, 35 multo facilius atque expeditius, propterca quod inter fines

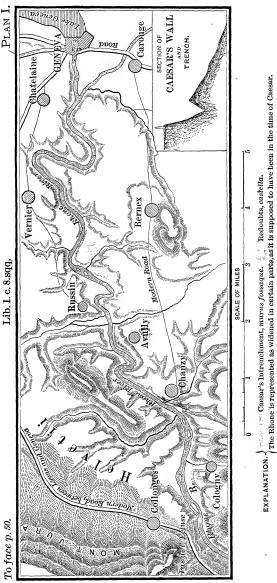
Helvetiorum et Allobrŏgum, qui nuper pacati erant, Rhodanus fluit isque nonnullis locis vado transitur. Extremum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvetiorum finibus Genāva. Ex eo oppido pons ad Helvetios pertinet. Allobrogibus sese vel persuasuros, quod nondum bono animo in populum Romanum viderentur, existimabant, vel vi coacturos, ut per suos fines eos ire paterentur. Omnibus rebus ad profectionem comparatis diem dicunt, qua die ad ripam Rhodani omnes conveniant. Is dies erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr. 10 L. Pisone, A. Gabinio consulibus.

# Caesar hastens to Geneva; he keeps the Helvetii out of the Province.

VII. Caesari cum id nuntiatum esset, eos per provinciam nostram iter facere conari, maturat ab urbe proficisci et, quam maximis potest itineribus, in Galliam ulteriorem contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. Provinciae toti quam maximum po-15 test militum numerum imperat (erat omnino in Gallia ulteriore legio una), pontem, qui erat ad Genavam, iubet rescindi. Ubi de eius adventu Helvetii certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt nobilissimos civitatis, cuius legationis Nammeius et Verucloetius principem locum obtinebant, qui dicerent, sibi 20 esse in animo sine ullo maleficio iter per provinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter haberent nullum; rogare, ut eius voluntate id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memoria tenebat, L. Cassium consulem occisum exercitumque eius ab Helvetiis pulsum et sub iugum missum, concedendum non 25 putabat; neque homines inimico animo, data facultate per provinciam itineris faciundi, temperaturos ab iniuria et maleficio existimabat. Tamen, ut spatium intercedere posset, dum milites, quos imperaverat, convenirent, legatis respondit, diem se ad deliberandum sumpturum; si quid vellent, ad Id. 30 April. reverterentur.

VIII. Interea ea legione, quam secum habebat, militibusque, qui ex provincia convenerant, a lacu Lemanno, qui in flumen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iuram, qui fines Sequanorum ab Helvetiis dividit, milia passuum decem novem 35 murum in altitudinem pedum sedecim fossamque perducit.

# CAESAR'S LINE OF WORKS ALONG THE RHONE FROM GENEVA TO PAS DE L'ÉCLUSE.





Eo opere perfecto praesidia disponit, castella communit, quo facilius, si se invito transire conarentur, prohibere possit. Ubi ea dies, quam constituerat cum legatis, venit, et legati ad eum reverterunt, negat, se more et exemplo populi Romani posse iter ulli per provinciam dare; et, si vim facere 5 conentur, prohibiturum ostendit. Helvetii, ea spe deiecti, navibus iunctis ratibusque compluribus factis, alii vadis Rhodani, qua minima altitudo fluminis erat, nonnumquam interdiu, saepius noctu, si perrumpere possent, conati, operis munitione et militum concursu et telis repulsi hoc conatu 10 destiterunt.

### They get leave to go through the land of the Sequani.

IX. Relinquebatur una per Sequanos via, qua Sequanis invitis propter angustias ire non poterant. His cum sua sponte persuadere non possent, legatos ad Dumnorigem Aeduum mittunt, ut eo deprecatore a Sequanis impetrarent. 15 Dumnorix gratia et largitione apud Sequanos plurimum poterat, et Helvetiis erat amicus, quod ex ea civitate Orgetorigis filiam in matrimonium duxerat, et cupiditate regni adductus novis rebus studebat, et quam plurimas civitates suo beneficio habere obstrictas volebat. Itaque rem suscipit, et a Sequanis 20 impetrat, ut per fines suos Helvetios ire patiantur, obsidesque uti inter sese dent perficit: Sequani, ne itinere Helvetios prohibeant; Helvetii, ut sine maleficio et iniuria transeant.

### Caesar fetches five legions from Italy; the Aedui and others entreat his aid against the Helvetii.

X. Caesari renuntiatur, Helvetiis esse in animo per agrum Sequanorum et Aeduorum iter in Santŏnum fines facere, qui 25 non longe a Tolosatium finibus absunt, quae civitas est in provincia. Id si fieret, intellegebat, magno cum periculo provinciae futurum, ut homines bellicosos, populi Romani inimicos, locis patentibus maximeque frumentariis finitimos haberet. Ob eas causas ei munitioni, quam fecerat, T. Labie- 30 num legatum praefecit; ipse in Italiam magnis itineribus contendit duasque ibi legiones conscribit, et tres, quae circum Aquileiam hiemabant, ex hibernis educit, et qua proximum

iter in ulteriorem Galliam per Alpes erat, cum his quinque legionibus ire contendit. Ibi Ceutrōnes et Graiocĕli et Caturīges locis superioribus occupatis itinere exercitum prohibere conantur. Compluribus his proeliis pulsis, ab Ocĕlo, quod est citerioris provinciae extremum, in fines Vocontiorum ulterioris provinciae die septimo pervenit; inde in Allobrŏgum fines, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvos exercitum ducit. Hi sunt extra provinciam trans Rhodanum primi.

XI. Helvetii iam per angustias et fines Sequanorum suas 10 copias traduxerant, et in Aeduorum fines pervenerant eorumque agros populabantur. Aedui, cum se suaque ab eis defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt rogatum auxilium: Ita se omni tempore de populo Romano meritos esse, ut paene in conspectu exercitus nostri agri vastari, liberi 15 eorum in servitutem abduci, oppida expugnari non debuerint. Eodem tempore Aedui Ambarri, necessarii et consanguinei Aeduorum, Caesarem certiorem faciunt, sese depopulatis agris non facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibere. Item Allobroges, qui trans Rhodanum vicos possessiones-20 que habebant, fuga se ad Caesarem recipiunt, et demonstrant, sibi praeter agri solum nihil esse reliqui. Quibus rebus adductus Caesar non exspectandum sibi statuit, dum omnibus fortunis sociorum consumptis in Santonos Helvetii pervenirent.

### Caesar cuts to pieces one division of the Helvetii by the Arar. The rest send deputies to treat with him.

25 XII. Flumen est Arar, quod per fines Aeduorum et Sequanorum in Rhodanum influit, incredibili lenitate, ita ut oculis, in utram partem fluat, iudicari non possit. Id Helvetii ratibus ac lintribus iunctis transibant. Ubi per exploratores Caesar certior factus est, tres iam partes copiarum Helvetios 30 id flumen traduxisse, quartam fere partem citra flumen Arărim reliquam esse, de tertia vigilia cum legionibus tribus e castris profectus ad eam partem pervenit, quae nondum flumen transierat. Eos impeditos et inopinantes aggressus magnam partem eorum concidit; reliqui sese fugae manda 35 runt atque in proximas silvas abdiderunt. Is pagus appella-

batur Tigurīnus: nam omnis civitas Helvetia in quattuor pagos divisa est. Hic pagus unus, cum domo exisset patrum nostrorum memoria, L. Cassium consulem interfecerat et eius exercitum sub iugum miserat. Ita sive casu sive consilio deorum immortalium, quae pars civitatis Helvetiae insignem 5 calamitatem populo Romano intulerat, ea princeps poenas persolvit. Qua in re Caesar non solum publicas, sed etiam privatas iniurias ultus est, quod eius soceri L. Pisonis avum, L. Pisonem legatum, Tigurini eodem proelio, quo Cassium, interfecerant.

XIII. Hoc proelio facto reliquas copias Helvetiorum ut consequi posset, pontem in Arare faciendum curat, atque ita exercitum traducit. Helvetii repentino eius adventu commoti, cum id, quod ipsi diebus xx aegerrime confecerant, ut flumen transirent, illum uno die fecisse intellegerent, legatos 15 ad eum mittunt; cuius legationis Divico princeps fuit, qui bello Cassiano dux Helvetiorum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare egit: Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret, in eam partem ituros atque ibi futuros Helvetios, ubi eos Caesar constituisset atque esse voluisset; sin bello persequi perseve- 20 raret, reminisceretur et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improviso unum pagum adortus esset, cum ei, qui flumen transissent, suis auxilium ferre non possent, ne ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtuti tribueret aut ipsos despiceret; se ita a patribus maioribusque 25 suis didicisse, ut magis virtute quam dolo contenderent aut insidiis niterentur. Quare ne committeret, ut is locus, ubi constitissent, ex calamitate populi Romani et internicione exercitus nomen caperet aut memoriam proderet.

They reject Caesar's conditions, and march on; Caesar follows.

XIV. His Caesar ita respondit: Eo sibi minus dubitationis 30 dari, quod eas res, quas legati Helvetii commemorassent, memoria teneret, atque eo gravius ferre, quo minus merito populi Romani accidissent; qui si alicuius iniuriae sibi conscius fuisset, non fuisse difficile cavere; sed eo deceptum, quod neque commissum a se intellegeret, quare timeret, 35 neque sine causa timendum putaret. Quod si veteris contu-

meliae oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium iniuriarum, quod eo invito iter per provinciam per vim temptassent, quod Aeduos, quod Ambarros, quod Allobrogas vexassent, memoriam deponere posse? Quod sua victoria tam insolenter 5 gloriarentur, quodque tam diu se impune iniurias tulisse admirarentur, eodem pertinere. Consuesse enim deos immortales, quo gravius homines ex commutatione rerum doleant, quos pro scelere eorum ulcisci velint, his secundiores interdum res et diuturniorem impunitatem concedere. Cum ea 10 ita sint, tamen, si obsides ab eis sibi dentur, uti ea, quae polliceantur, facturos intellegat, et si Aeduis de iniuriis, quas ipsis sociisque eorum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sese cum eis pacem esse facturum. Divico respondit: Ita Helvetios a maioribus suis institutos esse, uti obsides accipere, 15 non dare, consuerint: eius rei populum Romanum esse testem. Hoc responso dato discessit.

XV. Postero die castra ex eo loco movent. Idem facit Caesar equitatumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omni provincia et Aeduis atque eorum sociis coactum 20 habebat, praemittit, qui videant, quas in partes hostes iter faciant. Qui cupidius novissimum agmen insecuti alieno loco cum equitatu Helvetiorum proelium committunt; et pauci de nostris cadunt. Quo proelio sublati Helvetii, quod quingentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum propule-25 rant, audacius subsistere nonnumquam et novissimo agmine proelio nostros lacessere coeperunt. Caesar suos a proelio continebat, ac satis habebat in praesentia hostem rapinis, pabulationibus populationibusque prohibere. Ita dies circiter quindecim iter fecerunt, uti inter novissimum hostium agmen 30 et nostrum primum non amplius quinis aut senis milibus passuum interesset.

### The Aedui neglect to bring grain; Caesar learns of disloyalty.

XVI. Interim cotidie Caesar Aeduos frumentum, quod essent publice polliciti, flagitare. Nam propter frigora, quod Gallia sub septentrionibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, non 35 modo frumenta in agris matura non erant, sed ne pabuli quidem satis magna copia suppetebat; eo autem frumento, quod

flumine Arare navibus subvexerat, propterea minus uti poterat, quod iter ab Arare Helvetii averterant, a quibus discedere nolebat. Diem ex die ducere Aedui: conferri, comportari, adesse dicere. Ubi se diutius duci intellexit et diem instare, quo die frumentum militibus metiri oporteret, convocatis 5 corum principibus, quorum magnam copiam in castris habebat, in his Divitiăco et Lisco, qui summo magistratui praeerat, quem 'vergobretum' appellant Aedui, qui creatur annuus et vitae necisque in suos habet potestatem, graviter eos accusat, quod, cum neque emi neque ex agris sumi posset, tam re necessario tempore, tam propinquis hostibus, ab eis non sublevetur, praesertim cum magna ex parte eorum precibus adductus bellum susceperit; multo etiam gravius, quod sit destitutus, queritur.

XVII. Tum demum Liscus oratione Caesaris adductus, 15 quod antea tacuerat, proponit: Esse nonnullos, quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valeat, qui privatim plus possint quam ipsi magistratus. Hos seditiosa atque improba oratione multitudinem deterrere, ne frumentum conferant, quod praestare debeant; si iam principatum Galliae obtinere 20 non possint, Gallorum quam Romanorum imperia praeferre, neque dubitare quin, si Helvetios superaverint Romani, una cum reliqua Gallia Aeduis libertatem sint erepturi. Ab eisdem nostra consilia, quaeque in castris gerantur, hostibus enuntiari: hos a se coerceri non posse. Quin etiam, 25 quod necessariam rem coactus Caesari enuntiarit, intellegere sese, quanto id cum periculo fecerit, et ob eam causam, quam diu potuerit, tacuisse.

### The treachery of Dumnorix is proved.

XVIII. Caesar hac oratione Lisci Dumnorĭgem, Divitiăci fratrem, designari sentiebat; sed, quod pluribus praesentibus 30 eas res iactari nolebat, celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex solo ea, quae in conventu dixerat. Dicit liberius atque audacius. Eadem secreto ab aliis quaerit; reperit esse vera: Ipsum esse Dumnorigem, summa audacia, magna apud plebem propter liberalitatem gratia, cupidum 35 rerum novarum. Compluris annos portoria reliquaque omnia

Aeduorum vectigalia parvo pretio redempta habere, propterea quod illo licente contra liceri audeat nemo. et suam rem familiarem auxisse et facultates ad largiendum magnas comparasse; magnum numerum equitatus suo sumptu 5 semper alere et circum se habere, neque solum domi, sed etiam apud finitimas civitates largiter posse, atque huius potentiae causa matrem in Biturigibus homini illic nobilissimo ac potentissimo collocasse; ipsum ex Helvetiis uxorem habere, sororem ex matre et propinquas suas nuptum in alias civitates to collocasse. Favere et cupere Helvetiis propter eam affinitatem. odisse etiam suo nomine Caesarem et Romanos, quod eorum adventu potentia eius deminuta et Divitiacus frater in antiquum locum gratiae atque honoris sit restitutus. Si quid accidat Romanis, summam in spem per Helvetios regni obti-15 nendi venire; imperio populi Romani non modo de regno, sed etiam de ea, quam habeat, gratia desperare. Reperiebat etiam in quaerendo Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucis ante diebus esset factum, initium eius fugae factum a Dumnorige atque eius equitibus (nam equitatui, quem auxilio 20 Caesari Aedui miserant, Dumnorix praeerat): eorum fuga reliquum esse equitatum perterritum.

### Caesar consults Divitiacus, for whose sake Dumnoriz is pardoned.

XIX. Quibus rebus cognitis, cum ad has suspiciones certissimae res accederent, quod per fines Sequanorum Helvetios traduxisset, quod obsides inter eos dandos curasset, quod 25 ea omnia non modo iniussu suo et civitatis sed etiam inscientibus ipsis fecisset, quod a magistratu Aeduorum accusaretur, satis esse causae arbitrabatur, quare in eum aut ipse animadverteret, aut civitatem animadvertere iuberet. His omnibus rebus unum repugnabat, quod Divitiaci fratris summum in populum Romanum studium, summam in se voluntatem, egregiam fidem, iustitiam, temperantiam cognoverat: nam, ne eius supplicio Divitiaci animum offenderet, verebatur. Itaque prius, quam quicquam conaretur, Divitiacum ad se vocari iubet et, cotidianis interpretibus remotis, per C. 35 Valerium Procillum, principem Galliae provinciae, familiarem

suum, cui summam omnium rerum fidem habebat, cum eo colloquitur; simul commonefacit, quae ipso praesente in concilio Gallorum de Dumnorige sint dicta, et ostendit, quae separatim quisque de eo apud se dixerit. Petit atque hortatur, ut sine eius offensione animi vel ipse de eo causa 5 cognita statuat vel civitatem statuere iubeat.

XX. Divitiacus multis cum lacrimis Caesarem complexus obsecrare coepit, ne quid gravius in fratrem statueret: Scire se, illa esse vera, nec quemquam ex eo plus quam se doloris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse gratia plurimum domi 10 atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adulescentiam posset, per se crevisset; quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed paene ad perniciem suam utere-Sese tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commoveri. Quod si quid ei a Caesare gravius accidisset, 15 cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum teneret, neminem existimaturum, non sua voluntate factum; qua ex re futurum, uti totius Galliae animi a se averterentur. Haec cum pluribus verbis flens a Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram prendit; consolatus rogat, finem orandi faciat; tanti eius apud se 20 gratiam esse ostendit, uti et reipublicae iniuriam et suum dolorem eius voluntati ac precibus condonet. Dumnorigem ad se vocat, fratrem adhibet; quae in eo reprehendat, ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae civitas queratur, proponit; monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnes suspiciones vitet; prae- 25 terita se Divitiaco fratri condonare dicit. Dumnorigi custodes ponit, ut, quae agat, quibuscum loquatur, scire possit.

### Caesar plans an attack on the Helvetii. He is misled by a false report.

XXI. Eodem die ab exploratoribus certior factus, hostes sub monte consedisse milia passuum ab ipsius castris octo, qualis esset natura montis et qualis in circuitu ascensus, qui 30 cognoscerent, misit. Renuntiatum est, facilem esse. De tertia vigilia Titum Labienum, legatum pro praetore, cum duabus legionibus et eis ducibus, qui iter cognoverant, summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid sui consilii sit, ostendit. Ipse de quarta vigilia eodem itinere, quo hostes 35

ierant, ad eos contendit equitatumque omnem ante se mittit. P. Considius, qui rei militaris peritissimus habebatur et in exercitu L. Sullae et postea in M. Crassi fuerat, cum exploratoribus praemittitur.

5 XXII. Prima luce, cum súmmus mons a Labieno teneretur. ipse ab hostium castris non longius mille et quingentis passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captivis comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labieni cognitus esset, Considius equo admisso ad eum accurrit, dicit, montem, quem a Labieno occupari 10 voluerit, ab hostibus teneri; id se a Gallicis armis atque insignibus cognovisse. Caesar suas copias in proximum collem subducit, aciem instruit. Labienus, ut erat ei praeceptum a Caesare, ne proelium committeret, nisi ipsius copiae prope hostium castra visae essent, ut undique uno tempore in hostes 15 impetus fieret, monte occupato nostros exspectabat proelioque abstinebat. Multo denique die per exploratores Caesar cognovit, et montem a suis teneri et Helvetios castra movisse et Considium timore perterritum, quod non vidisset, pro viso sibi renuntiasse. Eo die, quo consuerat intervallo, hostes 20 sequitur et milia passuum tria ab eorum castris castra ponit.

### Caesar turns to go to Bibracte; the Helvetii follow.

XXIII. Postridie eius diei, quod omnino biduum supererat, cum exercitui frumentum metiri oporteret, et quod a Bibracte, oppido Aeduorum longe maximo et copiosissimo, non amplius milibus passuum xvIII aberat, rei frumentariae prospiziciendum existimavit: iter ab Helvetiis avertit ac Bibracte ire contendit. Ea res per fugitivos L. Aemilii, decurionis equitum Gallorum, hostibus nuntiatur. Helvetii, seu quod timore perterritos Romanos discedere a se existimarent, eo magis, quod pridie superioribus locis occupatis proelium non commissisent, sive eo, quod re frumentaria intercludi posse confiderent, commutato consilio atque itincre converso nostros a novissimo agmine insequi ac lacessere coeperunt.

### Both prepare for battle. There is sharp fighting.

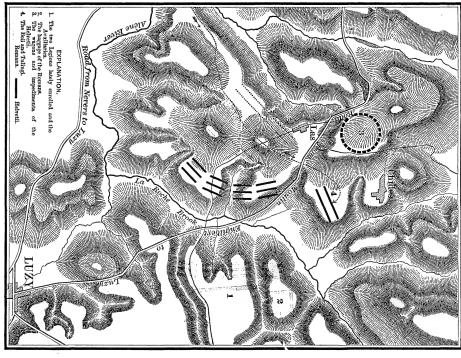
XXIV. Postquam id animum advertit, copias suas Caesar in proximum collem subducit equitatumque, qui sustineret

### BATTLE HH BETWEEN HELVETII. CAESAR

To face p. 58.

Lib. I. c. 24. sqq.

PLAN II



acie reiecto nostro equitatu, phalange facta sub primam nostram aciem successerunt. impedimenta in unum locum contulerunt; ipsi, confertissima rant, muniri iussit. Helvetii cum omnibus suis carris secuti locum conferri, et eum ab his, qui in superiore acie constitemontem hominibus complevit; proxime supra se in summo iugo duas legiones, quas in Gallia citeriore cem aciem instruxit legionum quattuor veteranarum atque hostium impetum, misit. conscripserat, et omnia auxilia collocavit, ac totum Ipse interim in colle medio interea sarcinas in unum 5 tripli-

prima et secunda acies, ut victis ac summotis resisteret, tertia, coeperunt. aggressi circumvenire, et id conspicati Helvetii, qui in monnovissimis suberat circiter mille passuum, eo se recipere coeperunt Tandem vulneribus defessi et pedem referre et, quod mons optarent scutum manu emittere et nudo corpore pugnare. scutis uno ictu pilorum transfixis et colligatis, cum ferrum riore pilis missis facile hostium phalangem perfregerunt. ut venientes sustineret. hominum milibus circiter xv agmen hostium claudebant Capto monte et succedentibus nostris, Boii et Tulingi, qui commode pugnare poterant, multi ut diu iactato brachio praese inflexisset, neque evellere neque sinistra impedita satis magno ad pugnam erat impedimento, quod pluribus disiecta gladiis destrictis in eos impetum fecerunt. ret, cohortatus suos proelium commisit. Milites e loco superemotis equis, ut aequato omnium periculo spem fugae tolle-XXV. Caesar, primum suo, deinde omnium ex conspectu sese receperant, rursus instare et proelium redintegrare praesidio erant, ex itinere Romani conversa signa bipertito intulerunt: nostros latere aperto eorum 5

### The Helvetii are totally defeated. They surrender.

cum ab menta et carros suos se contulerunt. se, ut coeperant, in montem receperunt, alteri ad impedi-Diutius cum sustinere nostrorum impetus non possent; alteri hostem videre nemo potuit. XXVI. Ita ancipiti proelio diu atque acriter pugnatum est. hora septima ad vesperum pugnatum sit, Ad multam noctem etiam ad Nam hoc toto proelio, aversum

25 dine dediticiorum suam fugam aut occultari aut omnino igno-20 Caesar pervenit, obsides, arma, servos, qui ad eos perfugissent, 10 nera militum et propter sepulturam occisorum nostri triduum 5 tum, impedimentis castrisque nostri potiti sunt. Ibi Orgetoras nuntiosque misit, ne eos frumento neve alia re iuvarent: afficerentur, sive spe salutis inducti, quod in tanta multituappellatur, sive timore perterriti, ne armis traditis supplicio suum adventum exspectare iussisset, paruerunt. Eo postquam venissent seque ad pedes proiecissent suppliciterque locuti Ipse triduo intermisso cum omnibus copiis eos sequi coepit. XXVII. Helvetii omnium rerum inopia adducti legatos de qui si iuvissent, se eodem loco, quo Helvetios, habiturum. morati eos sequi non potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas littefines Lingonum die quarto pervenerunt, cum et propter vulnenter ierunt; rigis filia atque unus e filiis captus est. Ex eo proelio circiter subiciebant nostrosque vulnerabant. Diu cum esset pugnaegressi ad Rhenum finesque Germanorum contenderunt missa, circiter hominum milia vı eius pagi, qui Verbigenus poposcit. Dum ea conquiruntur et conferuntur, nocte interflentes pacem petissent, atque eos in eo loco, quo tum essent, deditione ad eum miserunt. Qui cum eum in itinere conhominum milia cxxx superfuerunt eaque tota nocte conticiebant, et nonnulli inter carros rotasque mataras ac tragulas obiecerant et e loco superiore in nostros venientes tela coniimpedimenta pugnatum est, propterea quod pro vallo carros posse existimarent, prima nocte e castris Helvetiorum nullam partem noctis itinere intermisso in

Caesar states the terms of submission. the Helvetii. The number of

30 imperavit; 35 imperavit, ut eis frumenti copiam facerent: ipsos oppida amissis domi nihil erat, quo famem tolerarent, Allobrogibus erant profecti, reverti iussit; et, quod omnibus fructibus omnes obsidibus, armis, perfugis traditis in deditionem achis, uti conquirerent et reducerent, si sibi purgati esse vellent, XXVIII. Quod ubi Caesar resciit, quorum per fines ierant, Helvetios, Tulingos, Latobrigos in fines suos, unde reductos in hostium numero habuit; reliquos

nem atque ipsi erant, receperunt. ut in finibus suis collocarent, concessit; quibus illi agros detransirent et finitimi Galliae provinciae Allobrogibusque essent. 5 serant, vacare, ne propter bonitatem agrorum Germani, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, e suis finibus in Helvetiorum fines ratione fecit, quod noluit, eum locum, unde Helvetii discesvicosque, quos incenderant, restituere iussit. derunt quosque postea in parem iuris libertatisque condicio-Boios, petentibus Aeduis, quod egregia virtute erant cogniti, Id ea maxime

nominatim ratio confecta erat, qui numerus domo exisset milium c et x. censu habito, ut Caesar imperaverat, repertus est numerus fuerunt ad milia CCCLXVIII. arma ferre possent, ad milia nonaginta duo. Summa omnium gorum xıv, Rauricorum xxııı, Boiorum xxxıı; ex his, qui Helvetiorum milia cclxIII, Tulingorum milia xxxvi, Latobrimulieresque. eorum, qui arma ferre possent, et item separatim pueri, senes Graecis confectae et ad Caesarem relatae, quibus in tabulis XXIX. In castris Helvetiorum tabulae repertae sunt litteris Quarum omnium rerum summa erat capitum Eorum, qui domum redierunt, 5

### The chiefs of Gaul gather to congratulate Caesar.

suas Helvetii reliquissent, uti toti Galliae bellum inferrent disse, propterea quod eo consilio florentissimis rebus domos populi Romani ab his poenas bello repetisset, tamen eam rem principes civitatum, ad Caesarem gratulatum convenerunt: deligerent, quem ex omni Gallia opportunissimum ac fructuimperioque potirentur locumque domicilio ex magna copia non minus ex usu terrae Galliae quam populi Romani acci-Intellegere sese, tametsi pro veteribus Helvetiorum iniuriis mandatum esset, inter se sanxerunt iurando, ne quis enuntiaret, nisi quibus communi consilio 35 habere quasdam res quas ex communi consensu ab eo petere certam indicere idque Caesaris voluntate facere liceret: sese osissimum iudicassent, reliquasque civitates stipendiarias ha-XXX. Bello Helvetiorum confecto totius fere Galliae legati, Petierunt, uti sibi concilium totius Galliae in diem Ea re permissa diem concilio constituerunt et iure-

### He is asked to defend Gaul against Ariovistus

25 neque recusaturos, quo minus perpetuo sub illorum dicione 35 dere iuberet, propterea quod paucis mensibus ante Harudum 30 iureiurando neque obsidibus teneretur. Sed peius victoribus 20 proeliis calamitatibusque fractos, qui et sua virtute et populi isse; posteaquam agros et cultum et copias Gallorum homi-15 nes feri ac barbari adamassent, traductos plures; nunc esse 10 rius principatum tenere Aeduos, alterius Arvernos. Hi cum 5 proiecerunt: Non minus se id contendere et laborare, ne ea. in Gallia ad centum et xx milium numerum. Cum his cus Aeduus: Galliae totius factiones esse duas: harum alteante fuerant, ad Caesarem reverterunt petieruntque, ut sibi vistus, rex Germanorum, in eorum finibus consedisset terti-Sequanis quam Aeduis victis accidisse, propterea quod Arioad senatum venisse auxilium postulatum, quod solus neque des daret. Ob eam rem se ex civitate profugisse et Roman rum, qui adduci non potuerit, ut iuraret aut liberos suos obsiatque imperio essent. Unum se esse ex omni civitate Aeduorepetituros neque auxilium a populo Romano imploraturos, tuissent, coactos esse Sequanis obsides dare nobilissimos civitatis et iureiurando civitatem obstringere, sese neque obsides tatem, omnem senatum, omnem equitatum amisisse. Quibus disse; magnam calamitatem pulsos accepisse, omnem nobili-Aeduos eorumque clientes semel atque iterum armis contencesserentur. Horum primo circiter milia xv Rhenum transfactum esse, uti ab Arvernis Sequanisque Germani mercede artantopere de potentatu inter se multos annos contenderent, cruciatum se venturos viderent. Locutus est pro his Divitiapetrarent, propterea quod, si enuntiatum esset, summum in quae dixissent, enuntiarentur, quam uti ea, quae vellent, imliceret. Ea re impetrata sese omnes flentes Caesari ad pedes secreto in occulto de sua omniumque salute cum eo agere milia hominum xxıv ad eum venissent, quibus locus ac sedes occupavisset, et nunc de altera parte tertia Sequanos deceamque partem agri Sequani, qui esset optimus totius Galliae, Romani hospitio atque amicitia plurimum ante in Gallia po-XXXI. Eo concilio dimisso idem principes civitatum, qui iniuria posse defendere. rum Rhenum traducatur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovisti populi Romani deterrere posse, ne maior multitudo Germano auctoritate sua atque exercitus vel recenti victoria vel nomine eum sint, cumque accidat, experiantur. Haec si enuntiata Ariovisto 15 quod Helvetii fecerint, ut domo emigrent, aliud domicilium, alias sedes, remotas a Germanis, petant fortunamque, quaeperia diutius sustinere. Nisi quid in Caesare esse barbarum, iracundum, temerarium: non posse eius imres non ad nutum aut ad voluntatem eius facta sit. Hominem poscere et in eos omnia exempla cruciatusque edere, si qua et crudeliter imperare, obsides nobilissimi cuiusque liberos vicerit, quod proelium factum sit Admagetobrigae, superbe agrò, neque hanc consuetudinem victus cum illa comparanfinibus pellerentur atque omnes Germani Rhenum transirent: pararentur. Romano sit auxilii, omnibus Gallis idem esse non dubitare, quin de omnibus obsidibus, qui apud Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallorum copias proelio enin conferendum esse Gallicum cum Germanorum gravissimum supplicium sumat. Caesarem vel Futurum esse paucis annis, uti omnes ex Galliae faciendum, populoque IG

## Being much entreated, he espouses the cause of the Gauls.

dem queri neque auxilium implorare auderent absentisque respondit: Hoc esse miseriorem et graviorem fortunam 30 omnino vocem exprimere posset, idem Divitiacus Aeduus quaesiit. Nihil Sequani respondere, sed in eadem tristitia terram intueri. rerum facere, quas ceteri facerent, sed tristes capite demisso 25 Animadvertit Caesar, unos ex omnibus Sequanos nihil earum aderant, magno fletu auxilium a Caesare petere coeperunt. vero, qui intra fines suos Ariovistum recepissent, quorum 35 propterea quod reliquis tamen fugae facultas daretur, Sequanis Sequanorum quam reliquorum, quod soli ne in occulto quitaciti permanere. XXXII. Hac oratione ab Divitiaco habita, omnes, qui crudelitatem, Eius rei quae causa esset, miratus ex ipsis Cum ab his saepius quaereret neque ullam velut si coram adesset, horrerent,

oppida omnia in potestate eius essent, omnes cruciatus essent perferendi.

20 praesertim cum Sequanos a provincia nostra Rhodanus divi-10 saepenumero a senatu appellatos, in servitute atque in dicione 5 magnam se habere spem, et benefició suo et auctoritate adtransire, in provinciam exirent atque inde in Italiam contenderent, sumpserat, ut ferendus non videretur. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantos sibi spiritus, tantam arrogantiam deret; quibus rebus quam maturrime occurrendum putabat feros ac barbaros temperaturos existimabat, quin, cum omnem populo Romano periculosum videbat, neque sibi homines populi Romani turpissimum sibi et reipublicae esse arbitra-Ariovistum ac Sequanos intellegebat; quod in tanto imperio videbat Germanorum teneri, eorumque obsides esse apud putaret, imprimis, quod Aeduos, fratres consanguineosque hortabantur, quare sibi eam rem cogitandam et suscipiendam habita concilium dimisit. Et secundum ea multae res eum ductum Ariovistum finem iniuriis facturum. Hac oratione bis confirmavit pollicitusque est, sibi eam rem curae futuram: Galliam occupavissent, ut ante Cimbri Teutonique fecissent, XXXIII. His rebus cognitis Caesar Gallorum animos veret in Galliam magnam eorum multitudinem venire, Paulatim autem Germanos consuescere Rhenum

He invites Ariovistus to a conference; Ariovistus declines, and to Caesar's demands sends back a haughty reply.

25 mitteret, qui ab eo postularent, uti aliquem locum medium utriusque colloquio deligeret: velle sese de re publica et 35 negotii esset. venturum fuisse; si quid ille se velit, illum ad se venire oporquam bello vicisset, aut Caesari aut omnino populo Romano magno commeatu atque molimento in unum locum contravenire audere, quas Caesar possideret, neque exercitum sine tus respondit : Si quid ipsi a Caesare opus esset, sese ad eum summis utriusque rebus cum eo agere. Ei legationi Ariovishere posse. XXXIV. Quamobrem placuit ei, ut ad Ariovistum legatos Praeterea se neque sine exercitu in eas partes Galliae Sibi autem mirum videri, quid in sua Gallia,

XXXV. His responsis ad Caesarem relatis, iterum ad eum Caesar legatos cum his mandatis mittit: Quoniam tanto suo populique Romani beneficio affectus, cum in consulatu suo rex atque amicus a senatu appellatus esset, hanc sibi populoque Romano gratiam referret, ut in colloquium venire in- 5 vitatus gravaretur neque de communi re dicendum sibi et cognoscendum putaret, haec esse, quae ab eo postularet: primum, ne quam multitudinem hominum amplius trans Rhenum in Galliam traduceret; deinde, obsides, quos haberet ab Aeduis, redderet, Sequanisque permitteret, ut, quos 10 illi haberent, voluntate eius reddere illis liceret; neve Aeduos iniuria lacesseret, neve his sociisque eorum bellum inferret. Si id ita fecisset, sibi populoque Romano perpetuam gratiam atque amicitiam cum eo futuram: si non impetraret, sese, quoniam M. Messala, M. Pisone consulibus senatus censuis- 15 set, uti, quicunque Galliam provinciam obtineret, quod commodo reipublicae facere posset, Aeduos ceterosque amicos populi Romani defenderet, se Aeduorum iniurias non neglecturum.

XXXVI. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: Ius esse belli, ut, 20 qui vicissent, eis, quos vicissent, quemadmodum vellent, imperarent: item populum Romanum victis non ad alterius praescriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperare consuesse. Si ipse populo Romano non praescriberet, quemadmodum suo iure uteretur, non oportere sese a populo Romano in suo 25 iure impediri. Aeduos sibi, quoniam belli fortunam temptassent et armis congressi ac superati essent, stipendiarios esse factos. Magnam Caesarem iniuriam facere, qui suo adventu vectigalia sibi deteriora faceret. Aeduis se obsides redditurum non esse, neque eis neque eorum sociis iniuria bellum 30 illaturum, si in eo manerent, quod convenisset, stipendiumque quotannis penderent; si id non fecissent, longe eis fraternum nomen populi Romani afuturum. Quod sibi Caesar denuntiaret, se Aeduorum iniurias non neglecturum, neminem secum sine sua pernicie contendisse. Cum vellet, congre- 35 deretur: intellecturum, quid invicti Germani, exercitatissimi in armis, qui inter annos xiv tectum non subissent, virtute possent.

Caesar hastens. He reaches Vesontio before Ariovistus.

XXXVII. Haec eodem tempore Caesari mandata referebantur, et legati ab Aeduis et a Treveris veniebant: Aedui questum, quod Harudes, qui nuper in Galliam transportati essent, fines eorum popularentur; sese ne obsidibus quidem 5 datis pacem Ariovisti redimere potuisse: Treveri autem, pagos centum Sueborum ad ripam Rheni consedisse, qui Rhenum transire conarentur; his praeesse Nasuam et Cimberium fratres. Quibus rebus Caesar vehementer commotus maturandum sibi existimavit, ne, si nova manus Sueborum 10 cum veteribus copiis Ariovisti sese coniunxisset, minus facile resisti posset. Itaque re frumentaria, quam celerrime potuit, comparata, magnis itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

XXXVIII. Cum tridui viam processisset, nuntiatum est ei, Ariovistum cum suis omnibus copiis ad occupandum Veson-15 tionem, quod est oppidum maximum Sequanorum, contendere triduique viam a suis finibus profecisse. Id ne accideret, magnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar existimabat. Namque omnium rerum, quae ad bellum usui erant, summa erat in eo oppido facultas, idque natura loci sic muniebatur, ut 20 magnam ad ducendum bellum daret facultatem, propterea quod flumen Dubis ut circino circumductum paene totum oppidum cingit: reliquum spatium, quod est non amplius pedum sexcentorum, qua flumen intermittit, mons continet magna altitudine, ita, ut radices montis ex utraque parte 25 ripae fluminis contingant. Hunc murus circumdatus arcem efficit et cum oppido coniungit. Huc Caesar magnis nocturnis diurnisque itineribus contendit occupatoque oppido ibi praesidium collocat.

### His soldiers fear the Germans. He addresses them.

XXXIX. Dum paucos dies ad Vesontionem rei frumenta-30 riae commeatusque causa moratur, ex percontatione nostrorum vocibusque Gallorum ac mercatorum, qui ingenti magnitudine corporum Germanos, incredibili virtute atque exercitatione in armis esse praedicabant (saepenumero sese cum his con-

aut cum familiaribus suis commune periculum miserabantur. poterant: abditi in tabernaculis aut suum fatum querebantur pudore adducti, ut timoris suspicionem vitarent, remanebant diceret, petebat, ut eius voluntate discedere liceret; nonnulli causa illata, quam sibi ad proficiscendum necessariam esse magnum in re militari usum habebant: quorum alius alia reliquisque, qui ex urbe amicitiae causa Caesarem secuti non 5 turbaret. Hic primum ortus est a tribunis militum, praefectis pavit, ut non mediocriter omnium mentes animosque ferre potuisse), tantus subito timor omnem exercitum occugressos ne vultum quidem atque aciem oculorum dicebant nitudinem silvarum, quae intercederent inter ipsos atque volebant, non se hostem vereri, sed angustias itineris et magperturbabantur. Qui se ex his minus timidos existimari habebant, milites centurionesque, quique equitatui praeerant, ac timore paulatim etiam ei, qui magnum in castris usum Vulgo totis castris testamenta obsignabantur. Horum vocibus Hi neque vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimas tenere fore dicto audientes milites neque propter timorem signa nuntiarant, portari posset, timere dicebant. Ariovistum, aut rem frumentariam, ut satis commode supcum castra moveri ac signa ferri iussisset, non Nonnulli etiam Caesari S

tem aut quo consilio ducerentur, sibi quaerendum aut cogivehementer eos incusavit: primum quod, aut quam in parumque ordinum ad id consilium adhibitis centurionibus, 25 diaturum. Quod si furore atque amentia impulsus bellum specta eum neque suam neque populi Romani gratiam repucognitis suis postulatis atque aequitate condicionum perab officio discessurum iudicaret? Sibi quidem persuaderi, Romani amicitiam appetisse: cur hunc tam temere quisquam tandum putarent. Ariovistum se consule cupidissime populi aut de ipsius diligentia desperarent? Factum eius hostis 35 intulisset, quid tandem vererentur? aut cur de sua virtute quam ipse imperator meritus videbatur; factum etiam nuper tonis a Gaio Mario pulsis non minorem laudem exercitus periculum patrum nostrorum memoria, cum Cimbris et Teu-Haec cum animadvertisset, convocato consilio omni35 maxime. 30 intellegere posset, utrum apud eos pudor atque officium an 20 Sequanos, Leucos, Lingŏnes subministrare, iamque esse in 15 atque imperitos locus fuisset, hac ne ipsum quidem sperare ro hos, si quaererent, reperire posse, diuturnitate belli defetigatis timor valeret. fortunam defuisse, aut aliquo facinore comperto avaritiam se cum sola decima legione iturum, de qua non dubitaret, ima nocte de quarta vigilia castra moturum, ut quam primum longiorem diem collaturus fuisset, repraesentaturum et prox-Helvetiorum bello esse perspectam. Itaque se, quod in esse convictam: suam innocentiam perpetua vita, felicitatem que exercitus dicto audiens non fuerit, aut male re gesta dicantur, nihil se ea re commoveri: scire enim, quibuscumagris frumenta matura; de itinere ipsos brevi tempore iudicaaut praescribere viderentur. Haec sibi esse curae, frumentum Caesar et indulserat praecipue et propter virtutem confidebat facere arroganter, cum aut de officio imperatoris desperare frumentariae simulationem angustiasque itineris conferrent, nostros exercitus capi posse. Qui suum timorem in rei quam virtute vicisse. Cui rationi contra homines barbaros pugna et dispersos subito adortum, magis ratione et consilio tenuisset neque sui potestatem fecisset, desperantes iam de solum in suis, sed etiam in illorum finibus, plerumque supera-Si quos adversum proelium et fuga Gallorum commoveret, rint, qui tamen pares esse nostro exercitui non potuerint. postea armatos ac victores superassent. Denique hos quod, quos aliquamdiu inermos sine causa timuissent, hos cari posse, quantum haberet in se boni constantia, propterea Gallis, Ariovistum, cum multos menses castris se ac paludibus eosdem, quibuscum saepenumero Helvetii congressi non plina, quae a nobis Italia servili tumultu, quos tamen aliquid usus ac disci-Quod non fore dicto audientes neque signa laturi eam praetoriam cohortem futuram. Quod si praeterea nemo sequatur, accepissent, sublevarent. Huic legioni Ex quo iudi-

Caesar marches after Ariovistus, who requests an interview.

iter non intermitteret, ab exploratoribus certior factus est, Ariovisti copias a nostris milibus passuum quattuor et xx 15 gerendi innata est, princepsque decima legio per tribunos militum ei gratias egit, quod de se optimum iudicium fecisset, quarta vigilia, ut dixerat, profectus est. quinquaginta circuitu locis apertis exercitum duceret, quod ex aliis ei maximam fidem habebat, ut milium amplius rum satisfactione accepta et itinere exquisito per Divitiacum, belli suum iudicium, sed imperatoris esse existimavisse. neque umquam dubitasse neque timuisse, neque de summa ordinum centurionibus egerunt, uti Caesari satisfacerent: se Deinde reliquae legiones cum tribunis militum et primorum seque esse ad bellum gerendum paratissimam confirmavit. sunt omnium mentes summaque alacritas et cupiditas belli XLI. Hac oratione habita mirum in modum conversae Septimo die, cum ö

adduceret: vereri se, ne per insidias ab eo circumveniretur; terim saepe ultro citroque cum legati inter eos mitterentur, sisteret. Dies colloquio dictus est ex eo die quintus. spem veniebat, pro suis tantis populique Romani in eum beneficiis, cognitis suis postulatis, fore, uti pertinacia deiamque eum ad sanitatem reverti arbitrabatur, cum id, quod facere posse existimare. Non respuit condicionem Caesar, licere, quoniam propius accessisset, seque id sine periculo mittit: quod antea de colloquio postulasset, id per se fieri quam amicissimum, si quid opus facto esset, haberet. Quod 35 mae, cui quam maxime confidebat, imponere, ut praesidium mittere audebat, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus equis tolli volebat neque salutem suam Gallorum equitatui comventurum. Caesar, quod neque colloquium interposita causa uterque cum equitatu veniret: alia ratione sese non esse Ariovistus postulavit, ne quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar cum fieret, non irridicule quidam ex militibus decimae Gallis equitibus detractis, eo legionarios milites legionis deci-XLII. Cognito Caesaris adventu Ariovistus legatos ad eum petenti denegasset, ultro polliceretur, magnamque in 23 ő

habiturum, ad equum rescribere. pollicitum, se in cohortis praetoriae loco decimam legionem dixit: plus, quam pollicitus esset, Caesarem facere:

### They meet; Caesar speaks. Ariovistus replies.

30 transire pateretur. 25 quod vero ad amicitiam populi Romani attulissent, id eis 20 que honorifica in eos facta essent, ut omni tempore totius 15 suesse tribui docebat; illum, cum neque aditum neque causam postulandi iustam haberet, beneficio ac liberalitate sua ac 10 praeter se denos ut ad colloquium adducerent, postulavit. rum domum remittere posset, at ne quos amplius Rhenum lum inferret; obsides redderet; si nullam partem Germanoin mandatis dederat: ne aut Aeduis aut eorum sociis bel-Galliae principatum Aedui tenuissent, prius etiam, quam nostram amicitiam appetissent. Populi Romani hanc esse eripi quis pati posset? Postulavit deinde eadem, quae legatis deperdere, sed consuetudinem, ut socios atque amicos non modo sui nihil Aeduis intercederent, quae senatusconsulta quotiens quamrem et paucis contigisse et pro magnis hominum officiis consenatu, quod amicus, quod munera amplissime missa; quam eum beneficia commemoravit, quod rex appellatus esset a Ubi eo ventum est, Caesar initio orationis sua senatusque in vallo constiterunt. Ariovistus, ex equis ut colloquerentur et Legionem Caesar, quam equis devexerat, passibus ducentis ab eo tumulo constituit. Item equites Ariovisti pari inter-Caesaris aberat. Eo, ut erat dictum, ad colloquium venerunt. ea praemia consecutum. Docebat etiam, quam quamque iustae causae necessitudinis ipsis cum Hic locus aequo fere spatio ab castris Ariovisti et Planities erat magna et in ea tumulus terrenus satis gratia, dignitate, honore auctiores velit esse;

35 quisse; sedes habere in Gallia magna spe magnisque praemiis domum propinquosque reliipsorum voluntate datos; non sua sponte, sed rogatum et arcessitum a Gallis; non sine de suis virtutibus multa praedicavit: Transisse Rhenum sese XLIV. Ariovistus ad postulata Caesaris pauca respondit, stipendium capere iure belli, quod ab ipsis concessas, obsides

victores victis imponere consuerint. Non sese Gallis, sed Gallos sibi bellum intulisse: omnes Galliae civitates ad se oppugnandum venisse ac contra se castra habuisse; eas omnes copias a se uno proelio pulsas ac superatas esse. iterum experiri velint, se iterum paratum esse decertare; si 5 pace uti velint, iniquum esse de stipendio recusare, quod sua voluntate ad id tempus pependerint. Amicitiam populi Romani sibi ornamento et praesidio, non detrimento esse oportere, idque se ea spe petisse. Si per populum Romanum stipendium remittatur et dediticii subtrahantur, non 10 minus libenter sese recusaturum populi Romani amicitiam, quam appetierit. Quod multitudinem Germanorum in Galliam traducat, id se sui muniendi, non Galliae impugnandae causa facere: eius rei testimonium esse, quod nisi rogatus non venerit, et quod bellum non intulerit, sed defenderit. 15 Se prius in Galliam venisse quam populum Romanum. Numquam ante hoc tempus exercitum populi Romani Galliae provinciae finibus egressum. Quid sibi vellet? Cur in suas possessiones veniret? Provinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, sicut illam nostram. Ut ipsi concedi non oporteret, si in 20 nostros fines impetum faceret, sic item nos esse iniquos, quod in suo iure se interpellaremus. Quod fratres Aeduos appellatos diceret, non se tam barbarum neque tam imperitum esse rerum, ut non sciret, neque bello Allobrogum proximo Aeduos Romanis auxilium tulisse, neque ipsos in his con- 25 tentionibus, quas Aedui secum et cum Sequanis habuissent, auxilio populi Romani usos esse. Debere se suspicari, simulata Caesarem amicitia, quod exercitum in Gallia habeat, sui opprimendi causa habere. Qui nisi decedat atque exercitum deducat ex his regionibus, sese illum non pro amico, sed 30 hoste habiturum. Quod si eum interfecerit, multis sese nobilibus principibusque populi Romani gratum esse facturum: id se ab ipsis per eorum nuntios compertum habere, quorum omnium gratiam atque amicitiam eius morte redimere posset. Quod si discessisset et liberam possessionem 35 Galliae sibi tradidisset, magno se illum praemio remuneraturum et, quaecumque bella geri vellet, sine ullo eius labore et periculo confecturum.

### Caesar remains firm; and escapes from the snares set by Ariovistus.

XLV. Multa ab Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt, quare negotio desistere non posset; neque suam neque populi Romani consuetudinem pati, uti optime merentes socios desereret, neque se iudicare, Galliam potius esse Ariovisti quam populi Romani. Bello superatos esse Arvernos et Rutenos ab Quinto Fabio Maximo, quibus populus Romanus ignovisset neque in provinciam redegisset neque stipendium imposuisset. Quod si antiquissimum quodque tempus spectari oporteret, populi Romani iustissimum esse in Gallia 10 imperium; si iudicium senatus observari oporteret, liberam debere esse Galliam, quam bello victam suis legibus uti voluisset.

XLVI. Dum haec in colloquio geruntur, Caesari nuntiatum est, equites Ariovisti propius tumulum accedere et ad nostros adequitare, lapides telaque in nostros conicere. Caesar loquendi finem facit seque ad suos recepit suisque imperavit, ne quod omnino telum in hostes reicerent. Nam etsi sine ullo periculo legionis delectae cum equitatu proelium fore videbat, tamen committendum non putabat, ut pulsis hostibus dici posset, eos ab se per fidem in colloquio circumventos. Posteaquam in vulgus militum elatum est, qua arrogantia in colloquio Ariovistus usus omni Gallia Romanis interdixisset, impetumque in nostros eius equites fecissent, eaque res colloquium ut diremisset, multo maior alacritas studiumque pugnandi maius exercitui iniectum est.

### Ariovistus throws into chains two legates of Caesar, but avoids battle.

XLVII. Biduo post Ariovistus ad Caesarem legatos mittit: Velle se de his rebus, quae inter eos agi coeptae neque, perfectae essent, agere cum eo: uti aut iterum colloquio diem constitueret aut, si id minus vellet, e suis legatis aliquem ad 30 se mitteret. Colloquendi Caesari causa visa non est, et eo magis, quod pridie eius diei Germani retineri non potuerant, quin in nostros tela conicerent. Legatum e suis sese magno

### BATTLE BETWEEN CAESAR AND ARIOVISTUS.

To face p. 72. Lib. I. c. 42. sqq. PLAN III. Ensisheim Lutterbach MÜHLHAUSEN EXPLANATION. a. First camp of Ariovistus. e. Caesar's small camp. t. Hill upon which the interview bef. Line of battle of the Romans. tween Caesar and Ariovistus took g. Line of battle of the Germans. place. h. Publius Crassus with the Cavalry. c. Second camp of Ariovistus. Romans Germans. d. Caesar's large camp.



cum periculo ad eum missurum et hominibus feris obiecturum existimabat. Commodissimum visum est Gaium Valerium Procillum, C. Valeri Caburi filium, summa virtute et humanitate adulescentem, cuius pater a Gaio Valerio Flacco civitate donatus erat, et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae 5 scientiam, qua multa iam Ariovistus longinqua consuetudine utebatur, et quod in eo peccandi Germanis causa non esset, ad eum mittere, et Marcum Metium, qui hospitio Ariovisti utebatur. His mandavit, ut, quae diceret Ariovistus, cognoscerent et ad se referrent. Quos cum apud se in castris 10 Ariovistus conspexisset, exercitu suo praesente conclamavit: Quid ad se venirent? an speculandi causa? Conantis dicere prohibuit et in catenas coniecit.

XLVIII. Eodem die castra promovit et milibus passuum sex a Caesaris castris sub monte consedit. Postridie eius 15 diei praeter castra Caesaris suas copias traduxit et milibus passuum duobus ultra eum castra fecit eo consilio, uti frumento commeatuque, qui ex Sequanis et Aeduis supportaretur, Caesarem intercluderet. Ex eo die dies continuos quinque Caesar pro castris suas copias produxit et aciem in- 20 structam habuit, ut, si vellet Ariovistus proelio contendere, ei potestas non deesset. Ariovistus his omnibus diebus exercitum castris continuit, equestri proelio cotidie contendit. Genus hoc erat pugnae, quo se Germani exercuerant. Equitum milia erant sex, totidem numero pedites velocissimi ac 25 fortissimi, quos ex omni copia singuli singulos suae salutis causa delegerant: cum his in proeliis versabantur. Ad eos se equites recipiebant: hi, si quid erat durius, concurrebant. si qui graviore vulnere accepto equo deciderat, circumsistebant, si quo erat longius prodeundum aut celerius recipi- 30 endum, tanta erat horum exercitatione celeritas, ut iubis equorum sublevati cursum adaequarent.

### Caesar fortifies another camp beyond Ariovistus.

XLIX. Ubi eum castris se tenere Caesar intellexit, ne diutius commeatu prohiberetur, ultra eum locum, quo in loco Germani consederant, circiter passus sexcentos ab eis, castris 35 idoneum locum delegit acieque triplici instructa ad eum locum venit. Primam et secundam aciem in armis esse, tertiam castra munire iussit. Hic locus ab hoste circiter passus sexcentos, uti dictum est, aberat. Eo circiter hominum numero sedecim milia expedita cum omni equitatu 5 Ariovistus misit, quae copiae nostros perterrerent et munitione prohiberent. Nihilo secius Caesar, ut ante constituerat, duas acies hostem propulsare, tertiam opus perficere iussit. Munitis castris duas ibi legiones reliquit et partem auxiliorum, quattuor reliquas in castra maiora reduxit.

### The Germans are afraid to fight before the new moon. Caesar forces on an engagement.

- copias suas eduxit paulumque a maioribus castris utrisque copias suas eduxit paulumque a maioribus castris progressus aciem instruxit, hostibus pugnandi potestatem fecit. Ubi ne tum quidem eos prodire intellexit, circiter meridiem exercitum in castra reduxit. Tum demum Ariovistus partem suarum copiarum, quae castra minora oppugnaret, misit. Acriter utrimque usque ad vesperum pugnatum est. Solis occasu suas copias Ariovistus multis et illatis et acceptis vulneribus in castra reduxit. Cum ex captivis quaereret Caesar, quamobrem Ariovistus proelio non decertaret, hanc reperiebat causam, quod apud Germanos ea consuetudo esset, ut matresfamiliae eorum sortibus et vaticinationibus declararent, utrum proelium committi ex usu esset necne; eas ita dicere: non esse fas Germanos superare, si ante novam lunam proelio contendissent.
- LI. Postridie eius diei Caesar praesidium utrisque castris, quod satis esse visum est, reliquit, omnis alarios in conspectu hostium pro castris minoribus constituit, quod minus multitudine militum legionariorum pro hostium numero valebat, ut ad speciem alariis uteretur; ipse triplici instructa acie usque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum demum necessario Germani suas copias castris eduxerunt generatimque constituerunt paribus intervallis, Harūdes, Marcomānos, Tribōces, Vangiŏnes, Nemētes, Sedusios, Suebos, omnemque aciem suam redis et carris circumdederunt, ne qua spes in 55 fuga relinqueretur. Eo mulieres imposuerunt, quae in proe-

lium proficiscentes passis manibus flentes implorabant, ne se in servitutem Romanis traderent.

### There is a desperate battle; the Germans are routed.

LII. Caesar singulis legionibus singulos legatos et quaestorem praefecit, uti eos testes suae quisque virtutis haberet: ipse a dextro cornu, quod eam partem minime firmam hos- 5 tium esse animadverterat, proelium commisit. Ita nostri acriter in hostes signo dato impetum fecerunt, itaque hostes repente celeriterque procurrerunt, ut spatium pila in hostes coniciendi non daretur. Reiectis pilis comminus gladiis pugnatum est. At Germani celeriter ex consuetudine sua 16 phalange facta impetus gladiorum exceperunt. Reperti sunt complures nostri milites, qui in phalangas insilirent et scuta manibus revellerent et desuper vulnerarent. Cum hostium acies a sinistro cornu pulsa atque in fugam conversa esset, a dextro cornu vehementer multitudine suorum nostram aciem 15 premebant. Id cum animadvertisset Publius Crassus adulescens, qui equitatui praeerat, quod expeditior erat quam ei, qui inter aciem versabantur, tertiam aciem laborantibus nostris subsidio misit.

LIII. Ita proelium restitutum est, atque omnes hostes 20 terga verterunt neque prius fugere destiterunt, quam ad flumen Rhenum milia passuum ex eo loco circiter quinque pervenerunt. Ibi perpauci aut viribus confisi tranare contenderunt aut lintribus inventis sibi salutem reppererunt. In his fuit Ariovistus, qui naviculam deligatam ad ripam nactus 25 ea profugit; reliquos omnes equitatu consecuti nostri interfecerunt. Duae fuerunt Ariovisti uxores, una Sueba natione, quam domo secum duxerat, altera Norica, regis Voccionis soror, quam in Gallia duxerat a fratre missam: utraeque in ea fuga perierunt. Duae filiae harum altera occisa, altera capta 30 est. Gaius Valerius Procillus, cum a custodibus in fuga trinis catenis vinctus traheretur, in ipsum Caesarem hostis equitatu persequentem incidit. Quae quidem res Caesari non minorem quam ipsa victoria voluptatem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum provinciae Galliae, suum familiarem et hospitem, 35 ereptum e manibus hostium, sibi restitutum videbat, neque

eius calamitate de tanta voluptate et gratulatione quicquam fortuna deminuerat. Is se praesente de se ter sortibus consultum dicebat, utrum igni statim necaretur an in aliud tempus reservaretur: sortium beneficio se esse incolumem. Item 5 Marcus Metius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

Caesar leads his army into winter quarters; he himself goes to North Italy.

LIV. Hoc proelio trans Rhenum nuntiato Suebi, qui ad ripas Rheni venerant, domum reverti coeperunt; quos Ubii, qui proximi Rhenum incolunt, perterritos insecuti, magnum ex his numerum occiderunt. Caesar, una aestate duobus maximis bellis confectis, maturius paulo, quam tempus anni postulabat, in hiberna in Sequanos exercitum deduxit; hibernis Labienum praeposuit; ipse in citeriorem Galliam ad conventus agendos profectus est.

### COMMENTARIUS SECUNDUS.

### All the Belgae rise against Caesar.

I. Cum esset Caesar in citeriore Gallia in hibernis, ita uti supra demonstravimus, crebri ad eum rumores afferebantur, litterisque item Labieni certior fiebat, omnes Belgas, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dixeramus, contra populum Romanum coniurare obsidesque inter se dare. Coniurandi has 5 esse causas: primum, quod vererentur, ne omni pacata Gallia ad eos exercitus noster adduceretur; deinde, quod ab nonnullis Gallis sollicitarentur, partim qui, ut Germanos diutius in Gallia versari noluerant, ita populi Romani exercitum hiemare atque inveterascere in Gallia moleste ferebant, 10 partim qui mobilitate et levitate animi novis imperiis studebant; ab nonnullis etiam, quod in Gallia a potentioribus atque eis, qui ad conducendos homines facultates habebant, vulgo regna occupabantur, qui minus facile eam rem imperio nostro consequi poterant. 15

### He marches quickly to their territory; the Remi surrender.

II. His nuntiis litterisque commotus Caesar duas legiones in citeriore Gallia novas conscripsit et inita aestate, in interiorem Galliam qui deduceret, Quintum Pedium legatum misit. Ipse, cum primum pabuli copia esse inciperet, ad exercitum venit. Dat negotium Senonibus reliquisque Gallis, 20 qui finitimi Belgis erant, uti ea, quae apud eos gerantur, cognoscant seque de his rebus certiorem faciant. Hi constanter omnes nuntiaverunt, manus cogi, exercitum in unum locum conduci. Tum vero dubitandum non existimavit, quin ad eos proficisceretur. Re frumentaria comparata 25 castra movet diebusque circiter quindecim ad fines Belgarum pervenit.

III. Eo cum de improviso celeriusque omni opinione venisset, Remi, qui proximi Galliae ex Belgis sunt, ad eum legatos Iccium et Andecumborium, primos civitatis, miserunt, qui dicerent, se suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestatem populi Romani permittere, neque se cum Belgis reliquis consensisse neque contra populum Romanum coniurasse, paratosque esse et obsides dare et imperata facere et oppidis recipere et frumento ceterisque rebus iuvare; reliquos omnes Belgas in armis esse, Germanosque, qui cis Rhenum incolant, 10 sese cum his coniunxisse, tantumque esse eorum omnium furorem, ut ne Suessiones quidem, fratres consanguineosque suos, qui eodem iure et isdem legibus utantur, unum imperium unumque magistratum cum ipsis habeant, deterrere potuerint, quin cum his consentirent.

### The origin and forces of the Belgae.

15 IV. Cum ab his quaereret, quae civitates quantaeque in armis essent et quid in bello possent, sic reperiebat: plerosque Belgas esse ortos ab Germanis Rhenumque antiquitus traductos propter loci fertilitatem ibi consedisse Gallosque, qui ea loca incolerent, expulisse solosque esse qui patrum 20 nostrorum memoria omni Gallia venata Teutonos Cimbrosque intra fines suos ingredi prohibuerint; qua ex re fieri, uti earum rerum memoria magnam sibi auctoritatem magnosque spiritus in re militari sumerent. De numero eorum omnia se habere explorata Remi dicebant, propterea quod, 25 propinquitatibus affinitatibusque coniuncti, quantam quisque multitudinem in communi Belgarum concilio ad id bellum pollicitus sit, cognoverint. Plurimum inter eos Bellovacos et virtute et auctoritate et hominum numero valere; hos posse conficere armata milia centum, pollicitos ex eo numero 30 electa sexaginta, totiusque belli imperium sibi postulare. Suessiones suos esse finitimos; fines latissimos feracissimosque agros possidere. Apud eos fuisse regem nostra etiam memoria Divitiacum, totius Galliae potentissimum, qui cum magnae partis harum regionum, tum etiam Britanniae im-35 perium obtinuerit; nunc esse regem Galbam: ad hunc propter iustitiam prudentiamque suam summam totius belli omnium voluntate deferri; oppida habere numero XII, polliceri milia armata quinquaginta; totidem Nervios, qui maxime feri inter ipsos habeantur longissimeque absint; quindecim milia Atrebătes, Ambianos decem milia, Morinos XXV milia, Menapios VII milia, Caletos X milia, Veliocasses et Viromanduos totidem, Aduatŭcos decem et novem milia; Condrusos, Eburones, Caeroesos, Paemanos, qui uno nomine Germani appellantur, arbitrari ad XL milia.

### Caesar marches to the Axona; the Belgae attack Bibrax.

V. Caesar Remos cohortatus liberaliterque oratione prosecutus omnem senatum ad se convenire principumque liberos 10 obsides ad se adduci iussit. Ouae omnia ab his diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Divitiacum Aeduum magnopere cohortatus docet, quanto opere rei publicae communisque salutis intersit, manus hostium distineri, ne cum tanta multitudine uno tempore confligendum sit. Id fieri posse, si suas 15 copias Aedui in fines Bellovacorum introduxerint et eorum agros populari coeperint. His mandatis eum ab se dimittit. Postquam omnes Belgarum copias in unum locum coactas ad se venire vidit, neque iam longe abesse, ab eis, quos miserat, exploratoribus et ab Remis cognovit, flumen Axonam, 20 quod est in extremis Remorum finibus, exercitum traducere maturavit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae res et latus unum castrorum ripis fluminis muniebat et, post eum quae essent, tuta ab hostibus reddebat et, commeatus ab Remis reliquisque civitatibus ut sine periculo ad eum portari possent, efficiebat. 25 In eo flumine pons erat. Ibi praesidium ponit et in altera parte fluminis Ouintum Titurium Sabinum legatum cum sex cohortibus relinquit; castra in altitudinem pedum duodecim vallo fossaque duodeviginti pedum munire iubet.

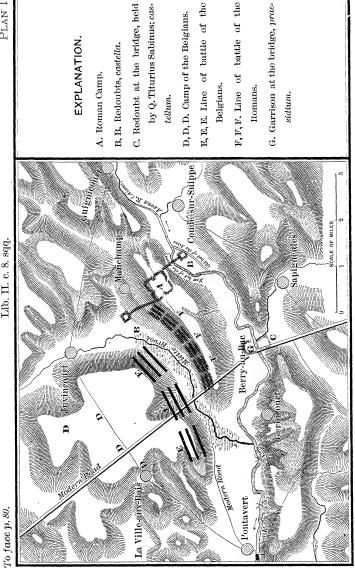
VI. Ab his castris oppidum Remorum nomine Bibrax 30 aberat milia passuum octo. Id ex itinere magno impetu Belgae oppugnare coeperunt. Aegre eo die susten tatum est. Gallorum eadem atque Belgarum oppugnatio est haec. Ubi circumiecta multitudine hominum totis moenibus undique in murum lapides iaci coepti sunt, murusque defensoribus 35 nudatus est, testudine facta portas succendunt murumque

subruunt. Quod tum facile fiebat. Nam cum tanta multitudo lapides ac tela conicerent, in muro consistendi potestas erat nulli. Cum finem oppugnandi nox fecisset, Iccius Remus, summa nobilitate et gratia inter suos, qui tum oppido praefuerat, unus ex eis, qui legati de pace ad Caesarem venerant, nuntium ad eum mittit, nisi subsidium sibi submittatur, sese diutius sustinere non posse.

### Caesar relieves the town, and strongly fortifies a camp.

VII. Eo de media nocte Caesar isdem ducibus usus, qui nuntii ab Iccio venerant, Numidas et Cretas sagittarios et fundifores Baleares subsidio oppidanis mittit; quorum adventu et Remis cum spe defensionis studium propugnandi accessit, et hostibus eadem de causa spes potiundi oppidi discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morati agrosque Remorum depopulati, omnibus vicis aedificiisque, quos adire potuerant, incensis ad castra Caesaris omnibus copiis contenderunt et ab milibus passuum minus duobus castra posuerunt; quae castra, ut fumo atque ignibus significabatur, amplius milibus passuum octo in latitudinem patebant.

VIII. Cáesar primo et propter multitudinem hostium et 20 propter eximiam opinionem virtutis proelio supersedere statuit, cotidie tamen equestribus proeliis, quid hostis virtute posset et quid nostri auderent, periclitabatur. Ubi nostros non esse inferiores intellexit, loco pro castris ad aciem instruendam natura opportuno atque idoneo, quod is collis, ubi castra 25 posita erant, paululum ex planitie editus tantum adversus in latitudinem patebat, quantum loci acies instructa occupare poterat, atque ex utraque parte lateris deiectus habebat et in frontem leniter fastigatus paulatim ad planitiem redibat, ab utroque latere eius collis transversam fossam obduxit cir-30 citer passuum quadringentorum et ad extremas fossas castella constituit ibique tormenta collocavit, ne, cum aciem instruxisset, hostes, quod tantum multitudine poterant, ab lateribus pugnantes suos circumvenire possent. Hoc facto duabus legionibus, quas proxime conscripserat, in castris relictis, ut, 35 si quo opus esset, subsidio duci possent, reliquas sex legiones pro castris in acie constituit. Hostes item suas copias ex castris eductas instruxerant.





### The Belgae attack the position of Titurius, are repulsed, and disperse.

inter duas acies contendebatur. Ubi neutri transeundi initium aggrederentur, parati in armis erant. nostri autem, si ab illis initium transeundi fieret, ut impeditos erant, commeatuque nostros prohiberent. popularentur, qui magno nobis usui ad bellum gerendum que interscinderent; si minus potuissent, agros Remorum cui praeerat Quintus Titurius legatus, expugnarent pontemtraducere conati sunt, eo consilio, ut, si possent, castellum, stratum est. Ibi vadis repertis partem suarum copiarum Axonam contenderunt, quod esse post nostra castra demoncastra reduxit. faciunt, secundiore equitum proelio nostris, Caesar suos in exercitum. Hanc si nostri transirent, hostes exspectabant; erat non magna inter nostrum atque hostium Hostes protinus ex eo loco ad flumen Interim proelio equestri 5

traducit atque ad eos contendit. Acriter in eo loco pugnatum introduxissent, ad eos defendendos undique convenirent, que reverti, et, quorum in fines primum Romani exercitum runt, atque ipsos res frumentaria deficere coepit, consilio 25 nostros in locum iniquiorem progredi pugnandi causa videflumine fecerunt. lerunt; primos, qui transierant, equitatu circumventos interaudacissime transire conantes eorum numerum occiderunt; auxilium ferrent, non poterat. reliquis causis haec quoque ratio eos deduxit, quod Divitiacopiis rei frumentariae uterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum potius in suis quam in alienis finibus decertarent et domesticis convocato constituerunt, optimum esse, domum suam quemcum atque Aeduos finibus Bellovacorum appropinquare cogarmaturae Numidas, funditores sagittariosque pontem Hostes impeditos nostri in flumine aggressi magnum Caesar certior factus ab Titurio omnem equitatum et 15 transeundo spem se fefellisse intellexerunt neque Hostes, ubi et de expugnando oppido et de His persuaderi, ut diutius morarentur neque suis multitudine telorum reppuper eorum corpora reliquos 20

ac tumultu castris egressi nullo certo ordine neque imperio XI. Ea re constituta, secunda vigilia magno cum strepitu 35

15 neque imperio continerentur, exaudito clamore perturbatis seque in castra, ut erat imperatum, receperunt. quantum fuit diei spatium, sub occasumque solis destiterunt ullo periculo tantam eorum multitudinem nostri interfecerunt, ordinibus omnes in fuga sibi praesidium ponerent. quod abesse a periculo viderentur neque ulla necessitate fortiterque impetum nostrorum militum sustinerent, priores, cum ab extremo agmine, ad quos ventum erat, consisterent cuti magnam multitudinem eorum fugientium conciderunt, Titum Labienum legatum cum legionibus tribus subsequi novissimum agmen moraretur, praemisit. His Quintum perspexerat, exercitum equitatumque castris continuit. Prima Pedium et Lucium Aurunculeium Cottam legatos praefecit; luce confirmata re ab exploratoribus, omnem equitatum, qui insidias veritus, quod, qua de causa discederent, nondum videretur. pervenire cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum Hi novissimos adorti et multa milia passuum proseproperaret, fecerunt, ut consimilis fugae profectio Hac re statim Caesar per speculatores cognita

### The Suessiones, Bellovaci, and Ambiani submit to Caesar He learns about the Nervii.

3º iacto turribusque constitutis, magnitudine operum, quae ne-3 nocte convenit. Celeriter vineis ad oppidum actis, aggere latitudinem fossae murique altitudinem paucis defendentibus petentibus Remis, ut conservarentur, impetrant. norum permoti legatos ad Caesarem de deditione mittunt et, que viderant ante Galli neque audierant, et celeritate Romaomnis ex fuga Suessionum multitudo in oppidum proxima que ad oppugnandum usui erant, comparare coepit. Interim expugnare non potuit. Castris munitis vineas agere, quaeconatus, quod vacuum ab defensoribus esse audiebat, propter oppidum Noviodunum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnare Remis erant, exercitum duxit et magno itinere confecto ad terrore Postridie eius diei Caesar, priusquam se hostes ex ac fuga reciperent, in fines Suessionum, qui proximi

35 Galbae regis duobus filiis, armisque omnibus ex oppido tra-XIII. Caesar obsidibus acceptis primis civitatis atque ipsius

Item, ab Romanis petierunt. pueri mulieresque ex muro passis manibus suo more pacem venire neque contra populum Romanum armis contendere voce significare coeperunt, sese in eius fidem ac potestatem iores natu ex oppido egressi manus ad Caesarem tendere et exercitu circiter milia passuum quinque abesset, omnes malovacos dúcit. ditis, in deditionem Suessiones accepit exercitumque in Bel-Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eo oppido Caesar cum cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi poneret, Qui cum se suaque omnia in oppidum

in Britanniam profugisse. Petere non solum Bellovacos, sed quod intellegerent, quantam calamitatem civitati intulissent, Aeduos ab Caesare in servitutem redactos omnes indignitates 15 Aeduae fuisse; impulsos ab suis principibus, qui dicerent, dimissis Aeduorum copiis ad eum reverterat) facit verba: si qua bella inciderint, sustentare consuerint. etiam pro his Aeduos, ut sua clementia ac mansuetudine in Romano bellum intulisse. Qui eius consilii principes fuissent contumeliasque perferre, et ab Aeduis defecisse et populo Bellovacos omni tempore in fide atque amicitia civitatis omnes Belgas amplificaturum, quorum auxiliis atque opibus, eos utatur. XIV. Pro his Divitiacus (nam post discessum Belgarum Quod si fecerit, Aeduorum auctoritatem apud 20

marent; esse homines feros magnaeque virtutis, increpitare rebus relanguescere animos eorum et remitti virtutem existiquarumque rerum ad luxuriam pertinentium inferri, quod eis Nullum aditum esse ad eos mercatoribus; nihil pati vini relitura moribusque Caesar cum quaereret, Ambianorum pervenit, qui se suaque omnia sine mora deomnibusque armis ex oppido collatis, ab eo loco in fines tudine praestabat, sexcentos obsides poposcit. civitas magna inter Belgas auctoritate atque hominum multieos in fidem recepturum et conservaturum dixit; quod erat 25 sent patriamque virtutem proiecissent; confirmare, sese neque atque incusare reliquos Belgas, qui se populo Romano dedidislegatos missuros neque ullam condicionem pacis accepturos XV. Caesar honoris Divitiaci atque Aeduorum causa sese Eorum fines Nervii attingebant; quorum de nasic reperiebat: His traditis

### He marches against the Nervii, who attack him while encamping.

ro exercitui aditus non esset. 5 Atrebătis et Viromanduis, finitimis suis (nam his utrisque viderentur, itinere: mulieres, quique per aetatem ad pugnam inutiles spectari etiam ab his Aduatucorum copias atque esse in passuum x abesse: trans id flumen omnes Nervios consedisse adventumque ibi Romanorum exspectare una cum persuaserant, uti eandem belli fortunam experirentur); exex captivis, Sabim flumen ab castris suis non amplius milia XVI. Cum per eorum fines triduum iter fecisset, inveniebat in eum locum coniecisse, quo propter paludes

30 intrari, sed ne perspici quidem posset. 15 est, eorum dierum consuetudine itineris nostri exercitus peragminis nostri impediretur, non omittendum sibi consilium muri hae sepes munimentum praeberent, quo non modo non intrari, sed ne perspici quidem posset. His rebus cum iter ramis enatis et rubis sentibusque interiectis effecerant, ut instar teneris arboribus incisis atque inflexis crebrisque in latitudinem possunt, pedestribus valent copiis), quo facilius finitimorum non auderent. Adiuvabat etiam eorum consilium, qui rem pedimentisque direptis futurum ut reliquae contra consistere spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinis adoriri; qua pulsa imspecta, nocte ad Nervios pervenerunt atque his demoniter facerent, quidam ex his, ut postea ex captivis cognitum equitatum, si praedandi causa ad eos venissent, impedirent, (neque enim ad hoc tempus ei rei student, sed, quicquid deferebant, quod Nervii antiquitus, cum equitatu nihil possent prima legio in castra venisset reliquaeque legiones magnum numerum intercedere, neque esse quicquam negotii, cum strarunt, inter singulas legiones impedimentorum magnum Belgis reliquisque Gallis complures Caesarem secuti una mittit, qui locum idoneum castris deligant. Cum ex dediticiis Nervii existimaverunt. XVII. His rebus cognitis exploratores centurionesque prae-

35 Sabim, quod supra nominavimus, vergebat. pari acclivitate collis nascebatur adversus huic et contrarius, XVIII. Loci natura erat haec, quem locum nostri castris Collis ab summo aequaliter declivis ad flumen Ab eo flumine

minis erat altitudo circiter pedum trium. secundum flumen paucae stationes equitum videbantur. silvas hostes in occulto sese continebant; in aperto loco silvestris, ut non facile introrsus perspici posset. Intra eas passus circiter ducentos infimus apertus, ab superiore parte

tium equitatu proelium commiserunt. Cum se illi identidem claudebant praesidioque impedimentis erant. Equites nostri legiones, quae proxume conscriptae post eas totius exercitus impedimenta collocarat; inde duae consuetudine sua Caesar sex legiones expeditas ad Nervios detulerant. Nam quod ad hostis appropinquabat, copiis; sed ratio ordoque agminis aliter se habebat ac Belgae silvas aciem ordinesque constituerant atque ipsi sese contempus inter eos committendi proelii convenerat, ut exercitus ab eis, qui in silvis abditi latebant, visa sunt, quod interim legiones sex, quae primae venerant, opere dimenso castra munire coeperunt. Ubi prima impedimenta nostri porrecta loca aperta pertinebant, cedentes insequi auderent, petum facerent neque nostri longius, quam quem ad finem in silvas ad suos reciperent ac rursus ex silva in nostros imcum funditoribus sagittariisque flumen transgressi cum hosad nostra castra atque eos, qui in opere occupati erant, tempore et ad silvas et in flumine et iam in manibus nostris incredibili celeritate ad flumen decucurrerunt, ut paene uno in nostros equites fecerunt. His facile pulsis ac proturbatis firmaverant, subito omnibus copiis provolaverunt impetumque hostes viderentur. XIX. Caesar equitatu praemisso subsequebatur omnibus Eadem autem celeritate adverso erant, totum agmen ducebat; ö 20 5

His troops, taken unawares, are on one side victorious, on the other routed.

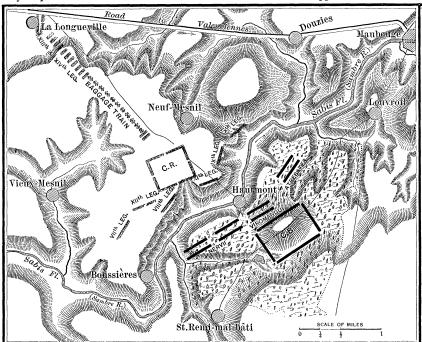
sendi, acies instruenda, milites cohortandi, signum dandum. qui paulo longius aggeris petendi causa processerant, arcesoporteret, signum tuba dandum, ab opere revocandi milites, proponendum, quod erat insigne, cum ad arma concurri Quarum rerum magnam partem temporis brevitas XX. Caesari omnia uno tempore erant agenda: vexillum et suc-

5 ab opere singulisque legionibus singulos legatos Caesar disipsi sibi praescribere quam ab aliis doceri poterant, et quod exspectabant, sed per se, quae videbantur, administrabant. tatem et celeritatem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium cedere nisi munitis castris vetuerat. proeliis exercitati, quid fieri oporteret, non minus commode erant subsidio, scientia atque usus militum, quod superioribus cessus hostium impediebat. His difficultatibus duae H propter propinqui-

ro milites, quam in partem fors obtulit, decucurrit et ad legio-20 tegimenta detrudenda tempus defuerit. Quam quisque tinerent, quod non longius hostes aberant, quam quo telum 15 adigi posset, proelii committendi signum dedit. Atque in dimitteret. ad haec constitit, ne in quaerendis suis pugnandi tempus opere in partem casu devenit quaeque prima signa conspexit, accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeas induendas scutisque occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitas hostiumque tam paratus ad dimicandum animus, ut non modo ad insignia alteram partem item cohortandi causa profectus pugnantibus neu perturbarentur animo, hostiumque impetum fortiter sushortatus, quam uti suae pristinae virtutis memoriam retinerent nem decimam devenit. Milites non longiore oratione co-XXI. Caesar necessariis rebus imperatis ad cohortandos

25 collis et necessitas temporis, quam ut rei militaris ratio atque provideri, neque ab uno omnia imperia administrari poterant. subsidia collocari neque, quid in quaque parte opus esset, stravimus, interiectis prospectus impediretur, neque varii sequebantur. hostibus resisterent, sepibusque densissimis, ut ante demonordo postulabat, cum diversis legionibus aliae alia in parte Itaque in tanta rerum iniquitate fortunae quoque eventus XXII. Instructo exercitu, magis ut loci natura deiectusque

35 animatos vulneribusque confectos Atrebates (nam his ea pars impeditam interfecerunt. et transire obvenerat) celeriter ex loco superiore in flumen compulerunt parte acie constiterant, pilis emissis cursu ac lassitudine ex-XXIII. Legionis nonae et decimae milites, ut in sinistra conantes insecuti gladiis magnam partem eorum Ipsi transire flumen non dubi-



### EXPLANATION.

C.R. Roman Camp.

Leg. The Roman Legions, arrayed as indicated in the text.

C. B. Camp of the Belgians. The dotted lines around it on all sides indicate the extent of the forest that covered the ground at the time of the battle.

Opposite the left of the Roman line stood the Atrebates, opposite the centre the Viromandui, and opposite the right the Nervii.



hostes redintegrato proelio in fugam coniecerunt. Item alia in parte diversae duae legiones, undecima et octava, profipars summum castrorum locum petere coepit. tenderunt; quorum pars aperto latere legiones circumvenire, 10 duognato, qui summam imperii tenebat, ad eum locum conconstitisset, omnes Nervii confertissimo agmine duce cornu legio duodecima et non magno ab ea intervallo septima fronte et ab sinistra parte nudatis castris, cum in dextro gatis Viromanduis, quibuscum erant congressi, ex loco supetaverunt et in locum iniquum progressi rursus in ipsis fluminis ripis proeliabantur. At totis fere a resistentes

fugere vidissent, desperatis nostris rebus domum contendelegiones premi et paene circumventas teneri, calones, equites, venerant, cum multitudine hostium castra compleri nostra, aliam in partem perterriti ferebantur. Quibus omnibus rebus permoti equites Treveri, quorum inter Gallos virtutis opinio impedimentis veniebant, clamor fremitusque oriebatur, aliique cum respexissent et hostes in nostris castris versari vidissent, praecipites fugae sese mandabant. Simul eorum, qui cum victores flumen transisse conspexerant, praedandi causa egressi, calones, qui ab decumana porta ac summo iugo collis nostros occurrebant ac rursus aliam in partem fugam petebant, et 15 pulsos dixeram, cum se in castra reciperent, adversis hostibus pedites, qui cum eis una fuerant, quos primo hostium impetu eorum hostes potitos civitati renuntiaverunt. runt; Romanos pulsos superatosque, castris impedimentisque funditores, Numidas diversos dissipatosque in omnes partes est singularis, qui auxilii causa ab civitate ad Caesarem missi XXIV. Eodem tempore equites nostri levisque armaturae 25

But at length the Nervii are totally defeated; the few not slain surrender

locum collatis duodecimae legionis confertos milites sibi trum cornu profectus, ubi suos urgeri signisque in unum amisso, reliquarum cohortium omnibus fere centurionibus aut 35 omnibus centurionibus occisis signiferoque interfecto, signo XXV. Caesar ab decimae legionis cohortatione ad dexpugnam esse impedimento vidit, quartae cohortis

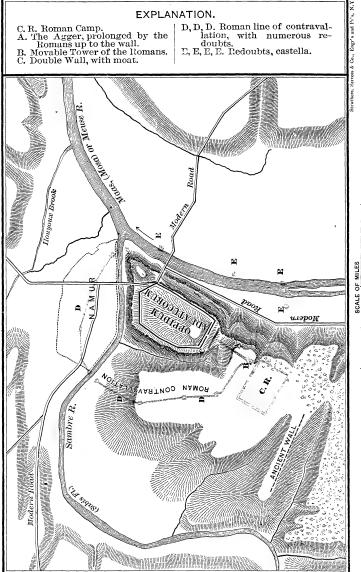
ro latis reliquos cohortatus milites signa inferre et manipulos 5 neque a fronte ex inferiore loco subeuntes intermittere et simis uni militi detracto, quod ipse eo sine scuto venerat, in ullum esse subsidium, quod summitti posset: scuto ab novisab utroque latere instare et rem esse in angusto vidit, neque novissimis deserto proelio excedere ac tela vitare, hostis sustinere non posset, reliquos esse tardiores et nonnullos ab simo viro, multis gravibusque vulneribus confecto, ut iam se operam navare cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardatus que in conspectu imperatoris etiam in extremis suis rebus spe illata militibus ac redintegrato animo, cum pro se quislaxare iussit, quo facilius gladiis uti possent. Cuius adventu primam aciem processit centurionibusque nominatim appelvulneratis aut occisis, in his primipilo P. Sextio Baculo, fortis-

20 ferret, neque timerent, ne aversi ab hoste circumvenirentur, 30 reliqui fecerunt. stiterat, nostris misit. Qui cum ex equitum et calonum fuga, quo in loco res esset, quantoque in periculo et castra et legiones et tris castris gererentur, conspicatus decimam legionem subsidio castris hostium potitus et ex loco superiore, quae res in nossigna in hostes inferrent. Quo facto cum alius alii subsidium imperator versaretur, cognovissent, nihil ad celeritatem sibi summo colle ab hostibus conspiciebantur, et Titus Labienus impedimentis fuerant, proelio nuntiato cursu incitato in milites legionum duarum, quae in novissimo agmine praesidio audacius resistere ac fortius pugnare coeperunt. monuit, ut paulatim sese legiones coniungerent et conversa XXVI. Caesar cum septimam legionem, quae iuxta conitem urgeri ab hoste vidisset, tribunos militum

vero, ut turpitudinem fugae virtute delerent, omnibus in locis hostes conspicati etiam inermes armatis occurrerunt, equites innixi proelium redintegrarent. ut nostri, etiam qui vulneribus confecti procubuissent, scutis ut, cum primi eorum cecidissent, proximi iacentibus insisteetiam in extrema spe salutis tantam virtutem praestiterunt, pugnarunt, quo se legionariis militibus praeferrent. At hostes XXVII. Horum adventu tanta rerum commutatio est facta, Tum calones perterritos

### EXPLANATION.

- C. R. Roman Camp.
  A. The Agger, prolonged by the Romans up to the wall.
  B. Movable Tower of the Romans.
  C. Double Wall, with moat.
- D, D, D. Roman line of contraval-lation, with numerous re-doubts. E, E, E, E. Redoubts, castella.



Lib. II. c. 29. sqq.

PLAN VI.

To face p. 90.



magnitudo redegerat. subire iniquissimum locum, quae facilia ex difficillimis animi esse transire latissimum flumen, ascendere altissimas ripas, 5 nequiquam tantae virtutis homines nostros conicerent et pila intercepta remitterent: ut non coacervatis cadaveribus, qui superessent, ut ex tumulo tela in rent atque ex eorum corporibus pugnarent; his deiectis iudicari deberet ausos

qui arma ferre possent, sese redactos esse dixerunt. et in commemoranda civitatis calamitate ex sexcentis ad consensu legatos ad Caesarem miserunt seque ei dediderunt, tum, victis nihil tutum arbitrarentur, omnium, qui supererant, dixeramus, hac pugna nuntiata, cum victoribus nihil impedicum pueris mulieribusque in aestuaria ac paludes coniectos gente ac nomine Nerviorum redacto, maiores natu, quos una suosque prohiberent. uti iussit et finitimis imperavit, ut ab iniuria et maleficio se tur, diligentissime conservavit suisque tres senatores, ex hominum milibus Lx vix ad quingentos, Caesar, ut in miseros ac supplices usus misericordia videre-XXVIII. Hoc proelio facto et prope ad internicionem finibus atque oppidis

# The Aduatuci gather in one stronghold, which Caesar besieges.

sertis sua omnia in unum oppidum egregie natura munitum itinere domum reverterunt; cunctis oppidis castellisque derant: tum magni ponderis saxa et praeacutas trabes in muro collocabant. Ipsi erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque prognati, relinquebatur; quem locum duplici altissimo muro munieacclivis aditus in latitudinem non amplius ducentorum pedum altissimas rupes despectusque haberet, una ex parte contulerunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitu partibus bus copiis auxilio Nerviis venirent, hac pugna nuntiata ex dium sex milia hominum una reliquerunt. Hi post eorum citra flumen Rhenum depositis custodiam ex suis ac praesieis impedimentis, quae secum agere ac portare non poterant, qui, cum iter in provinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, obitum multos annos a finitimis exagitati, cum alias bellum 35 XXIX. Aduatuci, de quibus supra scripsimus, cum omni-

pace facta hunc sibi domicilio locum delegerunt. inferrent, alias illatum defenderent, consensu eorum omnium

ro bus aut quibus viribus praesertim homines tantulae staturae moturos sese confiderent? excursiones faciebant parvulisque proeliis cum nostris contendebant; postea vallo passuum in circuitu xv milium cresuorum brevitas nostra contemptui est) tanti oneris turrim (nam plerumque omnibus Gallis prae magnitudine corporum machinatio ab tanto spatio instrueretur: quibusnam maniprimum irridere ex muro atque increpitare vocibus, quod tanta vineis actis aggere exstructo turrim procul constitui viderunt, brisque castellis circummuniti oppido sese continebant. XXX. Ac primo adventu exercitus nostri crebras ex oppido

# They surrender, attempt treachery, are sold into slavery

20 petere ac deprecari: si forte pro sua clementia ac mansuetu-15 runt, nova atque inusitata specie commoti legatos ad Caesaeum casum deducerentur, quamvis fortunam a populo dominari consuessent. mano pati, quam ab his per cruciatum interfici, inter quos defendere traditis armis non possent. Sibi praestare, si in altitudinis machinationes tanta celeritate promovere possent, se suaque omnia eorum potestati permittere dixerunt. Unum timos esse inimicos ac suae virtuti invidere; a quibus conservandos, ne se armis despoliaret. Sibi omnes fere finidine, quam ipsi ab aliis audirent, statuisset, Aduatucos esse istimare, Romanos sine ope divina bellum gerere, qui tantae rem de pace miserunt, qui, ad hunc modum locuti: non ex-XXXI. Ubi vero moveri et appropinquare moenibus vide-

35 multitudine de muro in fossam, quae erat ante oppidum, iacta, 3º quam murum aries attigisset, se dedidissent; sed deditionis sic ut prope summam muri aggerisque altitudinem acervi suos, quae imperarentur, facere dixerunt. nullam esse condicionem nisi armis traditis. sua quam merito eorum civitatem conservaturum, si prius, dediticiis populi Romani iniuriam inferrent. Nerviis fecisset, facturum finitimisque imperaturum, ne quam XXXII. Ad haec Caesar respondit: Se magis consuetudine Armorum magna Re nuntiata ad Se id, quod in

armorum adaequarent, et tamen circiter parte tertia, ut postea factis eo die pace sunt usi. perspectum est, celata atque in oppido retenta, portis pate-

quae retinuerant et celaverant, armis, partim scutis ex corsilio, quod deditione facta nostros praesidia deducturos iniuriam acciperent. Illi, ante inito, ut intellectum est, conquinquaginta trium. eis, qui emerant, capitum numerus ad eum relatus est milium nostris sectionem eius oppidi universam Caesar vendidit. portis, cum iam defenderet nemo, atque intromissis militibus reliqui in oppidum reiecti sunt. Postridie eius diei refractis iacerent, pugnari debuit, cum in una virtute omnis spes sa-lutis consisteret. Occisis ad hominum milibus quattuor, salutis iniquo loco contra eos, qui ex vallo turribusque tela ab hostibus ita acriter est, ut a viris fortibus in extrema spe facta, ex proximis castellis eo concursum est, pugnatumque omnibus copiis repentino ex oppido eruptionem fecerunt. minime arduus ad nostras munitiones ascensus videbatur, exiguitas postulabat, pellibus induxerant, tertia vigilia, qua tice factis aut viminibus intextis, quae subito, ut temporis denique indiligentius servaturos crediderant, partim cum his, ex oppido exire iussit, ne quam noctu oppidani ab militibus Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperarat, ignibus significatione XXXIII. Sub vesperum Caesar portas claudi militesque quattuor, 20 3

Several states along the coast are subdued by P. Crassus.

tates Oceanumque attingunt, certior factus est, omnes eas legione una miserat ad Venetos, Venellos, Osismos, Curiosoliredactas. tas, Esubios, Aulercos, Redones, quae sunt maritimae civi-XXXIV. in dicionem potestatemque populi Romani Eodem tempore a Publio Crasso, quem cum 25

goes into winter quarters; a thanksgiving is decreed at Rome. The German tribes are impressed by Caesar's victories; the army

belli ad barbaros opinio perlata est, uti ab eis nationibus, quae trans Rhenum incolerent, mitterentur legati ad Caesarem, XXXV. His rebus gestis omni Gallia pacata, tanta huius

ubi bellum gesserat, legionibus in hibernacula deductis, Italiam profectus est. legationes Caesar, quod in Italiam Illyricumque properabat, inita proxima aestate ad se reverti iussit. Ipse, in Carnutes, accidit nulli. dies quindecim supplicatio decreta est, quod ante id tempus Andes Turonesque, quae civitates propinquae his locis erant, qui se obsides daturas, imperata facturas pollicerentur. Quas Ob easque res ex litteris Caesaris in

### COMMENTARIUS TERTIUS.

### Caesar stations Galba with a small force in the Alps.

I. Cum in Italiam proficisceretur Caesar, Servium Galbam cum legione duodecima et parte equitatus in Nantuatis, Veragros Sedunosque misit, qui ab finibus Allobrogum et lacu Lemanno et flumine Rhodano ad summas Alpes pertinent. Causa mittendi fuit, quod iter per Alpes, quo magno cum 5 periculo magnisque cum portoriis mercatores ire consuerant, patefieri volebat. Huic permisit, si opus esse arbitraretur, uti in his locis legionem hiemandi causa collocaret. Galba, secundis aliquot proeliis factis castellisque compluribus eorum expugnatis, missis ad eum undique legatis obsidibusque datis 10 et pace facta, constituit cohortes duas in Nantuatibus collocare et ipse cum reliquis eius legionis cohortibus in vico Veragrorum, qui appellatur Octodurus, hiemare; qui vicus positus in valle, non magna adiecta planitie, altissimis montibus undique continetur. Cum hunc in duas partes flumen 15 divideret, alteram partem eius vici Gallis ad hiemandum concessit, alteram vacuam ab his relictam cohortibus attribuit. Eum locum vallo fossaque munivit.

### There is a sudden uprising of the mountain tribes.

II. Cum dies hibernorum complures transissent, frumentumque eo comportari iussisset, subito per exploratores certior 20 factus est, ex ea parte vici, quam Gallis concesserat, omnes noctu discessisse, montesque, qui impenderent, a maxima multitudine Sedunorum et Veragrorum teneri. Id aliquot de causis acciderat, ut subito Galli belli renovandi legionisque opprimendae consilium caperent: primum, quod legionem, 25 neque eam plenissimam detractis cohortibus duabus et compluribus singillatim, qui commeatus petendi causa missi erant, propter paucitatem despiciebant; tum etiam, quod propter

iniquitatem loci, cum ipsi ex montibus in vallem decurrerent et tela conicerent, ne primum quidem posse impetum suum sustineri existimabant. Accedebat, quod suos ab se liberos abstractos obsidum nomine dolebant, et Romanos non solum 5 itinerum causa, sed etiam perpetuae possessionis culmina Alpium occupare conari et ea loca finitimae provinciae adiungere sibi persuasum habebant.

III. His nuntiis acceptis Galba, cum neque opus hibernorum munitionesque plene essent perfectae, neque de frumento reliquoque commeatu satis esset provisum, quod deditione facta obsidibusque acceptis nihil de bello timendum existimaverat, consilio celeriter convocato sententias exquirere coepit. Quo in consilio, cum tantum repentini periculi praeter opinionem accidisset ac iam omnia fere superiora loca multitudine armatorum completa conspicerentur, neque subsidio veniri neque commeatus supportari interclusis itineribus possent, prope iam desperata salute nonnullae huiusmodi sententiae dicebantur, ut impedimentis relictis eruptione facta isdem itineribus, quibus eo pervenissent, ad salutem conzo tenderent. Maiori tamen parti placuit, hoc reservato ad extremum consilio interim rei eventum experiri et castra defendere.

### They are repulsed by Galba, who withdraws to the Province.

IV. Brevi spatio interiecto, vix ut eis rebus, quas constituissent, collocandis atque administrandis tempus daretur, hostes
25 ex omnibus partibus signo dato decurrere, lapides gaesaque
in vallum conicere. Nostri primo integris viribus fortiter repugnare neque ullum frustra telum ex loco superiore mittere,
ut quaeque pars castrorum nudata defensoribus premi videbatur, eo occurrere et auxilium ferre, sed hoc superari, quod
30 diuturnitate pugnae hostes defessi proelio excedebant, alii
integris viribus succedebant; quarum rerum a nostris propter
paucitatem fieri nihil poterat, ac non modo defesso ex pugna
excedendi, sed ne saucio quidem eius loci, ubi constiterat,
relinquendi ac sui recipiendi facultas dabatur.

V. Cum iam amplius horis sex continenter pugnaretur ac non solum vires, sed etiam tela nostros deficerent, atque

spem salutis in virtute ponerent. auxilium experirentur. rent, post dato signo ex castris erumperent atque omnem ac tantummodo tela missa exciperent seque ex labore refice- 10 riter milites certiores facit paulisper intermitterent proelium unam esse spem salutis docent, si eruptione facta extremum vir et consilii magni et virtutis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque neribus diximus, et item Gaius Volusenus, tribunus militum, 5 centurio, quem Nervico proelio compluribus confectum vultremum perducta casum, Publius Sextius Baculus, primi pili dere et fossas complere coepissent, resque esset iam ad exhostes acrius instarent languidioribusque nostris vallum scin-Itaque convocatis centurionibus cele-

viderat, maxime frumenti commeatusque inopia permotus 25 in hiberna consilio venisse meminerat, aliis occurrisse rebus quod saepius fortunam temptare Galba nolebat atque alio se se in castra munitionesque suas recipiunt. Quo proelio facto, fugam coniciunt ac ne in locis quidem superioribus consistere 20 constabat, plus tertia parte interfecta reliquos perterritos in amplius xxx, quem numerum barbarorum ad castra venisse undique fortuna eos, qui in spem potiundorum castrorum venerant, colligendi hostibus facultatem relinquunt. Ita commutata 15 eruptione facta neque cognoscendi, quid fieret, neque sui perduxit ibique hiemavit. rante incolumem legionem in Nantuatis, inde in Allobroges reverti contendit, ac nullo hoste prohibente aut iter demopostero die omnibus eius vici aedificiis incensis in provinciam patiuntur. Sic omnibus hostium copiis fusis armisque exutis VI. Quod iussi sunt, faciunt ac subito omnibus portis circumventos interficiunt et ex hominum milibus

## The Veneti incite the Armorican states to revolt

cognoscere volebat, subitum bellum in Gallia coortum est. profectus esset, quod eas quoque nationes adire et regiones victis in Alpibus Sedunis, atque ita inita hieme in Illyricum tam Galliam existimaret, superatis Belgis, expulsis Germanis, Eius belli haec fuit causa. P. Crassus adulescens cum legi- 35 VII. His rebus gestis cum omnibus de causis Caesar paca- 30 septima proximus mare Oceanum in Andibus hiemarat

5 cum Tito Silio in Venětos. bios, Marcus Trebius Gallus in Curiosolitas, Quintus Velanius dimisit; quo in numero est Titus Terrasidius missus in Esuque militum complures in finitimas civitates frumenti causa Is, quod in his locis inopia frumenti erat, praefectos tribunos-

20 quam a maioribus acceperant, permanere quam Romanorum 15 ducti, ut sunt Gallorum subita et repentina consilia, eadem 10 magno impetu maris atque aperto, paucis portibus interiectis, Crassum mittunt, si velit suos recipere, obsides sibi remittat suam sententiam perducta communem legationem ad Publium servitutem perferre mallent. Omni ora maritima celeriter ad laturos, reliquasque civitates sollicitant, ut in ea libertate, muni consilio acturos eundemque omnis fortunae exitum esse legatis per suos principes inter se coniurant, nihil nisi comde causa Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent, et celeriter missis reciperaturos existimabant. Horum auctoritate finitimi ad-Velanii, quod per eos suos se obsides, quos Crasso dedissent, quos tenent ipsi, omnes fere, qui eo mari uti consuerunt, habent vectigales. Ab his fit initium retinendi Silii atque entia atque usu nauticarum rerum reliquos antecedunt et in plurimas, quibus in Britanniam navigare consuerunt, et sciorae maritimae regionum earum, quod et naves habent Veneti VIII. Huius est civitatis longe amplissima auctoritas omnis

# Caesar prepares to wage aggressive war against them

3º civitates cognito Caesaris adventu, simul quod, quantum in 25 ipse aberat longius, naves interim longas aedificari in flumine providere instituunt, hoc maiore spe, quod multum natura ad omnes nationes sanctum inviolatumque semper fuisset, se facinus admisissent, intellegebant, legatos, quod nomen potuit, ad exercitum contendit. Veneti reliquaeque item stitui, nautas gubernatoresque comparari iubet. loci confidebant. bellum parare et maxime ea, quae ad usum navium pertinent, retentos ab se et in vincula coniectos, pro magnitudine periculi celeriter administratis, ipse, cum primum per anni tempus Ligere, quod influit in Oceanum, remiges ex provincia in-IX. Quibus de rebus Caesar ab Crasso certior factus, quod Pedestria esse itinera concisa aestuariis, His rebus

ubi Caesarem primum esse bellum gesturum constabat, quam tionem in concluso mari atque in vastissimo atque apertissimo vada, portus, insulas novisse; ac longe aliam esse naviganavium neque eorum locorum, ubi bellum gesturi essent, mum navibus posse, Romanos neque ullam facultatem habere ac iam ut omnia contra opinionem acciderent, tamen se plurifrumenti inopiam diutius apud se morari posse confidebant; tatemque portuum sciebant, neque nostros exercitus propter navigationem impeditam propter inscientiam locorum pauciregiones posita est, arcessunt. napios adsciscunt; auxilia ex Britannia, plurimas possunt, cogunt. Socios sibi ad id bellum Osismos, frumenta ex agris in oppida comportant, naves in Venetiam, Oceano perspiciebant. His initis consiliis oppida muniunt, Namnetes, Ambiliatos, Morinos, Diablintres, quae contra eas ö

putavit. iniuriae retentorum equitum Romanorum, rebellio facta post dimus, sed multa Caesarem tamen ad id bellum incitabant: licere arbitrarentur. Itaque cum intellegeret, omnes fere imprimis ne, hac parte neglecta, reliquae nationes sibi idem 20 deditionem, defectio datis obsidibus, tot civitatum coniuratio, spirarent, partiendum sibi ac latius distribuendum exercitum 25 condicionem servitutis odisse, priusquam plures civitates conexcitari, omnes autem homines natura libertati studere Gallos novis rebus studere et ad bellum mobiliter celeriterque X. Erant hae difficultates belli gerendi, quas supra osten-

bantur, si per vim navibus flumen transire conentur, prohicontineat Germanosque, qui auxilio ab Belgis arcessiti diceproximi nationes coniungantur. Quintum Titurium Sabinum legatum 35 cum legionibus tribus in Venellos, Curiosolites Lexoviosque magno mittit, qui eam manum distinendam curet. tum adulescentem classi Gallicisque navibus, quas ex Pic-XI. Itaque Titum Labienum legatum in Treveros, Publium Crassum cum cohortibus legionariis xII et numero equitatus in Aquitaniam proficisci iubet, ne nationibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae flumini Rheno sunt, Remos reliquosque Belgas adeat atque in officio cum equitatu mittit. Decimum Bru-

iusserat, praeficit et, cum primum posset, in Venetos proficisci tonibus et Santonis reliquisque pacatis regionie de convenire Ipse eo pedestribus copiis contendit.

## The strongholds and ships of the Veneti.

oppida recipiebant; ibi se rursus isdem opportunitatibus loci 15 defendebant. Haec eo facilius magnam partem aestatis faciero operis forte superati, extruso mari aggere ac molibus atque s extremis lingulis promunturisque neque pedibus aditum haprope nullis portibus, difficultas navigandi. maque erat vasto atque aperto mari, magnis aestibus, raris ac bant, quod nostrae naves tempestatibus detinebantur, sumfacultatem habebant, sua deportabant omnia seque in proxima perant, magno numero navium appulso, cuius rei summam his oppidi moenibus adaequatis, suis fortunis desperare coedorum oppugnatio impediebatur; ac si quando, magnitudine ente aestu naves in vadis afflictarentur. Ita utraque re oppisemper horarum xII spatio, neque navibus, quod rursus minuberent, cum ex alto se aestus incitavisset, quod is accedit Erant eiusmodi fere situs oppidorum, ut posita in

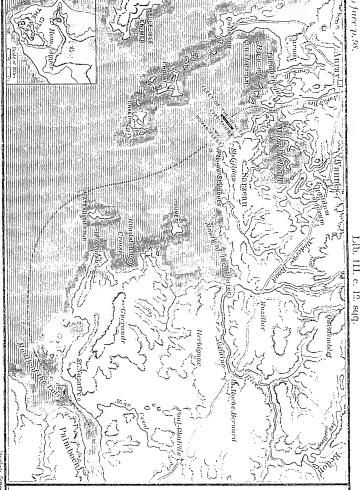
20 mataeque erant : carinae aliquanto planiores quam nostrarum 35 et accommodatiora. 30 tempestates Oceani tantosque impetus ventorum sustineri ac rendam; transtra pedalibus in altitudinem trabibus scientiam, sive eo, confectae, hae sive propter lini inopiam atque eius usus insent; prorae admodum erectae, atque item puppes ad magnavium, quo facilius vada ac decessum aestus excipere posreliqua pro loci natura, pro vi tempestatum illis essent aptiora gressus erat, ut una celeritate et pulsu remorum praestaret, trabantur. tanta onera navium regi velis non satis commode posse arbiferreis catenis revinctae; pelles pro velis alutaeque tenuiter clavis ferreis digiti pollicis crassitudine; ancorae pro totae factae ex robore ad quamvis vim et contumeliam perfenitudinem fluctuum tempestatumque accommodatae; naves poterant (tanta in eis erat firmitudo), neque propter altitudi-XIII. Namque ipsorum naves ad hunc modum factae ar-Cum his navibus nostrae classi eiusmodi conquod est magis verisimile, quod tantas Neque enim his nostrae rostro nocere confixa funibus

25

Plan VII.

### EXPLANATION.

The doty doth expresents the course of Caesur's fleet from the mouth of the Loire to the scene of the manner of besieging a town. The small plan on the left represents the manner of besieging a town of the Yeneti.





saxa et cautes timerent; quarum rerum omnium nostris navi- 5 facilius et in vadis consisterent tutius et ab aestu relictae nihil ventus coepisset et se vento dedissent, et tempestatem ferrent nem facile telum adigebatur, et eadem de causa minus combus casus erat extimescendus. mode copulis continebantur. Accedebat, ut, cum saevire

### Caesar, victorious in a naval battle, wreaks vengeance on the Veneti.

quod in conspectu Caesaris atque omnis exercitus res gerevirtute, qua nostri milites facile superabant, atque eo magis, uno tempore eriperetur. Reliquum erat certamen positum in armamentisque consisteret, his ereptis omnis usus navium rio concidebant, ut, cum omnis Gallicis navibus spes in velis citato praerumpebantur. Quibus abscisis antemnae necessadestinabant, comprehensi adductique erant, navigio remis inmuralium falcium. His cum funes, qui antemnas ad malos praeacutae insertae affixaeque longuriis, non absimili derent. Una erat magno usui res praeparata a nostris, falces commode tela adigi possent et missa ab Gallis gravius accibaris navibus superabat, ut neque ex inferiore loco satis turribus autem excitatis, tamen has altitudo puppium ex barinsisterent. Rostro enim noceri non posse cognoverant; attributae, constabat, quid agerent aut quam rationem pugnae 15 bunis militum centurionibusque, quibus singulae naves erant constiterunt; neque satis Bruto, qui classi praeerat, vel.triarmorum ornatissimae profectae ex portu nostris adversae circiter ccxx naves eorum paratissimae atque omni genere classem. Quae ubi convenit ac primum ab hostibus visa est, oppidis reprimi neque eis noceri posse, statuit exspectandam frustra tantum laborem sumi, neque hostium fugam captis tus in mare, ab exercitu tenebantur. enim colles ac loca superiora, unde erat propinquus despecbatur, ut nullum paulo fortius factum latere posset: omnes 3º XIV. Compluribus expugnatis oppidis Caesar, ubi intellexit, forma ö

dere in hostium naves contendebant. XV. Disiectis, ut diximus, antemnis, cum singulas binae ternae naves circumsteterant, milites Quod postquam bar- 35 summa vi transcen-

 $_{5}$  se ex loco commovere non possent. negotium conficiendum maxime fuit opportuna: nam singunumero noctis interventu ad terram pervenerint, cum ab hora ventus ferebat, tanta subito malacia ac tranquillitas exstitit, ut contenderunt. cum ei rei nullum reperiretur auxilium, fuga salutem petere bari fieri animadverterunt, expugnatis compluribus navibus, fere quarta usque ad solis occasum pugnaretur. nostri consectati expugnaverunt, ut perpaucae ex omni Ac iam conversis in eam partem navibus, quo Quae quidem res ad

15 rent, neque gravioris aetatis, in quibus aliquid consilii aut dignitatis fuit, timae confectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventus, omnes etiam omni senatu necato reliquos sub corona vendidit. quum tempus a barbaris ius legatorum conservaretur. gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit, quo diligentius Itaque se suaque omnia Caesari dediderunt. In quos eo locum coëgerant; quibus amissis reliqui neque quo se recipeeo convenerant, tum, navium quod ubique fuerat, unum in XVI. Quo proelio bellum Venetorum totiusque orae mariquemadmodum oppida defenderent, habebant. ın relı-

## Meanwhile Titurius subdues the Venelli.

20 ઝ 35 militum vocibus cultura et cotidiano labore revocabat. paucis diebus Aulerci Eburovices Lexoviique senatu suo inimperii tenebat earum omnium civitatum, quae defecerant, venerat, quos spes multitudo ex Gallia perditorum hominum latronumque seque cum Viridovice coniunxerunt: magnaque praeterea terfecto, quod auctores belli esse nolebant, portas clauserunt Venellorum pervenit. Sabinus cum eis copiis, timoris praebuit, ut iam ad vallum castrorum hostes accedere bus in contemptionem Sabinus veniret, sed etiam nostrorum copiis pugnandi potestatem faceret, ut iam non solum hostieum duum milium spatio consedisset cotidieque productis bus rebus loco castris sese tenebat, quibus exercitum magnasque copias coegerat, atque his Dum haec in Venetis geruntur, Quintus Titurius nonnihil carperetur; tantamque opinionem praedandi studiumque bellandi ab agri-His praeerat Viridŏvix ac summam quas a Caesare acceperat, in fines cum Viridovix contra Sabinus idoneo omni-

dimicandum non existimabat. teneret, nisi aequo loco aut opportunitate aliqua data legato dine hostium, praesertim eo absente, Id ea de causa faciebat, quod cum tanta multituqui summam imperii

fieri auxilii causa secum habebat. Huic magnis praemiis citationibusque persuadet, uti ad hostes transeat, et, rem auxilii rerendi causa proficiscatur. Quod ubi nocte Sabinus clam ex castris exercitum educat et ad Caesarem Romanorum proponit, quibus angustiis ipse Caesar a dam hominem et callidum delegit, fossas Romanorum compleant, ad castra pergunt explorata victoria, sarmentis virgultisque collectis, quibus capiant et ad castra contendant. Qua re concessa laeti, ut concilio dimittunt, quam ab his sit concessum, arma rebus adducti non prius Viridovicem reliquosque duces ex 20 quod fere libenter homines id, quod volunt, credunt. His parum diligenter ab eis erat provisum, spes Venetici belli, et cunctatio, perfugae hoc consilium Gallos hortabantur; amittendam non esse, ad castra iri oportere. Venetis prematur, docet, neque longius abesse, quin proxima XVIII. Hac confirmata opinione timoris idoneum quenconclamant omnes, velit, edocet. Qui ubi pro perfuga ad eos venit, timoconfirmatio, inopia cibariorum, cui rei occasionem negotii bene gerendi superiorum dierum Sabini Gallum, ex eis, transeat, et, Multae res ad auditum polliquos . ö

runt, ut quam minimum spatii ad se colligendos armandosque acclivis circiter passus mille. Huc magno cursu contendeac defatigatione, virtute militum et superiorum pugnarum exfieri iubet. Factum est opportunitate loci, hostium inscientia hortatus cupientibus signum dat. Impeditis hostibus propter ea, quae ferebant, onera, subito duabus portis eruptionem Romanis daretur, exanimatique pervenerunt. Sabinus suos iiquerunt. reliquos equites consectati paucos, qui ex fuga evaserant, remilites nostri consecuti magnum numerum eorum occiderunt; 35 ercitatione, ut ne unum quidem nostrorum impetum ferrent statim terga verterent. Quos impeditos integris viribus Sabini Locus erat castrorum editus et paulatim ab imo 25 victoria Sic uno tempore et de Caesar certior navali pugna Sabinus et tactus est, civitatesque

pienda Gallorum alacer ac promptus est animus, sic omnes se statim Titurio dediderunt. ac minime resistens ad calamitates perferendas mens eorum Nam ut ad bella suscimollis

### Crassus, entering Aquitania, conquers the Sontiates The Soldurii.

0 15 civitates Galliae provinciae finitimae his regionibus, nominasuo pulso atque insequentibus nostris, subito pedestres copias, legatus exercitu pulso interfectus esset, atque unde Lucius taniam pervenisset, quae pars, ut ante dictum est, et regionum nostros disiectos adorti proelium renovarunt. adventu cognito Sontiates magnis copiis coactis equitatuque, tim evocatis in Sontiatum fines exercitum introduxit. multis praeterea viris fortibus Tolosa et Narbone, quae sunt que re frumentaria provisa, auxiliis equitatuque comparato, mediocrem sibi diligentiam adhibendam intellegebat. dum, ubi paucis ante existimanda, cum intellegeret, in eis locis sibi bellum gerenlatitudine et multitudine hominum ex tertia parte Galliae est quas in convalle in insidiis collocaverant, ostenderunt primum equestre proelium commiserunt, quo plurimum valebant, in itinere agmen nostrum adorti Eodem fere tempore Publius Crassus, cum in Aquiproconsul impedimentis amissis annis Lucius Valerius Praeconīnus profugisset, deinde, equitatu

35 ad Crassum mittunt, seque in deditionem ut recipiat, petunt. 30 ter resistentibus, vineas turresque egit. Illi alias eruptione positam itinere oppidum Sontiatum oppugnare coepit. spici cuperent: tandem confecti vulneribus reliquis legionibus adulescentulo duce efficere rioribus victoriis freti in sua virtute totius Aquitaniae salutem nostrorum nihil his rebus profici posse intellexerunt, legatos locis apud eos rei sunt longe peritissimi Aquitani, propterea quod multis temptata, alias cuniculis ad aggerem vineasque actis (cuius Qua re impetrata arma tradere iussi faciunt: putarent, nostri autem, quid sine imperatore et sine Pugnatum est diu atque acriter, cum Sontiates supe-Quorum magno numero interfecto aerariae secturaeque sunt), ubi diligentia possent, per-Quibus fortihostes terga Crassus ex

quam, qui eo interfecto, cuius se amicitiae devovisset, mori sciscant: neque adhuc hominum memoria repertus est quiscum DC devotis, quos illi soldurios appellant, quorum haec est condicio, uti omnibus in vita commodis una cum eis alia ex parte oppidi Adiatunnus, qui summam imperii tenebat, concurrissent vehementerque ibi pugnatum esset, repulsus in oppidum tamen, uti eadem deditionis condicione uteretur, clamore ab ea parte munitionis sublato, cum ad arma milites recusaret: cum his Adiatunnus eruptionem facere. conatus, accidat, aut eundem casum una ferant aut sibi mortem confruantur, quorum se amicitiae dediderint, si quid his per vim 5 ab Crasso impetravit. XXII. Atque in ea re omnium nostrorum intentis animis,

# Crassus reduces nearly all the rest of Aquitania to subjection.

inde auxilia ducesque arcessuntur. Quorum adventu magna tium et Tarusatium profectus est. Tum vero barbari commoti, quod oppidum et natura loci et manu munitum paucis legati, quae sunt citerioris Hispaniae finitimae Aquitaniae: tos quoque versum dimittere, coniurare, obsides inter se dare, diebus, quibus eo ventum erat, expugnatum cognoverant, legacum auctoritate et magna cum hominum multitudine bellum sibi supportari, in dies hostium numerum augeri, non cuncob eam causam minus commode frumentum commeatumque et vagari et vias obsidere et castris satis praesidii relinquere, suas copias propter exiguitatem non facile diduci, hostem intercludere instituunt. Romani loca capere, castra munire, commeatibus nostros rei militaris habere existimabantur. Hi consuetudine populi Quinto Sertorio omnes annos fuerant summamque scientiam gerere conantur. Duces vero ii deliguntur, qui una cum diem pugnae constituit. silium delata, ubi omnes idem sentire intellexit, posterum tandum existimavit, quin pugna decertaret. Hac re ad con-XXIII. Armis obsidibusque acceptis Crassus in fines Vocaparare coeperunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eas civitates Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit, 20

instituta, consilii caperent, exspectabat. XXIV. Prima luce productis omnibus copiis duplici acie auxiliis in mediam aciem coniectis, Illi, etsi propter multitudinem quid hostes

5 recipere coepissent, impeditos in agmine et sub sarcinis incissent, atque omnium voces audirentur, exspectari diutius cupientibus ad hostium castra contendit. non oportere, quin ad castra iretur, cohortatus suos, omnibus timoris hostes nostros milites alacriores ad pugnandum effefirmiore animo adoriri cogitabant. Hoc consilio probato ab Hac re perspecta Crassus, cum sua cunctatione atque opinion? ducibus, productis Romanorum copiis, sese castris tenebant potiri, et, si propter inopiam rei frumentariae Romani sese obsessis viis commeatu intercluso sine ullo vulnere victoria dimicaturos veterem belli gloriam paucitatemque existimabant, tamen tutius esse arbitrabantur, nostrorum se tuto

20 equites circumitis hostium castris Crasso renuntiaverunt, non facilemque aditum habere. rent, cum item ab hostibus constanter ac non timide pugna-retur telaque ex loco superiore missa non frustra acciderent, rent, cum item ab hostibus constanter ac non timide iectis defensores vallo munitionibusque depellerent, auxiliareseadem esse diligentia ab decumana porta castra comportandis speciem atque opinionem pugnantium praebelapidibus telisque subministrandis et ad aggerem cespitibus XXV. Ibi cum alii fossas complerent, alii multis telis conquibus ad pugnam non multum Crassus confidebat, munita

25 35 rebus se per munitiones deicere et fuga salutem petere inab ea parte audito nostri redintegratis viribus, quod plerumaut, quid rei gereretur, cognosci posset. Tum vero clamore prius in hostium castris constiterunt, quam plane ab his videri eas, quas diximus, munitiones pervenerunt atque his prorutis itinere circumductis, ne ex hostium castris conspici possent, ostendit. praemiis pollicitationibusque suos excitarent, quid fieri velit, in castra recepit. venisse constabat, vix quarta parte relicta, multa nocte ex milium L numero, quae ex Aquitania Cantabrisque contenderunt. que in spe omnium oculis mentibusque ad pugnam intentis, celeriter ad praesidio castris relictae intritae ab labore erant, et longiore XXVI. Crassus equitum praefectos cohortatus, ut magnis Illi, ut erat imperatum, eductis eis cohortibus, quae Quos equitatus apertissimis campis consectatus, victoriae accidere consuevit, acrius impugnare Hostes undique circumventi desperatis omnibus

nationes anni tempore confisae, quod hiems suberat, hoc 5 Tarbelli, Bigerriones, Ptianii, Vocates, Crasso dedidit obsidesque ultro misit; quo in numero fuerunt Tarbelli, Bigerriones, Ptianii, Vocates, Tarusates, Elusates, tacere neglexerunt. Gates, Ausci, Garumni, Sibuzates, Cocosates; paucae ultimae XXVII. Hac audita pugna maxima pars Aquitaniae sese

refuge in forests. He places his army in winter quarters. proceeds against the Morini and the Menapii, who take

umquam legatos de pace misissent, arbitratus, id bellum ro iam aestas erat, tamen, quod omni Gallia pacata Morini impeditioribus locis secuti paucos ex suis deperdiderunt. eosque in silvas reppulerunt et compluribus interfectis longius 20 nostros instituisset, neque hostis interim visus esset, dispersis in opere habebant, eo se suaque omnia contulerunt. Ad quarum 15 initium silvarum cum Caesar pervenisset castraque munire pulsas superatasque esse, continentesque silvas ac paludes intellegebant, maximas nationes, quae proelio contendissent, ratione ac reliqui Galli bellum gerere coeperunt. Nam quod celeriter confici posse, eo exercitum adduxit; qui longe alia Menapiique supererant, qui in armis essent neque ad eum XXVIII. Eodem fere tempore Caesar, etsi prope exacta subito ex omnibus partibus silvae evolaverunt et in impetum fecerunt. Nostri celeriter arma ceperunt

que latus exstruebat. Incredibili celeritate magno spatio paucis diebus confecto, cum iam pecus atque extrema imcaesa, conversam ad hostem collocabat et pro vallo ad utrumlatere impetus fieri posset, omnem eam materiam, quae erat stituit et, ne quis inermibus imprudentibusque militibus ab eiusmodi sunt tempestates consecutae, uti opus necessario pedimenta ab nostris tenerentur, ipsi densiores silvas peterent, rum agris, vicis aedificiisque incensis Caesar exercitum redux? milites contineri non possent. Itaque vastatis omnibus eointermitteretur et continuatione imbrium diutius sub pellibus proxime bellum fecerant, in hibernis collocavit. XXIX. Reliquis deinceps diebus Caesar silvas caedere in-Aulercis Lexoviisque, reliquis item civitatibus, quae

## COMMENTARIUS QUARTUS.

## The Usipetes and Tencteri enter Gaul; the Suebi.

- 20 corporum magnitudine homines efficit. Atque in eam educunt. transierunt non longe a mari, quo Rhenus influit. Causa transeundi fuit, quod ab Suebis complures annos exagitati omnino contra voluntatem faciant, et vires alit et immani fluminibus. guitatem magna est corporis pars aperta, et lavarentur tus praeter pellis haberent quicquam, quarum propter exiconsuetudinem adduxerunt, ut locis frigidissimis neque vestiquod, a pueris nullo officio aut disciplina assuefacti, nihi res et cibi genere et cotidiana exercitatione et libertate vitae, atque pecore vivunt, multumque sunt in venationibus; quae neque longius anno remanere uno in loco incolendi causa mittitur. Sed privati ac separati agri apud eos nihil est, nent. Sic neque agricultura nec ratio atque usus belli interhi rursus in vicem anno post in armis sunt, illi domi rematannis singula milia armatorum bellandi causa gens est longe maxima et bellicosissima Germanorum ombello premebantur et agricultura prohibebantur. Sueborum Tencteri magna cum multitudine hominum flumen Rhenum I. Ea, quae secuta est, hieme, qui fuit annus Gneo Pom-peio, Marco Crasso consulibus, Usipetes Germani et item Neque multum frumento, sed maximam partem lacte Hi centum pagos habere dicuntur, ex quibus quo-Reliqui, qui domi manserunt, se atque illos alunt; ex finibus
- importatis non utuntur, sed quae sunt apud eos nata, prava importari desiderent. rint, quibus vendant, habeant, quam quo ullam rem ad Galli delectantur quaeque impenso parant pretio, Germani II. Mercatoribus est aditus magis eo, ut, quae bello cepe-Quin etiam iumentis, quibus maxime

atque deformia, haec cotidiana exercitatione, summi ut sint arbitrantur. laborem ferendum remollescere homines atque effeminari Vinum ad se merum ephippiatorum equitum quamvis pauci adire audent ertius habetur quam ephippiis uti. Itaque ad quemvis nurecipiunt; vestigio assuefecerunt, ad quos se celeriter, cum usus est, ac pedibus efficiunt. neque eorum moribus turpius quicquam aut inomnino importari non sinunt, quod ea re ad proeliantur, Equestribus equosque eodem remanere proeliis saepe ex equis ö

rum, et paulo sunt eiusdem generis ceteris humaniores, proprum fuit civitas ampla atque florens, ut est captus Germanouna ex parte a Suebis circiter milia passuum sexcenta numerum civitatium suam vim sustinere non posse. sime a suis finibus vacare humiliores infirmioresque redegerunt. propter amplitudinem gravitatemque civitatis finibus bus assuefacti. ventitant et ipsi terea quod Rhenum attingunt multumque ad eos mercatores vacare dicuntur. III. non potuissent, tamen vectigales sibi fecerunt ac multo Publice maximam putant esse laudem, quam latis-Hos cum Suebi, multis saepe bellis experti, propter propinquitatem Gallicis sunt mori-Ad alteram partem succedunt Ubii, quoagros: hac re significari, magnum expel-S 20

# The Germans overcome the Menapii; the fickleness of the Gauts.

aditu perterriti ex iis aedificiis, quae trans flumen habuerant, agros, regiones Menapii incolebant et ad utramque ripam fluminis erunt; ad extremum tamen agris expulsi et multis locis Gersupra diximus, qui complures annos Sueborum vim sustinurunt atque onesque custodias Menapiorum possent, reverti se in suas sedes regitendere propter inopiam navium neque clam transire propter demigraverunt et cis Rhenum dispositis praesidiis Germanos aedificia vicosque habebant; sed tantae multitudinis prohibebant. triennium vagati ad simulaverunt et tridui viam progressi rursus revertecadem causa fuerunt Usipetes et Tencteri, quos omni hoc itinere Illi omnia experti, cum neque vi con-Rhenum pervenerunt. una nocte equitatu confecto Quas 35.

5 quae citra Rhenum erat, certior fieret, flumen transierunt navibusque eorum occupatis, priusquam ea pars Menapiorum, hiemis se eorum copiis aluerunt. atque omnibus eorum aedificiis occupatis reliquam partem trans Rhenum in suos vicos remigraverant. His interfectis manorum discessu per exploratores certiores facti sine metu inscios inopinantesque Menapios oppresserunt, qui de Ger-

15 onibus veniant quasque ibi res cognoverint, pronuntiare cogant. His rebus atque auditionibus permoti de summis saepe rebus consilia ineunt, quorum eos in vestigio paenitere ro et novis plerumque rebus student, nihil his committendum voluntatem eorum ficta respondeant. necesse est, cum incertis rumoribus serviant et plerique ad mercatores in oppidis vulgus circumsistat quibusque ex regieorum de quaque re audierit aut cognoverit, quaerant, et viatores etiam invitos consistere cogant et, quid quisque existimavit. Est enim hoc Gallicae consuetudinis, uti et Gallorum veritus, quod sunt in consiliis capiendis mobiles V. His de rebus Caesar certior factus et infirmitatem

Caesar marches against the Germans; they negotiate with him.

30 firmatis equitatuque imperato bellum cum Germanis gerere 25 omniaque, quae postulassent, ab se fore parata. Qua spe adducti Germani latius vagabantur et in fines Eburonum et ad Germanos invitatosque eos, uti ab Rheno discederent, occurreret, maturius, quam consuerat, ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eo cum venisset, ea, quae fore suspicatus erat, constituit. simulanda sibi existimavit eorumque animis permulsis et con-Principibus Galliae evocatis Caesar ea, quae cognoverat, dis-Condrusorum, qui sunt Treverorum clientes, pervenerant VI. Qua consuetudine cognita Caesar, ne graviori bello cognovit: missas legationes ab nonnullis civitatibus

35 legati ab his venerunt, quorum haec fuit oratio: Germanos audiebat. neque priores populo Romano bellum inferre, neque tamen in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locis esse Germanos VII. Re frumentaria comparata equitibusque delectis iter A quibus cum paucorum dierum iter abesset,

6 - 29 ...

recusare, si lacessantur, quin armis contendant, quod Germanorum consuetudo haec sit a maioribus tradita, quicumque bellum inferant, resistere neque deprecari. Haec tamen dicere, venisse invitos, eiectos domo; si suam gratiam Romani velint, posse iis utiles esse amicos; vel sibi agros attribuant vel patiantur eos tenere, quos armis possederint: sese unis Suebis concedere, quibus ne dii quidem immortales pares esse possent; reliquum quidem in terris esse neminem, quem non superare possint.

VIII. Ad haec, quae visum est, Caesar respondit; sed 10 exitus fuit orationis: Sibi nullam cum his amicitiam esse posse, si in Gallia remanerent; neque verum esse, qui suos fines tueri non potuerint, alienos occupare; neque ullos in Gallia vacare agros, qui dari tantae praesertim multitudini sine iniuria possint; sed licere, si velint, in Ubiorum fini-15 bus considere, quorum sint legati apud se et de Sueborum iniuriis querantur et a se auxilium petant: hoc se Ubiis imperaturum.

IX. Legati haec se ad suos relaturos dixerunt et re deliberata post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversuros: interea 20 ne propius se castra moveret, petierunt. Ne id quidem Caesar ab se impetrari posse dixit. Cognoverat enim, magnam partem equitatus ab iis aliquot diebus ante praedandi frumentandique causa ad Ambivarītos trans Mosam missam: hos exspectari equites atque eius rei causa moram 25 interponi arbitrabatur.

### Description of the Rhine region. The Germans act treacherously.

X. Mosa profluit ex monte Vosego, qui est in finibus Lingonum, et parte quadam ex Rheno recepta, quae appellatur Vacalus, insulam efficit Batavorum neque longius ab Oceano milibus passuum LXXX in Rhenum influit. Rhenus 30 autem oritur ex Lepontiis, qui Alpes incolunt, et longo spatio per fines Nantuatium, Helvetiorum, Sequanorum, Mediomatricum, Tribocorum, Treverorum citatus fertur et, ubi Oceano appropinquavit, in plures defluit partes multis ingentibusque insulis effectis, quarum pars magna a feris 35 barbarisque nationibus incolitur, ex quibus sunt, qui piscibus

atque ovis avium vivere existimantur, multisque capitibus in Oceanum influit.

XI. Caesar cum ab hoste non amplius passuum xII milibus abesset, ut erat constitutum, ad eum legati revertuntur; qui 5 in itinere congressi magnopere, ne longius progrederetur, orabant. Cum id non impetrassent, petebant, uti ad eos equites, qui agmen antecessissent, praemitteret eosque pugna prohiberet, sibique ut potestatem faceret in Ubios legatos mittendi; quorum si principes ac senatus sibi iureiurando 10 fidem fecisset, ea condicione, quae a Caesare ferretur, se usuros ostendebant: ad has res conficiendas sibi tridui spatium daret.\ Haec omnia Caesar eodem illo pertinere arbitrabatur, ut tridui mora interposita equites eorum, qui abessent, reverterentur; tamen sese non longius milibus 15 passuum quattuor aquationis causa processurum eo die dixit: huc postero die quam frequentissimi convenirent, ut de eorum postulatis cognosceret. Interim ad praefectos, qui cum omni equitatu antecesserant, mittit, qui nuntiarent, ne hostes proelio lacesserent et, si ipsi lacesserentur, sustinerent, quoad 20 ipse cum exercitu propius accessisset.

XII. At hostes, ubi primum nostros equites conspexerunt, quorum erat quinque milium numerus, cum ipsi non amplius octingentos equites haberent, quod ii, qui frumentandi causa ierant trans Mosam, nondum redierant, nihil timentibus nostris, 25 quod legati eorum paulo ante a Caesare discesserant atque is dies indutiis erat ab his petitus, impetu facto celeriter nostros perturbaverunt; rursus resistentibus, consuetudine sua ad pedes desiluerunt, subfossis equis compluribusque nostris deiectis reliquos in fugam coniecerunt atque ita perterritos 30 egerunt, ut non prius fuga desisterent, quam in conspectum agminis nostri venissent. In eo proelio ex equitibus nostris interficiuntur quattuor et septuaginta, in his vir fortissimus Piso Aquitanus, amplissimo genere natus, cuius avus in civitate sua regnum obtinuerat, amicus ab senatu nostro appella-Hic cum fratri intercluso ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex periculo eripuit, ipse equo vulnerato deiectus, quoad potuit, fortissime restitit; cum circumventus multis vulneribus acceptis cecidisset atque id frater, qui iam proelio excesserat,

procul animadvertisset, incitato equo se hostibus obtulit atque

Caesar, suddenly attacking, routs them with great slaughter.

ad consilia capienda nihil spatii dandum existimabat. uno proelio auctoritatis essent consecuti, sentiebat; quibus et cognita Gallorum infirmitate, quantum iam apud eos hostes equitatusque reverteretur, summae dementiae esse iudicabat, lissent; exspectare vero, dum hostium copiae augerentur qui per dolum atque insidias, petita pace, ultro bellum intuaudiendos neque condiciones accipiendas arbitrabatur ab iis, recenti proelio perterritum esse existimabat, agmen subsequi impetrarent. Quos sibi Caesar oblatos gavisus, illos retineri misissent, simul ut, si quid possent, de indutiis fallendo atque esset dictum et ipsi petissent, proelium pridie comrunt, simul, ut dicebatur, sui purgandi causa, quod contra, cipibus maioribusque natu adhibitis ad eum in castra veneperfidia et simulatione usi Germani frequentes omnibus prinnissima res accidit, quod postridie municato, ne quem diem pugnae praetermitteret, opportuconstitutis rebus et consilio cum legatis et quaestore com-XIII. Hoc facto proelio Caesar neque iam sibi legatos ipse omnes copias castris eduxit equitatumque, quod eius diei mane eadem et 5

neque consilii habendi neque arma capiendi spatio dato, perterriti et celeritate adventus nostri et discessu suorum, retur, Germani sentire possent. confecto prius ad hostium castra pervenit, quam, quid ageatque inter carros impedimentaque proelium commiserunt; at diei perfidia incitati in castra irruperunt. cum fremitu et concursu significaretur, milites nostri pristini defendere, an fuga salutem petere praestaret. perturbantur; copiasne adversus hostem ducere, an castra fugere coepit; ad quos consectandos Caesar equitatum misit. bus suis domo excesserant Rhenumque transierant — passim 35 reliqua multitudo puerorum mulierumque — nam cum omniceleriter arma capere potuerunt, paulisper nostris restiterunt XIV. Acie triplici instituta et celeriter octo milium itinere Qui omnibus rebus subito 25 Quo loco, qui Quorum timor

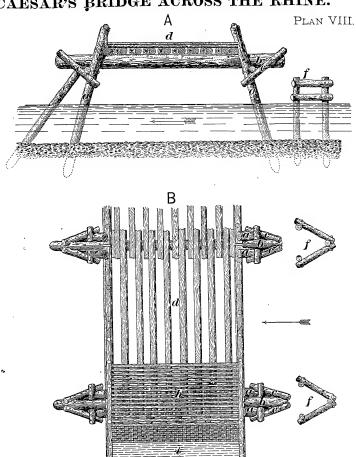
10 cedendi potestatem fecit. Illi supplicia cruciatusque Gallorum s reliqui se in flumen praecipitaverunt atque ibi timore, lassiveriti, quorum agros vexaverant, remanere se apud eum velle castra receperunt. Caesar iis, quos in castris retinuerat, discum hostium numerus capitum ccccxxx milium fuisset, se in omnes incolumes, perpaucis vulneratis, ex tanti belli timore, pervenissent, reliqua fuga desperata, magno numero interfecto, ex castris eiecerunt, et cum ad confluentem Mosae et Rheni terfici viderent, armis abiectis signisque militaribus relictis se XV. Germani, post tergum clamore audito, cum suos invi fluminis oppressi perierunt. His Caesar libertatem concessit. Nostri ad unum

# Caesar bridges the Rhine, enters Germany, returns to Gaul.

35 et hoc novissimo proelio facto etiam ad ultimas Germanorum 30 orabant, ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suebis pre-20 praedandi frumentandique causa Mosam transisse neque proe-15 iustissima, quod, cum videret Germanos tam facile impelli, nationes, uti opinione et amicitia populi Romani tuti esse esse nomen atque opinionem eius exercitus Ariovisto pulso auxilium spemque reliqui temporis satis futurum. Tantum hiberetur, exercitum modo Rhenum transportaret: id sibi ad merentur; vel, si id facere occupationibus reipublicae miserant, amicitiam fecerant, obsides dederant, magnopere quicquam esse imperii aut potestatis trans Rhenum postularet? manos in Galliam transire non aequum existimaret, cur sui Populi Romani imperium Rhenum finire: si se invito Ger-Ubii autem, qui uni ex Transrhenanis ad Caesarem legatos cum Caesar nuntios misisset, qui postularent, eos, qui sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent, sibi dederent, responderunt: Sugambrorum receperat seque cum iis coniunxerat. Ad quos lio interfuisse, post fugam suorum se trans Rhenum in fines tatus Usipetum et Tencterorum, quam supra commemoravi tum Rhenum transire. Accessit etiam, quod illa pars equicum intellegerent, et posse et audere populi Romani exerciut in Galliam venirent, suis quoque rebus eos timere voluit, statuit sibi Rhenum esse transeundum; quarum illa fuit XVI. Germanico bello confecto multis de causis Caesar



### CAESAR'S BRIDGE ACROSS THE RHINE.



A. Cross-section. B. The Bridge seen from above.

### d,d. Directa materia, longuriis cratibusque constrata. e, e. Sublicae ad inferiorem partem fluminis oblique actue. a,a. Tigna bina sesquipedalia. - b,b. Trabes bipedales. c, c. Fibulae. CAESAR'S BRIDGE THE RHINE. ACROSS

f.f. Sublicae supra pontem immissae.
g. Gastellum ad caput pontis positum.

Longurii.



possint. Navium magnam copiam ad transportandum exercitum pollicebantur.

XVII. Caesar his de causis, quas commemoravi, Rhenum transire decreverat; sed navibus transire neque satis tutum esse arbitrabatur, neque suae neque populi Romani dignitatis 5 esse statuebat. Itaque, etsi summa difficultas faciendi pontis proponebatur propter latitudinem, rapiditatem altitudinemque fluminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut aliter non traducendum exercitum existimabat. Rationem pontis hanc instituit. Tigna bina sesquipedalia paulum ab imo praeacuta 10 dimensa ad altitudinem fluminis intervallo pedum duorum inter se iungebat. Haec cum machinationibus immissa in flumen defixerat fistucisque adegerat, non sublicae modo directe ad perpendiculum, sed prone ac fastigate, ut secundum naturam fluminis procumberent, his item contraria duo 15 ad eundem modum iuncta intervallo pedum quadragenum ab inferiore parte contra vim atque impetum fluminis conversa statuebat. Haec utraque insuper bipedalibus trabibus immissis, quantum eorum tignorum iunctura distabat, binis utrimque fibulis ab extrema parte distinebantur; quibus dis- 20 clusis atque in contrariam partem revinctis tanta erat operis firmitudo atque ea rerum natura, ut, quo maior vis aquae se incitavisset, hoc artius illigata tenerentur. Haec directa materia iniecta contexebantur ac longuriis cratibusque consternebantur; ac nihilo secius sublicae et ad inferiorem par- 25 tem fluminis oblique agebantur, quae pro ariete subiectae et cum omni opere coniunctae vim fluminis exciperent, et aliae item supra pontem mediocri spatio, ut, si arborum trunci sive naves deiciendi operis essent a barbaris missae, his defensoribus earum rerum vis minueretur, neu ponti nocerent.

XVIII. Diebus decem, quibus materia coepta erat comportari, omni opere effecto, exercitus traducitur. Caesar ad utramque partem pontis firmo praesidio relicto in fines Sugambrorum contendit. Interim a compluribus civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt; quibus pacem atque amicitiam peten-35 tibus liberaliter respondit obsidesque ad se adduci iubet. Sugambri ex eo tempore, quo pons institui coeptus est, fuga comparata hortantibus iis, quos ex Tencteris atque Usipetibus

apud se habebant, finibus suis excesserant suaque omnia exportaverant seque in solitudinem ac silvas abdiderant.

XIX. Caesar paucos dies in eorum finibus moratus omnibus vicis aedificiisque incensis frumentisque succisis se in 5 fines Ubiorum recepit atque iis auxilium suum pollicitus, si ab Suebis premerentur, haec ab iis cognovit: Suebos, posteaquam per exploratores pontem fieri comperissent, more suo concilio habito nuntios in omnes partes dimisisse, uti de oppidis demigrarent, liberos, uxores suaque omnia in silvis 10 deponerent, atque omnes, qui arma ferre possent, unum in locum convenirent: hunc esse delectum medium fere regionum earum, quas Suebi obtinerent; hic Romanorum adventum exspectare atque ibi decertare constituisse. Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus rebus iis confectis, quarum rerum 15 causa traducere exercitum constituerat, ut Germanis metum iniceret, ut Sugambros ulcisceretur, ut Ubios obsidione liberaret, diebus omnino decem et octo trans Rhenum consumptis, satis et ad laudem et ad utilitatem profectum arbitratus, se in Galliam recepit pontemque rescidit.

### Caesar prepares to invade Britain; the Morini submit.

XX. Exigua parte aestatis reliqua Caesar, etsi in his locis, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriones vergit, maturae sunt hiemes, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod omnibus fere Gallicis bellis hostibus nostris inde subministrata auxilia intellegebat et, si tempus anni ad bellum gerendum deficeret, 25 tamen magno sibi usui fore arbitrabatur, si modo insulam adisset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portus, aditus cognovisset; quae omnia fere Gallis erant incognita. Neque enim temere praeter mercatores illo adit quisquam, neque iis ipsis quicquam praeter oram maritimam atque eas 30 regiones, quae sunt contra Gallias, notum est. Itaque vocatis ad se undique mercatoribus, neque quanta esset insulae magnitudo, neque quae aut quantae nationes incolerent, neque quem usum belli haberent aut quibus institutis uterentur, neque qui essent ad maiorum navium multitudinem idonei 35 portus, reperire poterat.

XXI. Ad haec cognoscenda, priusquam periculum faceret,

egredi ac se barbaris committere non auderet, quinto die ad bus omnibus, quantum ei facultatis dari potuit, qui celeriter eo venturum nuntiet. Volusenus perspectis regionites horteturque, ut populi Romani fidem sequantur, seque arbitrabatur, cuiusque auctoritas in his regionibus magni habebatur, mittit. Huic imperat, quas possit, adeat civitavirtutem et consilium probabat et quem sibi fidelem esse ipse Atrebatibus superatis regem ibi constituerat, cuius et liberaliter pollicitus hortatusque, ut in ea sententia permaneatque imperio populi Romani obtemperare. Quibus auditis, tatibus ad eum legati veniunt, qui polliceantur obsides dare mercatores perlato ad Britannos, a compluribus insulae civiquam superiore aestate rinos proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam Caesarem revertitur, quaeque ibi perspexisset, renuntiat. quam primum revertatur. praemittit. Huic mandat, ut exploratis omnibus rebus ad se idoneum esse arbitratus Gaium Volusenum cum navi longa iubet convenire. eos domum remittit et cum iis una Commium, quem Huc naves undique ex finitimis regionibus et, Interim consilio eius cognito et per ad Veneticum bellum effecerat clas-Ipse cum omnibus copiis in Mo-

iudicabat, magnum iis numerum obsidum imperat. riis coactis contractisque, quod satis esse ad duas transporadductis eos in fidem recepit. venire passuum viii vento tenebantur, quo minus in eundem portum cedebant xvIII onerariae naves, quae ex eo loco ab milibus habebat, quaestori, legatis praefectisque distribuit. tandas legiones existimabat, quod praeterea navium longarum has tantularum rerum occupationes Britanniae anteponendas belli gerendi propter anni tempus facultatem habebat neque quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volebat neque Romano fecissent, seque ea, quae imperasset, facturos pollicenes barbari et nostrae consuetudinis imperiti bellum populo qui se de superioris temporis consilio excusarent, quod homimoratur, ex magna parte Morinorum ad eum legati venerunt, XXII. Dum in his locis Caesar navium parandarum causa possent: has Hoc sibi Caesar satis opportune accidisse arbitratus, equitibus distribuit. Navibus circiter LXXX onera-Reliquum exerci-

5 arbitrabatur, portum tenere iussit. Sulpicium Rufum legatum cum eo praesidio, quod satis esse bus ad eum legati non venerant, ducendum dedit; Publium tum Quinto Titurio Sabino et Lucio Aurunculeio Cottae legatis in Menapios atque in eos pagos Morinorum, ab qui-

### He proceeds to Britain. defeated, sue for peace The natives resist bravely, are

20 quae celerem atque instabilem motum haberent, ad nutum et  $_{15}$  quaquam idoneum locum arbitratus, dum reliquae naves eo 10 hora circiter diei quarta cum primis navibus Britanniam attisigno et sublatis ancoris circiter millia passuum septem ab eo et ventum et aestum uno tempore nactus secundum, dato ad tempus omnes res ab iis administrarentur. ut rei militaris ratio, maxime ut maritimae res postularent, ut loco progressus, aperto ac plano litore naves constituit. terim legatis tribunisque militum convocatis, et quae ex convenirent, ad horam nonam in ancoris exspectavit. Inmontibus angustis mare continebatur, uti ex locis superiori-Voluseno cognosset et quae fieri vellet, ostendit monuitque, bus in litus telum adigi posset. Hunc ad egrediendum nearmatas conspexit. Cuius loci haec erat natura, atque ita git atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositas hostium copias iussit. A quibus cum paulo tardius esset administratum, ipse ulteriorem portum progredi et naves conscendere et se sequi gandum tempestatem tertia fere vigilia solvit equitesque in XXIII. His constitutis rebus nactus idoneam ad navi-His dimissis

30 rant, militibus autem ignotis locis, impeditis manibus, magno 35 tela conicerent et equos insuefactos incitarent. gressi omnibus membris pugnandum, cum illi aut ex arido aut paulum in aquam proendum et in fluctibus consistendum et cum hostibus erat et gravi onere armorum oppressis simul et de navibus desilinaves propter magnitudinem nisi in alto constitui non poteprohibebant. Erat ob consuerunt, reliquis copiis subsecuti nostros navibus egredi equitatu et essedariis, quo plerumque genere in proeliis uti XXIV. At barbari, consilio Romanorum cognito, praemisso has causas summa difficultas, quod expeditis, notissimis locis audacter Quibus re-

proeliis consuerant, utebantur. periti non eadem alacritate ac studio, quo in pedestribus uti bus nostri perterriti atque huius omnino generis pugnae im-

hostibus appropinquarunt. ne tantum dedecus admitteretur, universi ex navi desiluerunt. hostes aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostri cohortati inter se, meum reipublicae atque imperatori officium praestitero. milites, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prodere: ego certe 15 deos, ut ea res legioni feliciter eveniret, 'Desilite,' inquit, maris, qui decimae legionis aquilam ferebat, contestatus nostris militibus cunctantibus, maxime bari constiterunt ac paulum modo pedem retulerunt. Atque morum motu et inusitato genere tormentorum permoti bargittis, tormentis hostes propelli ac summoveri iussit; quae res magno usui nostris fuit. Nam et navium figura et re-Hos item ex proximis navibus cum conspexissent, subsecuti 20 Hoc cum voce magna dixisset, se ex navi proiecit atque in et ad latus apertum hostium constitui atque inde fundis, satior, paulum removeri ab onerariis navibus et remis incitari et species erat barbaris inusitatior et motus ad usum expedi-XXV. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, naves longas, quarum propter altitudinem ю

fortunam Caesari defuit que insulam capere non potuerant. longius prosequi potuerunt, quod equites cursum tenere athostes impetum fecerunt atque eos in fugam dederunt, neque tri, simul in arido constiterunt, suis omnibus consecutis in quos laborantes conspexerat, his subsidia submittebat. Nosvium, item speculatoria navigia militibus compleri iussit et, Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphas longarum natis equis impeditos adoriebantur, plures paucos circumsistealiquos singulares ex navi egredientes conspexerant, incitabantur; hostes vero, notis omnibus vadis, ubi ex litore signa subsequi poterant, atque alius alia ex navi, quibuscumquod neque ordines servare neque firmiter insistere neque XXVI. Pugnatum est ab utrisque acriter. alii ab latere aperto in universos tela coniciebant. Hoc unum ad pristinam Nostri tamen,

Hostes proelio superati, simul atque se ex fuga

15 agros iusserunt, principesque undique convenire et se civi-10 quod, cum ultro in continentem legatis missis pacem ab se tatesque suas Caesari commendare coeperunt. diebus sese daturos dixerunt. Interea suos remigrare dederunt, partem ex longinquioribus locis arcessitam paucis tiae dixit obsidesque imperavit; quorum illi partem statim saris mandata deferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula Hunc illi e navi egressum, cum ad eos oratoris modo Caesupra demonstraveram a Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. petissent, bellum sine causa intulissent, ignoscere imprudenprudentiam ut ignosceretur, petiverunt. eius rei culpam in multitudinem coniecerunt et, propter imconiecerant; tum proelio facto remiserunt. obsides daturos, quaeque imperasset, facturos esse polliciti receperunt, statim ad Caesarem legatos de pace miserunt; Una cum his legatis Commius Atrebas venit, quem Caesar questus, In petenda pace

## Caesar's fleet is damaged by storm and tide

25 riculo deicerentur; quae 20 portu leni vento solverunt. Quae cum appropinquarent Bricontinentem petierunt. complerentur, necessario adversa nocte in altum provectae insulae, quae est propius solis occasum, magno sui cum peunde erant profectae, referrentur, aliae ad inferiorem partem tanniae et ex castris viderentur, tanta tempestas subito coorta pra demonstratum est, quae equites sustulerant, ex superiore est, ut nulla earum cursum tenere posset, sed aliae eodem, quam est in Britanniam ventum, naves xvIII, de quibus su-XXVIII. His rebus pace confirmata, post diem quartum, tamen ancoris iactis cum fluctibus

35 Compluribus navibus fractis reliquae cum essent, funibus, 30 trisque id erat incognitum. Ita uno tempore et longas naves, nostris facultas aut administrandi aut auxiliandi dabatur. in aridum subduxerat, aestus compleverat, et onerarias, quae ancoris reliquisque armamentis amissis, ad navigandum inad ancoras erant deligatae, tempestas afflictabat, neque ulla quibus Caesar exercitum transportandum curaverat quasque maritimos aestus maximos in Oceano efficere consuevit, nos-XXIX. Eadem nocte accidit, ut esset luna plena, qui dies utiles, magna, id quod necesse erat accidere, totius exercitus perturbatio facta est. Neque enim naves erant aliae, quibus reportari possent, et omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendas naves erant usui, et, quod omnibus constabat, hiemari in Gallia oportere, frumentum his in locis in hiemem provisum non 5 erat.

### The Britons treacherously attack Caesar; their war-chariots.

XXX. Quibus rebus cognitis principes Britanniae, qui post proelium ad Caesarem convenerant, inter se collocuti, cum equites et naves et frumentum Romanis deesse intellegerent et paucitatem militum ex castrorum exiguitate cognoscerent, 10 quae hoc erant etiam angustiora, quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiones transportaverat, optimum factu esse duxerunt, rebellione facta frumento commeatuque nostros prohibere et rem in hiemem producere, quod his superatis aut reditu interclusis neminem postea belli inferendi causa in Britanniam 15 transiturum confidebant. Itaque rursus coniuratione facta paulatim ex castris discedere ac suos clam ex agris deducere coeperunt.

XXXI. At Caesar, etsi nondum eorum consilia cognoverat, tamen et ex eventu navium suarum et ex eo, quod obsides 20 dare intermiserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicabatur. Itaque ad omnes casus subsidia comparabat. Nam et frumentum ex agris cotidie in castra conferebat et, quae gravissime afflictae erant naves, earum materia atque aere ad reliquas reficiendas utebatur et, quae ad eas res erant usui, ex conti-25 nenti comportari iubebat. Itaque cum summo studio a militibus administraretur, XII navibus amissis, reliquis ut navigari commode posset, effecit.

XXXII. Dum ea geruntur, legione ex consuetudine una frumentatum missa, quae appellabatur septima, neque ulla ad 30 id tempus belli suspicione interposita, cum pars hominum in agris remaneret, pars etiam in castra ventitaret, ii, qui pro portis castrorum in statione erant, Caesari nuntiaverunt, pulverem maiorem, quam consuetudo ferret, in ea parte videri, quam in partem legio iter fecisset. Caesar id, quod 35 erat, suspicatus, aliquid novi a barbaris initum consilii, co-

hortes, quae in stationibus erant, secum in eam partem proficisci, ex reliquis duas in stationem cohortes succedere, reliquas armari et confestim sese subsequi iussit. Cum paulo longius a castris processisset, suos ab hostibus premi atque 5 aegre sustinere et conferta legione ex omnibus partibus tela conici animadvertit. Nam quod omni ex reliquis partibus demesso frumento pars una erat reliqua, suspicati hostes, huc nostros esse venturos, noctu in silvis delituerant; tum dispersos depositis armis in metendo occupatos subito adorti, 10 paucis interfectis reliquos incertis ordinibus perturbaverant, simul equitatu atque essedis circumdederant.

XXXIII. Genus hoc est ex essedis pugnae. Primo per omnes partes perequitant et tela coniciunt atque ipso terrore equorum et strepitu rotarum ordines plerumque perturbant, 15 et cum se inter equitum turmas insinuaverunt, ex essedis desiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurigae interim paulatim ex proelio excedunt atque ita currus collocant, ut, si illi a multitudine hostium premantur, expeditum ad suos receptum habeant. Ita mobilitatem equitum, stabilitatem peditum in 20 proeliis praestant, ac tantum usu cotidiano et exercitatione efficiunt, uti in declivi ac praecipiti loco incitatos equos sustinere et brevi moderari ac flectere et per temonem percurrere et in iugo insistere et se inde in currus citissime recipere consuerint.

### They are routed and give hostages; Caesar returns to Gaul.

25 XXXIV. Quibus rebus perturbatis nostris novitate pugnae tempore opportunissimo Caesar auxilium tulit: namque eius adventu hostes constiterunt, nostri se ex timore receperunt. Quo facto ad lacessendum et ad committendum proelium alienum esse tempus arbitratus suo se loco continuit et brevi 30 tempore intermisso in castra legiones reduxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostris omnibus occupatis, qui erant in agris reliqui, discesserunt. Secutae sunt continuos complures dies tempestates, quae et nostros in castris continerent et hostem a pugna prohiberent. Interim barbari nuntios in omnes par-35 tes dimiserunt paucitatemque nostrorum militum suis praedicaverunt et, quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum

sui liberandi facultas daretur, si Romanos castris expulissent, demonstraverunt. His rebus celeriter magna multitudine peditatus equitatusque coacta ad castra venerunt.

XXXV. Caesar etsi idem, quod superioribus diebus acciderat, fore videbat, ut, si essent hostes pulsi, celeritate periculum effugerent, tamen nactus equites circiter XXX, quos Commius Atrebas, de quo ante dictum est, secum transportaverat, legiones in acie pro castris constituit. Commisso proelio diutius nostrorum militum impetum hostes ferre non potuerunt ac terga verterunt. Quos tanto spatio secuti, quantum cursu et viribus efficere potuerunt, complures ex iis occiderunt, deinde omnibus longe lateque aedificiis incensis se in castra receperunt.

XXXVI. Eodem die legati ab hostibus missi ad Caesarem de pace venerunt. His Caesar numerum obsidum, quem 15 ante imperaverat, duplicavit eosque in continentem adduci iussit, quod propinqua die aequinoctii infirmis navibus hiemi navigationem subiciendam non existimabat. Ipse idoneam tempestatem nanctus paulo post mediam noctem naves solvit; quae omnes incolumes ad continentem pervene-20 runt; sed ex iis onerariae duae eosdem, quos reliqui, portus capere non potuerunt et paulo infra delatae sunt.

### The Morini rebel, and are terribly punished. A thanksgiving is decreed at Rome for Caesar's victories.

XXXVII. Quibus ex navibus cum essent expositi milites circiter trecenti atque in castra contenderent, Morini, quos Caesar in Britanniam proficiscens pacatos reliquerat, spe 25 praedae adducti primo non ita magno suorum numero circumsteterunt ac, si sese interfici nollent, arma ponere iusserunt. Cum illi orbe facto sese defenderent, celeriter ad clamorem hominum circiter milia sex convenerunt. Qua re nuntiata Caesar omnem ex castris equitatum suis auxilio 3º misit. Interim nostri milites impetum hostium sustinuerunt atque amplius horis quattuor fortissime pugnaverunt et paucis vulneribus acceptis complures ex his occiderunt. Postea vero quam equitatus noster in conspectum venit, hostes abiectis armis terga verterunt magnusque eorum numerus est occisus. 35

XXXVIII. Caesar postero die Titum Labienum legatum cum iis legionibus, quas ex Britannia reduxerat, in Morinos, qui rebellionem fecerant, misit. Qui cum propter siccitates paludum, quo se reciperent, non haberent, quo superiore anno perfugio fuerant usi, omnes fere in potestatem Labieni pervenerunt. At Q. Titurius et L. Cotta legati, qui in Menapiorum fines legiones duxerant, omnibus eorum agris vastatis, frumentis succisis, aedificiis incensis, quod Menapii se omnes in densissimas silvas abdiderant, se ad Caesarem receperunt. Caesar in Belgis omnium legionum hiberna constituit. Eo duae omnino civitates ex Britannia obsides miserunt, reliquae neglexerunt. His rebus gestis ex litteris Caesaris dierum viginti supplicatio a senatu decreta est.

### COMMENTARIUS QUINTUS

Caesar orders ships built; quiets disturbances in Illyricum; settles a dispute between two chiefs of the Treveri.

I. L. Domitto, Ap. Claudio consulibus discedens ab hi bernis Caesar in Italiam, ut quotannis facere consuerat, legatis imperat, quos legionibus praefecerat, uti, quam plurimas possent, hieme naves aedificandas veteresque reficiendas curarent. Earum modum formamque demonstrat. Ad celeri- 5 tatem onerandi subductionesque paulo facit humiliores, quam quibus in nostro mari uti consuevimus, atque id eo magis, quod propter crebras commutationes aestuum minus magnos ibi fluctus fieri cognoverat; ad onera ac multitudinem iumentorum transportandam paulo latiores, quam quibus in reliquis 10 utimur maribus. Has omnes actuarias imperat fieri, quam ad rem humilitas multum adiuvat. Ea, quae sunt usui ad armandas naves, ex Hispania apportari iubet. Ipse conventibus Galliae citerioris peractis in Illyricum proficiscitur, quod a Pirustis finitimam partem provinciae incursionibus vastari 15 audiebat. Eo cum venisset, civitatibus milites imperat certumque in locum convenire iubet. Qua re nuntiata Pirustae legatos ad eum mittunt, qui doceant, nihil earum rerum publico factum consilio, seseque paratos esse demonstrant omnibus rationibus de iniuriis satisfacere. Percepta oratione 20 eorum Caesar obsides imperat eosque ad certam diem adduci iubet; nisi ita fecerint, sese bello civitatem persecuturum demonstrat. Iis ad diem adductis, ut imperaverat, arbitros inter civitates dat, qui litem aestiment poenamque constituant. 25

II. His confectis rebus conventibusque peractis in citeriorem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eo cum venisset, circuitis omnibus hibernis singulari militum

studio in summa omnium rerum inopia circiter sexcentas eius generis, cuius supra demonstravimus, naves et longas xxvIII invenit instructas, neque multum abesse ab eo, quin paucis diebus deduci possint. Collaudatis militibus atque iis, qui 5 negotio praefuerant, quid fieri velit, ostendit atque omnes ad portum Itium convenire iubet, quo ex portu commodissimum in Britanniam traiectum esse cognoverat, circiter milium passuum xxx a continenti: huic rei, quod satis esse visum est militum, reliquit. Ipse cum legionibus expeditis IV et equitio bus DCCC in fines Treverorum proficiscitur, quod hi neque ad concilia veniebant neque imperio parebant Germanosque Transrhenanos sollicitare dicebantur.

III. Haec civitas longe plurimum totius Galliae equitatu valet magnasque habet copias peditum, Rhenumque, ut su-15 pra demonstravimus, tangit. In ea civitate duo de principatu inter se contendebant, Indutiomărus et Cingetŏrix; e quibus alter, simulatque de Caesaris legionumque adventu cognitum est, ad eum venit, se suosque omnes in officio futuros neque ab amicitia populi Romani defecturos confirmavit 20 quaeque in Treveris gererentur, ostendit. At Indutiomarus equitatum peditatumque cogere iisque, qui per aetatem in armis esse non poterant, in silvam Arduennam abditis, quae ingenti magnitudine per medios fines Treverorum a flumine Rheno ad initium Remorum pertinet, bellum parare instituit. 25 Sed posteaquam nonnulli principes ex ea civitate et familiaritate Cingetorigis adducti et adventu nostri exercitus perterriti ad Caesarem venerunt et de suis privatim rebus ab eo petere coeperunt, quoniam civitati consulere non possent, veritus, ne ab omnibus desereretur, Indutiomarus legatos ad Caesa-3º rem mittit: Sese idcirco ab suis discedere atque ad eum venire noluisse, quo facilius civitatem in officio contineret, ne omnis nobilitatis discessu plebs propter imprudentiam laberetur: itaque esse civitatem in sua potestate, sesegue, si Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra venturum, suas civi-35 tatisque fortunas eius fidei permissurum.

IV. Caesar, etsi intellegebat, qua de causa ea dicerentur quaeque eum res ab instituto concilio deterreret, tamen, ne aestatem in Treveris consumere cogeretur omnibus ad Bri-

qui iam ante inimico in nos animo fuisset, multo gravius graviter Indutiomarus, suam gratiam inter suos minui, et, egregiam in se voluntatem perspexisset. Id tulit factum auctoritatem inter suos quam plurimum valere, cuius a se fieri intellegebat, tum magni interesse arbitrabatur, eius hos singillatim Cingetorigi conciliavit, quod cum merito eius nihilo tamen secius principibus Treverorum ad se convocatis tus Indutiomarum hortatusque est, uti in officio maneret; quisque eius omnibus, quos nominatim evocaverat, consolacc obsidibus venire iussit. His adductis, in iis filio propintannicum bellum rebus comparatis, Indutiomarum ad se cum hoc dolore exarsit. 5

# Caesar gathers his forces at portus Itius; his troops pursue and slay the faithless Dunnorix.

ipse abesset, motum Galliae verebatur. reliquos obsidum loco secum ducere decreverat, quod, cum paucos, quorum in se fidem perspexerat, relinquere in Gallia, tuor principesque ex omnibus civitatibus; ex quibus perratas ad navigandum atque omnibus rebus instructas invenit. factae erant, tempestate rejectas cursum tenere non potuisse gionibus pervenit. Ibi cognoscit, LX naves, quae in Meldis Eodem equitatus totius Galliae convenit numero milium quat-His rebus constitutis Caesar ad portum Itium cum leeodem, unde erant profectae, revertisse; reliquas pa-5

Aedui graviter ferebant, neque recusandi aut deprecandi causa legatos ad Caesarem mittere audebant. Id factum 30 magni animi, magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis cognoverat. tuerat, quod eum cupidum rerum novarum, cupidum imperii, 25 ab nobis dictum est. Hunc secum habere in primis constiquod insuetus navigandi mare timeret, partim quod religioniex suis hospitibus Caesar cognoverat. Ille omnibus primo Accedebat huc, quod in concilio Aeduorum Dumnorix dixegari vidit, omni spe impetrandi adempta, principes Galliae 35 bus impediri sese diceret. Posteaquam id obstinate sibi neprecibus petere contendit, ut in Gallia relinqueretur, partim VI. Erat una cum ceteris Dumnŏrix Aeduus, de quo ante sibi a Caesare regnum civitatis deferri; quod dictum

ut, quos in conspectu Galliae interficere vereretur, hos omnes 5 in Britanniam traductos necaret; fidem reliquis interponere, sent, communi consilio administrarent. iusiurandum poscere, ut, quod esse ex usu Galliae intellexisbus ad Caesarem deferebantur. Gallia omni nobilitate spoliaretur; id esse consilium Caesaris, nenti remanerent; metu territare: sollicitare, sevocare singulos hortarique coepit, uti in continon sine causa fieri, ut Haec a compluri-

30 Caesarem omnes revertuntur. to equitibus Aeduorum a castris insciente Caesare domum dis-15 bat, qui magnam partem omnis temporis in his locis flare conto dignitatis tribuebat, coercendum atque deterrendum, quibussistunt hominem atque interficiunt; at equites Aedui ad se liberaeque esse civitatis. Illi, ut erat imperatum, circumsuorumque fidem implorare coepit, saepe clamitans, liberum pro sano facturum arbitratus, qui praesentis imperium negvim faciat neque pareat, interfici iubet, nihil hunc se absente lexisset. Ille enim revocatus resistere ac se manu defendere equitatus ad eum insequendum mittit retrahique imperat; si fectione atque omnibus rebus postpositis magnam partem cedere coepit. in naves iubet. At omnium impeditis animis Dumnorix cum idoneam nactus tempestatem milites equitesque conscendere nihilo tamen secius omnia eius consilia cognosceret; tandem suevit, dabat operam, ut in officio Dumnorigem contineret, loco commoratus, quod Corus ventus navigationem impedieac reipublicae nocere posset. Itaque dies circiter xxv in eo eius amentiam progredi videbat, prospiciendum, ne quid sibi cumque rebus posset, Dumnorigem statuebat; quod longius VII. Qua re cognita Caesar, quod tantum civitati Aeduae Qua re nuntiata, Caesar intermissa pro-

## Caesar sails to Britain, and puts the natives to flight

35 caperet, ipse cum quinque legionibus et pari numero equitum, legionibus et equitum milibus duobus relicto, ut portus tuequem in continenti reliquerat, ad solis occasum naves solvit retur et rem frumentariam provideret, quaeque in Gallia gererentur, cognosceret consiliumque pro tempore et pro re VIII. His rebus gestis, Labieno in continente cum tribus et leni Africo provectus, media circiter nocte vento intermisso, cursum non tenuit et longius delatus aestu orta luce sub sinis tra Britanniam relictam conspexit. Tum rursus aestus commutationem secutus remis contendit, ut eam partem insulae caperet, qua optimum esse egressum superiore aestate cog- 5 Qua in re admodum fuit militum virtus laudanda, qui vectoriis gravibusque navigiis non intermisso remigandi labore longarum navium cursum adaequarunt. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus navibus meridiano fere tempore, neque in eo loco hostis est visus; sed, ut postea Caesar ex 10 captivis cognovit, cum magnae manus eo convenissent, multitudine navium perterritae, quae cum annotinis privatisque, quas sui quisque commodi fecerat, amplius octingentae uno erant visae tempore, a litore discesserant ac se in superiora loca abdiderant. 15

IX. Caesar exposito exercitu et loco castris idoneo capto, ubi ex captivis cognovit, quo in loco hostium copiae consedissent, cohortibus decem ad mare relictis et equitibus trecentis, qui praesidio navibus essent, de tertia vigilia ad hostes contendit, eo minus veritus navibus, quod in litore molli 20 atque aperto deligatas ad ancoram relinquebat, et praesidio navibus Quintum Atrium praefecit. Ipse noctu progressus milia passuum circiter XII hostium copias conspicatus est. Illi equitatu atque essedis ad flumen progressi ex loco superiore nostros prohibere et proelium committere coeperunt. 25 Repulsi ab equitatu se in silvas abdiderunt, locum nancti egregie et natura et opere munitum, quem domestici belli, ut videbantur, causa iam ante praeparaverant; nam crebris arboribus succisis omnes introitus erant praeclusi. silvis rari propugnabant nostrosque intra munitiones ingredi 30 prohibebant. At milites legionis septimae testudine facta et aggere ad munitiones adiecto locum ceperunt eosque ex silvis expulerunt paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed eos fugientes longius Caesar prosequi vetuit, et quod loci naturam ignorabat, et quod, magna parte diei consumpta, munitioni castrorum 35 tempus relinqui volebat.

### His fleet is shattered by a storm; he repairs it.

X. Postridie eius diei mane tripertito milites equitesque in expeditionem misit, ut eos, qui fugerant, persequerentur. His aliquantum itineris progressis, cum iam extremi essent in prospectu, equites a Quinto Atrio ad Caesarem venerunt, 5 qui nuntiarent, superiore nocte maxima coorta tempestate prope omnes naves afflictas atque in litore eiectas esse, quod neque ancorae funesque subsisterent neque nautae gubernatoresque vim pati tempestatis possent: itaque ex eo concursu navium magnum esse incommodum acceptum.

XI. His rebus cognitis Caesar legiones equitatumque revocari atque in itinere resistere iubet, ipse ad naves revertitur; eadem fere, quae ex nuntiis litterisque cognoverat, coram perspicit, sic ut amissis circiter XL navibus reliquae tamen refici posse magno negotio viderentur. Itaque ex legionibus 15 fabros deligit et ex continenti alios arcessi iubet; Labieno scribit, ut, quam plurimas posset, iis legionibus, quae sunt apud eum, naves instituat. Ipse, etsi res erat multae operae ac laboris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit, omnes naves subduci et cum castris una munitione coniungi. In his rebus 20 circiter dies x consumit, ne nocturnis quidem temporibus ad laborem militum intermissis. Subductis navibus castrisque egregie munitis easdem copias, quas ante, praesidio navibus reliquit, ipse eodem, unde redierat, proficiscitur. Eo cum venisset, maiores iam undique in eum locum copiae Britan-25 norum convenerant summa imperii bellique administrandi communi consilio permissa Cassivellauno; cuius fines a maritimis civitatibus flumen dividit, quod appellatur Tamesis, a mari circiter milia passuum LXXX. Huic superiore tempore cum reliquis civitatibus continentia bella intercesserant; sed 30 nostro adventu permoti Britanni hunc toti bello imperioque praefecerant.

### Britain and its inhabitants.

XII. Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur, quos natos in insula ipsi memoria proditum dicunt, maritima pars ab iis, qui praedae ac belli inferendi causa ex Belgio transierant (qui omnes fere iis nominibus civitatum appellantur, quibus orti ex civitatibus eo pervenerunt), et bello illato ibi permanserunt atque agros colere coeperunt. Hominum est infinita multitudo creberrimaque aedificia fere Gallicis consimilia, pecorum magnus numerus. Utuntur aut aere aut nummo auteo aut taleis ferreis ad certum pondus examinatis pro nummo. Nascitur ibi plumbum album in mediterraneis regionibus, in maritimis ferrum, sed eius exigua est copia; aere utuntur importato. Materia cuiusque generis ut in Gallia est praeter fagum atque abietem. Leporem et gallinam et anserem gustare fas non putant; haec tamen alunt animi voluptatisque causa. Loca sunt temperatiora quam in Gallia, remissioribus frigoribus.

XIII. Insula natura triquetra, cuius unum latus est contra Galliam. Huius lateris alter angulus, qui est ad Cantium, 15 quo fere omnes ex Gallia naves appelluntur, ad orientem solem, inferior ad meridiem spectat. Hoc pertinet circiter milia passuum quingenta. Alterum vergit ad Hispaniam atque occidentem solem; qua ex parte est Hibernia dimidio minor, ut existimatur, quam Britannia, sed pari spatio trans- 20 missus, atque ex Gallia est in Britanniam. In hoc medio cursu est insula, quae appellatur Mona; complures praeterea minores subiectae insulae existimantur; de quibus insulis nonnulli scripserunt, dies continuos triginta sub bruma esse noctem. Nos nihil de eo percontationibus reperiebamus, 25 nisi certis ex aqua mensuris breviores esse quam in continenti noctes videbamus. Huius est longitudo lateris, ut fert illorum opinio, septingentorum milium. Tertium est contra septentriones; cui parti nulla est obiecta terra, sed eius angulus lateris maxime ad Germaniam spectat. Hoc milia 30 passuum octingenta in longitudinem esse existimatur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitu vicies centum milium passuum.

XIV. Ex his omnibus longe sunt humanissimi, qui Cantium incolunt, quae regio est maritima omnis, neque multum a Gallica differunt consuetudine. Interiores plerique frumenta 35 non serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt pellibusque sunt vestiti. Omnes vero se Britanni vitro inficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colorem, atque hoc horridiores sunt in pugna aspectu; capil-

loque sunt promisso atque omni parte corporis rasa praeter caput et labrum superius. Uxores habent deni duodenique inter se communes, et maxime fratres cum fratribus parentesque cum liberis; sed si qui sunt ex his nati, eorum habentur 5 liberi, quo primum virgo quaeque deducta est.

### Though the Britons resist bravely, Caesar marches inland.

XV. Equites hostium essedariique acriter proelio cum equitatu nostro in itinere conflixerunt, tamen ut nostri omnibus partibus superiores fuerint atque eos in silvas collesque compulerint; sed compluribus interfectis cupidius insecuti nonno nullos ex suis amiserunt. At illi intermisso spatio, imprudentibus nostris atque occupatis in munitione castrorum, subito se ex silvis eiecerunt impetuque in eos facto, qui erant in statione pro castris collocati, acriter pugnaverunt, duabusque missis subsidio cohortibus a Caesare, atque his primis 15 legionum duarum, cum hae perexiguo intermisso loci spatio inter se constitissent, novo genere pugnae perterritis nostris per medios audacissime perruperunt seque inde incolumes receperunt. Eo die Quintus Laberius Durus, tribunus militum, interficitur. Illi pluribus submissis cohortibus repelluntur.

XVI. Toto hoc in genere pugnae, cum sub oculis omnium ac pro castris dimicaretur, intellectum est, nostros propter gravitatem armorum, quod neque insequi cedentes possent neque ab signis discedere auderent, minus aptos esse ad huius generis hostem, equites autem magno cum periculo processor propere quod illi etiam consulto plerumque cederent et, cum paulum ab legionibus nostros removissent, ex essedis desilirent et pedibus dispari proelio contenderent. Equestris autem proelii ratio et cedentibus et insequentibus par atque idem periculum inferebat. Accedeso bat huc, ut numquam conferti, sed rari magnisque intervallis proeliarentur stationesque dispositas haberent, atque alios alii deinceps exciperent, integrique et recentes defetigatis succederent.

XVII. Postero die procul a castris hostes in collibus con-35 stiterunt rarique se ostendere et lenius quam pridie nostros equites proelio lacessere coeperunt. Sed meridie, cum Caesar pabulandi causa tres legiones atque omnem equitatum cum Gaio Trebonio legato misisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pabulatores advolaverunt, sic uti ab signis legionibusque non absisterent. Nostri acriter in eos impetu facto reppulerunt neque finem sequendi fecerunt, quoad subsidio confisi 5 equites, cum post se legiones viderent, praecipites hostes egerunt, magnoque eorum numero interfecto neque sui colligendi neque consistendi aut ex essedis desiliendi facultatem dederunt. Ex hac fuga protinus, quae undique convenerant, auxilia discesserunt, neque post id tempus umquam summis 10 nobiscum copiis hostes contenderunt.

XVIII. Caesar cognito consilio eorum ad flumen Tamesim in fines Cassivellauni exercitum duxit; quod flumen uno omnino loco pedibus, atque hoc aegre, transiri potest. Eo cum venisset, animum advertit, ad alteram fluminis ripam 15 magnas esse copias hostium instructas. Ripa autem erat acutis sudibus praefixis munita, eiusdemque generis sub aqua defixae sudes flumine tegebantur. His rebus cognitis a captivis perfugisque Caesar praemisso equitatu confestim legiones subsequi iussit. Sed ea celeritate atque eo impetu 20 milites ierunt, cum capite solo ex aqua exstarent, ut hostes impetum legionum atque equitum sustinere non possent ripasque dimitterent ac se fugae mandarent.

XIX. Cassivellaunus, ut supra demonstravimus, omni deposita spe contentionis, dimissis amplioribus copiis, milibus 25 circiter quattuor essedariorum relictis, itinera nostra servabat paulumque ex via excedebat locisque impeditis ac silvestribus sese occultabat atque iis regionibus, quibus nos iter facturos cognoverat, pecora atque homines ex agris in silvas compellebat et, cum equitatus noster liberius praedandi vastandique 30 causa se in agros eiecerat, omnibus viis semitisque essedarios ex silvis emittebat et magno cum periculo nostrorum equitum cum iis confligebat atque hoc metu latius vagari prohibebat. Relinquebatur, ut neque longius ab agmine legionum discedi Caesar pateretur, et tantum in agris vastandis incendiisque 35 faciendis hostibus noceretur, quantum labore atque itinere legionarii milites efficere poterant.

### Many tribes submit to Caesar; he returns to Gaul.

XX. Interim Trinobantes, prope firmissima earum regionum civitas, ex qua Mandubracius adulescens Caesaris fidem secutus ad eum in continentem Galliam venerat, cuius pater in ea civitate regnum obtinuerat interfectusque erat a Cassivellauno, ipse fuga mortem vitaverat, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque, sese ei dedituros atque imperata facturos; petunt, ut Mandubracium ab iniuria Cassivellauni defendat atque in civitatem mittat, qui praesit imperiumque obtineat. His Caesar imperat obsides quadraginta frumentumque exercitui Mandubraciumque ad eos mittit. Illi imperata celeriter fecerunt, obsides ad numerum frumentumque miserunt.

XXI. Trinobantibus defensis atque ab omni militum iniuria prohibitis, Cenimagni, Segontiăci, Ancalites, Bibrŏci, 15 Cassi legationibus missis sese Caesari dedunt. Ab his cognoscit, non longe ex eo loco oppidum Cassivellauni abesse silvis paludibusque munitum, quo satis magnus hominum pecorisque numerus convenerit. Oppidum autem Britanni vocant, cum silvas impeditas vallo atque fossa munierunt, quo incursionis hostium vitandae causa convenire consuerunt. Eo proficiscitur cum legionibus: locum reperit egregie natura atque opere munitum; tamen hunc duabus ex partibus oppugnare contendit. Hostes paulisper morati militum nostrorum impetum non tulerunt seseque alia ex parte oppidi 25 eiecerunt. Magnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus, multique in fuga sunt comprehensi atque interfecti.

XXII. Dum haec in his locis geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare supra demonstravimus, quibus regionibus quattuor reges praeerant, Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagŭlus, Segŏvax, nuntios mittit atque his imperat, uti coactis omnibus copiis castra navalia de improviso adoriantur atque oppugnent. Ii cum ad castra venissent, nostri eruptione facta multis eorum interfectis, capto etiam nobili duce Lugotorige suos incolumes reduxerunt. Cassivellaunus 35 hoc proelio nuntiato tot detrimentis acceptis, vastatis finibus, maxime etiam permotus defectione civitatum, legatos per

Atrebatem Commium de deditione ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar, cum constituisset hiemare in continenti propter repentinos Galliae motus, neque multum aestatis superesset, atque id facile extrahi posse intellegeret, obsides imperat et quid in annos singulos vectigalis populo Romano Britannia 5 penderet, constituit; interdicit atque imperat Cassivellauno, ne Mandubracio neu Trinobantibus noceat.

XXIII. Obsidibus acceptis exercitum reducit ad mare, naves invenit refectas. His deductis, quod et captivorum magnum numerum habebat et nonnullae tempestate deperi- 10 erant naves, duobus commeatibus exercitum reportare instituit. Ac sic accidit, uti ex tanto navium numero tot navigationibus neque hoc neque superiore anno ulla omnino navis, quae milites portaret, desideraretur, at ex iis, quae inanes ex continenti ad eum remitterentur, et prioris com- 15 meatus expositis militibus et quas postea Labienus faciendas curaverat numero Lx, perpaucae locum caperent, reliquae fere omnes reicerentur. Quas cum aliquamdiu Caesar frustra exspectasset, ne anni tempore a navigatione excluderetur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessario angustius milites col- 20 locavit ac, summa tranquillitate consecuta, secunda inita cum solvisset vigilia, prima luce terram attigit omnesque incolumes naves perduxit.

Grain being scarce, Caesar for the winter divides up his army.

His friend Tasgetius is slain.

XXIV. Subductis navibus concilioque Gallorum Samarobrivae peracto, quod eo anno frumentum in Gallia propter 25 siccitates angustius provenerat, coactus est aliter ac superioribus annis exercitum in hibernis collocare legionesque in plures civitates distribuere. Ex quibus unam in Morinos ducendam Gaio Fabio legato dedit, alteram in Nervios Quinto Ciceroni, tertiam in Esubios Lucio Roscio; quartam 30 in Remis cum Tito Labieno in confinio Treverorum hiemare iussit; tres in Belgis collocavit; his Marcum Crassum quaestorem et Lucium Munatium Plancum et Gaium Trebonium legatos praefecit. Unam legionem, quam proxime trans Padum conscripserat, et cohortes v in Eburones, quorum 35

pars maxima est inter Mosam ac Rhenum, qui sub imperio Ambiorigis et Catuvolci erant, misit. His militibus Quintum Titurium Sabinum et Lucium Aurunculeium Cottam legatos praeesse iussit. Ad hunc modum distributis legionibus facil-5 lime inopiae frumentariae sese mederi posse existimavit. Atque harum tamen omnium legionum hiberna praeter eam, quam Lucio Roscio in pacatissimam et quietissimam partem ducendam dederat, milibus passuum centum continebantur. Ipse interea, quoad legiones collocatas munitaque hiberna cognovisset, in Gallia morari constituit.

XXV. Erat in Carnutibus summo loco natus Tasgetius, cuius maiores in sua civitate regnum obtinuerant. Huic Caesar pro eius virtute atque in se benevolentia, quod in omnibus bellis singulari eius opera fuerat usus, maiorum loscum restituerat. Tertium iam hunc annum regnantem, inimicis multis palam ex civitate et iis auctoribus, eum interfecerunt. Defertur ea res ad Caesarem. Ille veritus, quod ad plures pertinebat, ne civitas eorum impulsu deficeret, Lucium Plancum cum legione ex Belgio celeriter in Carnutes proficisci iubet ibique hiemare, quorumque opera cognoverat Tasgetium interfectum, hos comprehensos ad se mittere. Interim ab omnibus legatis quaestoreque, quibus legiones tradiderat, certior factus est, in hiberna perventum locumque hibernis esse munitum.

The winter camp of Sabinus and Cotta is attacked. The officers parley with the foe, but disagree with each other.

25 XXVI. Diebus circiter xv, quibus in hiberna ventum est, initium repentini tumultus ac defectionis ortum est ab Ambiorige et Catuvolco; qui, cum ad fines regni sui Sabino Cottaeque praesto fuissent frumentumque in hiberna comportavissent, Indutiomari Treveri nuntiis impulsi suos concitaverunt subitoque oppressis lignatoribus magna manu ad castra oppugnatum venerunt. Cum celeriter nostri arma cepissent vallumque ascendissent atque una ex parte Hispanis equitibus emissis equestri proelio superiores fuissent, desperata re hostes suos ab oppugnatione reduxerunt. Tum 35 suo more conclamaverunt, uti aliqui ex nostris ad colloquium

prodiret: habere sese, quae de re communi dicere vellent, quibus rebus controversias minui posse sperarent.

XXVII. Mittitur ad eos colloquendi causa Gaius Arpineius eques Romanus, familiaris Quinti Titurii, et Quintus Iunius ex Hispania quidam, qui iam ante missu Caesaris ad Ambi- 5 origem ventitare consuerat; apud quos Ambiorix ad hunc modum locutus est: Sese pro Caesaris in se beneficiis plurimum ei confiteri debere, quod eius opera stipendio liberatus esset, quod Aduatucis, finitimis suis, pendere consuesset, quodque ei et filius et fratris filius ab Caesare remissi essent, 10 quos Aduatuci obsidum numero missos apud se in servitute et catenis tenuissent; neque id, quod fecerit de oppugnatione castrorum, aut iudicio aut voluntate sua fecisse, sed coactu civitatis, suaque esse eiusmodi imperia, ut non minus haberet iuris in se multitudo, quam ipse in multitudinem. Civitati 15 porro hanc fuisse belli causam, quod repentinae Gallorum coniurationi resistere non potuerit. Id se facile ex humilitate sua probare posse, quod non adeo sit imperitus rerum, ut suis copiis populum Romanum superari posse confidat. Sed esse Galliae commune consilium: omnibus hibernis 20 Caesaris oppugnandis hunc esse dictum diem, ne qua legio alterae legioni subsidio venire posset. Non facile Gallos Gallis negare potuisse, praesertim cum de recuperanda communi libertate consilium initum videretur. quoniam pro pietate satisfecerit, habere nunc se rationem 25 officii pro beneficiis Caesaris: monere, orare Titurium pro hospitio, ut suae ac militum saluti consulat. Magnam manum Germanorum conductam Rhenum transisse; hanc affore biduo. Ipsorum esse consilium, velintne prius, quam finitimi sentiant, eductos ex hibernis milites aut ad Cicero- 30 nem aut ad Labienum deducere, quorum alter milia passuum circiter quinquaginta, alter paulo amplius ab iis absit. se polliceri et iureiurando confirmare, tutum iter per fines daturum. Quod cum faciat, et civitati sese consulere, quod hibernis levetur, et Caesari pro eius meritis gratiam referre. 35 Hac oratione habita discedit Ambiorix.

XXVIII. Arpineius et Iunius, quae audierunt, ad legatos deferunt. Illi repentina re perturbati, etsi ab hoste ea dice-

bantur, tamen non neglegenda existimabant, maximeque hac re permovebantur, quod civitatem ignobilem atque humilem Eburonum sua sponte populo Romano bellum facere ausam vix erat credendum. Itaque ad consilium rem deferunt, 5 magnaque inter eos exsistit controversia. Lucius Aurunculeius compluresque tribuni militum et primorum ordinum centuriones nihil temere agendum neque ex hibernis iniussu Caesaris discedendum existimabant; quantasvis copias etiam Germanorum sustineri posse munitis hibernis docebant: rem esse testimonio, quod primum hostium impetum multis ultro vulneribus illatis fortissime sustinuerint; re frumentaria non premi; interea et ex proximis hibernis et a Caesare conventura subsidia; postremo quid esse levius aut turpius, quam auctore hoste de summis rebus capere consilium?

XXIX. Contra ea Titurius sero facturos clamitabat, cum maiores manus hostium adiunctis Germanis convenissent, aut cum aliquid calamitatis in proximis hibernis esset acceptum. Brevem consulendi esse occasionem. Caesarem arbitrari profectum in Italiam; neque aliter Carnutes inter-20 ficiendi Tasgetii consilium fuisse capturos, neque Eburones, si ille adesset, tanta contemptione nostri ad castra venturos Non hostem auctorem, sed rem spectare: subesse Rhenum; magno esse Germanis dolori Ariovisti mortem et superiores nostras victorias; ardere Galliam tot contumeliis 25 acceptis sub populi Romani imperium redactam, superiore gloria rei militaris exstincta. Postremo quis hoc sibi persuaderet, sine certa re Ambiorigem ad eiusmodi consilium descendisse? Suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tutam: si nihil esset durius, nullo cum periculo ad proxi-30 mam legionem perventuros; si Gallia omnis cum Germanis consentiret, unam esse in celeritate positam salutem. quidem atque eorum, qui dissentirent, consilium quem habere exitum? in quo si non praesens periculum, at certe longinqua obsidione fames esset timenda.

35 XXX. Hac in utramque partem disputatione habita, cum a Cotta primisque ordinibus acriter resisteretur, 'Vincite,' inquit, 'si ita vultis,' Sabinus, et id clariore voce, ut magna pars militum exaudiret; 'neque is sum,' inquit, 'qui gra-

5

vissime ex vobis mortis periculo terrear: hi sapient; si gravius quid acciderit, abs te rationem reposcent; qui si per te liceat, perendino die cum proximis hibernis coniuncti communem cum reliquis belli casum sustineant, non reiecti et relegati longe ab ceteris aut ferro aut fame intereant.'

XXXI. Consurgitur ex consilio; comprehendunt utrumque et orant, ne sua dissensione et pertinacia rem in summum periculum deducant: facilem esse rem, seu maneant, seu proficiscantur, si modo unum omnes sentiant ac probent; contra in dissensione nullam se salutem perspicere. Res dis- 10 putatione ad mediam noctem perducitur. Tandem dat Cotta permotus manus: superat sententia Sabini. Pronuntiatur. prima luce ituros. Consumitur vigiliis reliqua pars noctis, cum sua quisque miles circumspiceret, quid secum portare posset, quid ex instrumento hibernorum relinquere cogeretur. 15 Omnia excogitantur, quare nec sine periculo maneatur et languore militum et vigiliis periculum augeatur. Prima luce sic ex castris proficiscuntur, ut quibus esset persuasum, non ab hoste, sed ab homine amicissimo Ambiorige consilium datum, longissimo agmine maximisque impedimentis. 2Ò

### The Roman force leaves the camp and is destroyed.

XXXII. At hostes, posteaquam ex nocturno fremitu vigilisque de profectione eorum senserunt, collocatis insidiis bipertito in silvis opportuno atque occulto loco a milibus passuum circiter duobus Romanorum adventum exspectabant, et cum se maior pars agminis in magnam convallem 25 demisisset, ex utraque parte eius vallis subito se ostenderunt novissimosque premere et primos prohibere ascensu atque iniquissimo nostris loco proelium committere coeperunt.

XXXIII. Tum demum Titurius, qui nihil ante providisset, trepidare et concursare cohortesque disponere, haec tamen 30 ipsa timide atque ut eum omnia deficere viderentur; quod plerumque ils accidere consuevit, qui in ipso negotio consilium capere coguntur. At Cotta, qui cogitasset, haec posse in itinere accidere, atque ob eam causam profectionis auctor non fuisset, nulla in re communi saluti deerat: et in appel-35 landis cohortandisque militibus imperatoris et in pugna mili-

tis officia praestabat. Cum propter longitudinem agminis minus facile omnia per se obire et, quid quoque loco faciendum esset, providere possent, iusserunt pronuntiare, ut impedimenta relinquerent atque in orbem consisterent. Quod consilium etsi in eiusmodi casu reprehendendum non est, tamen incommode accidit: nam et nostris militibus spem minuit et hostes ad pugnandum alacriores effecit, quod non sine summo timore et desperatione id factum videbatur. Praeterea accidit, quod fieri necesse erat, ut ro vulgo milites ab signis discederent, quaeque quisque eorum carissima haberet, ab impedimentis petere atque arripere properaret, clamore et fletu omnia complerentur.

XXXIV. At barbaris consilium non defuit. Nam duces eorum tota acie pronuntiare iusserunt, ne quis ab loco dis15 cederet: illorum esse praedam atque illis reservari, quaecumque Romani reliquissent: proinde omnia in victoria posita existimarent. Erant et virtute et numero pugnandi pares nostri; tametsi ab duce et a fortuna deserebantur, tamen omnem spem salutis in virtute ponebant, et quotiens quaeque 20 cohors procurrerat, ab ea parte magnus numerus hostium cadebat. Qua re animadversa Ambiorix pronuntiari iubet, ut procul tela coniciant neu propius accedant et, quam in partem Romani impetum fecerint, cedant (levitate armorum et cotidiana exercitatione nihil iis noceri posse), rursus se ad 25 signa recipientes insequantur.

XXXV. Quo praecepto ab iis diligentissime observato, cum quaepiam cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impetum fecerat, hostes velocissime refugiebant. Interim eam partem nudari necesse erat et ab latere aperto tela recipi. 30 Rursus, cum in eum locum, unde erant egressi, reverti coeperant, et ab iis, qui cesserant, et ab iis, qui proximi steterant, circumveniebantur; sin autem locum tenere vellent, nec virtuti locus relinquebatur, neque ab tanta multitudine coniecta tela conferti vitare poterant. Tamen tot 35 incommodis conflictati, multis vulneribus acceptis resistebant et magna parte diei consumpta, cum a prima luce ad horam octavam pugnaretur, nihil, quod ipsis esset indignum, committebant. Tum Tito Balventio, qui superiore anno primum

pilum duxerat, viro forti et magnae auctoritatis, utrumque femur tragula traicitur: Quintus Lucanius, eiusdem ordinis, fortissime pugnans, dum circumvento filio subvenit, interficitur; Lucius Cotta legatus omnes cohortes ordinesque adhortans in adversum os funda vulneratur.

XXXVI. His rebus permotus Quintus Titurius, cum procul Ambiorigem suos cohortantem conspexisset, interpretem suum Gneum Pompeium ad eum mittit rogatum, ut sibi militibusque parcat. Ille appellatus respondit: Si velit secum colloqui, licere; sperare, a multitudine impetrari posse, quod 10 ad militum salutem pertineat; ipsi vero nihil nocitum iri, inque eam rem se suam fidem interponere. Ille cum Cotta saucio communicat, si videatur, pugna ut excedant et cum Ambiorige una colloquantur: sperare, ab eo de sua ac militum salute impetrari posse. Cotta se ad armatum hostem 15 iturum negat atque in eo perseverat.

XXXVII. Sabinus, quos in praesentia tribunos militum circum se habebat, et primorum ordinum centuriones se sequi iubet et, cum propius Ambiorigem accessisset, iussus arma abicere imperatum facit suisque, ut idem faciant, im- 20 perat. Interim, dum de condicionibus inter se agunt longiorque consulto ab Ambiorige instituitur sermo, paulatim circumventus interficitur. Tum vero suo more victoriam conclamant atque ululatum tollunt impetuque in nostros facto ordines perturbant. Ibi Lucius Cotta pugnans inter- 25 ficitur cum maxima parte militum. Reliqui se in castra recipiunt, unde erant egressi. Ex quibus Lucius Petrosidius aquilifer, cum magna multitudine hostium premeretur, aquilam intra vallum proiecit, ipse pro castris fortissime pugnans occiditur. Illi aegre ad noctem oppugnationem 30 sustinent; noctu ad unum omnes desperata salute se ipsi interficiunt. Pauci ex proelio elapsi incertis itineribus per silvas ad Titum Labienum legatum in hiberna perveniunt atque eum de rebus gestis certiorem faciunt.

The winter camp of Cicero is attacked, and bravely defended.

XXXVIII. Hac victoria sublatus Ambiorix statim cum 35 equitatu in Aduatucos, qui erant eius regno finitimi, profi-

ciscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit peditatumque sese subsequi iubet. Re demonstrata Aduatucisque concitatis, postero die in Nervios pervenit hortaturque, ne sui in perpetuum liberandi atque ulciscendi Romanos pro iis, 5 quas acceperint, iniuriis occasionem dimittant: interfectos esse legatos duos magnamque partem exercitus interisse demonstrat; nihil esse negotii, subito oppressam legionem, quae cum Cicerone hiemet, interfici; se ad eam rem profitetur adiutorem. Facile hac oratione Nerviis perto suadet.

XXXIX. Itaque confestim dimissis nuntiis ad Ceutrones, Grudios, Levăcos, Pleumoxios, Geidumnos, qui omnes sub eorum imperio sunt, quam maximas manus possunt, cogunt, et de improviso ad Ciceronis hiberna advolant, nondum ad 15 eum fama de Titurii morte perlata. Huic quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut nonnulli milites, qui lignationis munitionisque causa in silvas discessissent, repentino equitum adventu interciperentur. His circumventis, magna manu Eburones, Nervii, Aduatuci atque horum omnium socii et clientes 20 legionem oppugnare incipiunt. Nostri celeriter ad arma concurrunt, vallum conscendunt. Aegre is dies sustentatur, quod omnem spem hostes in celeritate ponebant atque hanc adepti victoriam in perpetuum se fore victores confidebant.

XL. Mittuntur ad Caesarem confestim ab Cicerone lites terae, magnis propositis praemiis, si pertulissent; obsessis omnibus viis missi intercipiuntur. Noctu ex materia, quam munitionis causa comportaverant, turres admodum cxx excitantur incredibili celeritate; quae deesse operi videbantur, perficiuntur. Hostes postero die multo maioribus coactis copiis castra oppugnant, fossam complent. Eadem ratione, qua pridie, ab nostris resistitur. Hoc idem reliquis deinceps fit diebus. Nulla pars nocturni temporis ad laborem intermittitur; non aegris, non vulneratis facultas quietis datur. Quaecumque ad proximi diei oppugnationem opus sunt, soctu comparantur; multae praeustae sudes, magnus muralium pilorum numerus instituitur; turres contabulantur, pinnae loricaeque ex cratibus attexuntur. Ipse Cicero, cum tenuissima valetudine esset, ne nocturnum quidem sibi

tempus ad quietem relinquebat, ut ultro militum concursu ac vocibus sibi parcere cogeretur.

XLI. Tunc duces principesque Nerviorum, qui aliquem sermonis aditum causamque amicitiae cum Cicerone habebant, colloqui sese velle dicunt. Facta potestate, eadem, 5 quae Ambiorix cum Titurio egerat, commemorant: omnem esse in armis Galliam; Germanos Rhenum transisse; Caesaris reliquorumque hiberna oppugnari. Addunt etiam de Sabini morte; Ambiorigem ostentant fidei faciundae causa. Errare eos dicunt, si quicquam ab his praesidii sperent, qui ro suis rebus diffidant; sese tamen hoc esse in Ciceronem populumque Romanum animo, ut nihil nisi hiberna recusent atque hanc inveterascere consuetudinem nolint; licere illis incolumibus per se ex hibernis discedere et, quascumque in partes velint, sine metu proficisci. Cicero ad haec unum 15 modo respondit: non esse consuetudinem populi Romani, accipere ab hoste armato condicionem: si ab armis discedere velint, se adiutore utantur legatosque ad Caesarem mittant; sperare pro eius iustitia, quae petierint. impetraturos.

XLII. Ab hac spe repulsi Nervii vallo pedum IX et fossa 20 pedum XV hiberna cingunt. Haec et superiorum annorum consuetudine ab nobis cognoverant et, quosdam de exercitu habebant captivos, ab his docebantur; sed nulla ferramentorum copia, quae esset ad hunc usum idonea, gladiis cespites circumcidere, manibus sagulisque terram exhaurire nitebantur. Qua quidem ex re hominum multitudo cognosci potuit: nam minus horis tribus milium passuum XV in circuitu munitionem perfecerunt, reliquisque diebus turres ad altitudinem valli, falces testudinesque, quas eidem captivi docuerant, parare ac facere coeperunt.

XLIII. Septimo oppugnationis die maximo coorto vento ferventes fusili ex argilla glandes fundis et fervefacta iacula in casas, quae more Gallico stramentis erant tectae, iacere coeperunt. Hae celeriter ignem comprehenderunt et venti magnitudine in omnem locum castrorum distulerunt. Hos- 35 tes maximo clamore, sicuti parta iam atque explorata victoria, turres testudinesque agere et scalis vallum ascendere coeperunt. At tanta militum virtus atque ea praesentia animi fuit

ut, cum undique flamma torrerentur maximaque telorum multitudine premerentur suaque omnia impedimenta atque omnes fortunas conflagrare intellegerent, non modo demigrandi causa de vallo decederet nemo, sed paene ne respiceret quisquam, ac tum omnes acerrime fortissimeque pugnarent. Hic dies nostris longe gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit eventum, ut eo die maximus numerus hostium vulneraretur atque interficeretur, ut se sub ipso vallo constipaverant recessumque primis ultimi non dabant. Paulum quidem intermissa flamma et quodam loco turri adacta et contingente vallum, tertiae cohortis centuriones ex eo, quo stabant, loco recesserunt suosque omnes removerunt, nutu vocibusque hostes, si introire vellent, vocare coeperunt; quorum progredi ausus est nemo. Tum ex omni parte 15 lapidibus coniectis deturbati, turrisque succensa est.

XLIV. Erant in ea legione fortissimi viri, centuriones, qui primis ordinibus appropinquarent, Titus Pulio et Lucius Vorenus. Hi perpetuas inter se controversias habebant, quinam anteferretur, omnibusque annis de locis summis 20 simultatibus contendebant. Ex his Pulio, cum acerrime ad munitiones pugnaretur, 'Quid dubitas,' inquit, 'Vorene? aut quem locum tuae probandae virtutis exspectas? hic dies de nostris controversiis iudicabit.' Haec cum dixisset, procedit extra munitiones, quaeque pars hostium confertissima est 25 visa, irrumpit. Ne Vorenus quidem sese vallo continet, sed omnium veritus existimationem subsequitur. Mediocri spatio relicto Pulio pilum in hostes immittit atque unum ex multitudine procurrentem traicit; quo percusso et exanimato, hunc scutis protegunt, in hostem tela universi coniciunt 30 neque dant regrediendi facultatem. Transfigitur scutum Pulioni et verutum in balteo defigitur. Avertit hic casus vaginam et gladium educere conanti dextram moratur manum, impeditumque hostes circumsistunt. Succurrit inimicus illi Vorenus et laboranti subvenit. Ad hunc se confestim a 35 Pulione omnis multitudo convertit; illum veruto arbitrantur occisum. Gladio comminus rem gerit Vorenus atque uno interfecto reliquos paulum propellit; dum cupidius instat, in locum deiectus inferiorem concidit. Huic rursus circumvento fert subsidium Pulio, atque ambo incolumes compluribus interfectis summa cum laude sese intra munitiones recipiunt. Sic fortuna in contentione et certamine utrumque versavit, ut alter alteri inimicus auxilio salutique esset, neque diiudicari posset, uter utri virtute anteferendus videretur.

XLV. Quanto erat in dies gravior atque asperior oppugnatio, et maxime quod magna parte militum confecta vulneribus res ad paucitatem defensorum pervenerat, tanto crebriores litterae nuntiique ad Caesarem mittebantur; quorum pars deprehensa in conspectu nostrorum militum cum cruciatu 10 necabatur. Erat unus intus Nervius nomine Vertico, loco natus honesto, qui a prima obsidione ad Ciceronem perfugerat suamque ei fidem praestiterat. Hic servo spe libertatis magnisque persuadet praemiis, ut litteras ad Caesarem deferat. Has ille in iaculo illigatas effert et Gallus inter 15 Gallos sine ulla suspicione versatus ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab eo de periculis Ciceronis legionisque cognoscitur.

XLVI. Caesar acceptis litteris hora circiter undecima diei statim nuntium in Bellovacos ad M. Crassum quaestorem mittit, cuius hiberna aberant ab eo milia passuum xxv; iubet 20 media nocte legionem proficisci celeriterque ad se venire. Exit cum nuntio Crassus. Alterum ad Gaium Fabium legatum mittit, ut in Atrebatum fines legionem adducat, qua sibi scit iter faciendum. Scribit Labieno, si reipublicae commodo facere posset, cum legione ad fines Nerviorum veniat. Reli-25 quam partem exercitus, quod paulo aberat longius, non putat exspectandam; equites circiter quadringentos ex proximis hibernis colligit.

XLVII. Hora circiter tertia ab antecursoribus de Crassi adventu certior factus, eo die milia passuum xx procedit. 30 Crassum Samarobrivae praeficit legionemque attribuit, quod ibi impedimenta exercitus, obsides civitatum, litteras publicas frumentumque omne, quod eo tolerandae hiemis causa devexerat, relinquebat. Fabius, ut imperatum erat, non ita multum moratus, in itinere cum legione occurrit. Labienus, 35 interitu Sabini et caede cohortium cognita, cum omnes ad eum Treverorum copiae venissent, veritus, si ex hibernis fugae similem profectionem fecisset, ut hostium impetum

sustinere posset, praesertim quos recenti victoria efferri sciret, litteras Caesari remittit, quanto cum periculo legionem ex hibernis educturus esset, rem gestam in Eburonibus perscribit, docet, omnes peditatus equitatusque copias Treverorum tria 5 milia passuum longe ab suis castris consedisse.

XLVIII. Caesar consilio eius probato, etsi opinione trium legionum deiectus ad duas redierat, tamen unum communis salutis auxilium in celeritate ponebat. Venit magnis itineribus in Nerviorum fines. Ibi ex captivis cognoscit, quae apud 10 Ciceronem gerantur quantoque in periculo res sit. Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallis magnis praemiis persuadet, uti ad Ciceronem epistolam deferat. Hanc Graecis conscriptam litteris mittit, ne intercepta epistola nostra ab hostibus consilia cognoscantur. Si adire non possit, monet, ut tragulam 15 cum epistola ad amentum deligata intra munitionem castrorum abiciat. In litteris scribit, se cum legionibus profectum celeriter affore; hortatur, ut pristinam virtutem retineat. Gallus periculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum, tragulam mittit. Haec casu ad turrim adhaesit neque ab nostris biduo ani-20 madversa tertio die a quodam milite conspicitur, dempta ad Ciceronem defertur. Ille perlectam in conventu militum recitat maximaque omnes laetitia afficit. Tum fumi incendiorum procul videbantur, quae res omnem dubitationem adventus legionum expulit.

25 XLIX. Galli re cognita per exploratores obsidionem relinquunt, ad Caesarem omnibus copiis contendunt. Haec erant armata circiter milia Lx. Cicero data facultate Gallum ab eodem Verticone, quem supra demonstravimus, repetit, qui litteras ad Caesarem deferat; hunc admonet, iter caute 30 diligenterque faciat; perscribit in litteris, hostes ab se discessisse omnemque ad eum multitudinem convertisse. Quibus litteris circiter media nocte Caesar allatis suos facit certiores eosque ad dimicandum animo confirmat. Postero die luce prima movet castra et circiter milia passuum quattuor progressus trans vallem et rivum multitudinem hostium conspicatur. Erat magni periculi res, tantulis copiis iniquo loco dimicare; tum, quoniam obsidione liberatum Ciceronem sciebat, aequo animo remittendum de celeritate existimabat.

Consedit et, quam aequissime loco potest, castra communit atque haec, etsi erant exigua per se, vix hominum milium septem, praesertim nullis cum impedimentis, tamen angustiis viarum, quam maxime potest, contrahit eo consilio, ut in summam contemptionem hostibus veniat. Interim speculatoribus in 5 omnes partes dimissis explorat, quo commodissime itinere valles transiri possit.

L. Eo die parvulis equestribus proeliis ad aquam factis utrique sese suo loco continent; Galli, quod ampliores copias, quae nondum convenerant, exspectabant; Caesar, si 10 forte timoris simulatione hostes in suum locum elicere posset, ut citra vallem pro castris proelio contenderet; si id efficere non posset, ut exploratis itineribus minore cum periculo vallem rivumque transiret. Prima luce hostium equitatus ad castra accedit proeliumque cum nostris equitibus committit. Caesar 15 consulto equites cedere seque in castra recipere iubet; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiore vallo muniri portasque obstrui atque in his administrandis rebus quam maxime concursari et cum simulatione agi timoris iubet.

LI. Quibus omnibus rebus hostes invitati copias traducunt <sup>20</sup> aciemque iniquo loco constituunt, nostris vero etiam de vallo deductis, propius accedunt et tela intra munitionem ex omnibus partibus coniciunt praeconibusque circummissis pronuntiari iubent, seu quis Gallus seu Romanus velit ante horam tertiam ad se transire, sine periculo licere; post id tempus <sup>25</sup> non fore potestatem; ac sic nostros contempserunt, ut, obstructis in speciem portis, singulis ordinibus cespitum, quod ea non posse introrumpere videbantur, alii vallum manu scindere, alii fossas complere inciperent. Tum Caesar omnibus portis eruptione facta equitatuque emisso celeriter hostes in <sup>30</sup> fugam dat, sic uti omnino pugnandi causa resisteret nemo, magnumque ex eis numerum occidit atque omnes armis exuit.

LII. Longius prosequi veritus, quod silvae paludesque intercedebant neque etiam parvulo detrimento illorum locum 35 relinqui videbat, omnibus suis incolumibus copiis eodem die ad Ciceronem pervenit. Institutas turres, testudines munitionesque hostium admiratur; legione producta cognoscit,

non decimum quemque esse reliquum militem sine vulnere: ex his omnibus iudicat rebus, quanto cum periculo et quanta cum virtute res sint administratae. Ciceronem pro eius merito legionemque collaudat; centuriones singillatim tri- 5 bunosque militum appellat, quorum egregiam fuisse virtutem testimonio Ciceronis cognoverat. De casu Sabini et Cottae certius ex captivis cognoscit. Postero die contione habita rem gestam proponit, milites consolatur et confirmat: quod detrimentum culpa et temeritate legati sit acceptum, hoc ae- quiore animo ferundum docet, quod, beneficio deorum immortalium et virtute eorum expiato incommodo, neque hostibus diutina laetatio neque ipsis longior dolor relinquatur.

## A proposed attack on Labienus is abandoned; but almost all Gaul is stirred up.

LIII. Interim ad Labienum per Remos incredibili celeritate de victoria Caesaris fama perfertur, ut, cum ab hibernis 15 Ciceronis milia passuum abesset circiter LX, eoque post horam nonam diei Caesar pervenisset, ante mediam noctem ad portas castrorum clamor oreretur, quo clamore significatio victoriae gratulatioque ab Remis Labieno fieret. Hac fama ad Treveros perlata, Indutiomarus, qui postero die castra Labieni 20 oppugnare decreverat, noctu profugit copiasque omnes in Treveros reducit. Caesar Fabium cum sua legione remittit in hiberna, ipse cum tribus legionibus circum Samarobrivam trinis hibernis hiemare constituit et, quod tanti motus Galliae exstiterant, totam hiemem ipse ad exercitum manere decrevit. 25 Nam illo incommodo de Sabini morte perlato omnes fere Galliae civitates de bello consultabant, nuntios legationesque in omnes partes dimittebant et, quid reliqui consilii caperent atque unde initium belli fieret, explorabant nocturnaque in locis desertis concilia habebant. Neque ullum fere totius 30 hiemis tempus sine sollicitudine Caesaris intercessit, quin aliquem de consiliis ac motu Gallorum nuntium acciperet. In his ab Lucio Roscio, quem legioni tertiaedecimae praefecerat, certior factus est, magnas Gallorum copias earum civitatum, quae Aremoricae appellantur, oppugnandi sui causa 35 convenisse neque longius milia passuum octo ab hibernis suis

afuisse, sed nuntio allato de victoria Caesaris discessisse, adeo ut fugae similis discessus videretur.

LIV. At Caesar principibus cuiusque civitatis ad se evocatis alias territando, cum se scire, quae fierent, denuntiaret, alias cohortando magnam partem Galliae in officio tenuit. Tamen Senones, quae est civitas imprimis firma et magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis, Cavarinum, quem Caesar apud eos regem constituerat, cuius frater Moritasgus adventu in Galliam Caesaris, cuiusque maiores regnum obtinuerant, interficere publico consilio conati, cum ille praesensisset ac profugisset, 10 usque ad fines insecuti regno domoque expulerunt et, missis ad Caesarem satisfaciundi causa legatis, cum is omnem ad se senatum venire iussisset, dicto audientes non fuerunt. Tantum apud homines barbaros valuit, esse aliquos repertos principes inferendi belli, tantamque omnibus voluntatum com- 15 mutationem attulit, ut praeter Aeduos et Remos, quos praecipuo semper honore Caesar habuit, alteros pro vetere ac perpetua erga populum Romanum fide, alteros pro recentibus Gallici belli officiis, nulla fere civitas fuerit non suspecta nobis. Idque adeo haud scio mirandumne sit, cum com- 20 pluribus aliis de causis, tum maxime, quod ei, qui virtute belli omnibus gentibus praeferebantur, tantum se eius opinionis deperdidisse, ut a populo Romano imperia perferrent, gravissime dolebant.

LV. Treveri vero atque Indutiomarus totius hiemis nullum 25 tempus intermiserunt, quin trans Rhenum legatos mitterent, civitates sollicitarent, pecunias pollicerentur, magna parte exercitus nostri interfecta multo minorem superesse dicerent partem. Neque tamen ulli civitati Germanorum persuaderi potuit, ut Rhenum transiret, cum se bis expertos dicerent, 30 Ariovisti bello et Tencterorum transitu: non esse amplius fortunam temptaturos. Hac spe lapsus Indutiomarus nihilo minus copias cogere, exercere, a finitimis equos parare, exules damnatosque tota Gallia magnis praemiis ad se allicere coepit. Ac tantam sibi iam his rebus in Gallia auctori-35 tatem comparaverat, ut undique ad eum legationes concurrerent, gratiam atque amicitiam publice privatimque peterent.

The Gauls attack the camp of Labienus, and are repulsed.

LVI. Ubi intellexit, ultro ad se veniri, altera ex parte Senones Carnutesque conscientia facinoris instigari, altera Nervios Aduatucosque bellum Romanis parare, neque sibi voluntariorum copias defore, si ex finibus suis progredi coepisset, 5 armatum concilium indicit. Hoc more Gallorum est initium belli: quo lege communi omnes puberes armati convenire consuerunt; qui ex iis novissimus convenit, in conspectu multitudinis omnibus cruciatibus affectus necatur. In eo concilio Cingetorigem, alterius principem factionis generum 10 suum, quem supra demonstravimus Caesaris secutum fidem ab eo non discessisse, hostem iudicat bonaque eius publicat. His rebus confectis in concilio pronuntiat, arcessitum se a Senonibus et Carnutibus aliisque compluribus Galliae civitatibus; huc iturum per fines Remorum eorumque agros 15 populaturum ac, priusquam id faciat, castra Labieni oppugnaturum. Ouae fieri velit, praecipit.

LVII. Labienus, cum et loci natura et manu munitissimis castris sese teneret, de suo ac legionis periculo nihil timebat, ne quam occasionem rei bene gerendae dimitteret, cogitabat. 20 Itaque a Cingetorige atque eius propinquis oratione Indutiomari cognita, quam in concilio habuerat, nuntios mittit ad finitimas civitates equitesque undique evocat: his certum diem conveniendi dicit. Interim prope cotidie cum omni equitatu Indutiomarus sub castris eius vagabatur, alias ut situm 25 castrorum cognosceret, alias colloquendi aut territandi causa; equites plerumque omnes tela intra vallum coniciebant. Labienus suos intra munitionem continebat timorisque opinionem, quibuscumque poterat rebus, augebat.

LVIII. Cum maiore in dies contemptione Indutiomarus ad castra accederet, nocte una intromissis equitibus omnium finitimarum civitatum, quos arcessendos curaverat, tanta diligentia omnes suos custodiis intra castra continuit, ut nulla ratione ea res enuntiari aut ad Treveros perferri posset. Interim ex consuetudine cotidiana Indutiomarus ad castra accedit at-35 que ibi magnam partem diei consumit; equites tela coniciunt et magna cum contumelia verborum nostros ad pugnam evocant. Nullo ab nostris dato responso, ubi visum est, sub vespe-

rum dispersi ac dissipati discedunt. Subito Labienus duabus portis omnem equitatum emittit: praecipit atque interdicit, proterritis hostibus atque in fugam coniectis (quod fore, sicut accidit, videbat) unum omnes peterent Indutiomarum, neu quis quem prius vulneret, quam illum interfectum viderit, quod 5 mora reliquorum spatium nactum illum effugere nolebat; magna proponit iis, qui occiderint, praemia; submittit cohortes equitibus subsidio. Comprobat hominis consilium fortuna, et cum unum omnes peterent, in ipso fluminis vado deprehensus Indutiomarus interficitur caputque eius refertur in 10 castra; redeuntes equites, quos possunt, consectantur atque occidunt. Hac re cognita omnes Eburonum et Nerviorum, quae convenerant, copiae discedunt, pauloque habuit post id factum Caesar quietiorem Galliam.

### COMMENTARIUS SEXTUS.

Caesar, increasing his forces, subdues several rebellious tribes.

I. Multis de causis Caesar maiorem Galliae motum exspectans per Marcum Silanum, Gaium Antistium Reginum. Titum Sextium legatos delectum habere instituit; simul ab Gneo Pompeio proconsule petit, quoniam ipse ad urbem 5 cum imperio reipublicae causa remaneret, quos ex Cisalpina Gallia consulis sacramento rogavisset, ad signa convenire et ad se proficisci iuberet, magni interesse etiam in reliquum tempus ad opinionem Galliae existimans, tantas videri Italiae facultates, ut, si quid esset in bello detrimenti acceptum, non 10 modo id brevi tempore resarciri, sed etiam maioribus augeri copiis posset. Quod cum Pompeius et reipublicae et amicitiae tribuisset, celeriter confecto per suos delectu tribus ante exactam hiemem et constitutis et adductis legionibus duplicatoque earum cohortium numero, quas cum Q. Titurio 15 amiserat, et celeritate et copiis docuit, quid populi Romani disciplina atque opes possent.

II. Interfecto Indutiomaro, ut docuimus, ad eius propinquos a Treveris imperium defertur. Illi finitimos Germanos sollicitare et pecuniam polliceri non desistunt. Cum ab 20 proximis impetrare non possent, ulteriores temptant. Inventis nonnullis civitatibus iureiurando inter se confirmant obsidibusque de pecunia cavent; Ambiorigem sibi societate et foedere adiungunt. Quibus rebus cognitis Caesar, cum undique bellum parari videret, Nervios, Aduatucos, Menapios 25 adiunctis Cisrhenanis omnibus Germanis esse in armis, Senones ad imperatum non venire et cum Carnutibus finitimisque civitatibus consilia communicare, a Treveris Germanos crebris legationibus sollicitari, maturius sibi de bello cogitandum putavit. III. Itaque nondum hieme confecta proximis quattuor coactis legionibus de improviso in fines Nerviorum contendit et, priusquam illi aut convenire aut profugere possent, magno pecoris atque hominum numero capto atque ea praeda militibus concessa vastatisque agris in deditionem venire atque 5 obsides sibi dare coegit. Eo celeriter confecto negotio rursus in hiberna legiones reduxit. Concilio Galliae primo vere, ut instituerat, indicto, cum reliqui praeter Senones, Carnutes Treverosque venissent, initium belli ac defectionis hoc esse arbitratus, ut omnia postponere videretur, concilium Lutetiam ro Parisiorum transfert. Confines erant hi Senonibus civitatemque patrum memoria coniunxerant, sed ab hoc consilio afuisse existimabantur. Hac re pro suggestu pronuntiata eodem die cum legionibus in Senones proficiscitur magnisque itineribus eo pervenit.

IV. Cognito eius adventu Acco, qui princeps eius consilii fuerat, iubet in oppida multitudinem convenire. Conantibus, priusquam id effici posset, adesse Romanos nuntiatur. Necessario sententia desistunt legatosque deprecandi causa ad Caesarem mittunt; adeunt per Aeduos, quorum antiquitus 20 erat in fide civitas. Libenter Caesar petentibus Aeduis dat veniam excusationemque accipit, quod aestivum tempus instantis belli, non quaestionis esse arbitratur. Obsidibus imperatis centum, hos Aeduis custodiendos tradit. Eodem Carnutes legatos obsidesque mittunt, usi deprecatoribus Re-25 mis, quorum erant in clientela: eadem ferunt responsa. Peragit concilium Caesar equitesque imperat civitatibus.

V. Hac parte Galliae pacata totus et mente et animo in bellum Treverorum et Ambiorigis insistit. Cavarinum cum equitatu Senonum secum proficisci iubet, ne quis aut ex huius 30 iracundia aut ex eo, quod meruerat, odio civitatis motus exsistat. His rebus constitutis, quod pro explorato habebat, Ambiorigem proelio non esse concertaturum, reliqua eius consilia animo circumspiciebat. Erant Menapii propinqui Eburonum finibus, perpetuis paludibus silvisque muniti, qui 35 uni ex Gallia de pace ad Caesarem legatos numquam miserant. Cum his esse hospitium Ambiorigi sciebat; item per Treveros venisse Germanis in amicitiam cognoverat. Haec

prius illi detrahenda auxilia existimabat, quam ipsum bello lacesseret, ne desperata salute aut se in Menapios abderet aut cum Transrhenanis congredi cogeretur. Hoc inito consilio totius exercitus impedimenta ad Labienum in Treveros mittit 5 duasque legiones ad eum proficisci iubet; ipse cum legionibus expeditis quinque in Menapios proficiscitur. Illi nulla coacta manu loci praesidio freti in silvas paludesque confugiunt suaque eodem conferunt.

VI. Caesar partitis copiis cum Gaio Fabio legato et Marco Crasso quaestore celeriterque effectis pontibus adit tripertito, aedificia vicosque incendit, magno pecoris atque hominum numero potitur. Quibus rebus coacti Menapii legatos ad eum pacis petendae causa mittunt. Ille obsidibus acceptis hostium se habiturum numero confirmat, si aut Ambiorigem 15 aut eius legatos finibus suis recepissent. His confirmatis rebus Commium Atrebatem cum equitatu custodis loco in Menapiis relinquit, ipse in Treveros proficiscitur.

### Labienus conquers the Treveri.

VII. Dum haec a Caesare geruntur, Treveri magnis coactis peditatus equitatusque copiis Labienum cum una legi-20 one, quae in eorum finibus hiemaverat, adoriri parabant, iamque ab eo non longius bidui via aberant, cum duas venisse legiones missu Caesaris cognoscunt. Positis castris a milibus passuum xv auxilia Germanorum exspectare constituunt. Labienus hostium cognito consilio, sperans, temeri-25 tate eorum fore aliquam dimicandi facultatem, praesidio quinque cohortium impedimentis relicto cum viginti quinque cohortibus magnoque equitatu contra hostem proficiscitur et mille passuum intermisso spatio castra communit. Erat inter Labienum atque hostem difficili transitu flumen ripisque prae-30 ruptis. Hoc neque ipse transire habebat in animo neque hostes transituros existimabat. Augebatur auxiliorum cotidie spes. Loquitur in consilio palam, quoniam Germani appropinquare dicantur, sese suas exercitusque fortunas in dubium non devocaturum et postero die prima luce castra moturum. 35 Celeriter haec ad hostes deferuntur, ut ex magno Gallorum equitum numero nonnullos Gallicis rebus favere natura cogebat. Labienus noctu tribunis militum primisque ordinibus convocatis, quid sui sit consilii, proponit et, quo facilius hostibus timoris det suspicionem, maiore strepitu et tumultu, quam populi Romani fert consuetudo, castra moveri iubet. His rebus fugae similem profectionem effecit. Haec quoque 5 per exploratores ante lucem in tanta propinquitate castrorum ad hostes deferuntur.

VIII. Vix agmen novissimum extra munitiones processerat, cum Galli, cohortati inter se, ne speratam praedam ex manibus dimitterent; longum esse, perterritis Romanis Germano- 10 rum auxilium exspectare, neque suam pati dignitatem, ut tantis copiis tam exiguam manum, praesertim fugientem atque impeditam, adoriri non audeant, flumen transire et iniquo loco committere proelium non dubitant. Quae fore suspicatus Labienus, ut omnes citra flumen eliceret, eadem 15 usus simulatione itineris placide progrediebatur. Tum praemissis paulum impedimentis atque in tumulo quodam collocatis, 'Habetis,' inquit, 'milites, quam petistis, facultatem: hostem impedito atque iniquo loco tenetis: praestate eandem nobis ducibus virtutem, quam saepenumero imperatori prae- 20 stitistis, atque illum adesse et haec coram cernere existimate.' Simul signa ad hostem converti aciemque dirigi iubet et paucis turmis praesidio ad impedimenta dimissis reliquos equites ad latera disponit. Celeriter nostri clamore sublato pila in hostes immittunt. Illi, ubi praeter spem, quos fugere cre- 25 debant, infestis signis ad se ire viderunt, impetum modo ferre non potuerunt ac primo concursu in fugam coniecti proximas silvas petierunt. Ouos Labienus equitatu consectatus magno numero interfecto, compluribus captis paucis post diebus civitatem recepit. Nam Germani, qui auxilio veniebant, per- 30 cepta Treverorum fuga sese domum receperunt. Cum his propinqui Indutiomari, qui defectionis auctores fuerant, comitati eos ex civitate excesserunt. Cingetorigi, quem ab initio permansisse in officio demonstravimus, principatus atque imperium est traditum. 35

Caesar makes a second expedition into Germany.

IX. Caesar, postquam ex Menapiis in Treveros venit, duabus de causis Rhenum transire constituit; quarum una erat,

quod auxilia contra se Treveris miserant, altera, ne ad eos Ambiorix receptum haberet. His constitutis rebus paulum supra eum locum, quo ante exercitum traduxerat, facere pontem instituit. Nota atque instituta ratione magno milistum studio paucis diebus opus efficitur. Firmo in Treveris ad pontem praesidio relicto, ne quis ab his subito motus oreretur, reliquas copias equitatumque traducit. Ubii, qui ante obsides dederant atque in deditionem venerant, purgandi sui causa ad eum legatos mittunt, qui doceant, neque auxilia ex sua civitate in Treveros missa neque ab se fidem laesam; petunt atque orant, ut sibi parcat, ne communi odio Germanorum innocentes pro nocentibus poenas pendant; si amplius obsidum velit, dare pollicentur. Cognita Caesar causa reperit, ab Suebis auxilia missa esse; Ubiorum satis-

X. Interim paucis post diebus fit ab Ubiis certior, Suebos omnes in unum locum copias cogere atque iis nationibus, quae sub eorum sint imperio, denuntiare, ut auxilia peditatus equitatusque mittant. His cognitis rebus rem frumentariam 20 providet, castris idoneum locum deligit; Ubiis imperat, ut pecora deducant suaque omnia ex agris in oppida conferant, sperans, barbaros atque imperitos homines inopia cibariorum adductos ad iniquam pugnandi condicionem posse deduci; mandat, ut crebros exploratores in Suebos mittant, quaeque 25 apud eos gerantur, cognoscant. Illi imperata faciunt et paucis diebus intermissis referunt: Suebos omnes, posteaquam certiores nuntii de exercitu Romanorum venerint, cum omnibus suis sociorumque copiis, quas coegissent, penitus ad extremos fines se recepisse: silvam esse ibi infinita magni-30 tudine, quae appellatur Bacenis; hanc longe introrsus pertinere et pro nativo muro obiectam Cheruscos ab Suebis Suebosque ab Cheruscis iniuriis incursionibusque prohibere: ad eius initium silvae Suebos adventum Romanorum exspectare constituisse

The customs of the Gauls and Germans contrasted.

35 XI. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, non alienum esse videtur, de Galliae Germaniaeque moribus et, quo differant hae nationes inter sese, proponere.

In Gallia non solum in omnibus civitatibus atque in omnibus pagis partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulis domibus factiones sunt, earumque factionum principes sunt, qui summam auctoritatem eorum iudicio habere existimantur, quorum ad arbitrium iudiciumque summa omnium rerum 5 consiliorumque redeat. Itaque eius rei causa antiquitus institutum videtur, ne quis ex plebe contra potentiorem auxilii egeret: suos enim quisque opprimi et circumveniri non patitur, neque, aliter si faciat, ullam inter suos habet auctoritatem. Haec eadem ratio est in summa totius Galliae: namque 10 omnes civitates in partes divisae sunt duas.

XII. Cum Caesar in Galliam venit, alterius factionis principes erant Aedui, alterius Sequani. Hi cum per se minus valerent, quod summa auctoritas antiquitus erat in Aeduis magnaeque eorum erant clientelae, Germanos atque Ario-15 vistum sibi adiunxerant eosque ad se magnis iacturis pollicitationibusque perduxerant. Proeliis vero compluribus factis secundis atque omni nobilitate Aeduorum interfecta tantum potentia antecesserant, ut magnam partem clientium ab Aeduis ad se transducerent obsidesque ab iis principum 20 filios acciperent et publice iurare cogerent, nihil se contra Sequanos consilii inituros, et partem finitimi agri per vim occupatam possiderent Galliaeque totius principatum obtinerent. Qua necessitate adductus Divitiacus auxilii petendi causa Romam ad senatum profectus imperfecta re redierat. 25 Adventu Caesaris facta commutatione rerum, obsidibus Aeduis redditis, veteribus clientelis restitutis, novis per Caesarem comparatis, quod hi, qui se ad eorum amicitiam aggregaverant, meliore condicione atque aequiore imperio se uti videbant, reliquis rebus eorum gratia dignitateque amplificata, 30 Sequani principatum dimiserant. In eorum locum Remi successerant; quos quod adaequare apud Caesarem gratia intellegebatur, ii, qui propter veteres inimicitias nullo modo cum Aeduis coniungi poterant, se Remis in clientelam dica-Hos illi diligenter tuebantur: ita et novam et repente 35 collectam auctoritatem tenebant. Eo tum statu res erat, ut longe principes haberentur Aedui, secundum locum dignitatis Remi obtinerent.

XIII. In omni Gallia eorum hominum, qui aliquo sunt nu mero atque honore, genera sunt duo. Nam plebes paene servorum habetur loco, quae nihil audet per se, nullo adhibe tur consilio. Plerique, cum aut aere alieno aut magnitudine 5 tributorum aut iniuria potentiorum premuntur, sese in servitutem dicant nobilibus; in hos eadem omnia sunt iura, quae dominis in servos. Sed de his duobus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum. Illi rebus divinis intersunt, sacrificia publica ac privata procurant, religiones interpretantur; 10 ad eos magnus adulescentium numerus disciplinae causa concurrit, magnoque hi sunt apud eos honore. Nam fere de omnibus controversiis publicis privatisque constituunt, et si quod est admissum facinus, si caedes facta, si de hereditate, si de finibus controversia est, idem decernunt, 15 praemia poenasque constituunt; si qui aut privatus aut populus eorum decreto non stetit, sacrificiis interdicunt. Haec poena apud eos est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hi numero impiorum ac sceleratorum habentur, his omnes decedunt, aditum sermonemque defugiunt, ne quid ex con-20 tagione incommodi accipiant, neque his petentibus ius redditur neque honos ullus communicatur. His autem omnibus druidibus praeest unus, qui summam inter eos habet auctoritatem. Hoc mortuo aut, si qui ex reliquis excellit dignitate, succedit, aut, si sunt plures pares, suffragio drui-25 dum, nonnumquam etiam armis de principatu contendunt. Hi certo anni tempore in finibus Carnutum, quae regio totius Galliae media habetur, considunt in loco consecrato. Huc omnes undique, qui controversias habent, conveniunt eorumque decretis iudiciisque parent. Disciplina in Britannia 30 reperta atque inde in Galliam translata esse existimatur, et nunc, qui diligentius eam rem cognoscere volunt, plerumque illo discendi causa proficiscuntur.

XIV. Druides a bello abesse consuerunt neque tributa una cum reliquis pendunt, militiae vacationem omniumque rerum 35 habent immunitatem. Tantis excitati praemiis et sua sponte multi in disciplinam conveniunt et a parentibus propinquisque mittuntur. Magnum ibi numerum versuum ediscere dicuntur. Itaque annos nonnulli vicenos in uisciplina permanent. Ne-

que fas esse existimant ea litteris mandare, cum in reliquis fere rebus, publicis privatisque rationibus, Graecis litteris utantur. Id mihi duabus de causis instituisse videntur, quod neque in vulgum disciplinam efferri velint neque eos, qui discunt, litteris confisos minus memoriae studere; quod fere 5 plerisque accidit, ut praesidio litterarum diligentiam in perdiscendo ac memoriam remittant. Imprimis hoc volunt persuadere, non interire animas, sed ab aliis post mortem transire ad alios, atque hoc maxime ad virtutem excitari putant, metu mortis neglecto. Multa praeterea de sideribus atque re eorum motu, de mundi ac terrarum magnitudine, de rerum natura, de deorum immortalium vi ac potestate disputant et iuventuti tradunt.

XV. Alterum genus est equitum. Hi, cum est usus atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod fere ante Caesaris adventum 15 quotannis accidere solebat, uti aut ipsi iniurias inferrent aut illatas propulsarent), omnes in bello versantur, atque eorum ut quisque est genere copiisque amplissimus, ita plurimos circum se ambactos clientesque habet. Hanc unam gratiam potentiamque noverunt.

XVI. Natio est omnium Gallorum admodum dedita religionibus, atque ob eam causam, qui sunt affecti gravioribus morbis quique in proeliis periculisque versantur, aut pro victimis homines immolant aut se immolaturos vovent administrisque ad ea sacrificia druidibus utuntur, quod, pro vita 25 hominis nisi hominis vita reddatur, non posse deorum immortalium numen placari arbitrantur, publiceque eiusdem generis habent instituta sacrificia. Alii immani magnitudine simulacra habent, quorum contexta viminibus membra vivis hominibus complent; quibus succensis circumventi flamma exani-30 mantur homines. Supplicia eorum, qui in furto aut in latrocinio aut aliqua noxa sint comprehensi, gratiora dis immortalibus esse arbitrantur; sed cum eius generis copia defecit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia descendunt.

XVII. Deum maxime Mercurium colunt. Huius sunt 35 plurima simulacra, hunc omnium inventorem artium ferunt, hunc viarum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestus pecuniae mercaturasque habere vim maximam arbitrantur. Post

hunc Apollinem et Martem et Iovem et Minervam. De his eandem fere, quam reliquae gentes, habent opinionem: Apollinem morbos depellere, Minervam operum atque artificiorum initia tradere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenere, Martem bella regere. Huic, cum proelio dimicare constituerunt, ea, quae bello ceperint, plerumque devovent; cum superaverunt, animalia capta immolant reliquasque res in unum locum conferunt. Multis in civitatibus harum rerum exstructos tumulos locis consecratis conspicari licet; neque saepe accidit, ut no neglecta quispiam religione aut capta apud se occultare aut posita tollere auderet, gravissimumque ei rei supplicium cum cruciatu constitutum est.

XVIII. Galli se omnes ab Dite patre prognatos praedicant idque ab druidibus proditum dicunt. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis non numero dierum, sed noctium finiunt; dies natales et mensium et annorum initia sic observant, ut noctem dies subsequatur. In reliquis vitae institutis hoc fere ab reliquis differunt, quod suos liberos, nisi cum adoleverunt, ut munus militiae sustinere possint palam ad se adire non patiuntur filiumque puerili aetate in publico in conspectu patris assistere turpe ducunt.

XIX. Viri, quantas pecunias ab uxoribus dotis nomine acceperunt, tantas ex suis bonis aestimatione facta cum dotibus communicant. Huius omnis pecuniae coniunctim ratio habetur fructusque servantur; uter eorum vita superavit, ad eum pars utriusque cum fructibus superiorum temporum pervenit. Viri in uxores, sicuti in liberos, vitae necisque habent potestatem; et cum paterfamiliae illustriore loco natus decessit, eius propinqui conveniunt et, de morte si res in suspicionem venit, de uxoribus in servilem modum quaestionem habent et, si compertum est, igni atque omnibus tormentis excruciatas interficiunt. Funera sunt pro cultu Gallorum magnifica et sumptuosa; omniaque, quae vivis cordi fuisse arbitrantur, in ignem inferunt, etiam animalia, ac paulo supra hanc memoriam servi et clientes, quos ab iis dilectos esse constabat, iustis funeribus confectis una cremabantur.

XX. Quae civitates commodius suam rempublicam administrare existimantur, habent legibus sanctum, si quis quid de

publica nisi per concilium loqui non conceditur. que esse ex usu iudicaverunt, multitudini produnt. cognitum est. Magistratus, quae visa sunt, occultant, quaeet ad facinus impelli et de summis rebus consilium capere homines temerarios atque imperitos falsis rumoribus terreri stratum deferat neve cum quo alio communicet, quod saepe republica a finitimis rumore aut fama acceperit, uti ad magi-

staturam, ali vires nervosque confirmari putant. Intra annum parvulis labori ac duritiae student. Qui diutissime impuberes in venationibus atque in studiis rei militaris consistit; ab et Lunam, reliquos ne fama quidem acceperunt. Vita omnis cernunt et quorum aperte opibus iuvantur, Solem et Vulcanum sacrificiis student. Nam neque druides habent, qui rebus divinis praesint, neque num tegimentis utuntur, magna corporis parte nuda. miscue in fluminibus perluuntur et pellibus aut parvis renohabent rebus; cuius rei nulla est occultatio, quod et provero vicesimum feminae notitiam habuisse in turpissimis permanserunt, maximam inter suos ferunt laudem: hoc ali 15 XXI. Germani multum ab hac consuetudine differunt Deorum numero eos solos ducunt, quos ö

rei multas afferunt causos: ne assidua consuetudine agri, attribuunt atque anno post alio transire cogunt. num, qui tum una coierunt, quantum et quo loco visum est 25 principes in annos singulos gentibus cognationibusque homimodum certum aut fines habet proprios, sed magistratus ac victus in lacte, caseo, carne consistit. Neque quisquam agri parare studeant potentioresque humiliores possessionibus exstudium belli gerendi agricultura commutent; ne latos fines tineant, cum suas quisque opes cum potentissimis aequan dissensionesque nascuntur; ut animi aequitate plebem conficent; ne qua oriatur pecuniae cupiditas, qua ex re factiones pellant; ne accuratius ad frigora atque aestus vitandos aedi-XXII. Agriculturae non student, maiorque pars eorum

existimant, expulsos agris finitimos cedere neque quemquam se vastatis finibum solitudines habere. XXIII. Civitatibus maxima laus est quam latissime circum 35 audere consistere; simul hoc se fore Hoc proprium virtutis tutiores

ro velint, profiteantur, consurgunt ii, qui et causam et hominem 5 onum atque pagorum inter suos ius dicunt controversiasque cumque de causa ad eos venerunt, ab iniuria prohibent, sanctos habent, hisque omnium domus patent victusque fides derogatur. Hospitem violare fas non putant; qui quaproditorum numero ducuntur, omniumque his rerum postea collaudantur; qui ex his secuti non sunt, in desertorum ac probant, suumque auxilium pollicentur atque ab multitudine quis ex principibus in concilio dixit, se ducem fore, qui sequi ac desidiae minuendae causa fieri praedicant. Atque ubi fines cuiusque civitatis fiunt, atque ea iuventutis exercendae communicatur. In pace nullus est communis magistratus, sed principes regipraesint, ut vitae necisque habeant potestatem, deliguntur. civitas aut illatum defendit aut infert, magistratus, qui ei bello trantur, repentinae incursionis timore sublato. Latrocinia nullam habent infamiam, quae extra Cum bellum

30 ad copiam atque usus largitur, paulatim assuefacti superari 25 ad hoc tempus his sedibus sese continet summamque habet 20 nem agrique inopiam trans Rhenum colonias mitterent. que ea, quae fertilissima Germaniae sunt, loca circum Herarum propinquitas et transmarinarum rerum notitia multa inopia, egestate, patientia, qua ante, Germani permanent, eodem victu et cultu corporis utuntur, Gallis autem provinci-Tectosages occupaverunt atque ibi consederunt; quae gens superarent, ultro bella inferrent, propter hominum multitudimultisque victi proeliis, ne se quidem ipsi cum illis virtute iustitiae et bellicae laudis opinionem. Nunc quod in eadem notam esse video, quam illi Orcyniam appellant, Volcae cyniam silvam, quam Eratostheni et quibusdam Graecis fama XXIV. Ac fuit antea tempus, cum Germanos Galli virtute

# The Hercynian forest, and the animals inhabiting it

35 aliter finiri potest, neque mensuras itinerum noverunt. tur ab Helvetiorum et Nemetum et Rauricorum finibus rectaest, latitudo novem dierum iter expedito patet; non enim XXV. Huius Hercyniae silvae, quae supra demonstrata que fluminis Danuvii regione pertinet ad fines Dacorum et Anartium; hinc se flectit sinistrorsus diversis ab flumine regionibus multarumque gentium fines propter magnitudinem attingit: neque quisquam est huius Germaniae, qui se aut adisse ad initium eius silvae dicat, cum dierum iter Lx processerit, aut, quo ex loco oriatur, acceperit, multaque in ea genera ferarum nasci constat, quae reliquis in locis visa non sint; ex quibus quae maxime differant ab ceteris et memoriae prodenda videantur, haec sunt.

XXVI. Est bos cervi figura, cuius a media fronte inter 10 aures unum cornu exsistit excelsius magisque directum his, quae nobis nota sunt, cornibus; ab eius summo sicut palmae ramique late diffunduntur. Eadem est feminae marisque natura, eadem forma magnitudoque cornuum.

XXVII. Sunt item, quae appellantur alces. Harum est 15 consimilis capris figura et varietas pellium, sed magnitudine paulo antecedunt mutilaeque sunt cornibus et crura sine nodis articulisque habent, neque quietis causa procumbunt neque, si quo afflictae casu conciderunt, erigere sese aut sublevare possunt. His sunt arbores pro cubilibus: ad eas se 20 applicant atque ita paulum modo reclinatae quietem capiunt. Quarum ex vestigiis cum est animadversum a venatoribus, quo se recipere consuerint, omnes eo loco aut ab radicibus subruunt aut accidunt arbores tantum, ut summa species earum stantium relinquatur. Huc cum se consuetudine 25 reclinaverunt, infirmas arbores pondere affligunt atque una ipsae concidunt.

XXVIII. Tertium est genus eorum, qui uri appellantur. Hi sunt magnitudine paulo infra elephantos, specie et colore et figura tauri. Magna vis eorum est et magna velocitas, 30 neque homini neque ferae, quam conspexerunt, parcunt. Hos studiose foveis captos interficiunt. Hoc se labore durant adulescentes atque hoc genere venationis exercent, et qui plurimos ex his interfecerunt, relatis in publicum cornibus, quae sint testimonio, magnam ferunt laudem. Sed 35 assuescere ad homines et mansuefieri ne parvuli quidem excepti possunt. Amplitudo cornuum et figura et species multum a nostrorum boum cornibus differt. Haec studiose

conquisita ab labris argento circumcludunt atque in amplissimis epulis pro poculis utuntur.

Caesar, returning to Gaul, routs the forces of Ambiorix, and begins an active campaign against the Eburones.

XXIX. Caesar, postquam per Ubios exploratores comperit, Suebos sese in silvas recepisse, inopiam frumenti veritus, 5 quod, ut supra demonstravimus, minime omnes Germani agriculturae student, constituit non progredi longius; sed, ne omnino metum reditus sui barbaris tolleret atque ut eorum auxilia tardaret, reducto exercitu partem ultimam pontis, quae ripas Ubiorum contingebat, in longitudinem pedum 10 ducentorum rescindit, atque in extremo ponte turrim tabulatorum quattuor constituit praesidiumque cohortium XII pontis tuendi causa ponit magnisque eum locum munitionibus firmat. Ei loco praesidioque Gaium Volcatium Tullum adulescentem praefecit. Ipse, cum maturescere frumenta 15 inciperent, ad bellum Ambiorigis profectus per Arduennam silvam, quae est totius Galliae maxima atque ab ripis Rheni finibusque Treverorum ad Nervios pertinet milibusque amplius quingentis in longitudinem patet, Lucium Minucium Basilum cum omni equitatu praemittit, si quid celeritate itineris atque 20 opportunitate temporis proficere posset; monet, ut ignes in castris fieri prohibeat, ne qua eius adventus procul significatio fiat; sese confestim subsequi dicit.

XXX. Basilus, ut imperatum est, facit. Celeriter contraque omnium opinionem confecto itinere multos in agris in25 opinantes deprehendit: eorum indicio ad ipsum Ambiorigem contendit, quo in loco cum paucis equitibus esse dicebatur. Multum cum in omnibus rebus, tum in re militari potest fortuna. Nam sicut magno accidit casu, ut in ipsum incautum etiam atque imparatum incideret, priusque eius adventus 30 ab omnibus videretur, quam fama ac nuntius afferretur, sic magnae fuit fortunae, omni militari instrumento, quod circum se habebat, erepto, redis equisque comprehensis, ipsum effugere mortem. Sed hoc quoque factum est, quod aedificio circumdato silva, ut sunt fere domicilia Gallorum, qui vitandi 35 aestus causa plerumque silvarum atque fluminum petunt pro-

pinquitates, comites familiaresque eius angusto in loco paulisper equitum nostrorum vim sustinuerunt. His pugnantibus illum in equum quidam ex suis intulit; fugientem silvae texerunt. Sic et ad subeundum periculum et ad vitandum multum fortuna valuit.

XXXI. Ambiorix copias suas iudicione non conduxerit, quod proelio dimicandum non existimarit, an tempore exclusus et repentino equitum adventu prohibitus, cum reliquum exercitum subsequi crederet, dubium est. Sed certe dimissis per agros nuntiis sibi quemque consulere iussit. Quorum 10 pars in Arduennam silvam, pars in continentes paludes profugit; qui proximi Oceano fuerunt, hi insulis sese occultaverunt, quas aestus efficere consuerunt; multi ex suis finibus egressi se suaque omnia alienissimis crediderunt. Catuvolcus, rex dimidiae partis Eburonum, qui una cum Ambiorige consilium inierat, aetate iam confectus, cum laborem belli aut fugae ferre non posset, omnibus precibus detestatus Ambiorigem, qui eius consilii auctor fuisset, taxo, cuius magna in Gallia Germaniaque copia est, se exanimavit.

XXXII. Segni Condrusique, ex gente et numero Germa- 20 norum, qui sunt inter Eburones Treverosque, legatos ad Caesarem miserunt oratum, ne se in hostium numero duceret neve omnium Germanorum, qui essent citra Rhenum, unam esse causam iudicaret: nihil se de bello cogitasse, nulla Ambiorigi auxilia misisse. Caesar explorata re quae- 25 stione captivorum, si qui ad eos Eburones ex fuga convenissent, ad se ut reducerentur, imperavit; si ita fecissent, fines eorum se violaturum negavit. Tum copiis in tres partes distributis impedimenta omnium legionum Aduatucam contulit. Id castelli nomen est. Hoc fere est in mediis Eburo- 30 num finibus, ubi Titurius atque Aurunculeius hiemandi causa consederant. Hunc cum reliquis rebus locum probarat, tum quod superioris anni munitiones integrae manebant, ut militum laborem sublevaret. Praesidio impedimentis legionem quartamdecimam reliquit, unam ex his tribus, quas 35 proxime conscriptas ex Italia traduxerat. Ei legioni castrisque Quintum Tullium Ciceronem praeficit ducentosque equites attribuit.

XXXIII. Partito exercitu Titum Labienum cum legionibus tribus ad Oceanum versus in eas partes, quae Menapios attingunt, proficisci iubet; Gaium Trebonium cum pari legionum numero ad eam regionem, quae ad Aduatucos adiacet, 5 depopulandam mittit; ipse cum reliquis tribus ad flumen Scaldem, quod influit in Mosam, extremasque Arduennae partis ire constituit, quo cum paucis equitibus profectum Ambiorigem audiebat. Discedens post diem septimum sese reversurum confirmat; quam ad diem ei legioni, quae in praesidio relinquebatur, deberi frumentum sciebat. Labienum Treboniumque hortatur, si reipublicae commodo facere possint, ad eum diem revertantur, ut rursus communicato consilio exploratisque hostium rationibus aliud initium belli capere possent.

XXXIV. Erat, ut supra demonstravimus, manus certa nulla, non oppidum, non praesidium, quod se armis defenderet, sed omnis in partis dispersa multitudo. Ubi cuique aut valles abdita aut locus silvestris aut palus impedita spem praesidii aut salutis aliquam offerebat, consederat. Haec loca vicini-20 tatibus erant nota, magnamque res diligentiam requirebat non in summa exercitus tuenda (nullum enim poterat universis ab perterritis ac dispersis periculum accidere), sed in singulis militibus conservandis; quae tamen ex parte res ad salutem exercitus pertinebat. Nam et praedae cupiditas multos longius 25 evocabat, et silvae incertis occultisque itineribus confertos adire prohibebant. Si negotium confici stirpemque hominum sceleratorum interfici vellet, dimittendae plures manus diducendique erant milites; si continere ad signa manipulos vellet, ut instituta ratio et consuetudo exercitus Romani 30 postulabat, locus ipse erat praesidio barbaris, neque ex occulto insidiandi et dispersos circumveniendi singulis deerat audacia. Ut in eiusmodi difficultatibus, quantum diligentia provideri poterat, providebatur, ut potius in nocendo aliquid praetermitteretur, etsi omnium animi ad ulciscendum ardebant, quam 35 cum aliquo militum detrimento noceretur. Dimittit ad finitimas civitates nuntios Caesar; omnes ad se evocat spe praedae ad diripiendos Eburones, ut potius in silvis Gallorum vita quam legionarius miles periclitetur, simul ut magna multitudine circumfusa pro tali facinore stirps ac nomen civitatis tollatur. Magnus undique numerus celeriter convenit.

Meanwhile the Sugambri attack Cicero's camp, unsuccessfully.

XXXV. Haec in omnibus Eburonum partibus gerebantur, diesque appetebat septimus, quem ad diem Caesar ad impedimenta legionemque reverti constituerat. Hic, quantum 5 in bello fortuna possit et quantos afferat casus, cognosci potuit. Dissipatis ac perterritis hostibus, ut demonstravimus, manus erat nulla, quae parvam modo causam timoris afferret. Trans Rhenum ad Germanos pervenit fama, diripi Eburones atque ultro omnes ad praedam evocari. Cogunt equitum 10 duo milia Sugambri, qui sunt proximi Rheno, a quibus receptos ex fuga Tencteros atque Usipetes supra docuimus. Transeunt Rhenum navibus ratibusque triginta milibus passuum infra eum locum, ubi pons erat perfectus praesidiumque ab Caesare relictum; primos Eburonum fines adeunt; multos 15 ex fuga dispersos excipiunt, magno pecoris numero, cuius sunt cupidissimi barbari, potiuntur. Invitati praeda longius procedunt. Non hos palus in bello latrociniisque natos, non silvae morantur. Ouibus in locis sit Caesar, ex captivis quaerunt : profectum longius reperiunt omnemque exercitum dis- 20 cessisse cognoscunt. Atque unus ex captivis, 'Quid vos,' inquit. 'hanc miseram ac tenuem sectamini praedam, quibus licet iam esse fortunatissimis? Tribus horis Aduatucam venire potestis: huc omnes suas fortunas exercitus Romanorum contulit; praesidii tantum est, ut ne murus quidem 25 cingi possit, neque quisquam egredi extra munitiones audeat.' Oblata spe Germani, quam nacti erant praedam, in occulto relinquunt; ipsi Aduatucam contendunt usi eodem duce. cuius haec indicio cognoverant.

XXXVI. Cicero, qui omnes superiores dies praeceptis 30 Caesaris cum summa diligentia milites in castris continuisset ac ne calonem quidem quemquam extra munitionem egredi passus esset, septimo die, diffidens de numero dierum Caesarem fidem servaturum, quod longius progressum audiebat neque ulla de reditu eius fama afferebatur, simul eorum 35 permotus vocibus, qui illius patientiam paene obsessionem

appellabant, siquidem ex castris egredi non liceret, nullum eiusmodi casum exspectans, quo, novem oppositis legionibus maximoque equitatu dispersis ac paene deletis hostibus, in milibus passuum tribus offendi posset, quinque cohortes frustementatum in proximas segetes mittit, quas inter et castra unus omnino collis intererat. Complures erant ex legionibus aegri relicti; ex quibus qui hoc spatio dierum convaluerant, circiter ccc, sub vexillo una mittuntur; magna praeterea multitudo calonum, magna vis iumentorum, quae in castris so subsederant, facta potestate sequitur.

XXXVII. Hoc ipso tempore et casu Germani equites interveniunt protinusque eodem illo, quo venerant, cursu ab decumana porta in castra irrumpere conantur, nec prius sunt visi obiectis ab ea parte silvis, quam castris appropinquarent, 15 usque eo ut, qui sub vallo tenderent mercatores, recipiendi sui facultatem non haberent. Inopinantes nostri re nova perturbantur, ac vix primum impetum cohors in statione sustinet. Circumfunduntur ex reliquis hostes partibus, si quem aditum reperire possent. Aegre portas nostri tuentur; 20 reliquos aditus locus ipse per se munitioque defendit. Totis trepidatur castris, atque alius ex alio causam tumultus quaerit; neque quo signa ferantur, neque quam in partem quisque conveniat, provident. Alius iam castra capta pronuntiat, alius deleto exercitu atque imperatore victores barbaros venisse 25 contendit; plerique novas sibi ex loco religiones fingunt Cottaeque et Titurii calamitatem, qui in eodem occiderint castello, ante oculos ponunt. Tali timore omnibus perterritis, confirmatur opinio barbaris, ut ex captivo audierant, nullum esse intus praesidium. Perrumpere nituntur seque ipsi ad-30 hortantur, ne tantam fortunam ex manibus dimittant.

XXXVIII. Erat aeger cum praesidio relictus Publius Sextius Baculus, qui primum pilum ad Caesarem duxerat, cuius mentionem superioribus proeliis fecimus, ac diem iam quintum cibo caruerat. Hic diffisus suae atque omnium saluti inermis ex tabernaculo prodit; videt, imminere hostes atque in summo esse rem discrimine: capit arma a proximis atque in porta consistit. Consequuntur hunc centuriones eius cohortis, quae in statione erat; paulisper una proelium susti-

nent. Relinquit animus Sextium gravibus acceptis vulneribus; aegre per manus tractus servatur. Hoc spatio interposito reliqui sese confirmant tantum, ut in munitionibus consistere audeant speciemque defensorum praebeant.

XXXIX. Interim confecta frumentatione milites nostri 5 clamorem exaudiunt; praecurrunt equites; quanto res sit in periculo, cognoscunt. Hic vero nulla munitio est, quae perterritos recipiat: modo conscripti atque usus militaris imperiti ad tribunum militum centurionesque ora convertunt; quid ab his praecipiatur, exspectant. Nemo est tam fortis, 10 quin rei novitate perturbetur. Barbari signa procul conspicati oppugnatione desistunt; redisse primo legiones credunt, quas longius discessisse ex captivis cognoverant; postea despecta paucitate ex omnibus partibus impetum faciunt.

XL. Calones in proximum tumulum procurrunt. celeriter deiecti se in signa manipulosque coniciunt; eo magis timidos perterrent milites. Alii, cuneo facto ut celeriter perrumpant, censent, quoniam tam propinqua sint castra, et si pars aliqua circumventa ceciderit, at reliquos servari 20 posse confidunt; alii, ut in iugo consistant atque eundem omnes ferant casum. Hoc veteres non probant milites, quos sub vexillo una profectos docuimus. Itaque inter se cohortati duce Gaio Trebonio, equite Romano, qui eis erat praepositus, per medios hostes perrumpunt incolumesque ad 25 unum omnes in castra perveniunt. Hos subsecuti calones equitesque eodem impetu militum virtute servantur. At ii, qui in iugo constiterant, nullo etiam nunc usu rei militaris percepto, neque in eo, quod probaverant, consilio permanere, ut se loco superiore defenderent, neque eam, quam 30 prodesse aliis vim celeritatemque viderant, imitari potuerunt, sed se in castra recipere conati iniquum in locum demiserunt. Centuriones, quorum nonnulli ex inferioribus ordinibus reliquarum legionum virtutis causa in superiores erant ordines huius legionis traducti, ne ante partam rei militaris laudem 35 amitterent, fortissime pugnantes conciderunt. Militum pars. horum virtute summotis hostibus, praeter spem incolumis in castra pervenit, pars a barbaris circumventa periit.

XLI. Germani desperata expugnatione castrorum, quod nostros iam constitisse in munitionibus videbant, cum ea praeda, quam in silvis deposuerant, trans Rhenum sese receperunt. Ac tantus fuit etiam post discessum hostium 5 terror, ut ea nocte, cum Gaius Volusenus missus cum equitatu ad castra venisset, fidem non faceret, adesse cum incolumi Caesarem exercitu. Sic omnino animos timor praeoccupaverat, ut paene alienata mente deletis omnibus copiis equitatum se ex fuga recepisse dicerent neque incolumi ro exercitu Germanos castra oppugnaturos fuisse contenderent. Quem timorem Caesaris adventus sustulit.

XLII. Reversus ille, eventus belli non ignorans, unum, quod cohortes ex statione et praesidio essent emissae, questus (ne minimo quidem casu locum relinqui debuisse) multum 15 fortunam in repentino hostium adventu potuisse iudicavit, multo etiam amplius, quod paene ab ipso vallo portisque castrorum barbaros avertisset. Quarum omnium rerum maxime admirandum videbatur, quod Germani, qui eo consilio Rhenum transierant, ut Ambiorigis fines depopularentur, 20 ad castra Romanorum delati optatissimum Ambiorigi beneficium obtulerunt.

Caesar chastises the Eburones, calls a council of Gaul, places his army in winter quarters, and goes to Italy.

XLIII. Caesar rursus ad vexandos hostes profectus magno coacto numero ex finitimis civitatibus in omnes partes dimittit. Omnes vici atque omnia aedificia, quae quisque conspexerat, 25 incendebantur; praeda ex omnibus locis agebatur; frumenta non solum tanta multitudine iumentorum atque hominum consumebantur, sed etiam anni tempore atque imbribus procubuerant, ut, si qui etiam in praesentia se occultassent, tamen his deducto exercitu rerum omnium inopia pereundum videretur. Ac saepe in eum locum ventum est tanto in omnis partis diviso equitatu, ut modo visum ab se Ambiorigem in fuga circumspicerent captivi nec plane etiam abisse ex conspectu contenderent, ut spe consequendi illata atque infinito labore suscepto, qui se summam ab Caesare gratiam inituros putarent, paene naturam studio vincerent, semperque paulum

quibus solis vitam suam committere audebat. tesque peteret non maiore equitum praesidio quam quattuor, aut saltibus se eriperet et noctu occultatus alias regiones parad summam felicitatem defuisse videretur, atque ille latebris

erat, in Italiam ad conventus agendos profectus est. hibernis collocavit interdixisset, duas legiones ad iudicium veriti profugerunt. Senonum et Carnutum quaestionem habere instituit; et de concilioque in eum locum Galliae indicto de coniuratione duarum cohortium damno Durocortorum Remorum reducit, Lingonibus, sex reliquas in Senonum finibus Agedinci pronuntiata more maiorum supplicium sumpsit. Accone, qui princeps eius consilii fuerat, graviore sententia XLIV. Tali modo vastatis regionibus frumentoque exercitui proviso, ut institu-Quibus cum aqua atque igni fines Treverorum, duas exercitum Caesar Nonnulli Ħ. Ħ ю S

## COMMENTARIUS SEPTIMUS.

The Gauls plan a general uprising. First the Carnut then the Arverni, with Vercingetorix as leader. First the Carnutes rebel;

- 20 que imperator sine praesidio ad legiones pervenire possit. 15 qui belli initium faciant et sui capitis periculo Galliam in ro atque audacius de bello consilia inire incipiunt. recuperare. belli gloriam libertatemque, quam a maioribus acceperint, Postremo in acie praestare interfici, quam non veterem legiones audeant absente imperatore ex hibernis egredi, nefortunam; omnibus pollicitationibus ac praemiis deposcunt, ipsos recidere demonstrant; miserantur communem Galliae locis queruntur de Acconis morte; posse hunc casum ad inter se principes Galliae conciliis silvestribus ac remotis ante se populi Romani imperio subiectos dolerent, liberius ad exercitum venire posse. Hac impulsi occasione, qui iam retineri urbano motu Caesarem neque in tantis dissensionibus ipsi et affingunt rumoribus Galli, quod res poscere videbatur, Eae res in Galliam Transalpinam celeriter perferuntur. Addunt Italiae coniurarent, delectum tota provincia habere instituit. caede, senatusque consulto certior factus, ut omnes iuniores conventus agendos proficiscitur. Caesar ab exercitu intercludatur. Id esse facile, quod neque libertatem vindicent. Imprimis rationem esse habendam QUIETA Gallia, Caesar, ut constituerat, in Italiam ad priusquam eorum clandestina consilia efferantur, ut Ibi cognoscit de Clodii Indictis
- 25 culum communis salutis causa recusare, principesque ex omniquo more eorum gravissima caerimonia continetur, ne facto iureiurando ac fide sanciatur, petunt, collatis militaribus signis, obsidibus cavere inter se non possint, ne res efferatur, ut bus bellum facturos pollicentur et, quoniam in praesentia II. His rebus agitatis profitentur Carnutes, se nullum peri-

initio belli ab reliquis deserantur. Tum collaudatis Carnutibus, dato iureiurando ab omnibus, qui aderant, tempore eius rei constituto ab concilio disceditur.

III. Ubi ea dies venit, Carnutes Gutruato et Conconnetodumno ducibus, desperatis hominibus, Cenabum signo dato 5 concurrunt civesque Romanos, qui negotiandi causa ibi constiterant, in his Gaium Fufium Citam, honestum equitem Romanum, qui rei frumentariae iussu Caesaris praeerat, interficiunt bonaque eorum diripiunt. Celeriter ad omnes Galliae civitates fama perfertur. Nam ubicumque maior 10 atque illustrior incidit res, clamore per agros regionesque significant; hunc alii deinceps excipiunt et proximis tradunt, ut tum accidit. Nam quae Cenabi oriente sole gesta essent, ante primam confectam vigiliam in finibus Arvernorum audita sunt, quod spatium est milium passuum circiter CLX.

IV. Simili ratione ibi Vercingetorix, Celtilli filius, Arvernus, summae potentiae adulescens, cuius pater principatum Galliae totius obtinuerat et ob eam causam, quod regnum appetebat, ab civitate erat interfectus, convocatis suis clientibus facile incendit. Cognito eius consilio ad arma concurritur. Pro- 20 hibetur ab Gobannitione, patruo suo, reliquisque principibus, qui hanc temptandam fortunam non existimabant, expellitur ex oppido Gergovia; non destitit tamen atque in agris habet delectum egentium ac perditorum. Hac coacta manu, quoscumque adit ex civitate, ad suam sententiam perducit; hor- 25 tatur, ut communis libertatis causa arma capiant, magnisque coactis copiis adversarios suos, a quibus paulo ante erat eiectus, expellit ex civitate. Rex ab suis appellatur. mittit quoqueversus legationes; obtestatur, ut in fide maneant. Celeriter sibi Senones, Parisios, Pictones, Cadurcos, 30 Turonos, Aulercos, Lemovices, Andos reliquosque omnes, qui Oceanum attingunt, adiungit; omnium consensu ad eum defertur imperium. Qua oblata potestate omnibus his civitatibus obsides imperat, certum numerum militum ad se celeriter adduci iubet, armorum quantum quaeque civitas 35 domi quodque ante tempus efficiat, constituit; imprimis equitatui studet. Summae diligentiae summam imperii severitatem addit: magnitudine supplicii dubitantes cogit. Nam

maiore commisso delicto igne atque omnibus tormentis necat, leviore de causa auribus desectis aut singulis effossis oculis domum remittit, ut sint reliquis documento et magnitudine poenae perterreant alios.

V. His suppliciis celeriter coacto exercitu, Lucterium Cadurcum, summae hominem audaciae, cum parte copiarum in Rutenos mittit; ipse in Bituriges proficiscitur. adventu Bituriges ad Aeduos, quorum erant in fide, legatos mittunt subsidium rogatum, quo facilius hostium copias susti-10 nere possint. Aedui de consilio legatorum, quos Caesar ad exercitum reliquerat, copias equitatus peditatusque subsidio Biturigibus mittunt. Qui cum ad flumen Ligerim venissent, quod Bituriges ab Aeduis dividit, paucos dies ibi morati neque flumen transire ausi domum revertuntur legatisque nostris 15 renuntiant, se Biturigum perfidiam veritos revertisse, quibus id consilii fuisse cognoverint, ut, si flumen transissent, una ex parte ipsi, altera Arverni se circumsisterent. Id eane de causa, quam legatis pronuntiarunt, an perfidia adducti fecerint, quod nihil nobis constat, non videtur pro certo esse proponendum. 20 Bituriges eorum discessu statim cum Arvernis iunguntur.

Caesar joins his army, subdues the Arverni, and sets out to go to Gorgobina, which Vercingetorix had attacked.

VI. His rebus in Italiam Caesari nuntiatis, cum iam ille urbanas res virtute Gnaei Pompei commodiorem in statum pervenisse intellegeret, in Transalpinam Galliam profectus est. Eo cum venisset, magna difficultate afficiebatur, qua 25 ratione ad exercitum pervenire posset. Nam si legiones in provinciam arcesseret, se absente in itinere proelio dimicaturas intellegebat; si ipse ad exercitum contenderet, ne iis quidem eo tempore, qui quieti viderentur, suam salutem recte committi videbat.

3º VII. Interim Lucterius Cadurcus in Rutenos missus eam civitatem Arvernis conciliat. Progressus in Nitiobroges et Gabalos ab utrisque obsides accipit et magna coacta manu in provinciam Narbonem versus eruptionem facere contendit. Qua re nuntiata Caesar omnibus consiliis antevertendum 35 existimavit, ut Narbonem proficisceretur. Eo cum venisset,

timentes confirmat, praesidia in Rutenis provincialibus, Volcis Arecomicis, Tolosatibus circumque Narbonem, quae loca hostibus erant finitima, constituit, partem copiarum ex provincia supplementumque, quod ex Italia adduxerat, in Helvios, qui fines Arvernorum contingunt, convenire iubet.

VIII. His rebus comparatis represso iam Lucterio et remoto, quod intrare intra praesidia periculosum putabat, in Helvios proficiscitur. Etsi mons Cebenna, qui Arvernos ab Helviis discludit, durissimo tempore anni altissima nive iter impediebat, tamen discussa nive sex in altitudinem pedum 10 atque ita viis patefactis summo militum sudore ad fines Arvernorum pervenit. Quibus oppressis inopinantibus, quod se Cebenna ut muro munitos existimabant, ac ne singulari quidem umquam homini eo tempore anni semitae patuerant, equitibus imperat, ut, quam latissime possint, vagentur et 15 quam maximum hostibus terrorem inferant. Celeriter haec fama ac nuntiis ad Vercingetorigem perferuntur; quem perterriti omnes Arverni circumsistunt atque obsecrant, ut suis fortunis consulat neu se ab hostibus diripi patiatur, praesertim cum videat omne ad se bellum translatum. Quorum ille 20 precibus permotus castra ex Biturigibus movet in Arvernos versus.

IX. At Caesar biduum in his locis moratus, quod haec de Vercingetorige usu ventura opinione praeceperat, per causam supplementi equitatusque cogendi ab exercitu discedit, Bru- 25 tum adulescentem his copiis praeficit; hunc monet, ut in omnis partes equites quam latissime pervagentur: daturum se operam, ne longius triduo ab castris absit. His constitutis rebus suis inopinantibus, quam maximis potest itineribus, Viennam pervenit. Ibi nanctus recentem equitatum, quem 30 multis ante diebus eo praemiserat, neque diurno neque nocturno itinere intermisso per fines Aeduorum in Lingones contendit, ubi duae legiones hiemabant, ut, si quid etiam de sua salute ab Aeduis iniretur consilii, celeritate praecurreret. Eo cum pervenisset, ad reliquas legiones mittit priusque omnes 35 in unum locum cogit, quam de eius adventu Arvernis nuntiari posset. Hac re cognita Vercingetorix rursus in Bituriges exercitum reducit atque inde profectus Gorgobinam, Boiorum

oppidum, quos ibi Helvetico proelio victos Caesar collocaverat Aeduisque attribuerat, oppugnare instituit.

X. Magnam haec res Caesari difficultatem ad consilium capiendum afferebat, si reliquam partem hiemis uno in loco 5 legiones contineret, ne stipendiariis Aeduorum expugnatis cuncta Gallia deficeret, quod nullum amicis in eo praesidium videretur positum esse; si maturius ex hibernis educeret, ne ab re frumentaria duris subvectionibus laboraret. Praestare visum est tamen omnis difficultates perpeti, quam tanta contumelia accepta omnium suorum voluntates alienare. Itaque cohortatus Aeduos de supportando commeatu praemittit ad Boios, qui de suo adventu doceant hortenturque, ut in fide maneant atque hostium impetum magno animo sustineant. Duabus Agedinci legionibus atque impedimentis totius exteritus relictis ad Boios proficiscitur.

Gaesar marches toward Avaricum, taking three cities on the way. The Bituriges burn all their towns except Avaricum.

XI. Altero die cum ad oppidum Senonum Vellaunodunum venisset, ne quem post se hostem relinqueret, quo expeditiore re frumentaria uteretur, oppugnare instituit idque biduo circumvallavit : tertio die missis ex oppido legatis de deditione, 20 arma conferri, iumenta produci, sexcentos obsides dari iubet. Ea qui conficeret, C. Trebonium legatum relinquit, ipse ut quam primum iter faceret. Cenabum Carnutum proficiscitur; qui, tum primum allato nuntio de oppugnatione Vellaunoduni, cum longius eam rem ductum iri existimarent, praesidium 25 Cenabi tuendi causa, quod eo mitterent, comparabant. biduo pervenit. Castris ante oppidum positis, diei tempore exclusus in posterum oppugnationem differt, quaeque ad eam rem usui sint, militibus imperat et, quod oppidum Cenabum pons fluminis Ligeris continebat, veritus, ne nocte ex oppido 30 profugerent, duas legiones in armis excubare iubet. Cenabenses paulo ante mediam noctem silentio ex oppido egressi flumen transire coeperunt. Qua re per exploratores nuntiata, Caesar legiones, quas expeditas esse iusserat, portis incensis intromittit atque oppido potitur perpaucis ex hostium numero 35 desideratis, quin cuncti caperentur, quod pontis atque itinerum angustiae multitudinis fugam intercluserant. Oppidum diripit atque incendit, praedam militibus donat, exercitum Ligerem traducit atque in Biturigum fines pervenit.

XII. Vercingetorix, ubi de Caesaris adventu cognovit, oppugnatione destitit atque obviam Caesari proficiscitur. 5 Ille oppidum Biturigum positum in via Noviodunum oppugnare instituerat. Ouo ex oppido cum legati ad eum venissent oratum, ut sibi ignosceret suaeque vitae consuleret, ut celeritate reliquas res conficeret, qua pleraque erat consecutus, arma conferri, equos produci, obsides dari iubet. Parte iam 10 obsidum tradita, cum reliqua administrarentur, centurionibus et paucis militibus intromissis, qui arma iumentaque conquirerent, equitatus hostium procul visus est, qui agmen Vercingetorigis antecesserat. Quem simulatque oppidani conspexerunt atque in spem auxilii venerunt, clamore sublato arma 15 capere, portas claudere, murum complere coeperunt. Centuriones in oppido, cum ex significatione Gallorum novi aliquid ab iis iniri consilii intellexissent, gladiis destrictis portas occupaverunt suosque omnes incolumes receperunt.

XIII. Caesar ex castris equitatum educi iubet, proelium 20 equestre committit; laborantibus iam suis Germanos equites circiter cccc submittit, quos ab initio habere secum instituerat. Eorum impetum Galli sustinere non potuerunt atque in fugam coniecti multis amissis se ad agmen receperunt. Quibus profligatis rursus oppidani perterriti comprehensos eos, quo-25 rum opera plebem concitatam existimabant, ad Caesarem perduxerunt seseque ei dediderunt. Quibus rebus confectis Caesar ad oppidum Avaricum, quod erat maximum munitissimumque in finibus Biturigum atque agri fertilissima regione, profectus est, quod eo oppido recepto civitatem Biturigum se in potestatem redacturum confidebat.

XIV. Vercingetorix tot continuis incommodis Vellaunoduni, Cenabi, Novioduni acceptis suos ad concilium convocat. Docet, longe alia ratione esse bellum gerendum, atque antea gestum sit. Omnibus modis huic rei studendum, ut pabulatione et commeatu Romani prohibeantur. Id esse facile, quod equitatu ipsi abundent et quod anni tempore subleventur. Pabulum secari non posse; necessario dispersos

hostes ex aedificiis petere: hos omnes cotidie ab equitibus deleri posse. Praeterea salutis causa rei familiaris commoda neglegenda: vicos atque aedificia incendi oportere hoc spatio ab via quoqueversus, quo pabulandi causa adire posse vide-5 antur. Harum ipsis rerum copiam suppetere, quod, quorum in finibus bellum geratur, eorum opibus subleventur; Romanos aut inopiam non laturos aut magno periculo longius ab castris processuros; neque interesse, ipsosne interficiant impedimentisne exuant, quibus amissis bellum geri non possit. 10 Praeterea oppida incendi oportere, quae non munitione et loci natura ab omni sint periculo tuta, neu suis sint ad detrectandam militiam receptacula neu Romanis proposita ad copiam commeatus praedamque tollendam. Haec si gravia aut acerba videantur, multo illa gravius aestimare, liberos, 15 coniuges in servitutem abstrahi, ipsos interfici; quae sit necesse accidere victis.

XV. Omnium consensu hac sententia probata, uno die amplius xx urbes Biturigum incenduntur. Hoc idem in reliquis fit civitatibus. In omnibus partibus incendia conspiciuntur; quae etsi magno cum dolore omnes ferebant, tamen hoc sibi solatii proponebant, quod se prope explorata victoria celeriter amissa reciperaturos confidebant. Deliberatur de Avarico in communi concilio, incendi placeret an defendi. Procumbunt omnibus Gallis ad pedes Bituriges, ne pulcherrimam prope totius Galliae urbem, quae praesidio et ornamento sit civitati, suis manibus succendere cogerentur; facile se loci natura defensuros dicunt, quod, prope ex omnibus partibus flumine et palude circumdata, unum habeat et perangustum aditum. Datur petentibus venia, dissuadente primo Vercingetorige, post concedente et precibus ipsorum et misericordia vulgi. Defensores oppido idonei deliguntur.

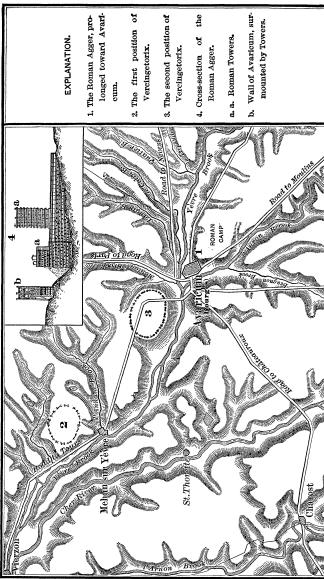
Caesar, though harassed by Vercingetorix, besieges Avaricum.

Vercingetorix being accused of treachery clears himself.

Avaricum is taken by Caesar.

XVI. Vercingetorix minoribus Caesarem itineribus subsequitur et locum castris deligit paludibus silvisque munitum ab Avarico longe milia passuum xvi. Ibi per certos explora-

To face p. 178.



SCALE OF MILES

itineribus iretur. commodo afficiebat, etsi, quantum ratione provideri poterat, 5 ab nostris occurrebatur, ut incertis temporibus diversisque longius necessario procederent, adoriebatur magnoque inpabulationes frumentationesque observabat dispersosque, cum cognoscebat et, quid fieri vellet, imperabat. tores in singula diei tempora, quae ad Avaricum agerentur, Omnis nostras

ret, universi ab eo, ne id faceret, petebant: sic se complures aedificiorum, usque eo, ut complures dies frumento milites sumpserunt. Summa difficultate rei frumentariae affecto exercitu tenuitate Boiorum, indiligentia Aeduorum, incendiis multum adiuvabant, alteri non magnis facultatibus, quod civinon destitit; quorum alteri, quod nullo studio agebant, non duas constituere coepit; nam circumvallare loci natura proangustum habebat, aggerem apparare, vineas agere, turres intermissa a flumine et a paludibus aditum, ut supra diximus, eos ad Caesarem deferrentur. eadem centurionibus tribunisque militum mandabant, ut per qui Cenabi perfidia Gallorum interissent, parentarent. stare omnes perferre acerbitates, quam non civibus Romanis, laturos loco, si inceptam oppugnationem reliquissent; praerent, nusquam incepta re discederent; annos illo imperante meruisse, ut nullam ignominiam accipeacerbius inopiam ferrent, se dimissurum oppugnationem diceetiam Caesar cum in opere singulas legiones appellaret et, si Romani maiestate et superioribus victoriis indigna. famem sustentarent, nulla tamen vox est ab iis audita populi caruerint et pecore ex longinquioribus vicis adacto extremam tas erat exigua et infirma, celeriter, quod habuerunt, conhibebat. De re frumentaria Boios atque Aeduos adhortari XVII. Castris ad eam partem oppidi positis Caesar, quae hoc se ignominiae Quin

rum causa eo profectum, quo nostros postero die pabulatum expeditisque, qui inter equites proeliari consuessent, insidiavis Caesar cognovit, Vercingetorigem consumpto pabulo silentio profectus ad hostium castra mane pervenit. venturos arbitraretur. castra movisse propius Avaricum atque ipsum cum equitatu XVIII. Cum iam muro turres appropinquassent, ex capti-Quibus rebus cognitis media nocte Illi cele

celeriter sarcinas conferri arma expediri iussit. loco edito atque aperto instruxerunt. Qua re nuntiata Caesar mentaque sua in artiores silvas abdiderunt, copias omnis in riter per exploratores adventu Caesaris cognito carros impedi-

20 tatis condemnari debere, nisi eorum vitam sua salute habeat 10 animo parati, ut, si eam paludem Romani perrumpere conamilites Caesar, quod conspectum suum hostes perferre possent ministrare instituit. reliquaque, quae ad oppugnationem pertinebant oppidi, adnullum pro sua laude periculum recusent, summae se iniquiconstare victoriam; quos cum sic animo paratos videat, ut quanto detrimento et quot virorum fortium morte necesse sit tantulo spatio interiecto, et signum proelii exposcentes edocet, inani simulatione sese ostentare cognosceret. Indignantes pinquitatem loci videret, paratos prope aequo Marte ad dimi-candum existimaret, qui iniquitatem condicionis perspiceret, rentur, haesitantes premerent ex loco superiore, ut, qui procivitates omnia vada ac saltus eius paludis obtinebant, sic cariorem. Sic milites consolatus eodem die reducit in castra bus Galli fiducia loci continebant generatimque distributi in latior pedibus quinquaginta. Hoc se colle interruptis pontibus fere partibus palus difficilis atque impedita cingebat non XIX. Collis erat leniter ab infimo acclivis. Hunc ex omni-

35 stri desiderari debuisse et illic fuisse utilem, quo sint profecti. 30 cessu quam ipsorum habere beneficio: tali modo accusatus 25 simulatus, quod castra propius Romanos movisset, quod cum accidere potuisse; regnum illum Galliae malle Caesaris conis multitudinis studio ad dimicandum impelleretur; cui rei Summam imperii se consulto nulli discedentem tradidisse, ne tione defenderet; equitum vero operam neque in loco palucessisset, persuasum loci opportunitate, qui se ipse ut munipabuli etiam ipsis hortantibus; quod propius Romanos acad haec respondit: Quod castra movisset, factum inopia celeritate venissent; non haec omnia fortuito aut sine consilio reliquisset, quod eius discessu Romani tanta opportunitate et omni equitatu discessisset, quod sine imperio tantas copias propter animi mollitiem studere omnes videret, quod diutius XX. Vercingetorix, cum ad suos redisset, proditionis in-

se in castra receperint. Imperium se ab Caesare per pro- 5 tem ne qua civitas suis finibus recipiat, a me provisum est.' fame consumptum videtis; quem turpiter se ex fuga recipiencuius opera sine vestro sanguine tantum exercitum victorem triduo exercitum deducere. 'Haec,' inquit, 'a me,' Vercingetorix, 'beneficia habetis, quem proditionis insimulatis; 20 imperatorem, si nihil in oppugnatione oppidi profecissent, cuiusquam nec ferre operis laborem posse; itaque statuisse simili omnem exercitum inopia premi, nec iam vires sufficere exisse, si quid frumenti aut pecoris in agris reperire possent; 15 onarios dicunt; fame et inopia adductos clam ex castris edocti, quae interrogati pronuntiarent, milites se ceperat et fame vinculisque excruciaverat. Hi iam ante Producit servos, quos in pabulatione paucis ante diebus inquit, 'a me sincere pronuntiari, audite Romanos milites.' 10 etiam ipsis remittere, si sibi magis honorem tribuere quam quae iam esset sibi atque omnibus Gallis explorata; quin ditionem nullum desiderare, quod habere victoria posset, virtutem despicere potuerint, qui dimicare non ausi turpiter quod et paucitatem eorum ex loco superiore cognoscere et fortunae, si alicuius indicio vocati, huic habendam gratiam, laborem ferre non possent. salutem accipere videantur. 'Haec ut intellegatis, Romani si casu intervenerint, esse legi-

salutem committendam censent, quod penes eos, si id oppicopiis in oppidum mittantur, nec solis Biturigibus communem fide dubitandum, nec maiore ratione bellum administrari dum retinuissent, summam victoriae constare intellegebant. crepat, quod facere in eo consuerunt, cuius orationem appro-XXI. Conclamat omnis multitudo et suo more armis con-Statuunt, ut decem milia hominum delecta ex omnibus summum esse Vercingetorigem ducem, nec de eius

atque ad omnia imitanda et efficienda, quae ab quoque trarem cuniculis subtrahebant, eo scientius, quod apud cum destinaverant, tormentis introrsus reducebant, et aggeduntur, aptissimum. Nam et laqueis falces avertebant, quas, 35 quemodi Gallorum occurrebant, ut est summae genus sollertiae magnae sunt ferrariae atque omne genus cuniculorum notum XXII. Singulari militum nostrorum virtuti consilia cuius-

5 nostrarum turrium altitudinem, quantum has cotidianus agger appropinquare prohibebant. apertos cuniculos praeusta et praeacuta materia et pice fervefacta et maximi ponderis saxis morabantur moenibusque expresserat, commissis suarum turrium malis adaequabant et inferebant aut milites occupatos in opere adoriebantur et crebris diurnis nocturnisque eruptionibus aut aggeri ignem turribus contabulaverant atque has coriis intexerant. atque usitatum est. Totum autem murum ex omni parte

25 trorsus revincta neque perrumpi neque distrahi potest. 20 speciem varietatemque opus deforme non est alternis trabi-bus ac saxis, quae rectis lineis suos ordines servant, tum ad quae perpetuis trabibus pedes quadragenos plerumque utilitatem et defensionem urbium summam habet opportunitexitur, dum iusta muri altitudo expleatur. His collocatis et coagmentatis alius insuper ordo additur, ut Trabes directae perpetuae in longitudinem paribus intervallis, tatem, quod et ab incendio lapis et ab ariete materia defendit, interiectis arte contineantur. Sic deinceps omne opus contrabes, sed paribus intermissae spatiis singulae singulis saxis idem illud intervallum servetur neque inter se contingant quae diximus, intervalla grandibus in fronte saxis effarciuntur. vinciuntur introrsus et multo aggere vestiuntur; ea autem, distantes inter se binos pedes, in solo collocantur. Hae re-XXIII. Muri autem omnes Gallici hac fere forma sunt. Hoc cum in

35 duabus portis ab utroque latere turrium eruptio fiebat. 30 Cum is murum hostium paene contingeret et Caesar ad opus iaciebant, alii picem reliquasque res, quibus ignis excitari faces atque aridam materiem de muro in aggerem eminus succenderant, eodemque tempore toto muro clamore sublato est animadversum, fumare aggerem, quem cuniculo hostes tempus ab opere intermitteretur, paulo ante tertiam vigiliam consuetudine excubaret militesque hortaretur, ne quod omnino aggerem latum pedes cccxxx, altum pedes cxxx exstruxerunt continenti labore omnia haec superaverunt et diebus xxv toto tempore frigore et assiduis imbribus tardarentur, tamen potest, fundebant, ut, quo primum curreretur XXIV. His tot rebus impedita oppugnatione, milites, cum aut Cui

stituto Caesaris semper duae legiones pro castris excubabant ad restinguendum concurreret. aggeremque interscinderent, omnis vero ex castris multitudo 5 est, ut alii eruptionibus resisterent, alii turres reducerent pluresque partitis temporibus erant in opere, celeriter factum ferretur auxilium, vix ratio iniri posset. Tamen, quod in-

semperque ipsi recentes defessis succederent omnemque summotis hostibus finis est pugnandi factus. relictus locus, quam restincto aggere atque omni ex parte ratione ictu scorpionis exanimato alteri successit tertius et iacentem transgressus eodem illo munere fungebatur; eadem iectus exanimatusque concidit. Hunc ex proximis unus oppidi Gallus per manus sevi ac picis traditas glebas in ignem 15 praetereundum non existimavimus. accidit inspectantibus nobis, quod dignum memoria visum nec facile adire apertos ad auxiliandum animadvertebant, noctis pugnaretur semperque hostibus spes victoriae redintetertio quartus, nec prius ille est a propugnatoribus vacuus e regione turris proiciebat; scorpione ab latere dextro tra-Galliae salutem in illo vestigio temporis positam arbitrarentur, XXV. Cum in omnibus locis consumpta iam reliqua parte eo magis, quod deustos pluteos Quidam ante portam turrium videbant o

que proiectae ad pedes suorum omnibus precibus petierunt, ne se et communes liberos hostibus ad supplicium dederent, et palus, quae perpetua intercedebat, Romanos ad insequod neque longe ab oppido castra Vercingetorigis aberant, magna iactura suorum sese effecturos sperabant, propterea postero die consilium ceperunt ex oppido profugere, hortante occuparentur, consilio destiterunt. timore perterriti Galli, ne ab equitatu Romanorum viae praeconclamare et significare de fuga Romanis coeperunt. que in summo periculo timor misericordiam non recipit, 35 diret. Ubi eos in sententia perstare viderunt, quod plerumquos ad capiendam fugam naturae et virium infirmitas impecum matresfamiliae repente in publicum procurrerunt flentesquendum tardabat. et iubente Vercingetorige. Id silentio noctis conati non 25 XXVI. Omnia experti Galli, quod res nulla successerat, Iamque hoc facere noctu apparabant, Quo

10 subito ex omnibus partibus evolaverunt murumque celeriter suosque languidius in opere versari iussit et, quid fieri vellet, compleverunt. dissent, praemia proposuit militibusque signum dedit. tum victoriae perciperent, iis, qui primi murum ascenexpeditis, cohortatus, ut aliquando pro tantis laboribus ostendit. Legionibusque inter castra vineasque in occulto quod paulo incautius custodias in muro dispositas videbat, hanc ad capiendum consilium tempestatem arbitratus est, bus, quae facere instituerat, magno coorto imbre, non inutilem XXVII. Postero die Caesar promota turri directisque operi-

25 eiecerunt, incolumes ad Vercingetorigem pervenerunt. 30 quae cuique civitati pars castrorum ab initio obvenerat. structa depugnarent. Ubi neminem in aequum locum sese milium xL, vix DCCC, qui primo clamore audito se ex oppido portis ab equitibus est interfecta. Nec fuit quisquam, qui que civitatum, disparandos deducendosque ad suos curaret, retur, ut, procul in via dispositis familiaribus suis principibusin castris ex eorum concursu et misericordia vulgi seditio oreille multa iam nocte silentio ex fuga excepit, veritus, ne qua pepercerunt. Denique omni ex numero, qui fuit circiter tati non aetate confectis, non mulieribus, non infantibus praedae studeret. Sic et Cenabi caede et labore operis inciexitu portarum se ipsi premerent, a militibus, pars iam egressa partes continenti impetu petiverunt, parsque ibi, cum angusto ne omnino spes fugae tolleretur, abiectis armis ultimas oppidi demittere, sed toto undique muro circumfundi viderunt, veriti, hoc animo, ut, si qua ex parte obviam veniretur, acie iniecti in foro ac locis patentioribus cuneatim constituerunt, XXVIII. Hostes re nova perterriti, muro turribusque

Vercingetorix continues the war. s the war. Caesar puts down an uprising among the Aedui.

35 rei fuerint ipsi imperiti. manos, sed artificio quodam et scientia oppugnationis, cuius rentur incommodo. Non virtute neque in acie vicisse Rotusque est, ne se admodum animo demitterent, ne perturba-XXIX. Postero die concilio convocato consolatus cohorta-Errare, si qui in bello omnis secundos

silium totius Galliae effecturum, cuius consensui ne orbis quidissentirent, has sua diligentia adiuncturum atque unum conhostium impetus sustinerent. impetrari, ut castra munire instituerent, quo facilius repentinos 10 dem terrarum possit obsistere; idque se prope iam effectum commodis sanaturum. Nam quae ab reliquis Gallis civitates 5 incommodum acciperetur. Id tamen se celeriter maioribus prudentia Biturigum et nimia obsequentia reliquorum, uti hoc rerum proventus exspectent. Sibi numquam placuisse Avari-cum defendi, cuius rei testes ipsos haberet; sed factum im-Interea aequum esse ab iis communis salutis causa

imperarentur, sibi patienda existimarent. animo consternati homines insueti laboris, ut omnia, quae que eo tempore Galli castra munire instituerunt, et sic sunt eius affirmatione de reliquis adiungendis civitatibus; primum- 20 modo accepto in dies augebatur. Simul in spem veniebant auctoritatem minuunt, sic huius ex contrario dignitas incomre integra primo incendendum Avaricum post deserendum censuerat. Itaque ut reliquorum imperatorum res adversae plusque animo providere et praesentire existimabatur, quod 15 se in occultum abdiderat et conspectum multitudinis fugerat; ipse animo non defecerat tanto accepto incommodo neque XXX. Fuit haec oratio non ingrata Gallis, et maxime, quod

gerant, citia facillime capere nes deligebat, quorum quisque aut oratione subdola aut amianimo laborabat, ut reliquas civitates adiungeret, atque eas 25 sagittariosque omnes, quorum erat permagnus numerus in civitatibus, quem et quam ante diem in castra adduci velit, copiae redintegrarentur, imperat certum numerum militum 30 donis pollicitationibusque alliciebat. Huic rei idoneos homiid, quod Gallia, conquiri et ad se mitti iubet. His rebus celeriter pervenit. XXXI. Nec minus, quam est pollicitus, Vercingetorix Olloviconis filius, rex Nitiobrogum, armandos vestiendosque curat; simul, ut deminutae nostro amicus erat appellatus, cum magno numero et quos ex Aquitania conduxerat ad eum Avarici deperierat, expletur. posset. Qui Avarico expugnato refu-Interim cuius pater ab equitum

ro atque regiam potestatem annum obtinere consuessent, 5 retur et ad hostem proficisci constituisset, sive eum ex palucognationis, cuius frater Valetiacus proximo anno eundem id ne accidat, positum in eius diligentia atque auctoritate. alatur controversia, fore, uti pars cum parte civitatis confligat; populum, suas cuiusque eorum clientelas. magistratum gesserit. Civitatem esse omnem in armis ; divisum natum atque ipsum hominem summae potentiae et magnae illustrem adulescentem, alterum Cotum, antiquissima familia dicat. Horum esse alterum Convictolitavem, florentem et magistratum gerant et se uterque eorum legibus creatum esse culo rem, quod, cum singuli magistratus antiquitus creari necessario tempore civitati subveniat: summo esse in periad eum principes Aeduorum veniunt oratum, ut maxime dibus silvisque elicere sive obsidione premere posset, legati confecta, cum ipso anni tempore ad gerendum bellum vocaexercitum ex labore atque inopia refecit. Iam prope hieme mamque ibi copiam frumenti et reliqui commeatus nanctus XXXII. Caesar Avarici complures dies commoratus sum-Quod si diutius

30 senatumque omnem et quos inter controversia esset ad se 25 atque ea pars, quae minus confideret, auxilia a Vercingetorige vetarent, sed etiam in senatu esse prohiberent, Cotum imperium deponere coëgit, Convictolitavem, qui per sacerdotes ex una familia vivo utroque non solum magistratus Decetiam evocavit. Cum prope omnis civitas eo convenisset, arcesseret, huic rei praevertendum existimavit et, quod legitem obtinere iussit. more civitatis intermissis magistratibus esset creatus, potestaatque oportuerit, fratrem a fratre renuntiatum, cum leges duo docereturque, paucis clam convocatis alio loco, alio tempore, eorum deminuisse videretur, ipse in Aeduos proficisci statuit cedere ex finibus non liceret, ne quid de iure aut de legibus bus Aeduorum iis, qui summum magistratum obtinerent, exomnibusque rebus ornasset, ad vim atque arma descenderet, coniuncta populo Romano civitas, quam ipse semper aluisset dissensionibus incommoda oriri consuessent, ne tanta et tam mentosum esse existimabat, tamen non ignorans, quanta ex XXXIII. Caesar, etsi a bello atque hoste discedere detriCaesar sends a part of his army north, with the rest encamps before Gergovia; he settles another disturbance among the Aedui.

XXXIV. Hoc decreto interposito cohortatus Aeduos, ut controversiarum ac dissensionis obliviscerentur atque omnibus omissis rebus huic bello servirent eaque, quae meruissent, praemia ab se devicta Gallia exspectarent equitatumque omnem et peditum milia decem sibi celeriter mitterent, quae 5 in praesidiis rei frumentariae causa disponeret, exercitum in duas partes divisit: quattuor legiones in Senones Parisiosque Labieno ducendas dedit, sex ipse in Arvernos ad oppidum Gergoviam secundum flumen Elaver duxit; equitatus partem illi attribuit, partem sibi reliquit. Qua re cognita Vercingero torix omnibus interruptis eius fluminis pontibus ab altera fluminis parte iter facere coepit.

XXXV. Cum uterque utrique esset exercitus in conspectu fereque e regione castris castra poneret, dispositis exploratoribus, necubi effecto ponte Romani copias traducerent, erat 15 in magnis Caesaris difficultatibus res, ne maiorem aestatis partem flumine impediretur, quod non fere ante autumnum Elaver vado transiri solet. Itaque, ne id accideret, silvestri loco castris positis e regione unius eorum pontium, quos Vercingetorix rescindendos curaverat, postero die cum duabus 20 legionibus in occulto restitit; reliquas copias cum omnibus impedimentis, ut consueverat, misit, captis quibusdam cohortibus, uti numerus legionum constare videretur. His, quam longissime possent, egredi iussis, cum iam ex diei tempore coniecturam ceperat, in castra perventum, isdem sublicis, quarum 25 pars inferior integra remanebat, pontem reficere coepit. Celeriter effecto opere legionibusque traductis et loco castris idoneo delecto reliquas copias revocavit. Vercingetorix re cognita, ne contra suam voluntatem dimicare cogeretur, magnis itineribus antecessit.

XXXVI. Caesar ex eo loco quintis castris Gergoviam pervenit equestrique eo die proelio levi facto, perspecto urbis situ, quae posita in altissimo monte omnis aditus difficiles habebat, de expugnatione desperavit, de obsessione non prius

agendum constituit, quam rem frumentariam expedisset. At Vercingetorix castris prope oppidum positis mediocribus circum se intervallis separatim singularum civitatium copias collocaverat, atque omnibus eius iugi collibus occupatis, qua 5 despici poterat, horribilem speciem praebebat principesque earum civitatium, quos sibi ad concilium capiendum delegerat, prima luce cotidie ad se convenire inbebat, seu quid communicandum, seu quid administrandum videretur, neque ullum fere diem intermittebat, quin equestri proelio interiectis 10 sagittariis, quid in quoque esset animi ac virtutis suorum, perspiceret. Erat e regione oppidi collis sub ipsis radicibus montis egregie munitus atque ex omni parte circumcisus; quem si tenerent nostri, et aquae magna parte et pabulatione libera prohibituri hostes videbantur. Sed is locus praesidio 15 ab his non nimis firmo tenebatur. Tamen silentio noctis Caesar ex castris egressus, priusquam subsidio ex oppido veniri posset, deiecto praesidio potitus loco, duas ibi legiones collocavit fossamque duplicem duodenum pedum a maioribus castris ad minora perduxit, ut tuto ab repentino hostium 20 incursu etiam singuli commeare possent.

XXXVII. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Convictolitavis Aeduus, cui magistratum adiudicatum a Caesare demonstravimus, sollicitatus ab Arvernis pecunia cum quibusdam adulescentibus colloquitur; quorum erat princeps 25 Litaviccus atque eius fratres, amplissima familia nati adule-Cum his praemium communicat hortaturque, ut se liberos et imperio natos meminerint. Unam esse Aeduorum civitatem, quae certissimam Galliae victoriam detineat; eius auctoritate reliquas contineri; qua traducta locum con-30 sistendi Romanis in Gallia non fore. Esse nonnullo se Caesaris beneficio affectum, sic tamen, ut iustissimam apud eum causam obtinuerit; sed plus communi libertati tribuere. Cur enim potius Aedui de suo iure et de legibus ad Caesarem disceptatorem, quam Romani ad Aeduos veniant? 35 Celeriter adulescentibus et oratione magistratus et praemio deductis, cum se vel principes eius consilii fore profiterentur, ratio perficiendi quaerebatur, quod civitatem temere ad suscipiendum bellum adduci posse non confidebant.

Placuit, ut Litaviccus decem illis milibus, quae Caesari ad bellum mitterentur, praeficeretur atque ea ducenda curaret, fratresque eius ad Caesarem praecurrerent. Reliqua qua ratione agi placeat, constituunt.

XXXVIII. Litaviccus accepto exercitu, cum milia pas- 5 suum circiter xxx ab Gergovia abesset, convocatis subito militibus lacrimans, 'Quo proficiscimur,' inquit, 'milites? Omnis noster equitatus, omnis nobilitas interiit; principes civitatis. Eporedorix et Viridomarus, insimulati proditionis, ab Romanis indicta causa interfecti sunt. Haec ab ipsis re cognoscite, qui ex ipsa caede fugerunt; nam ego, fratribus atque omnibus meis propinquis interfectis, dolore prohibeor, quae gesta sunt, pronuntiare.' Producuntur hi, quos ille edocuerat, quae dici vellet, atque eadem, quae Litaviccus pronuntiaverat, multitudini exponunt: equites Aeduorum 15 interfectos, quod collocuti cum Arvernis dicerentur; ipsos se inter multitudinem militum occultasse atque ex media caede fugisse. Conclamant Aedui et Litaviccum obsecrant, ut sibi consulat. 'Quasi vero,' inquit ille, 'consilii sit res, ac non necesse sit nobis Gergoviam contendere et cum Arvernis 20 nosmet coniungere. An dubitamus, quin nefario facinore admisso Romani jam ad nos interficiendos concurrant? Proinde, si quid in nobis animi est, persequamur eorum mortem, qui indignissime interierunt, atque hos latrones interficiamus.' Ostendit cives Romanos, qui eius praesidii fiducia una erant; 25 magnum numerum frumenti commeatusque diripit, ipsos crudeliter excruciatos interficit. Nuntios tota civitate Aeduorum dimittit, eodem mendacio de caede equitum et principum permovet; hortatur, ut simili ratione, atque ipse fecerit, suas iniurias persequantur.

XXXIX. Eporedorix Aeduus, summo loco natus adulescens et summae domi potentiae, et una Viridomarus, pari aetate et gratia, sed genere dispari, quem Caesar ab Divitiaco sibi traditum ex humili loco ad summam dignitatem perduxerat, in equitum numero convenerant nominatim ab eo evo- 35 cati. His erat inter se de principatu contentio, et in illa magistratuum controversia alter pro Convictolitavi, alter pro Coto summis opibus pugnaverant. Ex his Eporedorix cog-

nito Litavicci consilio media fere nocte rem ad Caesarem defert; orat, ne patiatur civitatem pravis adulescentium consiliis ab amicitia populi Romani deficere; quod futurum provideat, si se tot hominum milia cum hostibus coniunxerint, 5 quorum salutem neque propinqui neglegere neque civitas levi momento aestimare posset.

XL. Magna affectus sollicitudine hoc nuntio Caesar, quod semper Aeduorum civitati praecipue indulserat, nulla interposita dubitatione legiones expeditas quattuor equitatumque 10 omnem ex castris educit, nec fuit spatium tali tempore ad contrahenda castra, quod res posita in celeritate videbatur; Gaium Fabium legatum cum legionibus duabus castris praesidio relinquit. Fratres Litavicci cum comprehendi iussisset, paulo ante reperit ad hostes fugisse. Adhortatus milites, ne necessario tempore itineris labore permoveantur, cupidissimis omnibus progressus milia passuum xxv, agmen Aeduorum conspicatus, immisso equitatu iter eorum moratur atque impedit interdicitque omnibus, ne quemquam interficiant. Eporedorigem et Viridomarum, quos illi interfectos existi-20 mabant, inter equites versari suosque appellare iubet. His cognitis et Litavicci fraude perspecta Aedui manus tendere, deditionem significare et proiectis armis mortem deprecari incipiunt. Litaviccus cum suis clientibus, quibus more Gallorum nefas est etiam in extrema fortuna deserere patronos, 25 Gergoviam profugit.

# Meanwhile the Roman Camp before Gergovia is attacked. The Aedui revolt.

XLI. Caesar nuntiis ad civitatem Aeduorum missis, qui suo beneficio conservatos docerent, quos iure belli interficere potuisset, tribusque horis noctis exercitui ad quietem datis castra ad Gergoviam movit. Medio fere itinere equites a Fabio 30 missi, quanto res in periculo fuerit, exponunt. Summis copiis castra oppugnata demonstrant, cum crebro integri defessis succederent nostrosque assiduo labore defatigarent, quibus propter magnitudinem castrorum perpetuo esset isdem in vallo permanendum. Multitudine sagittarum atque 35 omnis generis telorum multos vulneratos; ad haec sustinenda

in castra pervenit. rebus cognitis Caesar summo studio militum ante ortum solis et se in posterum diem similemque bus relictis portis obstruere ceteras pluteosque vallo addere magno usui fuisse tormenta. Fabium discessu eorum duacasum apparare.

ad furorem impellit, ut facinore admisso ad sanitatem reverti hunt. Adiuvat rem proclinatam Convictolitavis plebemque levem auditionem habeant pro re comperta. temeritas quae maxime illi hominum generi est innata, ut spatium relinquunt. nuntiis ab Litavicco acceptis nullum sibi ad cognoscendum fectis maiorem multitudinem armatorum concitant. pugnantes diem noctemque obsident; multis utrimque inter continuo in itinere adorti omnibus impedimentis exuunt; recere cogunt eos, qui negotiandi causa ibi constiterant. Hos facientem fide data ex oppido Cabillono educunt; idem fa- 15 pudeat. Marcum Aristium tribunum militum iter ad legionem Romanorum diripiunt, caedes faciunt, in servitutem abstra-XLII. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Aedui primis Impellit alios avaritia, alios iracundia et Bona civium 10

spectans, ne ab omnibus civitatibus circumsisteretur, consilia vulgi gravius de civitate iudicare neque de sua in Aeduos legatos appellat: nihil se propter inscientiam levitatemque tametsi Caesar intellegebat, tamen, quam mitissime potest, incipiunt civitatesque reliquas legationibus sollicitant. bat, et timore poenae exterriti consilia clam de bello inire compendio ex direptis bonis, quod ea res ad multos pertinerandorum suorum causa; sed contaminati facinore et capti 25 decernunt, Litavicci fratrumque bona publicant, legatos factum consilio demonstrant; quaestionem de bonis direptis testate Caesaris teneri, concurrunt ad Aristium, nihil publico defectionis similis fugae videretur nem exercitum contraheret, ne profectio nata ab timore 35 benevolentia deminuere. Caesarem sui purgandi gratia mittunt. Haec faciunt recipe-XLIII. Interim nuntio allato, omnes eorum milites in poquemadmodum a Gergovia discederet ac rursus om-Ipse maiorem Galliae motum ex-

Caesar storms Gergovia, unsuccessfully; he addresses his army and raises the siege, moves his camp among the Aedui

10 partem oppidi; vehementer huic illos loco timere, nec iam 5 multitudine cerni poterat. sed hunc silvestrem et angustum, qua esset aditus ad alteram causam, quorum magnus ad eum cotidie numerus confluecausa venisset, animadvertit collem, qui ab hostibus tenebaamisissent, quin paene circumvallati atque omni exitu et aliter sentire, uno colle ab Romanis occupato, si alterum ploratores cognoverat, dorsum esse eius iugi prope aequum, tur, nudatum hominibus, qui superioribus diebus vix prae nes a Vercingetorige evocatos. pabulatione interclusi viderentur: ad hunc muniendum om-XLIV. Haec cogitanti accidere visa est facultas bene rei Constabat inter omnes, quod iam ipse Caesar per ex-Nam cum in minora castra operis perspiciendi Admiratus quaerit ex perfugis

25 rat. Legionem unam eodem iugo mittit et paulum progressam 20 cie ac simulatione collibus circumvehi iubet. His paucos 30 animadverterentur, ex maioribus castris in minora traducit inferiore constituit loco silvisque occultat. Augetur Gallis susin castra, neque tanto spatio, certi quid esset, explorari poteaddit equites, qui latius ostentationis causa vagarentur. Longo circuitu easdem omnes iubet petere regiones. Haec stramenta detrahi mulionesque cum cassidibus equitum speimpedimentorum ex castris mulorumque produci deque his quid iniquitas loci habeat incommodi, proponit; hoc una studio velit, ostendit; imprimis monet, ut contineant milites, ne legatisque, quos singulis legionibus praefecerat, quid fieri occultatisque signis militaribus raros milites, ne ex oppido castra hostium Caesar conspicatus tectis insignibus suorum picio atque omnes illo munitionum copiae traducuntur. Vacua procul ex oppido videbantur, ut erat a Gergovia despectus omnibus locis vagarentur. Prima luce magnum numerum turmas; eis de media nocte imperat, ut paulo tumultuosius XLV. Hac re cognita Caesar mittit complures equitum pugnandi aut spe praedae longius progrediantur;

PLAN XI.

Ancient Lake of Sardiches Risolles (Collis?) To face p. 190.

SCALE OF MILES



celeritate posse mutari; occasionis esse rem, non proelii. His rebus expositis signum dat et ab dextra parte alio ascensu eodem tempore Aeduos mittit.

XLVI. Oppidi murus ab planitie atque initio ascensus recta regione, si nullus amfractus intercederet, mille ducentos 5 passus aberat; quicquid huc circuitus ad molliendum clivum accesserat, id spatium itineris augebat. A medio fere colle in longitudinem, ut natura montis ferebat, ex grandibus saxis sex pedum murum, qui nostrorum impetum tardaret, praeduxerant Galli atque inferiore omni spatio vacuo relicto superiorem partem collis usque ad murum oppidi densissimis castris compleverant. Milites dato signo celeriter ad munitionem perveniunt eamque transgressi trinis castris potiuntur; ac tanta fuit in castris capiendis celeritas, ut Teutomatus, rex Nitiobrogum, subito in tabernaculo oppressus, ut meridie conquieverat, superiore corporis parte nudata, vulnerato equo vix se ex manibus praedantium militum eriperet.

XLVII. Consecutus id, quod animo proposuerat, Caesar receptui cani iussit legionisque decimae, quacum erat, continuo signa constituit. At reliquarum legionum milites non 20 exaudito tubae sono, quod satis magna valles intercedebat, tamen ab tribunis militum legatisque, ut erat a Caesare praeceptum, retinebantur; sed elati spe celeris victoriae et hostium fuga et superiorum temporum secundis proeliis nihil adeo arduum sibi esse existimaverunt, quod non virtute con- 25 sequi possent, neque finem prius sequendi fecerunt, quam muro oppidi portisque appropinquarunt. Tum vero ex omnibus urbis partibus orto clamore, qui longius aberant, repentino tumultu perterriti, cum hostem intra portas esse existimarent, sese ex oppido ejecerunt. Matresfamiliae de muro vestem 30 argentumque iactabant et pectore nudo prominentes passis manibus obtestabantur Romanos, ut sibi parcerent neu, sicut Avarici fecissent, ne a mulieribus quidem atque infantibus abstinerent; nonnullae de muris per manus demissae sese militibus tradebant. L. Fabius, centurio legionis viii, quem 35 inter suos eo die dixisse constabat, excitari se Avaricensibus praemiis neque commissurum, ut prius quisquam murum ascenderet, tres suos nactus manipulares atque ab iis sublevatus murum ascendit; hos ipse rursus singulos exceptans in murum extulit.

XLVIII. Interim ii, qui ad alteram partem oppidi, ut supra demonstravimus, munitionis causa convenerant, primo exau5 dito clamore, inde etiam crebris nuntiis incitati, oppidum a Romanis teneri, praemissis equitibus magno concursu eo contenderunt. Eorum ut quisque primus venerat, sub muro consistebat suorumque pugnantium numerum augebat. Quorum cum magna multitudo convenisset, matresfamiliae, quae paulo ante Romanis de muro manus tendebant, suos obtestari et more Gallico passum capillum ostentare liberosque in conspectum proferre coeperunt. Erat Romanis nec loco nec numero aequa contentio; simul et cursu et spatio pugnae fatigati non facile recentes atque integros sustinebant.

XLIX. Caesar cum iniquo loco pugnari hostiumque augeri copias videret, praemetuens suis ad Titum Sextium legatum, quem minoribus castris praesidio reliquerat, misit, ut cohortes ex castris celeriter educeret et sub infimo colle ab dextro latere hostium constitueret, ut, si nostros loco depulsos vidisset, quo minus libere hostes insequerentur, terreret. Ipse paulum ex eo loco cum legione progressus, ubi constiterat, eventum pugnae exspectabat.

L. Cum acerrime comminus pugnaretur, hostes loco et numero, nostri virtute confiderent, subito sunt Aedui visi ab 25 latere nostris aperto, quos Caesar ab dextra parte alio ascensu manus distinendae causa miserat. Hi similitudine armorum vehementer nostros perterruerunt, ac tametsi dextris humeris exsertis animadvertebantur, quod insigne pacatorum esse consuerat, tamen id ipsum sui fallendi causa milites ab hosti-30 bus factum existimabant. Eodem tempore Lucius Fabius centurio, quique una murum ascenderant, circumventi atque interfecti muro praecipitabantur. Marcus Petronius, eiusdem legionis centurio, cum portas excidere conatus esset, a multitudine oppressus ac sibi desperans, multis iam vulneribus 35 acceptis, manipularibus suis, qui illum secuti erant, 'Quoniam, inquit, me una vobiscum servare non possum, vestrae quidem certe vitae prospiciam, quos cupiditate gloriae adductus in periculum deduxi. Vos data facultate vobis con-

- sulite.' Simul in medios hostis irrupit duobusque interfectis reliquos a porta paulum summovit. Conantibus auxiliari suis 'Frustra,' inquit, 'meae vitae subvenire conamini, quem iam sanguis viresque deficiunt. Proinde abite, dum est facultas, vosque ad legionem recipite.' Ita pugnans post paulum 5 concidit ac suis saluti fuit.
- LI. Nostri, cum undique premerentur, XLVI centurionibus amissis deiecti sunt loco. Sed intolerantius Gallos insequentes legio decima tardavit, quae pro subsidio paulo aequiore loco constiterat. Hanc rursus XIII legionis cohortes exceperunt, 10 quae ex castris minoribus eductae cum Tito Sextio legato ceperant locum superiorem. Legiones, ubi primum planitiem attigerunt, infestis contra hostes signis constiterunt. Vercingetorix ab radicibus collis suos intra munitiones reduxit. Eo die milites sunt paulo minus septingenti desiderati.
- LII. Postero die Caesar contione advocata temeritatem cupiditatemque militum reprehendit, quod sibi ipsi iudicavissent, quo procedendum aut quid agendum videretur, neque signo recipiendi dato constitissent neque ab tribunis militum legatisque retineri potuissent. Exposuit, quid iniqui- 20 tas loci posset, quid ipse ad Avaricum sensisset, cum sine duce et sine equitatu deprehensis hostibus exploratam victoriam dimisisset, ne parvum modo detrimentum in contentione propter iniquitatem loci accideret. Quanto opere eorum animi magnitudinem admiraretur, quos non castrorum muni- 25 tiones, non altitudo montis, non murus oppidi tardare potuisset, tanto opere licentiam arrogantiamque reprehendere, quod plus se quam imperatorem de victoria atque exitu rerum sentire existimarent; nec minus se ab milite modestiam et continentiam quam virtutem atque animi magnitudinem de- 30 siderare.
- LIII. Hac habita contione et ad extremam orationem confirmatis militibus, ne ob hanc causam animo permoverentur neu, quod iniquitas loci attulisset, id virtuti hostium tribuerent, eadem de profectione cogitans, quae ante senserat, 35 legiones ex castris eduxit aciemque idoneo loco constituit. Cum Vercingetorix nihilo magis in aequum locum descenderet, levi facto equestri proelio atque secundo in castra exerci-

tum reduxit. Cum hoc idem postero die fecisset, satis ad Gallicam ostentationem minuendam militumque animos confirmandos factum existimans in Aeduos movit castra. Ne tum quidem insecutis hostibus, tertio die ad flumen Elaver 5 pontes reficit eoque exercitum traducit.

### The Aedui begin war; Caesar crosses the Liger.

LIV. Ibi a Viridomaro atque Eporedorige Aeduis appellatus discit, cum omni equitatu Litaviccum ad sollicitandos Aeduos profectum; opus esse ipsos antecedere ad confirmandam civitatem. Etsi multis iam rebus perfidiam Ae10 duorum perspectam habebat atque horum discessu admaturari defectionem civitatis existimabat, tamen eos retinendos non constituit, ne aut inferre iniuriam videretur aut dare timoris aliquam suspicionem. Discedentibus his breviter sua in Aeduos merita exposuit; quos et quam humiles accepisset, compulsos in oppida, multatos agris, omnibus ereptis copiis, imposito stipendio, obsidibus summa cum contumelia extortis, et quam in fortunam quamque in amplitudinem deduxisset, ut non solum in pristinum statum redissent, sed omnium temporum dignitatem et gratiam antecessisse viderentur. His 20 datis mandatis eos ab se dimisit.

LV. Noviodunum erat oppidum Aeduorum ad ripas Ligeris opportuno loco positum. Huc Caesar omnes obsides Galliae, frumentum, pecuniam publicam, suorum atque exercitus impedimentorum magnam partem contulerat; huc 25 magnum numerum equorum huius belli causa in Italia atque Hispania coëmptum miserat. Eo cum Eporedorix Viridomarusque venissent et de statu civitatis cognovissent, Litaviccum Bibracti ab Aeduis receptum, quod est oppidum apud eos maximae auctoritatis, Convictolitavim magistratum mag-30 namque partem senatus ad eum convenisse, legatos ad Vercingetorigem de pace et amicitia concilianda publice missos, non praetermittendum tantum commodum existimaverunt. Itaque interfectis Novioduni custodibus, quique eo negotiandi causa convenerant, pecuniam atque equos inter se partiti 35 sunt, obsides civitatum Bibracte ad magistratum deducendos curaverunt, oppidum, quod a se teneri non posse iudicabant,

ne cui esset usui Romanis, incenderunt, frumenti quod subito potuerunt, navibus avexerunt, reliquum flumine atque incendio corruperunt. Ipsi ex finitimis regionibus copias cogere, praesidia custodiasque ad ripas Ligeris disponere equitatumque omnibus locis iniciendi timoris causa ostentare 5 coeperunt, si ab re frumentaria Romanos excludere aut adductos inopia in provinciam expellere possent. Quam ad spem multum eos adiuvabat, quod Liger ex nivibus creverat, ut omnino vado non posse transiri videretur.

LVI. Quibus rebus cognitis Caesar maturandum sibi cen- 10 suit, si esset in perficiendis pontibus periclitandum, ut prius, quam essent maiores eo coactae copiae, dimicaret. Nam ut commutato consilio iter in provinciam converteret, id ne metu quidem necessario faciundum existimabat, cum quod infamia atque indignitas rei et oppositus mons Cebenna via- 15 rumque difficultas impediebat, tum maxime quod, abiuncto Labieno atque iis legionibus, quas una miserat, vehementer timebat. Itaque admodum magnis diurnis nocturnisque itineribus confectis contra omnium opinionem ad Ligerem venit, vadoque per equites invento pro rei necessitate oppor- 20 tuno, ut brachia modo atque humeri ad sustinenda arma liberi ab aqua esse possent, disposito equitatu, qui vim fluminis refringeret, atque hostibus primo aspectu perturbatis, incolumem exercitum traduxit, frumentumque in agris et pecoris copiam nactus, repleto his rebus exercitu iter in Senones 25 facere instituit.

## Meanwhile the expedition of Labienus against Lutetia is successful. He joins Caesar.

LVII. Dum haec apud Caesarem geruntur, Labienus eo supplemento, quod nuper ex Italia venerat, relicto Agedinci, ut esset impedimentis praesidio, cum quattuor legionibus Lutetiam proficiscitur. Id est oppidum Parisiorum, quod 30 positum est in insula fluminis Sequanae. Cuius adventu ab hostibus cognito, magnae ex finitimis civitatibus copiae convenerunt. Summa imperii traditur Camulogeno Aulerco, qui prope confectus aetate tamen propter singularem scientiam rei militaris ad eum est honorem evocatus. Is cum ani- 35

madvertisset, perpetuam esse paludem, quae influeret in Sequanam atque illum omnem locum magnopere impediret, hic consedit nostrosque transitu prohibere instituit.

LVIII. Labienus primo vineas agere, cratibus atque aggere 5 paludem explere atque iter munire conabatur. Postquam id difficilius confieri animadvertit, silentio e castris tertia vigilia egressus eodem, quo venerat, itinere Metiosedum pervenit. Id est oppidum Senonum, in insula Sequanae positum, ut paulo ante de Lutetia diximus. Deprensis navibus circiter 10 quinquaginta celeriterque coniunctis atque eo militibus iniectis et rei novitate perterritis oppidanis, quorum magna pars erat ad bellum evocata, sine contentione oppido potitur. Refecto ponte, quem superioribus diebus hostes resciderant. exercitum traducit et secundo flumine ad Lutetiam iter facere Hostes re cognita ab iis, qui Metiosedo fugerant, 15 coepit. Lutetiam incendi pontesque eius oppidi rescindi iubent; ipsi profecti a palude ad ripas Sequanae e regione Lutetiae contra Labieni castra considunt.

LIX. Iam Caesar a Gergovia discessisse audiebatur, iam 20 de Aeduorum defectione et secundo Galliae motu rumores afferebantur, Gallique in colloquiis interclusum itinere et Ligeri Caesarem inopia frumenti coactum in provinciam contendisse confirmabant. Bellovaci autem defectione Aeduorum cognita, qui iam ante erant per se infideles, manus cogere 25 atque aperte bellum parare coeperunt. Tum Labienus tanta rerum commutatione longe aliud sibi capiendum consilium, atque antea senserat, intellegebat, neque iam, ut aliquid acquireret proelioque hostes lacesseret, sed ut incolumem exercitum Agedincum reduceret, cogitabat. Namque altera ex 30 parte Bellovaci, quae civitas in Gallia maximam habet opinionem virtutis, instabant, alteram Camulogenus parato atque instructo exercitu tenebat; tum legiones a praesidio atque impedimentis interclusas maximum flumen distinebat. Tantis subito difficultatibus obiectis ab animi virtute auxilium peten-35 dum videbat.

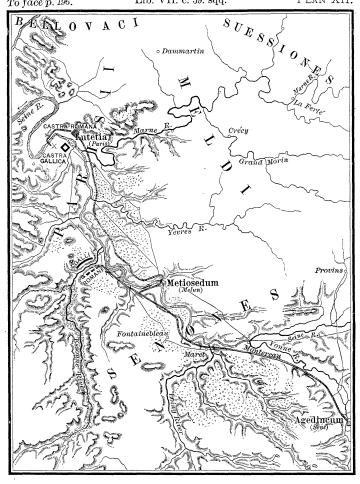
LX. Sub vesperum consilio convocato, cohortatus, ut ea, quae imperasset, diligenter industrieque administrarent, naves, quas Metiosedo deduxerat, singulas equitibus Romanis attri-

### EXPEDITION OF LABIENUS AGAINST LUTETIA.

To face p. 196.

Lib. VII. c. 59. sqq.

PLAN XII.





buit et prima confecta vigilia quattuor milia passuum secundo flumine silentio progredi ibique se exspectari iubet. Quinque cohortes, quas minime firmas ad dimicandum esse existimabat, castris praesidio relinquit; quinque eiusdem legionis reliquas de media nocte cum omnibus impedimentis adverso 5 flumine magno tumultu proficisci imperat. Conquirit etiam lintres; has magno sonitu remorum incitatas in eandem partem mittit. Ipse post paulo silentio egressus cum tribus legionibus eum locum petit, quo naves appelli iusserat.

LXI. Eo cum esset ventum, exploratores hostium, ut omni 10 fluminis parte erant dispositi, inopinantes, quod magna subito erat coorta tempestas, ab nostris opprimuntur; exercitus equitatusque equitibus Romanis administrantibus, quos ei negotio praefecerat, celeriter transmittitur. Uno fere tempore sub lucem hostibus nuntiatur, in castris Romanorum 15 praeter consuetudinem tumultuari, et magnum ire agmen adverso flumine sonitumque remorum in eadem parte exaudiri, et paulo infra milites navibus transportari. Quibus rebus auditis, quod existimabant, tribus locis transire legiones atque omnes perturbatos defectione Aeduorum fugam pa- 20 rare, suas quoque copias in tres partes distribuerunt. Nam praesidio e regione castrorum relicto et parva manu Metiosedum versus missa, quae tantum progrediatur, quantum naves processissent, reliquas copias contra Labienum duxerunt. 25

LXII. Prima luce et nostri omnes erant transportati et hostium acies cernebatur. Labienus milites cohortatus, ut suae pristinae virtutis et secundissimorum proeliorum retinerent memoriam atque ipsum Caesarem, cuius ductu saepenumero hostes superassent, praesentem adesse existimarent, 30 dat signum proelii. Primo concursu ab dextro cornu, ubi septima legio constiterat, hostes pelluntur atque in fugam coniciuntur; ab sinistro, quem locum duodecima legio tenebat, cum primi ordines hostium transfixi telis concidissent, tamen acerrime reliqui resistebant, nec dabat suspicionem 35 fugae quisquam. Ipse dux hostium Camulogenus suis aderat atque eos cohortabatur. Incerto nunc etiam exitu victoriae, cum septimae legionis tribunis esset nuntiatum, quae in sinistro

cornu gererentur, post tergum hostium legionem ostenderunt signaque intulerunt. Ne eo quidem tempore quisquam loco cessit, sed circumventi omnes interfectique sunt. Eandem fortunam tulit Camulogenus. At ii, qui praesidio contra 5 castra Labieni erant relicti, cum proelium commissum audissent, subsidio suis ierunt collemque ceperunt, neque nostrorum militum victorum impetum sustinere potuerunt. Sic cum suis fugientibus permixti, quos non silvae montesque texerunt, ab equitatu sunt interfecti. Hoc negotio confecto Labienus 10 revertitur Agedincum, ubi impedimenta totius exercitus relicta erant; inde cum omnibus copiis ad Caesarem pervenit.

The revolt becomes general. Vercingetorix is appointed commander. His cavalry being defeated by Caesar, he takes refuge in Alesia.

LXIII. Defectione Aeduorum cognita bellum augetur. Legationes in omnes partes circummittuntur; quantum gratia, auctoritate, pecunia valent, ad sollicitandas civitates nituntur; 15 nacti obsides, quos Caesar apud eos deposuerat, horum supplicio dubitantes territant. Petunt a Vercingetorige Aedui, ut ad se veniat rationesque belli gerendi communicet. Re impetrata contendunt, ut ipsis summa imperii tradatur, et re in controversiam deducta totius Galliae concilium Bibracte 20 indicitur. Eodem conveniunt undique frequentes. Multitudinis suffragiis res permittitur; ad unum omnes Vercingetorigem probant imperatorem. Ab hoc concilio Remi, Lingones, Treveri afuerunt; illi, quod amicitiam Romanorum sequebantur; Treveri, quod aberant longius et ab Germanis 25 premebantur, quae fuit causa, quare toto abessent bello et neutris auxilia mitterent. Magno dolore Aedui ferunt se deiectos principatu, queruntur fortunae commutationem et Caesaris indulgentiam in se requirunt, neque tamen suscepto bello suum consilium ab reliquis separare audent. 30 summae spei adulescentes, Eporedorix et Viridomarus, Vercingetorigi parent.

LXIV. Ipse imperat reliquis civitatibus obsides diemque huic rei constituit; omnes equites, xv milia numero, celeriter convenire iubet. Peditatu, quem antea habuerat, se fore

contentum dicit, neque fortunam temptaturum aut in acie dimicaturum, sed, quoniam abundet equitatu, perfacile esse factu frumentationibus pabulationibusque Romanos prohibere; aequo modo animo sua ipsi frumenta corrumpant aedificiaque incendant, qua rei familiaris iactura perpetuum imperium 5 libertatemque se consequi videant. His constitutis rebus Aeduis Segusiavisque, qui sunt finitimi provinciae, decem milia peditum imperat; huc addit equites octingentos. His praeficit fratrem Eporedorigis bellumque inferri Allobrogibus iubet. Altera ex parte Gabalos proximosque pagos Arverno- 10 rum in Helvios, item Rutenos Cadurcosque ad fines Volcarum Arecomicorum depopulandos mittit. Nihilo minus clandestinis nuntiis legationibusque Allobrogas sollicitat, quorum mentes nondum ab superiore bello resedisse sperabat. rum principibus pecunias, civitati autem imperium totius 15 provinciae pollicetur.

LXV. Ad hos omnes casus provisa erant praesidia cohortium duarum et viginti, quae ex ipsa provincia ab Lucio Caesare legato ad omnes partes opponebantur. Helvii sua sponte cum finitimis proelio congressi pelluntur et Gaio 20 Valerio Donnotauro, Caburi filio, principe civitatis, compluribusque aliis interfectis intra oppida ac muros compelluntur. Allobroges crebris ad Rhodanum dispositis praesidiis magna cum cura et diligentia suos fines tuentur. Caesar, quod hostes equitatu superiores esse intellegebat et interclusis 25 omnibus itineribus nulla re ex provincia atque Italia sublevari poterat, trans Rhenum in Germaniam mittit ad eas civitates, quas superioribus annis pacaverat, equitesque ab his arcessit et levis armaturae pedites, qui inter eos proeliari consuerant. Eorum adventu, quod minus idoneis equis ute- 30 bantur, a tribunis militum reliquisque equitibus Romanis atque evocatis equos sumit Germanisque distribuit.

LXVI. Interea, dum haec geruntur, hostium copiae ex Arvernis equitesque, qui toti Galliae erant imperati, conveniunt. Magno horum coacto numero, cum Caesar in Sequanos per extremos Lingonum fines iter faceret, quo facilius subsidium provinciae ferri posset, circiter milia passuum decem ab Romanis trinis castris Vercingetorix consedit convo-

catisque ad concilium praefectis equitum venisse tempus victoriae demonstrat : fugere in provinciam Romanos Galliaque excedere. Id sibi ad praesentem obtinendam libertatem satis esse; ad reliqui temporis pacem atque otium parum 5 profici: maioribus enim coactis copiis reversuros neque finem bellandi facturos. Proinde agmine impeditos adoriantur. pedites suis auxilium ferant atque in eo morentur, iter facere non posse; si, id quod magis futurum confidat. relictis impedimentis suae saluti consulant, et usu rerum necessariarum 10 et dignitate spoliatum iri. Nam de equitibus hostium, quin nemo eorum progredi modo extra agmen audeat, ipsos quidem non debere dubitare. Id quo maiore faciant animo, copias se omnes pro castris habiturum et terrori hostibus futurum. Conclamant equites, sanctissimo iureiurando con-15 firmari oportere, ne tecto recipiatur, ne ad liberos, ne ad parentes, ad uxorem aditum habeat, qui non bis per agmen hostium perequitasset.

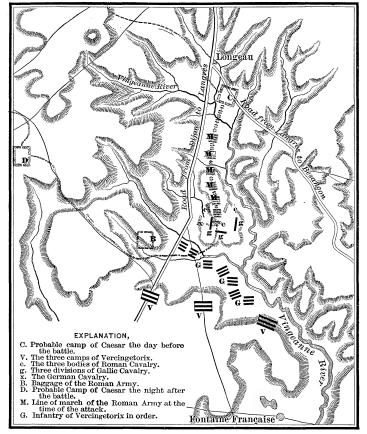
LXVII. Probata re atque omnibus iureiurando adactis, postero die in tres partes distributo equitatu duae se acies 20 ab duobus lateribus ostendunt, una a primo agmine iter impedire coepit. Qua re nuntiata Caesar suum quoque equitatum tripertito divisum contra hostem ire iubet. Pugnatur una omnibus in partibus. Consistit agmen; impedimenta inter legiones recipiuntur. Si qua in parte nostri laborare 25 aut gravius premi videbantur, eo signa inferri Caesar aciemque constitui iubebat; quae res et hostes ad insequendum tardabat et nostros spe auxilii confirmabat. Tandem Germani ab dextro latere summum iugum nancti hostes loco depellunt; fugientes usque ad flumen, ubi Vercingetorix 30 cum pedestribus copiis consederat, persequuntur compluresque interficiunt. Qua re animadversa reliqui, ne circumirentur, veriti se fugae mandant. Omnibus locis fit caedes. Tres nobilissimi Aedui capti ad Caesarem perducuntur: Cotus, praefectus equitum, qui controversiam cum Convic-35 tolitavi proximis comitiis habuerat, et Cavarillus, qui post defectionem Litavicci pedestribus copiis praefuerat, et Eporedorix, quo duce ante adventum Caesaris Aedui cum Sequanis bello contenderant.

# CAESAR'S VICTORY OVER VERCINGETORIX AT THE VINGEANNE.

To face p. 200.

Lib. VII. c. 66. sqq.

PLAN XIII.





milites circumvallare instituit. exercitus confidebant, erant pulsi, adhortatus ad laborem ro perterritisque hostibus, quod equitatu, qua maxime parte tis altero die ad Alesiam castra fecit. Perspecto urbis situ circiter tribus milibus hostium ex novissimo agmine interfecpraesidio relictis secutus, quantum diei tempus est passum, impedimentis in proximum collem deductis, duabus legionibus 5 impedimenta ex castris educi et se subsequi iussit. Caesar est oppidum Mandubiorum, iter facere coepit celeriterque pro castris collocaverat, reduxit protinusque Alesiam, quod LXVIII. Fugato omni equitatu, Vercingetorix copias, ut

# Caesar besieges Alesia with two lines of works, protecting his army on both sides.

fastigio oppidum cingebant. Sub muro, quae pars collis ad orientem solem spectabat, hunc omnem locum copiae Gallorum compleverant fossamque et maceriam sex in altitu- 20 dinem pedum praeduxerant. Eius munitionis, quae ab suum tria in longitudinem patebat; reliquis ex omnibus partibus colles mediocri interiecto spatio pari altitudinis subluebant. Ante id oppidum planities circiter milia pas- 15 retur; cuius collis radices duo duabus ex partibus flumina dum edito loco, ut nisi obsidione expugnari non posse videac firmis praesidiis tenebantur. qua subito eruptio fieret; haec eadem noctu excubitoribus 25 facta, quibus in castellis interdiu stationes ponebantur, ne Romanis instituebatur, circuitus xı milia passuum tenebat. Castra opportunis locis erant posita ibique castella viginti tria LXIX. Ipsum erat oppidum Alesia in colle summo admo-

animus augetur; hostes in fugam coniecti se ipsi multitudine quam intermissam collibus tria milia passuum in longitudinem impediunt atque angustioribus portis relictis coacervantur. hostium peditatu fiat. Praesidio legionum addito nostris legionesque pro castris constituit, ne qua subito irruptio ab patere supra demonstravimus. Summa vi ab utrisque contenditur. Laborantibus nostris Caesar Germanos submittit 30 Germani acrius usque ad munitiones sequuntur. LXX. Opere instituto fit equestre proelium in ea planitie, Fit magna 35

5 existimantes ad arma conclamant; nonnulli perterriti in oppitra nudentur. Multis interfectis, compluribus equis captis dum irrumpunt. Vercingetorix iubet portas claudi, ne casmunitiones erant, perturbantur Galli; veniri ad se confestim Germani sese recipiunt. vallo constituerat, promoveri iubet. transcendere conantur. Paulum legiones Caesar, caedes; nonnulli relictis equis fossam transire et maceriam Non minus, qui intra quas pro

25 caverat, in oppidum recepit. His rationibus auxilia Galliae 20 intermissum, secunda vigilia silentio equitatum mittit. Fru-15 communi libertate meritum hostibus in cruciatum dedant. 10 perficiantur, consilium capit, omnem ab se equitatum noctu exspectare et bellum parat administrare. latim metiri instituit. Copias omnes, quas pro oppido collodubiis compulsa, viritim distribuit, frumentum parce et pauparuerint, constituit; pecus, cuius magna erat copia ab Manmentum omne ad se referri iubet; capitis poenam iis, qui non tolerari posse parcendo. dierum xxx habere frumentum, sed paulo etiam longius una secum interitura demonstrat. Ratione inita se exigue turque, ut suae salutis rationem habeant, neu se optime de sint, ad bellum cogant. civitatem adeat omnesque, qui per aetatem arma ferre posdimittere. Discedentibus mandat, ut suam quisque eorum Quod si indiligentiores fuerint, milia hominum delecta LXXX LXXI. Vercingetorix, priusquam munitiones ab Romanis Sua in illos merita proponit obtesta-His datis mandatis, qua opus erat

35 aut interdiu tela in nostros operi destinatos conicere possent. 30 ret, quantum summae fossae labra distarent. ac demissis locis aqua ex flumine derivata complevit. dem altitudine, perduxit; quarum interiorem campestribus Hoc intermisso spatio duas fossas quindecim pedes latas, eaproviso aut noctu ad munitiones hostium multitudo advolaret, nec facile totum corpus corona militum cingeretur, ne de imconsilio, quoniam tantum esset necessario spatium complexus munitiones ab ea fossa pedes quadringentos reduxit, id hoc directis lateribus duxit, ut eius fossae solum tantundem pate-LXXII. Quibus rebus cognitis ex perfugis et captivis Caesar haec genera munitionis instituit. Fossam pedum viginti Reliquas omnes

Lib. VII c. 69. sqq.

PLAN XIV

Infantry Camps on the D. Camp of the two legions attacked G, H, I, K. Cavalry Camps near the 4 Caesar's position in the last Battle. by the Gallie Army of Succor. f.f,f. Trenches, 20 feet wide. EXPLANATION. P, S. Gallic Ramparts. G & Roman Encampments and lines of Works. water. O Castella. Heights. e du Chateau Rue du Veau Flavig HEIGHTS Bussy-le-Grand To face p. 202.

SCALE OF MILES



eas aggerem ac vallum XII pedum exstruxit. Huic loricam pinnasque adiecit, grandibus cervis eminentibus ad commissuras pluteorum atque aggeris, qui ascensum hostium tardarent, et turres toto opere circumdedit, quae pedes LXXX inter se distarent.

LXXIII. Erat eodem tempore et materiari et frumentari et tantas munitiones fieri necesse deminutis nostris copiis. quae longius ab castris progrediebantur; ac nonnumquam opera nostra Galli temptare atque eruptionem ex oppido pluribus portis summa vi facere conabantur. Quare ad 10 haec rursus opera addendum Caesar putavit, quo minore numero militum munitiones defendi possent. Itaque truncis arborum admodum firmis ramis abscisis atque horum delibratis ac praeacutis cacuminibus perpetuae fossae quinos pedes altae ducebantur. Huc illi stipites demissi et ab in- 15 fimo revincti, ne revelli possent, ab ramis eminebant. Quini erant ordines coniuncti inter se atque implicati; quo qui intraverant, se ipsi acutissimis vallis induebant. Hos cippos appellabant. Ante quos obliquis ordinibus in quincuncem dispositis scrobes tres in altitudinem pedes fodiebantur pau- 20 latim angustiore ad infimum fastigio. Huc teretes stipites feminis crassitudine ab summo praeacuti et praeusti demittebantur ita, ut non amplius digitis quattuor ex terra eminerent; simul confirmandi et stabiliendi causa singuli ab infimo solo pedes terra exculcabantur; reliqua pars scro- 25 bis ad occultandas insidias viminibus ac virgultis integebatur. Huius generis octoni ordines ducti ternos inter se pedes distabant. Id ex similitudine floris lilium appellabant. haec taleae pedem longae ferreis hamis infixis totae in terram infodiebantur mediocribusque intermissis spatiis omnibus locis 30 disserebantur, quos stimulos nominabant.

LXXIV. His rebus perfectis, regiones secutus quam potuit aequissimas pro loci natura, xiv milia passuum complexus pares eiusdem generis munitiones, diversas ab his, contra exteriorem hostem perfecit, ut ne magna quidem multitudine, si ita accidat, eius discessu munitionum praesidia circumfundi possent; ac ne cum periculo ex castris egredi cogatur, dierum triginta pabulum frumentumque habere omnes convectum iubet.

The Gauls gather a great army to relieve the town. Misery of the inhabitants. The Gauls are defeated. Alesia surrenders.

LXXV. Dum haec apud Alesiam geruntur, Galli concilio principum indicto non omnes eos, qui arma ferre possent, ut censuit Vercingetorix, convocandos statuunt, sed certum numerum cuique ex civitate imperandum, ne tanta multitu-5 dine confusa nec moderari nec discernere suos nec frumentandi rationem habere possent. Imperant Aeduis atque eorum clientibus, Segusiavis, Ambivaretis, Aulercis Brannovicibus, Brannoviis, milia xxxv; parem numerum Arvernis adiunctis Eleutetis, Cadurcis, Gabalis, Vellavis, qui sub im-10 perio Arvernorum esse consuerunt; Sequanis, Senonibus, Biturigibus, Santonis, Rutenis, Carnutibus duodena milia; Bellovacis x; totidem Lemovicibus; octona Pictonibus et Turonis et Parisiis et Helvetiis; Ambianis, Mediomatricis, Petrocoriis, Nerviis, Morinis, Nitiobrogibus quina milia; 15 Aulercis Cenomanis totidem; Atrebatibus IV; Veliocassis, Lexoviis et Aulercis Eburovicibus terna; Rauricis et Boiis bina; xxx universis civitatibus, quae Oceanum attingunt quaeque eorum consuetudine Aremoricae appellantur, quo sunt in numero Curiosolites, Redones, Ambibarii, Caletes, 20 Osismi, Lemovices, Venelli. Ex his Bellovaci suum numerum non compleverunt, quod se suo nomine atque arbitrio cum Romanis bellum gesturos dicebant neque cuiusquam imperio obtemperaturos; rogati tamen ab Commio pro eius hospitio duo milia una miserunt.

LXXVI. Huius opera Commii, ut antea demonstravimus, fideli atque utili superioribus annis usus in Britannia Caesar; quibus ille pro meritis civitatem eius immunem esse iusserat, iura legesque reddiderat atque ipsi Morinos attribuerat. Tamen tanta universae Galliae consensio fuit libertatis vindicandae, et pristinae belli laudis recuperandae, ut neque beneficiis neque amicitiae memoria moverentur, omnesque et animo et opibus in id bellum incumberent. Coactis equitum viii milibus et peditum circiter ccl., haec in Aeduorum finibus recensebantur, numerusque inibatur, praefecti constitue-

posse arbitraretur, praesertim ancipiti proelio, cum ex oppıdo quisquam, qui aspectum modo tantae multitudinis sustineri et fiduciae pleni ad Alesiam proficiscuntur, neque erat omnium 5 untur, quorum consilio bellum administraretur. Omnes alacres summa imperii traditur. His delecti ex civitatibus attribuduis, Vercassivellauno Arverno, consobrino Vercingetorigis, eruptione pugnaretur, foris tantae copiae equitatus peditatus-Commio Atrebati, Viridomaro et Eporedorigi Ae-

inscii, quid in Aeduis gereretur, concilio coacto de exitu sua que cernerentur.

LXXVII. At ii, qui Alesiae obsidebantur, praeterita die, summo in Arvernis ortus loco et magnae habitus auctoritatis, propter eius singularem et nefariam crudelitatem. onem censebat, non praetereunda oratio Critognati videtur 15 quarum pars deditionem, pars, dum vires suppeterent, eruptirum fortunarum consultabant. Ac variis dictis sententiis, qua auxilia suorum exspectaverant, consumpto omni frumento rioribus munitionibus animine causa cotidie exerceri putatis? cillitate omnem Galliam prosternere et perpetuae servituti neglexerunt, nec stultitia ac temeritate vestra aut animi imbeauxilio exspoliare, qui vestrae salutis causa suum periculum cadaveribus proelio decertare cogentur? Nolite hos vestro guineisque nostris animi fore existimatis, si paene in ipsis num milibus LXXX uno loco interfectis propinquis consanmus, quam ad nostrum auxilium concitavimus. viderem; sed in consilio capiendo omnem Galliam respiciapotest), si nullam praeterquam vitae nostrae iacturam fieri que ego hanc sententiam probarem (tantum apud me dignitas facilius reperiuntur, quam qui dolorem patienter ferant. Atlisper inopiam ferre non posse. Qui se ultro morti offerant, memoria videtur. Animi est ista mollitia, non virtus, consilio omnium vestrum consensu pristinae residere virtutis Cum his mihi res sit, qui eruptionem probant; quorum in bendos civium loco neque ad concilium adhibendos censeo. mam servitutem deditionis nomine appellant, neque hos ha-'Nihil,' inquit, 'de eorum sententia dicturus sum, qui turpissiconstantiaque dubitatis? An, quod ad diem non venerunt, de eorum fide Quid ergo? Romanos in illis ulte-Quid homioI 20

20 in provinciam redacta, iure et legibus commutatis, securibus 10 prodi pulcherrimum iudicarem. 5 nequaquam pari bello Cimbrorum Teutonumque fecerunt; invidia adducti, quos fama nobiles potentesque bello cognosubiecta perpetua premitur servitute.' onibus geruntur, ignoratis, respicite finitimam Galliam, quae aeternam iniungere servitutem? Neque enim ulla alia converunt, horum in agris civitatibusque considere atque his terras petierunt; iura, leges, agros, libertatem nobis reliquefinibus quidem nostris aliquando excesserunt atque alias non haberemus, tamen libertatis causa institui et posteris qui in oppida compulsi ac simili inopia subacti eorum corporicuius rei timore exterriti diem noctemque in opere versantur. septo, his utimini testibus, appropinquare eorum adventum; Si illorum nuntiis confirmari non potestis omni aditu praedicione bella gesserunt. Quod si ea, quae in longinquis natibus, qui aetate ad bellum inutiles videbantur, vitam tolerave-Quid ergo mei consilii est? Facere, quod nostri maiores neque se hostibus tradiderunt. Cuius rei si exemplum Depopulata Gallia Cimbri magnaque illata calamitate Romani vero quid petunt aliud aut quid volunt, nisi Nam quid illi simile bello

30 orabant, ut se in servitutem receptos cibo iuvarent. At Caesar scendant; illo tamen potius utendum consilio, si res cogat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut deditionis aut pacis subomnia prius experiantur, quam ad Critognati sententiam denitiones Romanorum accessissent, flentes omnibus precibus cum liberis atque uxoribus exire coguntur. Hi cum ad mueundam condicionem. Mandubii, qui eos oppido receperant, dine aut aetate inutiles sunt bello, oppido excedant atque dispositis in vallo custodibus recipi prohibebat. LXXVIII. Sententiis dictis constituunt, ut ii, qui valetu-

35 ab nostris munitionibus considunt. Postero die equitatu ex imperii permissa erat, cum omnibus copiis ad Alesiam pertresque copias paulum ab eo loco abditas in locis superioritria milia passuum patere demonstravimus, complent pedescastris educto omnem eam planitiem, quam in longitudinem veniunt et colle exteriore occupato non longius mille passibus LXXIX. Interea Commius reliquique duces, quibus summa

omnes casus comparant. integunt atque copiis ante oppidum considunt et proximam fossam cratibus omnium animi ad laetitiam excitantur. Itaque productis bus constituunt. Concurrunt his auxiliis visis; fit gratulatio inter eos atque aggere explent seque ad eruptionem atque 5 Erat ex oppido Alesia despectus in campum.

receperunt. processerant, maesti prope victoria desperata se in oppidum colligendi facultatem non dederunt. reliquis partibus nostri cedentes usque ad castra insecuti sui iectis sagittarii circumventi interfectique tum fecerunt eosque propulerunt; quibus in fugam conretur, Germani una in parte confertis turmis in hostes impe-Cum a meridie prope ad solis occasum dubia victoria pugnalaudis cupiditas et timor ignominiae ad virtutem excitabat. tur neque recte ac turpiter factum celari poterat, utrosque et mos confirmabant. qui ad auxilium convenerant, clamore et ululatu suorum aniomnibus partibus et ii, qui munitionibus continebantur, et hi, Galli confiderent et nostros multitudine premi viderent, ex rati proelio excedebant. Cum suos pugna superiores esse impetus sustinerent. Ab his complures de improviso vulnequi suis cedentibus auxilio succurrerent et nostrorum equitum raros sagittarios expeditosque levis armaturae interiecerant, undique iugum tenebant, despectus, atque omnes milites incommitti teneat et noverit, tionum disposito, ut, si usus veniat, suum quisque locum pugnae proventum exspectabant. iubet. Caesar omni exercitu ad utramque partem muni-Erat ex omnibus castris, quae equitatum ex castris educi et proelium Quod in conspectu omnium res gereba-At ii, qui ab Alesia Galli inter equites sunt. Item ex 20

sidebantur, de suo adventu cognoscere Subito clamore sublato, qua significatione, qui in oppido obsilentio ex castris egressi ad campestres munitiones accedunt. cratium, scalarum, harpagonum numero effecto media nocte reliquaque, quae ministrare. LXXXI. Uno die intermisso Galli atque hoc spatio magno fundis, sagittis, lapidibus nostros de vallo proturbare Eodem ad tempore oppugnationem pertinent, parant clamore exaudito dat possent, crates pro-

5 spectu tenebris adempto multa utrimque vulnera accipiuntur. auxilio ex ulterioribus castellis deductos submittebant. obvenerant, qua ex parte nostros premi intellexerant, his et Gaius Trebonius legati, quibus hae partes ad defendendum Complura tormentis tela coniciuntur. At Marcus Antonius munitiones accedunt; fundis librilibus sudibusque, quas in ut superioribus diebus suus cuique erat locus attributus, ad signum suis Vercingetorix atque ex oppido educit. disposuerant, ac glandibus Gallos proterrent.

20 trandis morati prius suos discessisse ceptis nulla munitione perrupta, cum lux appeteret, veriti, ne ab latere aperto ex superioribus castris eruptione circumreverterunt. munitionibus appropinquarent. ferunt, priores fossas explent, diutius in his rebus adminisquae a Vercingetorige ad eruptionem praeparata erant, provenirentur, se ad suos receperunt. At interiores, dum ea, pilis muralibus interibant. Multis undique vulneribus acbes delati transfodiebantur aut ex vallo ac turribus traiecti cesserunt, aut se stimulis inopinantes induebant aut in scromultitudine telorum proficiebant; posteaquam propius suc-LXXXII. Dum longius ab munitione aberant Galli, plus Ita re infecta in oppidum cognoverunt, quam

35 piis Vercassivellaunum Arvernum, unum ex quattuor ducibus, bus legionibus obtinebant. Cognitis per exploratores regioniriorum castrorum situs munitionesque cognoscunt. Erat a propinquum Vercingetorigis, praeficiunt. Ille ex castris prima undi tempus definiunt, cum meridies esse videatur. quoque pacto agi placeat, occulte inter se constituunt; adecivitatum, quae maximam virtutis opinionem habebant; quid bus duces hostium LX milia ex omni numero deligunt earum Antistius Reginus et Gaius Caninius Rebilus legati cum duainiquo loco et leniter declivi castra fecerunt. Haec Gaius opere circumplecti non potuerant nostri: necessario paene septentrionibus collis, quem propter magnitudinem circuitus agant, consulunt; locorum peritos adhibent: ex his supetem se occultavit militesque ex nocturno labore sese reficere vigilia egressus prope confecto sub lucem itinere post mon-LXXXIII. Bis magno cum detrimento repulsi Galli, quid iussit. Cum iam meridies appropinquare videretur, ad ea castra, quae supra demonstravimus, contendit; eodemque tempore equitatus ad campestres munitiones accedere et reliquae copiae pro castris sese ostendere coeperunt.

LXXXIV. Vercingetorix ex arce Alesiae suos conspicatus 5 ex oppido egreditur: cratis, longurios, musculos, falces reliquaque, quae eruptionis causa paraverat, profert. Pugnatur uno tempore omnibus locis, atque omnia temptantur; quae minime visa pars firma est, huc concurritur. Romanorum manus tantis munitionibus distinetur nec facile pluribus locis 10 occurrit. Multum ad terrendos nostros valet clamor, qui post tergum pugnantibus exstitit, quod suum periculum in aliena vident salute constare; omnia enim plerumque, quae absunt, vehementius hominum mentes perturbant.

LXXXV. Caesar idoneum locum nactus, quid quaque ex 15 parte geratur, cognoscit; laborantibus submittit. Utrisque ad animum occurrit, unum esse illud tempus, quo maxime contendi conveniat: Galli, nisi perfregerint munitiones, de omni salute desperant; Romani, si rem obtinuerint, finem laborum omnium exspectant. Maxime ad superiores muni-20 tiones laboratur, quo Vercassivellaunum missum demonstravimus. Iniquum loci ad declivitatem fastigium magnum habet momentum. Alii tela coniciunt, alii testudine facta subeunt; defatigatis in vicem integri succedunt. Agger ab universis in munitionem coniectus et ascensum dat Gallis et ea, quae in 25 terra occultaverant Romani, contegit; nec iam arma nostris nec vires suppetunt.

LXXXVI. His rebus cognitis Caesar Labienum cum cohortibus sex subsidio laborantibus mittit; imperat, si sustinere non posset, deductis cohortibus eruptione pugnaret; 30 id nisi necessario ne faciat. Ipse adit reliquos, cohortatur, ne labori succumbant; omnium superiorum dimicationum fructum in eo die atque hora docet consistere. Interiores desperatis campestribus locis propter magnitudinem munitionum loca praerupta ex ascensu temptant; huc ea, quae 35 paraverant, conferunt. Multitudine telorum ex turribus propugnantes deturbant, aggere et cratibus fossas explent, falcibus vallum ac loricam rescindunt. LXXXVII. Mittit primo Brutum adulescentem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliis Gaium Fabium legatum;
postremo ipse, cum vehementius pugnaretur, integros subsidio adducit. Restituto proelio ac repulsis hostibus eo,
5 quo Labienum miserat, contendit; cohortes quattuor ex
proximo castello deducit, equitum partem se sequi, partem
circumire exteriores munitiones et ab tergo hostes adoriri
iubet. Labienus, postquam neque aggeres neque fossae
vim hostium sustinere poterant, coactis una xL cohortibus,
10 quas ex proximis praesidiis deductas fors obtulit, Caesarem
per nuntios facit certiorem, quid faciendum existimet. Accelerat Caesar, ut proelio intersit.

LXXXVIII. Eius adventu ex colore vestitus cognito, quo insigni in proeliis uti consuerat, turmisque equitum et cohor-15 tibus visis, quas se sequi iusserat, ut de locis superioribus haec declivia et devexa cernebantur, hostes proelium committunt. Utrimque clamore sublato, excipit rursus ex vallo atque omnibus munitionibus clamor. Nostri omissis pilis gladiis rem gerunt. Repente post tergum equitatus cernitur; cohortes 20 aliae appropinquant. Hostes terga vertunt; fugientibus equites occurrunt. Fit magna caedes. Sedulius, dux et princeps Lemovicum, occiditur; Vercassivellaunus Arvernus vivus in fuga comprehenditur; signa militaria septuaginta quattuor ad Caesarem referuntur; pauci ex tanto numero se incolu-25 mes in castra recipiunt. Conspicati ex oppido caedem et fugam suorum desperata salute copias a munitionibus reducunt. Fit protinus hac re audita ex castris Gallorum fuga. Ouod nisi crebris subsidiis ac totius diei labore milites essent defessi, omnes hostium copiae deleri potuissent. De media 30 nocte missus equitatus novissimum agmen consequitur; magnus numerus capitur atque interficitur, reliqui ex fuga in civitates discedunt.

LXXXIX. Postero die Vercingetorix consilio convocato id bellum se suscepisse non suarum necessitatum, sed com35 munis libertatis causa demonstrat, et quoniam sit fortunae cedendum, ad utramque rem se illis offerre, seu morte sua Romanis satisfacere seu vivum tradere velint. Mittuntur de his rebus ad Caesarem legati. Iubet arma tradi, prin-

cipes produci. Ipse in munitione pro castris consedit; eo duces producuntur. Vercingetorix deditur, arma proiciuntur. Reservatis Aeduis atque Arvernis, si per eos civitates reciperare posset, ex reliquis captivis toto exercitui capita singula praedae nomine distribuit.

All Gaul submits to Caesar. He places his army in winter quarters. A thanksgiving is decreed at Rome.

XC. His rebus confectis in Aeduos proficiscitur; civitatem recipit. Eo legati ab Arvernis missi, quae imperaret, se facturos pollicentur. Imperat magnum numerum obsidum. Legiones in hiberna mittit. Captivorum circiter xx milia Aeduis Arvernisque reddit. T. Labienum duabus cum legi- 10 onibus et equitatu in Sequanos proficisci iubet; huic M. Sempronium Rutilum attribuit. Gaium Fabium legatum et Lucium Minucium Basilum cum legionibus duabus in Remis collocat, ne quam ab finitimis Bellovacis calamitatem accipiant. Gaium Antistium Reginum in Ambivaretos, Titum Sextium in Bituriges, Gaium Camnium Rebilum in Rutenos cum singulis legionibus mittit. Quintum Tullium Ciceronem et Publium Sulpicium Cabilloni et Matiscone in Aeduis ad Ararim rei frumentariae causa collocat. Ipse Bibracte hiemare constituit. His rebus ex litteris Caesaris cognitis, Romae die- 20 rum viginti supplicatio redditur.

## NOTES.



## NOTES.

Page 47. C. IULI CAESARIS: on the three names, — praenomen, nomen, and cognomen, — see A. 80; H. 649. C. stands for Gaius; in proper names initial c was in Caesar's time written in place of g. Why? A. 6; H. 2, I-3. Iuli: why the ending i instead of ii? B. 25, I; A. 40, b; H. 51, 5. Caesaris: the origin of the name Caesar has been much discussed, but remains uncertain. Most likely it comes from caesaries, 'hair,' — the first one to bear the name having had a remarkable amount of hair in infancy. What other derivations have been suggested? See Smith's Dict. of Biography and Mythology, vol. i. p. 536. DE BELLO GALLICO: A. 217, R.; H. 359, N. I, 4); the titles of books in Latin are often put in the abl. with de. COMMENTARIUS: 'commentary,' memoir. Originally the word commentarius was an adjective modifying liber expressed or understood; it is here used as a noun. What case is it in and why? Sc. hic est. Read pp. 17-20.

Chapter I. 1. Gallia: Study pp. 38-40, in connection with the map of Gaul. omnis: 'as a whole.' divisa: B. 337, 2; A. 291, b; H. 550, N. 2. If divisa est were a perfect passive, it would have to be translated 'has been divided,' or 'was divided.' unam: sc. partem. 2. tertiam, qui: = tertiam partem ii incolunt, qui. B. 251, 1; A. 200, c; H. 445, 6. ipsorum: for sua ipsorum, emphatic, 'their own,' lingua: B. 218; A. 248; H. 420. 3. Celtae: B. 168; A. 185; H. 362, 2, 2). nostra: = Latınā

For other abbreviations see the list preceding the Vocabulary. Teachers at the outset should see that their pupils are made familiar both with the abbreviations here given and with the list before the Vocabulary.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> B. = Bennett's Latin Grammar, A. = Allen and Greenough's, H. = Harkness's, the "Standard" edition. References like this, p. 48, 7 (page 48, line 7) are to the pages of this book. Translations of Latin words or phrases are put in single quotation marks.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> Sc. (scilicet) = "supply," or "understood"; N. = "note"; R. = "remark"; Vocab. = "Vocabulary," at the end of the book; cf. (confer) = "compare"; dir. disc. = "direct discourse"; indir. disc. = "indirect discourse" (oratio obliqua); constr. = "construction"; l. = "line"; lit. = "literally"; dep. = "depends" or "dependent"; trans. = "translate" or "translation"; pred. = "predicate."

[linguā]. Caesar, although writing in the third person, often uses nos and noster for Romani and Romanorum. lingua: B. 226; A. 253; H. 424. The language of all the Gauls except the Aquitani was Keltic, of which, however, there were many dialects. Some dialects of the Belgae contained German elements. The peculiar speech of the Aquitani survives in the Basque language; see p. 40. lingua, institutis, legibus: When several words stand in the same construction, a conjunction is usually repeated with all, or entirely omitted. In translating, supply 'and' with the last two. Sometimes, however, -que may be added to the last word, when the conjunction is omitted with the others.

4. inter se: 'from one another.' B. 245; A. 196, f; H. 448, N.

5. dividit: sing. number because the Marne and Seine were looked upon as forming one boundary. B. 255, 3; A. 205, b; H. 463, II., 3.

- 6. Horum: B. 201, 1; A. 216, a, 2; H. 397, 3. propterea quod: 'because'; propterea (= propter ea) is properly an adv. meaning on this account,' but when closely connected with quod, as here, the two may be translated by one word. 7. cultu: refers to the external characteristics of 'civilization,' as dress, food, etc., while humanitas suggests 'refinement' 8. minime — saepe = rarissime, 'very seldom.' and culture of mind. mercatores: the 'traders' were mainly from Massilia (see p. 41) and found their way into central Gaul by following the course of the Rhone and the Saône (see p. 39), so that naturally they did not often go so far north as the region of the Belgae. 9. ad effeminandos animos, etc.: 'tend to weaken the courage.' B. 339, 2; A. 296, 300; H. 544, I. 10. Germanis: B. 192, I; A. 234, a; H. 391, I. What other case does proximus govern? Cf. p. 76, 8 and N.; p. 95, 36. quibuscum: B. 142, 4; A. 104, e; H. 187, 2. 11. Qua: 'this.' B. 251, 6; A. 180, f; H. 453. 12. reliquos: 'the rest of the.' B. 241, I; A. 193; H. 440, N. 1, 2. virtute: not 'virtue.' B. 226; A. 253; H. 424. 13. proeliis: B. 220, I; A. 248; H. 420. cum: the conj. cum can be distinguished from the prep. cum only by the sense and the connection. suis: B. 244, I, I.; A. 196; H. 449. finibus: B. 214, 2; A. 243; H. 414. **14**. eos := Germanos.
- 15. Eorum: = horum omnium, i. e., the inhabitants of Gaul mentioned at the beginning of the chapter; pars, 'division,' is used because eorum refers to the country rather than to the people. quam: object of obtinere ('occupy'), which with Gallos stands as subject of dictum est. B. 330; A. 329, 330, a, 2; H. 538. The Galli here are simply the inhabitants of the central part of Gaul'; see p. 38. 16. capit a: 'begins at.' Garumna: Why abl.? Notice the omission of the conjunction; see N. to l. 3 above. 17. Oceano: Oceanus was often used to designate the Atlantic Ocean; the part here referred to is known to-day as the Bay of Biscay. ab: 'on the side of.' 18. vergit: 'slopes.' 19. extremis: 'furthest.' Caesar's standpoint is the Roman Province. inferiorem partem: the part of

the Rhine near its mouth. 20. in septen. et or. solem: i. e., (toward the) N. E. 22. ad: 'near.' 23. occasum solis et septen.: i. e., (toward the) N. W.

THE WAR WITH THE HELVETII. II.-XXIX. B.C. 58.

Page 48. II. 1. longe: B. 350, 6; A. 344, b; H. 566. ditissimus:

how compared? See Vocab., dives. 2. Orgetorix: the name is said by some to mean 'Lord of a hundred mountains'; by others, 'Slayer.' The form Orgetirix is found on Gallic coins. M. : = Marco. consulibus: B. 227, I: A. 255,  $\alpha$ ; H. 431, 4. Trans. 'in the consulship of': = B.C. 61. As the consuls were the chief magistrates of Rome, and held office but one year, Roman dates were designated by the names of the consuls in office at the time. 3. cupiditate: B. 219; A. 245, b; H. 416, N. I. civitati: B. 187, II., a; A. 227; H. 385, II. 4. ut: the clause ut... exirent stands as object of persuasit; 'to go out,' etc. exirent: pl. because of the idea of cives in civitati. B. 295, 1; A. 331; H. 498, 1. 5. perfacile to potiri, indirect discourse; sc. dixit, or dicens. B. 313, 314, 2; A. 330, e, 335, 336; H. 522-524. The subject of esse is potiri. How does perfacile differ from facile, and why is it neuter? A. 170, c, 29, c, 189, d; H. 170, I and 42, N. virtute: B. 226; A. 253; H. 424. omnibus: B. 187, III.; A. 228; H. 386. praestarent: subj. for what two reasons? B. 286, 2, 314; A. 326, 336; H. 517, 524. 6. imperio: B. 218, 1; A. 249; H. 421, I. Id: refers to the clause perfacile . . . potiri; 'that (course).' B. 176, 2, a; A. 225, c; H. 384, 2, (1). hoc: B. 219; A. 245; H. 416. 7. loci natura: 'by the character of their country' (lit. 'of their situation'). una, etc.: 'on one side.' 8. latissimo: B. 240, 2; A. 93, b; H. 444, I. qui: why masc., when its antecedent is properly flumine? B. 250, 3; A. 199; H. 445, 4. 9. altera: here for secunda, as often. 10. tertia: sc. ex parte; trace out these boundaries on the map. nostram: = Romanam. 12. rebus: see N. on hoc, line 6. fiebat: the subject is ut . . . possent. B. 284, I, 297, 2; A. 319, 332 a; H. 501, I., I. minus late, minus facile: i. e., than they wished. finitimis: B. 187, III., 2; A. 228; H. 386. **13**. qua ex parte: 'in this respect.' See N. to p. 47, 11. Some editions have qua de causa, 'for this reason.' homines: a kind of appositive; 'being men.' bellandi: B. 338, 1, b; A. 298, 218, a; H. 542, I., 399, I., I. 14. Pro: 'in proportion to, 'considering.' 16. finis: accusative. B. 37; A. 58; H. 62. qui: i. e., fines. milia: B. 181, 1; A. 257; H. 379. The Roman mile (mille passus, pl. milia passuum) = 4854 English feet; the passus (originally a double pace) as a measure of length = 3 Roman pedes = 4 feet 10 inches by English measurement. 17. ccxl:= ducenta et quadraginta. Always read numbers in the text with the Latin words. From

the boundaries here given we see that *Helvetia* was nearly the size of modern Switzerland. The reasons assigned by Caesar for the migration of the Helvetii do not seem adequate. There were doubtless other causes which, if known, would throw light upon the subject.

III. 19. constituerunt: i. e., Helvetii. ea, quae: 'such things as.' proficiscendum: A. 300; G. 433; H. 542 III. pertinerent: the subj. implies that Caesar was giving the thought of the Helvetii rather than his own. A. 341 d; G. 630; H. 528 I. comparare, coëmere, facere, confirmare: A. 271 a; G. 424; H. 533 I. I. 20. carrorum: two-wheeled carts, generally covered, for the carrying of the baggage, the women, and children. Carrus is of Keltic origin; our word "car" is connected with it in derivation. quam: adv. A. 93 b; G. 317; H. 170 2 (2); quam maximum = tam magnum quam maximum, 'as large as possible,' 'the greatest possible.' 22. suppeteret: A. 317; G. 545 I; H. 497 II. 23. conficiendas: A. 296; G. 428; H. 544 I. 24. satis: takes the place of a predicate adj. duxerunt: 'they reckoned.' in: 'for.' 26. sibi: A. 228; G. 346; H. 386. persuadet: historical present. A. 276, d; G. 220; H. 467 III. and III. I. 27. Castico: see N. to l. 3, civitati. filio, Sequano: A. 184; G. 319; H. 363. regnum: 'headship,' 'chief authority.' At this time there was no absolute or hereditary monarchy among the Gauls. See p. 40. 28. annos: A. 256; G. 337; H. 379. 29. amicus: A. 185; G. 324; H. 362 2 2). Not infrequently the Roman Senate conferred the title of "friend" upon foreign chiefs and rulers as a means of winning their favor. ut . . . occuparet: object of persuadet; see N. to l. 4. Imperfect after historical present. sua: 'his own.' See N. to 47, 13. 30. quod: why not 'because'? 31. civitate: i. e., Aeduorum. obtinebat: force of the imperfect? A. 115 2 b; G. 222; H. 469 II.

32. plebi: A. 234 a; G. 356;
H. 391 I. acceptus: here an adj. idem: acc.; 'the same thing.' conaretur: N. to l. 4, exirent. 33. in matrimonium dat: see IDIOMS, under dare, p. 383. Perfacile to possent, indirect discourse depending on probat. The subject of esse is perficere, the construction is like that in lines 5, 6, above. 34. factu: A. 303 R.; G. 437; H. 547 N.I. illis probat: 'he shows them.'

Page 49. 1. obtenturus esset: a periphrastic form is here used, because there is no future tense in the subj. proper. A. 129; G. 515; H. 496 II. N. 2. dubium: neuter, because the subject of esse is a clause (quin... possent). A. 29 c; G. 19 III.; H. 42 II. 2 N. 2. Galliae: A. 216 a 2; G. 371; H. 397 3. plurimum: neut. acc., used adverbially; strictly speaking, a cognate acc. A. 148 d, 240 a; G. 331 R. 2; H. 304 I. 3 and 371 II. (2). Trans. with possent, 'had the most power,' were the most powerful.' possent: A. 332 g; G. 551 2; H. 501 I. 2. copiis:

iusiurandum: A. 79 d; H. 126. regno occupato: = cum regnum occuthey give one another an oath-bound pledge of good faith'; hendiadys in fidem et insinrandum. A. page 298; G. 695; H. 636 III. 2. is often omitted; 'would procure.' 'means,' 'wealth.' pavissent. A. 255; G. 408; H. 431 2 (3). 5. tres populos: i. e., Helvetios, Aeduos, Sequanos. 6. Galliae: A. 249 a; G. 405 R. 3; H. sese: subject of posse. 3. conciliaturum: in compound infinitives esse 4. inter se fidem et iusiur. dant:

formers' (lit. 'by means of information'). Moribus: A. 245; G. 407; H. 416 I N. 2. 8. ex: we should say 'in.' causam dicere: 'to plead so that they did not dare call him to account. ius suum: the right of common among the Romans? sacrifices. Die: A. 256; G. 392; H. 429. Is dies usually fem.? A. 73; G. 70; H. 123. 10. dictionis: 'for the pleading.' G. 357 R. 1; H. 393 N. 11. familiam: not 'family'; see voc. ad: adv. modifying decem; 'about.' What other adverb is thus used with numerals? H. 298, foot-n. 5. **9.** ut . . . cremaretur: in apposition with poenam. A. 329 z and 332 f; G. 559; H. 501 III. The Gauls punished traitors by burning at the stake. On certain occasions also they offered human see voc. 586; H. 521 II. 2. I. 2. **17**. ut: v the state to punish traitors. 15. conarctur, cogerent: A. 325; G. G. 545 3; H. 497 II. tos: does the derivation of this word indicate the kind of money most milia: A. 94 e; G. 308; H. 178; appositive of familiam. A. 292; G. 670; H. 549 2. Sc. eum, obj. of sequi. A. 146d; G. 199 R. 2; G. 551; H. 504, 3, 2). 7. Ea res: what fact? per indicium: = per indices, by in-I. 521 II. 2. **16.** neque: = et non. A. 156 a; G. 482; H. 554 **17.** ut: what does ut mean with the indic.? with the subj.? ,' i. e., 'to make his defence.' Damnatum:=si damnatus esset. sibi mortem consciverit: 'committed suicide.' 14. se eripuit: i. e., he overawed the judges 13. eodem: adv. diceret: A. 317; 12. obaera-

19. conantur: see N. to p. 48, 26, persuadet. ut ... exeant: explains id. A. 329 2; H. 363 5. 20. paratos: adj. oppida: 'walled towns'; while the vici were rows or groups of houses in the open country. ditionis, which = redeundi. spe: A. 255; G. 408; H. 431. eunda: A. 296; G. 428; H. 544 1. essent: A. 317; 21. numero: A. 253; G. 398; H. 424. ad: adv. reliqua, etc.: the buildings belonging to individuals not in the walled towns and villages. H. 497 II. 22. incendunt: 'set fire to'; comburunt: 'burn up.'
23. domum:
A. 258 b; G. 410; H. 380 II. 2. The idea of motion is suggested by re-V. 18. eius: = Orgetorigis. 296; G. 428; H. 544 I. essent: A. 317; G. 545 I; **25. mensum:** the more common form is *mensium*. A. 49: nihilo: A. 250; G. 400; H. 417 2.
, 26, persuadet. ut ... exeant: ex20. paratos: adj. oppida: 'walled 24. sub-

of Austria), 150 miles southwest of Vienna. oppugnarant: A. 128 a; of Noreia is occupied by the town of Neumarkt, in Carinthia (a district the Black Forest. See map. 27. usi: 'adopting' (lit. 'having used'). consilio: A. 249; G. 405; H. 421 I. oppidis: A. 255; G. 408; H. 431. army have? See p. 28. domo: A. 258 a; G. 411; H. 412 II. I. efferre: A. 331 a; G. 546 R.I.; H. 535 II. 26. Rauricis: A. 227; G. 345 2; H. 385 II. The Raurici were in the vicinity of modern Basle, ad se goes with receptos. G. 151 I; H. 235. receptos: agrees with Boios. alone, 8000 carts were required. What kind of supplies did the Roman H. p. 36, foot-note 3. cibaria: here used for frumentum. A vast amount of supplies would be needed to feed 368,000 people (the number of the Helvetii) for three months. It has been computed that for the provisions Tulingi about Schaffhausen, the Latobrigi on the upper Danube, in eis: Helvetiis. 28. Boios: see Vocab. Noreiam: the site **30.** socios: A. 184; G. 319; H. 363. sibi: after adsciscunt; A. 292 R.; G.667 R.I;

propterea quod: N. to 47, 6. pauci: force of per? A. 170 c; H. 170 1. possent: A. 319; G. 554; H. 500 11. nostram: N. to 48, 11. **36.** multo: see nihilo, l. 18. has the force of a rel. pron. altissimus: see N. to p. 48, 8. (nearly 18 English miles) below Geneva. See Plan I. This route is now traversed by the railway from Paris by way of Macon to Geneva. route over the Jura range. qua: A. 148 e; G. 107 I; H. 305 V. singuli: A. 95; G. 95; H. 172 3; 'one by one,' here = 'in single file.' The narrowest point of the defile is at Pas de l'Écluse, 19 Roman miles on the right bank of the Rhone. The Gauls seem to have known of no that) by them they [the Helvetii] could go in this use often called subj. of characteristic; 'routes (of such character word expressed in the Latin itineribus: not to be translated. A. 200 a; G. 617; H. 445 8. domo: as in 1. 25. 32. possent: potential subj., dered with the expletive 'there,' even though there is no corresponding VI. 31. Erant: 'There were.' Forms of esse should often be renducerentur: for mood see N. to passent above; the relative adv. qua unum (iter), and alterum (iter) are in partitive apposition with A. 184; G. 321; H. 364. 33. inter . . . Rhodanum: i. e., out.' A. 320; G. 633; H. 35. per-

situr:= transiri potest. below Geneva. Once having crossed the river, the Helvetii would find the route along the left bank through the Province easy enough. tranpresent the Rhone is said to be fordable only in two places, a few miles Province; they were subdued by C. Pomptinus B.C. 61. **2. locis:** A. 258 f; G. 385 R.; H. 425 II. 2. **vado**: A. 248; G. 403; H. 420. At Page 50. 1. Allobrogum: on the left bank of the Rhone, in the 3. finibus: A. 234 a; G. 356; H. 391 1.

governs Kulendas, diem quintum being parenthetical and attracted from the abl. by the proximity of ante; 'before (on the fifth day) the Kalends of April,' the fifth day before the Kalends of Apr.,' = March 28 of the b. Allobrogibus: A. 227; G. 345 R.2; H. 385 II. persuasuros: sc. esse; so with coacturos, below. A. 330 I; G. 200, 527; H. 534 N., 535 I. I. bono animo: 'kindly disposed'; in pred. with esse understood. calendar; authorities disagree. unreformed calendar, March 24 or April 16, according to the Julian 9. conveniant: A. 317; G. 632; H. 497 1.; qua = ut ed, 'that on that day.' a. d. v. Kal. Apr.: = ante diem quintum Kalendas Aprilis; ante 653; H. 498 II., 524. A. 251; G. 402; H. 419 II. **6. viderentur**: A. 336; G. 653; H. 524. vi: how declined? **7. suos**: refers to the Allobroges; **eos** = *Helice*is here indicated? See p. 45. Appendix; H. 642-644. paterentur: subj. for what two reasons? A. 331 a, 336; G. 546, 8. die: N. to p. 49, 9; N. to p. 49, 31 itineribus. ree. Aprilis is an adj. A. 376 a, 259 e; G. 10. consulibus: N. to p. 48, 2. What year

phatic position. G. 546; H. 498 I. rent: A. 317; G. 632; H. 497 I. sibi: A. 231; G. 349; H. 387. The rest of the sentence is indir. disc.; the principal verbs are esse, whose subject is facere: and rogare, whose subject is se understood. 20. in animo: 'the intention'; 'the Helvetii intended.' 21. nullum: emphatic position. 22. liceat: this would be subj. in dir. disc. A. 331 a; appositive of \$\frac{7}{2}l\$. A. \$25\; \text{ \cdots} \text{ \cdot VII. 11. Caesari: A. 225 e, 344 i; G. 344 and 675 I; H. 384 I., 561 I. nuntiatum esset: A. 325; G. 586; H. 521 II. 2. eos... conari: appositive of 7d. A. 329 I.; H. 539 II. 12. urbe: Rome, which by way of distinction was "the city." quam: N. to p. 48, 20. 13. Galsum, concedendum, and temperaturos. bat = meminerat.the journey from Rome to Geneva in eight days. Provinciae: A. 227; G. 345; H. 385 1. 15. imperat: 'levies.' 16. legio una: probably the tenth legion. Study p. 21. 17. certiores . . . sunt: see to took place B.C. 107. complete submission and humiliation. The terrible defeat here referred conquered soldiers were made to pass under it, one by one, as a token of were set up and a third placed across on top; this was the 'yoke,' and stract noun in cases like this is often put for the concrete. 184; G. 195 R.I., 319; H. 441, 363. legationis:= legatorum. The ab-IDIOMS, just before the vocabulary. Genavam: derived from Keltic gena, 'mouth,' because the lake there presses into the narrow river course. Plutarch states that Caesar made memoria: A. 248; G. 403; H. 420; memoria tene-23. occisum: supply esse, as also with pulsum, mis-See Mommsen's Hist. of Rome, vol. iii., p. 222; 24. sub iugum: two spears 18. nobilissimos: A. 188, 19. dice-

quid always mean 'anyone,' 'anything.' vellent: A. 336, 337; G. 653; H. 524. ad: 'about,' 'on.' Id. April: = Idus Aprilis, = Apr. 13, of the unreformed calendar. A. 376; G. Appendix; H. 641-643. 30. reverterentur: A. 339; G. 655; H. 523 III. In dir. disc. the sentence would read, Si quid voletis, ad Id. April. revertimini. esset. A. 292 R., 310; G. 594 2; H. 507 3 N. 7. 26. faciundi: = faciendi. A. 296; G. 428 and 151 5; H. 239 and 544 1. 27. spatium: (nom.) = lempus. 28. convenirent: A. 328; G. 574; H. 519 II. 2. 29. diem: 'time.' quid: indef. After si and ne, quis and Liddell's Hist. of Rome, ch. 55. concedendt of the Helvetii) ought not to be granted.' animo: A. 251; G. 402; H. 419 II. data fac concedendum: 'that it (the request data facultate: = si facultas data25. neque: = et non.

ginti. 35. pedum: A. 215 b; G. 364; H. 396 v. murum fossamque: we are not to suppose that Caesar built a wall and dug a trench from Geneva to Pas de l'Écluse; (see N. to p. 49, 33, and Plan I.) For teen. The work was probably completed in three or four days. needed to be fortified was hardly more than three miles out of the nine general effect of a wall and moat was produced, as shown by the "section" view in Plan I. At points specially exposed he erected redoubts for 16 feet, and throwing the dirt out towards the river; in this way the tler slopes difficult to scale by cutting the face sheer down from the top render fortifying unnecessary. What Caesar did was to make the gena large part of the distance the cliffs on the left bank are so steep as to suum: N. to p. 48, 16. decem novem: = decem et novem = undeviter of fact the Rhone flows into the lake at the upper end, and out at the than as agent. 34. Sequanorum: west of the Jura; see map. milia pas-31. legione, militibus: looked upon as instrument rather Recent surveys indicate that the whole distance which really A. 248; G. 403; H. 420. 32. qui - influit: as a mat-

G. 408; H. 431 z (2). We should expect with alii before vadis, 'some . . . others.' H. 414. tense (conarentur). A. 287 e; G. 511 R. 1; H. 495 II. = dicit non. more: A. 245; G. 407; H. 416. 5. i way.' vim facere: 'use force.' 6. conentur: A. 'against his will' (lit. 'he being unwilling'). A. 255 a; G. 408; H. 431 4. conarentur: A. 342; G. 631; H. 529 II. Notice that the hist. pres. communit is followed both by a primary tense (passit), and by a secondary 317 b; G. 545 2; H. 497 II. 2. the redoubts; the redoubts themselves were called castella. Page 51. 1. praesidia: 'garrisons,' referring to the forces occupying rim facere: 'use force.' 6. conentur: A. 336; G. 653; prohibiturum: = se prohibiturum esse. spe: A. 243; G. 388; 7. iunctis, etc.: 'by joining boats and rafts.' We should expect alii before navibus correlative 2. se invito: 'without his leave,' But the use of the latter alii 5. iter: 'right of 4. negat:

alone implies that most of the Helvetii tried to cross over in the way massing of the soldiers at any point attacked. conatu: A. 243; G. 388; nitione: 'by the strength of the works.' particle is commonly used with single indirect questions? operis muwhether they could.' first mentioned. 9. conati, si-possent: 'having tried (to see) A. 334 f; G. 462, 2; H. 529 II. I N.I. 10. concursu: the rapid

with the most horrible tortures. 22. dent. itinere: A. 243; G. 388; H. 414. ages were exchanged between states and tribes as a pledge of good faith trarent: A. 287 e; G. 511 R.I; H. 495 II.; 'they might gain their request.'

16. gratia: 'popularity.' A. 248; G. 403; H. 420. plurimum: N. to p. 49, 2.

17. Helvetiis: A. 234 e; G. 356; H. 391 I.

19. novis rebus: 'a revolution.' A. 227; G. 345; H. 385. quam: N. to p. 48, 20.

21. ut . . patiantur: object of impetrat; uti. . . dent is object of perficit. A. 331 e; G. 546; H. 498 I. and II. obsides: hostis object of perficit. A. 331 e; G. 546; H. 498 I. and II. obsides: hostis object of perficit. the Helvetii. sua sponte: 'by their own influence.' A. 248; G. 403; H. 420. 14. possent: A. 325; G. 586; H. 521 II. 2. 15. eo: N. to se, 1. 2, above; 'by his intercession' ('he being intercessor'). impewhere, as stated in Chapter 6, a few men could prevent the passage of If the agreement were violated, the hostages were usually put to death A. 317; G. 545; H. 497 II. 12. una via: 'only the way.' 22. Sequani, Helvetii: sc. obsides qua: A. 258 g; G. 403; H. 420, 23. prohibeant, transeant:

... haberat. A. 319, 332 a; G. 558 3; H. 501 I. I. 29. inimicos: A. 184; G. 319; H. 363. locis: A. 234 a; G. 356; H. 391 I. 30 munitioni: A. 228; G. 346; H. 386. 31. legatum: what were the officers of the Roman army? See p. 22. Titus Labienus was the ablest of sought. The subject is the following infin. Helvetiis, etc.: see N. to p. 50, men had been sent out by Caesar who now returned with the information far as the Rubicon; but Caesar here evidently includes Cisalpine Gaul side of Pompey. pp. 5, 6), however, he deserted his old commander and went over to the Caesar's lieutenants, and one of the most trusted. In the civil war (see verh of the indir disc is futurum (esse), whose subject is the clause ut iter . . . facere above. fieret: A. 336; G. 653; H. 524. The principal French province Saintonge and the town of Saintes. 26. quae: and this, referring to the state of the Tolosates. 27. Id: refers to 19-20. The Helvetii intended to settle over near the west coast of Gaul. Santonum: see map; the name still survives in the name of the 24. renuntiatur: 'word is brought back;' the re-implies that Italiam: Italia proper extended north only as

was hence strongly garrisoned. At one time it had 800,000 inhabitants. was the centre of the Roman military operations for the Northeast, and (founded B.C. 181) near the head of the Adriatic Sea, east of Venice. It which was really his destination. 33. Aquileiam: a Roman colony

overtake the Helvetii, who, with their vast throng of women and children and their loaded carts, had gone only about 100 miles, in the time that prov. = Galliae Cisalpinae.'most westerly.' 8. tra nere: N. to p. 51, 22. 4. Compluribus: order, his pulsis compluribus proeliis. ab: 'from.' 5. Citerioris: on the side nearer Rome; cit. and soldiers from the Province (p. 50, 14-16). xith and xiith, the three drawn from winter-quarters at Aquileia, the pine Gaul. The Segusiavi were clients of the Aedui, hence on good he had taken (doubtless 40-50 days) to bring the five legions from Cisal-Caesar's route lay by way of Turin and Mt. Génèvre. See map. Caesar's force now consisted of six legions (how many men? see p. 21) viith, viiith, and ixth. As the xth legion was already near Geneva, terms with the Romans. Page 52. 1. Rhone, and went outside the province in order to intercept or quinque: the two legions levied in Cisalpine Gaul were the ulteriorem Galliam := Galliam Transalpinam; 8. trans Rhodanum: Caesar crossed to the west extremum: sc. oppidum; 'last,' here = 2.  $Ibi:=in\ Alpibus$ ;

the devastation was still going on. sua: B. 236, 1; A. 188, 197, d; H. 449, 4. 12. possent: B. 286, 2; A. 326; H. 517. rogatum: B. 340, 1, a; A. 302; H. 546. 13. Ita se meritos esse: '(saying) that they had so deserved.' 14. nostri: with exercitus, = Romani. vas demonstrant := (eum) certiorem faciunt. 340, 1, a; A. 302; H. 546. 13. Ita se meritos esse: (saying) that they had so deserved. 14. nostri: with exercitus, = Romani. vastari: B. 270, 2; A. 288, a; H. 537, 1. 15. eorum: = sui. 17. depopulatis: passive. B. 112, b; A. 135, b; H. 231, 2. 19. trans Rhodanum: west of the Rhone. 20. fuga: B. 218; A. 248, c; H. 420. notice the change from the plup. traduxerant to the impf., implying that venirent: B. 293, III., 2; A. 328; H. 519, II., 2. tunis consumptis: render by a clause beginning with 'after.' to wait.' B. 189, 1; 337, 7, b, z; A. 232, 330, c; H. 388 and 301, 2. 180, f; H. 453. 397, I; 'that they had nothing left.' **9.** angustias: see p. 49, 32, and p. 51, 13. solum: noun. 22. exspectandum: [esse] sibi: 'that he ought not facium. 21. sibi: B. 190; A. 231; reliqui: B. 201, 2; A. 216, a, 1; H.

Quibus: 'These.' B. 251, 6; A. 11. populabantur: rogatum : B. 23. for-

(Saône) formed the boundary between the territories of the Aedui and the p. 49, 31; consult p. 39 and map. For a part of its course the Arar XII. 25. Flumen, etc.: 'There is a river (called) the Arar'; N. to 26. lenitate: B. 220, I; A. 248; H. 419, III.

they (went) into the woods and concealed themselves. 35. in silvas: the acc. with in implies the idea of motion in abdiderunt; meaning from concidit? mandarunt: A. 128 a; G. 151 1; H. 235. had already begun. See p. 33. A. 153; G. 393 R.; H. 429 1. 32. profectus: from proficiscor. 34. concidit: concidit; how different in 376. 30. citra: on the east side. 31. Ararim: A. 56 a 1; H. 62 III. 1. de: 'in' (lit. 'out of'); de with vigilia implies that the watch 28. iunctis: N. to p. 51, 7. Where the Helvetii crossed the Saône is not known; probably a few miles north of its junction with the Rhone. 334; G. 469; H. 529 I. copiarum: 'forces.' partes, flumen: A. 239 b; G. 330 R. I; H. possit: A. 319; G. 554; H. 500 II. 31. Ararim: A. 56 a 1; H. 62

to the readers of Shakspere's "Julius Caesar." terfecerant Lucium Pisonem legatum, avum Lucii Pisonis, eius (Caesar's) soceri. Lucius Calpurnius Piso, consul B.C. 58 (see p. 45), was the father of Caesar's second wife. Thence she took the name Calpurnia, familiar 8. quod, etc.: quod Tigurini, eodem proelio quo Cassium (interfecerant), in 3. memoria: A. 256; G. 392; H. 429. L. Cassium: see p. 50, 22-25 and N. 4. casu: A. 245; G. 407; H. 416. 5. quae pars, etc., = ea pars civitatis Helvetiae, quae. A. 200 b N.; G. 618; H. 445, 9. 6. princeps persolvit: 'was the first to pay.' A. 191; G. 324 R. 6; H. 443 N.I. used of the people inhabiting it. G. 392; H. 429. A. 258 a; G. 411; H. 412 II. I. exisset: A. 325; G. 586; H. 521 II. 2. ('canton'), which properly has reference to a division of territory, is here Page 53. 1. Tigurinus: A. 185; G. 324; H. 362. The word pages 2. divisa: N. to p. 47, I. 9. proelio: A. 256;

explained by nt flumen transirent. A. 329 2; H. 363, 5. 15. illum:

= Caesarem. intellegerent: A. 325; G. 586; H. 521 II. 2. 16. legationis: N. to p. 50, 18. 17. bello Cassiano: 'war with Cassius.'

A. 190; G. 360 R.I; H. 395 N.2. As the defeat of Cassius took place B.C. 107, at the time of which Caesar was writing (B.C. 58), Divico must have been very old man. 18. si, etc.: indir. disc. to the end of the Latin Book, p. 226. A general outline of each sentence is here given. chapter. The direct form is given in A. 339, and in Comstock's First A. 317; G. 545 1; H. 497 II. in: 'over.' faciendum: 'he has a bridge built.' A. 294 d; G. 431; H. 544 2 N.2. 14. id: object of fecisse; 11. Hoc proelio facto: = post hoc proelium. 12. posset:

part are ituros (esse), futuros (esse); the Principal Verb in the Imperative part is reminisceretur, 'let him remember' ('he should remember') the remainder is Imperative. The Principal Verbs in the Declaratory the remainder is Declaratory. ber '). - Quod to niterentur. This sentence is Imperative, to despiceret; Si to Helvetiorum. This sentence is Declaratory, as far as voluisset; The Principal Verbs in the Imperative

defeat to future generations). should take (should have taken) their stand to receive (lit, 'cause that it should receive') a name,' etc., 'or transmit the remembrance' (of the teret: 'let him not (= that he should not) cause the place where they tence is Imperative, the Principal Clause being ne (Caesar) commitin the Declaratory part is didicisse. - Quare to proderet. not') attribute (the victory), etc., 'or despise them'; the Principal Verb part are (ne) tribueret, despiceret, 'let him not' (= 'that he should

22. Quod: causal conj.; 'as to the fact that.' A. 333 a; G. 525; H. 516 II. 2 N. pagum: i. e., *Tigurinum*.

23. adortus esset, transissent: A. 336; G. 653; H. 524.

24. possent: subj. for what two reasons? ne: A. 269 a; G. 266; H. 483, 3. rem: refers to the clause quod ... adortus esset. virtuti: A. 225; G. 344; H. 384 II. 'rely on ambuscades.' A. 248, 254 b; G. 403 R.3; H. 420 and 425 r. 1) N. committeret: 'give occasion.' A. 339; G. 655; H. 523 III.

28. constitissent: in dir. disc. fut. pf., 'where we shall have taken our stand.'

29. caperet, proderet: what mode in direct disc.? A. 332 e; contenderent: A. 319; G. 554; H. 500 II. rely on ambuscades. A. 248, 254 b; ( Supply aliquid as object of tribueret. 25. tribueret: A. 339; G. 655; H. 523 III. How would ne tribueret, despiceret, be expressed in direct disc.? ipsos: = Heivetios. se ita, etc.: in dir. disc.. (nas) in a saturitum. sceretur: = reminiscere (imper.) in direct disc. A. 339; G. 655; H. 523 III. incommodi: refers to the defeat of Cassius. A. 219; G. 375; H. 406 II. G. 554; H. 501 II. I. damus, aut insidiis nitamur. maioribusque nostris didicim us, ut magis virtute quam dolo conten-330 I, 337; G. 527, 659; H. 535 I., 527 I. ubi:=in qua.
A. 248; G. 403; H. 420. perseveraret: sc. Caesar. constituisset, voluisset: indic. fut. perf., in direct disc. 19. ituros [esse] and futuros [esse] represent the indic. fut. of the direct form. A. faceret, constituisset, voluisset: A. 336, 337; G. 653; H. 524 26. didicisse := institutos esse. 27. insidiis niterentur: 21. remini-20. bello:

493; H. 420. merito: A. 248 R.; G. 401; H. 419 III. N.2. eo—quo: A. 250 R.; G. 400; H. 417 2. 33. qui: = populus Romanus, 'it.' iniuriae: A. 218 a; G. 373; H. 399 I. 2. 34. fuisse: fuit in H. 416; indir. disc. from Eo to p. 54, 15; a part of the passage in both direct and indirect forms is given in G. 664 2 and H. 531. dubitationis: A. 216 a 2; G. 370; H. 397 3. 31. dari: A. 336; G. 653: H. 523 1. 32. memoria teneret: 'he remembered.' A. 248; G. dir. disc.; 'it was not'; the subject is cavere. eo: A. 245; G. 407; missum : sc. aliquid esse. XIV. deceptum: i. e., populum Romanum deceptum esse. 30. His: sc. legatis. Eo: 'for this reason.' A. 245; G. 407; timeret: subj. also in dir. disc., characteris 35. comtic result; for quare here = propter quod. B. 283; A. 320, a; H. 503, I. 36. timendum: sc. esse; impers. B. 138, IV.; A. 330, c; H. 301, 2. quod: 'now'; properly an adverbial acc. referring to the thought of the preceding sentence (lit. 'as to which'). B. 185, 2; A. 240, a; H. 378, 2 and 453, 6. contumeliae: B. 206, 2; A. 219; H. 406, II.

Page 54. 1. num: what sort of an answer does num expect? B. 162, 2, b; A. 210, c; H. 351, 1, N. 3. iniuriarum: depends on memoriam. The 'wrongs' are specified in the following clauses introduced by quod, 'that.' B. 299, I, a; 169; A. 329, 3 and 184; H. 540, IV. and 363, 5. **2**. eo: = Caesare. B. 227, I; A. 255, a; H. 431, 4. temptassent: B. 116, 1; 314, 1; A. 128, a; 336; H. 235, 524. 3. Allobrogas: Greek acc. of a Keltic word. B. 47, 3; A. 63, f; H. 68. 4. posse: in dir. disc. possim. Quod: 'the fact that'; the two clauses introduced by quod stand as subject of pertinere. B. 299, 2; A. 333, a; H. 516, II., 2, N. sua: 'their,' of the Helvetii. victoria: referring to the defeat of the Romans under Cassius, B.C. 107. 6. eodem pertinere: 'pointed to the same thing,' i. e., impending destruction of the Helvetii. Consuesse: is this perfect in meaning? B. 116, 1; 262, A; A. 143, c, N.; 128, a; H. 235 and 7. quo: B. 282, I, a; A. 317, b; H. 497, II., 2. 9. Cum: temporal, causal, or concessive? B. 286, 2; A. 326; H. 515, III. ea: object of facturos [esse], with which supply eos. 11. Aeduis: sc. satisfaciant. B. 187, II., a; A. 227, e, 2; H. 384, II., 4, N. I. 13. sese, etc.: in dir. disc., vobiscum pacem faciam (indic.). 15. consuerint: B. 284, I; A. 319; H. 500, II.

XV. 17. movent: sc. Helvetii. Idem: neut. acc. 19. coactum habebat: B. 337, 6; A. 292, c; H. 388, I, N. 20. videant: pl. from the idea of equites in equitatum. B. 282, 2; A. 317; H. 497, I. 21. faciant: B. 300, 1; A. 334; H. 529, I.; quas is interrogative. Qui: how trans.? B. 251, 6; A. 180, f; H. 453. cupidius: 'too eagerly.' B. 240, 1; A. 93, a; H. 444, I. novissimum agmen: the 'rear' of the line of march of the Helvetii. alieno loco: 'in an unfavorable place.' B. 228, 1, b; A. **23.** de nostris : = nostrorum. B. 201, 1, a; A. 258, f; H. 425, II., 2. 216, c; H. 397, 3, N. 3. **24**. equitibus: looked upon as instrument rather than as agent. B. 218, 10; A. 248, c; H. 420. 25. novissimo agmine: 'rear' of the Helvetian line of march. Study pp. 29-31. B. 228, I, b; A. 258, f; H. 425, II., 2. **26**. proelio: B. 220; A. 248; H. 420. nostros: sc. milites. 27. in praesentia: = in praesenti tempore, 'for the moment.' rapinis: B. 214, 2; A. 243; H. 414, I. 28. prohibere: object of habebat, with satis as predicate acc. B. 177, 2; 328, 1; A. 239, a; 271; H. 373, 533. Ita: correlative with uti. dies: B. 181, 1; A. 256; H. 379. circiter: adv. modifying quindecim. 30. primum [agmen]: 'van'; see p. 29. quinis, senis: distributive, i. e., 'five or six miles (each day).' B. 78, 1., c; 81, 4, a; A. 95; H. 172, 3. milibus: B. 217; A. 247; H. 417; N. to p. 48, 16.

**XVI.** 32. Aeduos frumentum: B. 178, 1, a; A. 230, c; H. 374. 33. publice: 'in the name of the state.' essent polliciti: Caesar the writer presents the statement of Caesar the commander as if it were the thought of some one else, or a clause in indir. disc.; 'which (he said) they had promised.' B. 323; A. 341, d, R.; H. 528, I. flagitare: B. 335; A. 275; H. 536, I. Notice the frequentative (or iterative) force, 'kept asking, 'asked again and again.' B. 155, 2; A. 167, b; H. 336. frigora: 'cold seasons.' What difference in meaning between sing. and pl. of such words? B. 55, 4, c; A. 75, c; H. 130, 2. 34. posita: B. 337, 2; A. 291, b; H. 550, N. 2. 35. frumenta: standing grain. Why pl.? ne pabuli, etc.: the season must have been very backward, for it was now the middle of June or later. Caesar, too, was writing with the early spring of Italy in mind. ne quidem: 'not even.' B. 347, 1; A. 151, e; H. 569, III., 2. 36. frumento: B. 218, 1; A. 249; H. 421, 1.

Page 55. 1. flumine: B. 218; A. 258, g; H. 420. rant: the Helvetii had turned to the northwest, into the valley of the Loire (Liger), avoiding the mountains in the region of the Aulerci Brannovices. See map. 3. Diem ex die ducere: = ducere ('were putting off') Caesarem ex die in diem ('from day to day'); ducere is hist. inf., diem acc. of time. conferri, etc.: climax; conferri refers to the collecting, comportari to the transportation to Caesar's headquarters, adesse to the immediate delivery. 5. die: not to be translated. B. 251, 3; A. 200, a; H. 445, 8. metiri: B. 330; A. 270; H. 538. How often was the grain measured out to the army? See p. 28. oporteret: B. 314; A. 336; H. 524. 7. Divitiaco, Lisco: sc. convocatis; abl. magistratui: B. 187, III.; A. 228; H. 386. 8. vergobretum: a Keltic word meaning 'giver of judgment.' B. 177, 1; A. 239, a; H. annuus: B. 239; A. 191; H. 443. 9. in suos: 'over his peo-373.  $eos := Divitiacum \ et \ Liscum.$  10. posset : sc. frumentum. ple.' B. 323; 324, 1; A. 341, 342; H. 528, 1 and 529, 11. tam necessario tempore: 'at so urgent a crisis.' 11. hostibus: B. 227, I; A. 255, a; H. 431, 4. sublevetur: see N. to p. 54, 32, essent polliciti; also B. 268, 3; A. 287, e; H. 495, II. 12. magna ex parte: 'in great measure.' 13. multo: B. 223; A. 250; H. 417, 2. sit: N. to p 54, 32.

XVII. 16. quod: sc. id, object of proponit. Esse, etc.: indir. disc. to the end of the chapter. 17. plurimum valeat: 'has the greatest influence'; see N. to p. 49, 2. plus possint: 'have more power.' The state of things here depicted arose from the feudal organi-

zation of society, which rendered it possible for the great land-holders and chiefs to control vast multitudes of personal adherents. Cf. p. 40. 19. ne . . . conferant: pl. from the plural idea in multitudinem, from which the subject is to be supplied; 'from furnishing.' B. 294; 295, 3; A. 20. si . . . sint erepturi : parenthetical, giving 331, e, 2; H. 498, II. the arguments used by the demagogues to stir up the people. adv. reliqua: B. 241, 1; A. 193; H. 440, 2, N. 1. Aeduis: B. 188, 2, d; A. 229; H. 386, 2 and 385, 11., 2. sint erepturi: more emphatic than eripiant, which might have been used. B. 284, 3; A. 319, d; H. 501, II., 2. Why must the fut. subj. be expressed by a periphrastic form? See 24. quaeque . . . gerantur: 'and whatever is done.' (lit. 'and what things are done'). **25**. se : = Lisco. Quin etiam: 'moreover.' **26**. quod: 'in that.' Β. 299, Ι; 314, Ι; Α. 333, α; H. 516, II., 2, N. 27. id: refers to the clause, Quod . . . enuntiarit. **28.** tacuisse: trans. as plup. indic. B. 270, 1, b; A. 288; H. 537.

**XVIII**. **30**. pluribus: B. 227; A. 255, a; H. 431, 4. 31. iactari: dimittit, retinet: what is the omission of a conj. (a usage common in Caesar) called? B. 341, 4, a; A. 208, b; H. 636, I., I. **34**. esse : sc. haec. vera : case ? B. 233, 2; A. 186, b; solo : sc. eo. H. 536, 2, 2). Ipsum: in pred.; 'that Dumnorix was the very man'; indir. disc. to p. 56, 16, reperiebat. 35. magna gratia: B. 224, 1; A. 251; H. 419, II. 36. Compluris: acc. pl. annos: B. 181, 1; A. 256; H. 379. 1. vectigalia: from veho, vectus, meaning what is brought in to the public treasury; revenues in general, taxes on grain and other products of the soil, stock, etc. The portoria were customs duties collected on imports and exports, levies on goods passing through the country on rivers and roads, bridge tolls, and the like. These revenues were "farmed out," as among the Romans, - that is, the privilege of collecting them was sold at auction to the highest bidder, who guaranteed to the State a certain sum, did the collecting through his agents, and kept for himself all that he could get over and above the amount paid in to the public treasury. redempta habere : = redemisse. B. 337, 6; A. 292, c; H. 388, I, N. 2. illo licente: Dumnorix was so powerful and arbitrary that when he bid for the collecting of the revenues no one dared oppose him; hence he was awarded the privilege on the 3. auxisse: why not crevisse? largiendum: most favorable terms. B. 338, 3; A. 300; H. 542, III., N. 2. 4. comparasse: sc. eum. B. 116, 1; A. 128, a; H. 235. 5. neque: = et non. B. 341, 1; A. 156, a; H. 554, I., 2. domi: B. 232, 2; A. 258, d; H. 426, 2. 6. largiter: what peculiarity in the formation of this adverb? largiter posse: = largiter potentem esse. 7. causa: 'for the sake of.' B. 219; A. 245, c; H. 416. 8. ipsum: Dumnorix, whose wife was the daughter of Orgetorix; see

Chap. 3. 9. sororem ex matre: sc. partam; 'half-sister on the mother's side.' nuptum: B. 340, I, b; A. 302; H. 546, I. nuptum collocasse: 'had given in marriage.'

10. cupere Helvetiis: 'was well-disposed toward the Helvetii.' B. 187, II., a; A. 227; H. 385, I. 11. suo nomine: 'on his own account.' B. 219; A. 245; H. 416. 12. deminuta: sc. sit. Divitiacus: was a Druid of high rank, and a man of some culture; he had spent some time at Rome, B. c. 63, endeavoring to get the help of the Romans against Ariovistus. 13. quid: N. to p. 50, 29. 14. accidat: here used of something unfavorable, disastrous. per: 'with the help of.' A. 246, b; H. 415, I., N. I. 15. imperio: 'under the sovereignty.' B. 219; A. 245; H. 416; or B. 230; A. 256; H. 429; 'while the Roman people were in power.' 17. quod, etc.: 'in regard to the unsuccessful cavalry skirmish which had taken place'; proelium is attracted into the relative clause, while its proper place in the antecedent clause is taken by fugae. 19. auxilio Caesari: B. 191, 2, b; A. 233, a; H. 390, II.

XIX. 22. Quibus, etc.: 'after these things had been found out.' suspiciones: 'grounds of suspicion.' 23. accederent: = adderentur, 'were added.' B. 288, I, B; A. 325; H. 521, II., 2. quod: 'that,' 'the fact that.' 24. traduxisset: B. 323; A. 341, d; H. 516, 11., and 528, 1. curasset, etc.: 'had procured an exchange of hostages.' 25. iniussu: 'without his own (Caesar's) bidding and that of the state' of the Aedui. **26**. ipsis: = Caesare et Aeduis. magistratu: the Vergobret, Liscus; 27. causae: dep. on satis, which is used as a noun. see Chap. 16. B. 201, 2; A. 216, a, 4; H. 397, 4. 28. animadverteret: subj. for two reasons (quare = propter quod). B. 314 or 283, 1; A. 320, a; 336; H. 524, 503, I. 29. rebus: B. 187, II., a; A. 227; H. 385, I. unum: nom., 'one consideration.' 31. cognoverat: 'he was familiar with.' B. 262, A; A. 279, d, R.; H. 297, I., 2. Notice the omission of the conjunctions in this line. Cf. N. to p. 47, 3, lingua, etc. 32. ne: 'that.' B. 296, 2; A. 331, f; H. 498, III., N. eius := Dumnorigis. 33. prius, quam: trans. as one word, 'before.' conaretur: B. 291, 292, I, a; A. 327; H. 520, II. 34. cotidianis: 'ordinary.' 35. Galliae: noun or adj.? Page 57. 1. cui: 'in whom.' omnium rerum: 'in every reeo := Divitiaco.3. sint dicta: B. 323; A. 340; H. 528, I. 4. eo: = Dumnorige. apud se: 'in his (Caesar's) presence.' dep. on animi; 'without wounding his (Divitiacus's) feelings.' causa cognita: abl. abs.; 'after trying the case.' Caesar.

**XX.** 8. gravius: 'too severe.' B. 240, 1; A. 93, a; H. 444, I. Scire, etc.: sc. dixit; indir. disc. to 1. 18. 9. nec quemquam: 'and no one.' ex eo: 'from that fact,' 'on account of that fact.' plus doloris: B. 201, 1;

A. 216, a, 2; H. 397, 3. 10. ipse: i.e. Divitiacus. gratia: B. 219; A. 245; H. 416. plurimum: sc. posset; see N. to p. 49, 2. domi:= 11. ille: Dumnorix. 12. crevisset: with propterea in Aeduis. quod; sc. opibus ac nervis. Dumnorix had become powerful through the influence and with the help of Divitiacus. opibus: refers to resources, means, while nervis means strength, power. B. 218, 1; A. 249; H. 421, 1. 13. uteretur: sc. propterea quod. B. 314, I; A. 336; H. 524. 14. fraterno: = fratris. B. 353, 5, b; A. 190; H. 395, N. 2. 15. Quod: N. ei := Dumnorigi.a Caesare: 'at the hands of to p. 53, 36. **16**. cum: 'while.' Caesar.' apud eum: = apud Caesarem. 17. non factum [esse]: 'that it was not done,' object of existimaturum futurum [esse]: 'it would come about.' 19. peteret : B. 288, I, B; A. 325; H. 521, II., 2. **20**. faciat: B. 295, 8; A. 331, f, R.; tanti, etc.: 'that his (Caesar's, apud se) regard for him H. 499, 2. (eius, = Divitiaci) is so great (lit. of so great account).' B. 203, 3; A. 215, c, 252 a; H. 404, 405. **22.** voluntati: 'in answer to his wish.' tellegat: B. 323; A. 340; H. 528, 1; or, B. 300, 1; A. 334; H. 529, I. **25**. praeterita: = res praeteritas, 'by-gones.' See N. to p. 54, 33. 27. agat, loquatur: B. 300, 1, 4, 324, 2; A. 334, 342; H. 529, I., 529, II.

XXI. 28. hostes, etc.: the Helvetii were now in the valley of the Liger, some distance south of Bibracte; see N. to p. 55, 2, and map. **30**. esset: B. 300, I; A. 334; H. 529, I. in circuitu ascensus: 'the ascent in case one should go around '(lit. 'in the going around'), i. e., in case one should try it from the other side. Caesar planned a flank movement, by which he intended secretly to get on the other side of the height, and occupy the summit above the heads of the enemy, - a very advantageous position. 31. cognoscerent: B. 282, 2; A. 317; H. 497, 1. misit: sc. exploratores, 'scouts.' esse: sc. ascensum. 32. De tertia vigilia: N. to p. 52, 31. pro praetore: when a lieutenant was given a special responsibility, to act outside the presence of the commander, he was called legatus pro praetore, 'lieutenant in place of the general,' and for the time being had the authority and insignia of the commander. On the *legatus* see p. 22. 33. ducibus: appositive, ' with those men as guides,' referring to the scouts previously sent out. **34**. consilii: B. 201, 1; A. 216, a, 1; H. 397, 3. **35**. itinere : B. 218, 9; A. 258, g; H. 420, I, 3). quo: 'as.'

Page 58. 2. rei: B. 204, I; A. 218, a; H. 399, I., 2. peritissimus: pred. adj. 3. M. Crassi: sc. exercitu.

**XXII.** 5. Prima: B. 241, 1; A. 193; H. 440, 2, N. 1. As it was now midsummer, daybreak was not far from four o'clock. summus mons: 'the top of the height.'

6. passibus: B. 217, 3; A. 247; H. 417

8. cognitus esset: B. 288, I, B; A. 325, 323; H. 521, II., 2. equo admisso: abl. abs., 'with his horse at full speed.'

10. voluerit: B. 314, I; A. 336; H. 524.

13. committeret: B. 295, I; A. 331, h; H. 498, I.

14. visae essent: B. 324, I; A. 342; H. 529, II.

15. fieret: subj. of purpose. proelio: B. 214, 2; A. 243; H. 414, I.

16. multo die: 'later in the day'; abl. of time.

18. perterritum: participle; force of per? pro viso: used as a noun, = 'as (something) seen.' Considius in the dim light had mistaken the detachment of Labienus on the height for a Gallic force.

19. renuntiasse: sc. id. intervallo: five or six miles, as we learn from p. 54, 30. B. 251, 4; A. 200, h; H. 445, 9.

20. milia: B. 181, I; A. 257; H. 379.

**XXIII.** 21. diei : B. 201, 3,  $\alpha$ ; A. 214, g; H. 398, 5. 22. cum: 'before,' 'within which.' oporteret: B. 288, I, B; A. 323, 325; H. Bibracte: B. 39, 2; A. 57, d; H. 63, 2, (1). **24**. milibus passuum xviii: = 16½ English miles; N. to p. 48, 16. Caesar was south of Bibracte. See map. rei: B. 187, III.; A. 228; H. 386. prospiciendum: sc. esse; impers. 25. Bibracte: B. 182, 1, a; A. 26. fugitivos: 'runaway slaves'; deserters from 258, b; H. 380, II. the ranks were called transfügae. decurionis: what was his position? See pp. 22, 23. 28. existimarent: B. 323; A. 341, d; H. 516, II. eo: B. 223; A. 250, R.; H. 423. 30. eo: 'on this account.' B. 219; re: B. 214, 2; A. 243; H. 414, I. A. 245; H. 416. 31. itinere converso: abl. abs., 'having reversed the line Romanos. of march.' 32. novissimo agmine: see pp. 29, 30.

**XXIV.** 33. animum advertit: = animadvertit; animum is object of vertit; id is governed by ad. B. 179, 2; A. 239, b; H. 376. 34. sustineret: B. 282, 2; A. 317; 497, I. The battle was fought some miles south of Bibracte; see the mark of the crossed swords on the map.

Page 59. 1. in colle medio: 'half-way up the hill.' See Plan II. triplicem aciem: see pp. 33, 34. The four legions were placed in a line. 3. supra se: this implies that Caesar was with the four legions, at the front. summo: B. 241, 1; A. 193; H. 440, 2, N. 1 and 2. quas, etc.: see Chap. 10. 4. auxilia: soldiers that were not Romans, — light-armed troops and cavalry. See pp. 21, 22. 5. sarcinas: how different from impedimenta? See p. 23. 6. superiore acie: 'the upper line,' the two legions posted on the top of the hill. 7. carris: N. to p. 48, 20. 9. acie: B. 220, 1; A. 248, R.; H. 419, III. phalange: a term taken from Greek tactics, meaning 'a compact mass.' The Gauls in the front line of a phalanx often chained themselves together and interlocked their shields, so as to present a firm barrier to the enemy.

XXV. 11. suo: sc. equo remoto. omnium equis: i. e., of Caesar's staff and the mounted officers, not of the cavalry. Plutarch says that Caesar, in sending his horse away, gave orders that it should be brought back after the battle, in order to pursue the enemy. see p. 23. What other weapons did the Roman soldier use? Ea: render the first abl. abs. by a temporal clause, the second by a participle with 15. Gallis impedimento: B. 191, 2, a; A. 233, a; H. 390, 1. 17. scutis, etc.: as the strong bayonet-like point of the pike was over a foot long, by the force of the hurling it could well penetrate two or more shields, which in so dense a throng overlapped one another. flexisset: B. 286, 2; A. 326; H. 517. sinistra: the shield was cariactato: 'exerted' in ried on the left arm. **19**. ut: 'so that.' trying to pull the bent point of the pike from the shields. 20. nudo: 'unprotected' by a shield. 21. pedem referre: see IDIOMS. mons: the height spoken of, p. 57, 29. 22. mille: here a noun. B. 181, 1, 23. Capto: abl. 80, 5; A. 94, e, N., 257; H. 178, 379. eo: adverb. abs.; 'after having reached,' referring to the Helvetii. 24. milibus: B. 220, I; A. 248; H. 420. agmen claudebant: 'were bringing up 25. novissimis (= novissimo agmini) praesidio: B. 191, ex itinere: 'leaving their (the Boii and Tu-2, a; A. 233; H. 390, 1. latere aperto: which was the 'unprotected lingi) line of march.' flank' of his army Caesar does not say; it was probably the right flank. See Plan II. 26. circumvenire : sc. coeperunt. 28. conversa: B. 337, 2; A. 292, R.; H. 549, 5; 'changed their front and advanced in two divisions'; facing probably in two different directions, - one division facing straight ahead (prima et secunda acies), the other forming an angle with this (tertia acies). See Plan II. 29. victis ac summotis: = Helvetiis. **30.** venientes: = Boios ac Tulingos; these had been in the rear of the Helvetian host, came up too late to join in the main engagement, and so attacked on one side the Roman column that was just driving the Helvetii up the height. Their line of march is indicated on the plan by a dotted line; the second position of the Helvetii, by parallel dotted black lines; the second position of the Romans, by dotted red lines.

**XXVI.** 31. ancipiti: 'twofold,' because the Romans were fighting on two fronts. pugnatum est: 'fighting went on' (lit. 'it was fought'). B. 138, IV.; A. 146, c; H. 301, I. 32. possent: sc. Helvetii, Boii et Tulingi. 34. proelio: B. 231, I; A. 256, b; H. 379, I. 35. cum: 'although.' B. 309, 3; A. 326; H. 515, III. hora septima: one o'clock. The day, from sunrise to sunset, was divided by the Romans into twelve hours of equal length. aversum hostem: 'the back of a foe.' Caesar states this with evident admiration of the bravery of the enemy. 36. Ad multam noctem: 'to a late hour of the night'; see p. 58, 16, multo die.

Page 60. 2. loco superiore: the top of the rampart made by the vehicles. Even this elevation would be of great advantage in throwing their darts and missiles. 3. mataras : Gallic spears ; tragulae were light darts thrown by means of a leather thong. 4. subiciebant: some sheltered themselves behind the wagons, casting their missiles from underneath and between the thick, solid wheels. 5. impedimentis, castris: B. 218, I; A. 249; H 421, I. Here were the women and children, a large number of whom were doubtless immediately slaughtered. 6. captus est: agrees with the nearer subject. Notice the force of atque; the capture of a son was regarded as more important than that of a daughter. B. 341, 1, a, b, c; A. 156, a; H. 554, I., 2. 7. nocte : B. 231, 1; A. 256, b; H. 379, 1. **8.** partem: B. 181, 1; A. 256; H. 379. 9. fines Lingonum: 60 or 70 miles from the battlefield, almost directly See map. 10. triduum : = tres dies (acc.). The fact that the Romans delayed so long before following up the victory shows that it must have cost them dearly. **11.** potuissent: B. 286, 2; A. 326, Lingonas: Greek form. B. 47, 3; A. 63, f; H. 68. varent: B. 316; A. 339; H. 523, III. 13. iuvissent: fut. pf. in dir. disc. B. 319, B, a; A. 337; H. 527, I. se, etc.: se habiturum esse eos (= Lingonas) eodem loco, quo Helvetios haberet. loco: 'position'; B. 228, 1, b; A. 258, f; H. 425, 11., 2).

**XXVII**. **16**. **Qui**: B. 251, 6; A. 180, f; H. 453. convenissent: here transitive. **18.** eos := Helvetios, not legatos. essent: B. 324, I; A. 342; H. 529, II. **20.** perfugissent: B. 323; A. 341, d; H. 528, I. **21.** ea: neut. pl. (B. 235, B, 2,  $\beta$ ; A. 195, 187, b; H. 439, 2, N.) = obsides, arma, (fugitivi) servi, spoils of war. nocte: the collection of hostages, etc., was not completed in one day. 22. circiter: adv. with sex (VI.). Verbigenus: at home this canton dwelt east of the pagus Tigurinus; see map. 23. perterriti: with milia. B. 235, B, 2, c; A. 187, d; H. 438, 6. ne: 'that.' B. 296, 2; A. 331, f; H. 498, 111., N. I. How is "that not" expressed with words implying fear? 26. existimarent: B. 323; A. 341, d; H. 516, II. prima: B. 241, 1; A. 193; H. 440, 2, N. I.

**XXVIII. 28**. Quod: B. 251, 6; A. 180, f; H. 453. **ubi**: of place or time? quorum: precedes its antecedent, his. 29. conquirerent: B. 295, 1; A. 331; H. 498, I. sibi: 'in his sight.' B. 188, I, N.; A. 235; H. 384, 4, N. 3. purgati: pf. part. used as adj., 'cleared,' 'blameless.' B. 328, 2; A. 272, b; H. 537, 2, and 536, 2, 1). 30. in . . . habuit: a polite way of saying that they were all massacred. 32. unde: = e quibus. **34**. domi: B. 232, 2; A. 258, d; H. 426, 2. tolerarent: B. 283, 2; A. 320, a; H. 503, I. 218; A. 248, c; H. 420. ipsos: = Helvetios, Tulingos, Latobrigos. 35. facerent: 'furnish.' oppida, etc.: see Chap. 5.

after the great Gallic rebellion under Vercingetorix, narrated in Bk. VII their struggles with the Sequani, desired an accession of strength carent, quod (Boii) egregia virtute (A. 251; G. 402; H. 419 II.) cognitierant (Caesar id = this request) concessit. The Aedui, hard pressed in rate the population of that whole region now is of Germanic origin. number, much of their land must have been left unoccupied after their return, and was probably soon seized upon by German tribes. At any atque: 'as.' **7.** quibus, quos: = ex, eex. A. 180 f; G. 612 R. 1; H. 453. 6. Boios, etc.: Aeduis petentibus (abl. abs.), ut Boios in finibus suis collo-Page 61. 2. unde: = ex quo. 5. transirent: A. 317; G. 545, 3; H. 497 II. As the Helvetii were reduced to one third of their former A. 156 a; G. 646; H. 554 I. 2 N.

qui: interrogative. A. 104 a; G. 104; H. 188 II. I. domo: A. 258 a; G. 411; H. 412 II. I. exisset: A. 334; G. 469; H. 529 I. 13. possent: A. 320 a; G. 633, 634; H. 503 I. 14. rerum: 'items'; here used of persons; Caesar had in mind the numbers rather than the personality. 48. The 'lists' were probably written in wax on thin small boards, the Greek alphabet was by no means widely diffused; see Bk. V., Chap. Gauls learned from Greek traders (N. to p. 47, 8), but a knowledge of for the hair, bracelets, knives, and many other things buried with the many graves, in which were found the remains of skeletons, ornaments field of the great battle near Bibracte (Autun) have brought to light perished in the brief campaign from March to July. Excavations on the 18. fuerunt: A. 204 b; G. 202 exc. 3; H. 462. milia: nom, in pred.; ad is an adv. Of the 368,000 that started to emigrate, fully 226,000 all these numbers in the Latin. 'souls' of human beings. capitum Helvetiorum: = Helvetiorum. We say 'head' of stock, but **11.** tabulis: A. 200 a; G. 617; H. 445, 8. fastened at the back by a hinge, so as to open like the leaves of a book. 10. tabulae: 'lists.' **15.** cclxiii: = ducenta sexaginta tria; read 17. ad: adv., with nonaginta duo. litteris: 'characters.' These the 12. ratio: 'statement.'

## THE WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS. XXX-LIV.

**EXEX.** 21. Galliae: probably here the land of the *Galli* alone is referred to. 22. gratulatum: A. 302; G. 436; H. 546. 23. Intellegere, etc.: sc. *dixerunt.* A. 336; G. 653-655; H. 523, 524. iniuriis: with two genitives. A. 217 b; G. 361 R. 2; H. 398 2; 'inflicted upon the Roman people by the Helvetii.' Notice here the difference in meaning between the subjective genitive, denoting the agent of an action, which the action or feeling is directed. and the objective genitive, denoting the object (person or thing) toward A. 214, 217; G. 361; H. 396 II

524. See Idioms, p. 389. esset: plup. subj. for fut. perfect ind. of dir. disc. A. 336; G. 653; H. ence between concilium and consilium? the council. A. 331 a; G. 546; H. 498 I. nisi, etc.: i.e, nisi ut ii enuntiarent, quibus, 'except those to whom,' etc. H. 507, 3 N. 3. Differenuntiaret: 'should make an announcement' of what might be done in too independently. 33. habere: A. 330 e; G. 652 R. 2; H. 523 I. N. 35. ne quis. N. to p. 56, 29, quid; 'that not any one,' = 'that no one.' Caesar's consent in order not to appear to him to be acting disloyally or H. 384 II. I 3). copia: sc. locorum. 30. stipendiarias: predicative. A. 186 b; G. 334 R.; H. 373, I N. 2. 31. Petierunt, uti sibi liceret: 'they asked permission.' 32. id . . . liceret: they wished N.; G. 408; H. 431, 4 and 2 (3). 27. inferrent: A. 329, 2; H. 363, 5. 28. imperio: A. 249; G. 405; H. 421 1. domicilio: A. 233; G. 344: tissimis rebus: 'although their circumstances were,' etc. A. 255 a and which is in apposition with it. A 248 R.; G. 401; H. 419 III. florenconsilio: 'with this design'; explained by the compound uti-clause, advantage'; 'advantageous.' 24. rem: refers to the preceding clause. accidisse: dep. on Intellegere. See vocab. 36. mandatum 25. ex usu: 'of

ent in meaning and use from postea? of Ariovistus. At this time the Sequani were tributary to the Arverni mercede: A. 252; G. 404; H. 422. arcesserentur: A. 332 e, 336; tacked the Aedui, and proving unequal to the contest, called in the aid sive tolls upon the dried bacon, the principal export of the Sequani, which was shipped down the river. The Sequani in consequence attrolled the country along the lower part of the Saône, and levied exces-653-655; H. the moods and tenses. the condition is represented by *centures* (esse). 8. N. to p. 56, 12; indir. disc. to the end of the chapter. G. 653; H. 524. 7. enuntiatum esset: impers.; 'if disclosure should have been made.' A. 337; G. 659; H. 527 I.; the conclusion of the condition is represented by venturos (esse). 8. Divitiacus: see H. 384 II. 4 N. 2. 5. id: explained by the enuntiarentur. se contendere: sc. dixerunt. 199 R. 2; H. 538, I (2). Caesari: = Caesaris. A. 235 a; G. 343 R. 2 H. 384 II. 4 N. 2. 5. id: explained by the appositive clause ne. depended on absolute secrecy in the matter. eum. petierunt, etc.: N. to p. 61, 31. 3. secreto: all others, 'by themselves'; in acculto, 'in a secluded place.' G. 557, 653; H. 498 II. N. 2 and 524. 3-655; H. 523. 524. Arvernis Sequanisque: the original cause contention lay between the Sequani and the Aedui. The latter contenses. 9. factiones: 'parties.' 10. principatum: 12. factum esse: 'it had come to pass.' A. 336; G. XXXI L idem: nom. arcesserentur: A. 332 e, 336; 14. posteaquam: How differadamassent: ud- is here 2. fuerant: sc. apud
3. secreto: 'apart' from 4. liceret: A. 270 a; G. A. 235 a; G. 343 R. 2; 6. vellent: A. 336; Study carefully Their lives

in direct case. D. 20, 2, 3, 4, 4, 4, 58, II. 28. Romam: B. 102, 1, 4, 4, 28, 6; H. 380, II. 29. postulatum: B. 340, a; A. 302; H. 546. Divitiacus visited Rome B. C. 63. See N. to p. 56, 12. 30. peius: 'a worse fate.' victoribus: here an adj. A. 88, c; H. 441, 3. 31. Abught the headwaters of the Danube; see map. 223; A. 250, 259, d; H. 430. 34. altera parte tertia: 'a second third-part.' to mean 'Leader of the Hosts'; later scholars translate it 'Eagle-eyry.' 'that he (Divitiacus) was the only one.' **27.** potuerit: would be subj. in direct disc. B. 283, 2; A. 320, b; H. 503, 11, 1. ut iuraret: 'to take polite than quin. illorum : = Sequanorum.282, a; A. 317, b; H. 497, 11., 2. In cases like this, quo minus is more H. 539, II.; the meaning is, 'and to make the citizens pledge themselves that they' (sese).

25. quo minus essent sub: 'to be under.' B. 23. sese repetituros, etc.: appositive of invenurando; B. 294; A. 329; greatest power.' See N. to p. 49, 2. of coactos esse. 20. fractos: agrees with eas (understood), antecedent of qui and subject 17. clientes: 'dependents,' here dependent or tributary states. traductos: sc. esse. 21. plurimum, etc.: 'had previously possessed the Harudum: a German tribe south of plures: sc. Germanos. **36**. eum : = Ariovistum. 22. obsides: appositive. 26. Unum se esse: 35. mensibus:

284, a, 3; A. 332, g; H. 501, II., 2. **16**. dubitare: sc.  $se_1 = Divitiacum$ . tive, referring to fortunam; 'endure whatever fortune might befall them.' 297, 3; A. 332, f; H. 501, III. faciendum esse, explained by the appositive clause introduced by ut. B. 10. posse: sc. se, = Gallos. 11. quid: indef. pron. 12. auxilii: B. 201, 2; A. 216, a, 3; H. 397, 3. Gallis; B. 189, 1; A. 232; H. 388; all the Gauls would have to do the same thing? idem: subject of p. 298; H. 636, III., 2. pla cruciatusque: 'all kinds of tortures'; a hendiadys. B. 374, 4; A. known. B. 232, I; A. 258, c, 2; H. 425, II. 7. nobilissin of all of the highest rank. B. 252, 5, c; A. 93, c; H. 458, I. gae: the word means, 'The great mountain'; where the place was is not known. B. 232, I; A. 258, c, 2; H. 425, II. 7. nobilissimi cuiusque: be vicit. semel: 'as soon as' (lit. 'when once'). participle. the Gauls was far in advance of that of the Germans. B. 246, I; A. 102, a and b; H. 450, I. cum: sc. agrum. sult? annis: B. 230; A. 256; H. 429. omnes: = Galli. is the clause introduced by uti; does this clause express purpose or re-Page 63. 1. Futurum esse: 'it would come about.' The subject proelium: B. 251, 3; A. 200, a; H. 445, 8. 5. Ariovistum: subject of the infinitives below. 4. hanc: refers to the Gauls, illa to the Germans. edere: implies publicity; 'inflicted publicly.' 14. quaecumque: indefinite relade: 'on.' At this time the civilization of 18. exercitus: sc. auctoritate 6. vicerit: in dir. disc. would Admagetobri-17. sumat: victus: not a

ing the Rhine. See N. to p. 106, 4. 19. deterrere, etc.: 'prevent a larger population of Germans from cross **20.** Rhenum: B. 175, 2, a; A. 239, b; H. 376, N. traducatur: B. 295, 3; A. 331, e; H. 498, 11.

any rate.' A. 334; H. 529, I. The clause stands as object of *miratus*. spondere: B. 335; A. 275; H. 536, I. **28**. quaere (lit. 'by the Sequani must be endured'). B. 189, 1; A. 232; H. 388. disc.; velut (horrerent), si (Ariovistus) coram adesset. B. 307, 1, 2; A. 312; by the following quod-clause. difference and cause; 'all the more wretched on this account'; explained I, B; A. 325; H. 521, II., 2. hence agreeing with causa, 'what the reason was.' 'alone.' B. 66. H. 513, II. A. 151, e; H. 569, III., 2. XXXII. Sequanis essent perferendi: 'the Sequani must endure' 23. fletu; B. 220, I; A. 248, R.; H. 419, III. 66. nihil: 'none.' 25. facerent: B 26. quae: from the interrogative adj. pron. qui, in pred., 29. idem: masculine. 34. reliquis: 'to the rest' of the Gauls. tamen: 'at 31. ne—quidem: 'not even.' B. 347; 33. adesset: would be subj. also in direct neque := et non. B. 341, 1, d, A. 156, a; masculine. 30. Hoc: abl. of degree of 25. facerent: B. 314; A. 336; 28. quaereret: B. 288, esset: B. 300, I; 27. re-

taken into consideration.'

9. putaret: B. 283; A. 320; H. 503. I.;
quare here = propter quas = ut propter eas. fratres: B. 168. > h. 185; H. 269 2(2).rent: 'from going out.'

18. ut: 'as.' ante: B.C. 102. See p. 41.

19. exirent: what mode in dir. disc.' B. 284, a, 3; A. 319, d; H. 500, II.

20. divideret: B. 286, 2; A. 326; H. 517; trans. the Latin impf. here in: 'in the case of'; trans. freely, 'in view of the fact that the dominion of the Roman people was so vast.'14. Germanos consuescere: 'for mans, who flattered them by admitting it. quam maturrime: 'as early as possible.' by an English pres., 'only the Rhone divides.' **21.** rebus: 'that he ought to attend to these things.' B. 187, II., b; A. 230; H. 384, 5 and venire. sibi: B. 187, II., a; A. 227; H. 385, I. 17. quin — exione (multitudinem venire) form the subject of esse (understood after videthe Germans to become accustomed.' This infin. clause and the following which'; the antecedent lies in the clauses dep. on videbat and intellegebat. 185; H. 362. 233. a; H. 390, 1. 5. se habere spem: = se sperare. 6. iniuriis: B. 188, 1, N.; A. 225; H. 384, 11, 4, N. 2. 7. secundum: prep.; 'bematter' (lit. 'that that matter would be a care to him'). B. 191, 2, a; A. Page 64. — XXXIII. 4. sibi, etc.: 'that he would look after that 16. periculosum: 'a thing dangerous'; appositive of consuescere as possible.' B. 240, 3; A. 93, b; H. 170, 24. non ferendus: 'unbearable.' consanguineos: the Aedui claimed kinship with the Ro-12. quod: 'a state of things 21. rebus: 'that he

527, III. 282, 2; A. 317; H. 497, I. both.' B. 204; A. 218; H. 399. ing.' **27. Ei** legationi: = ei Caesar or the Roman people had, etc., indirect question, subject of videri.

34. vicisset: B. 314; A. 341, a; H. 524. Caesari, populo: B. 190; the clause quid . . . esset. from Caesar, probably over near the Rhine. with opus est? 218, 2, a; A. 243, e, R.; H. 414, IV., N. 4. What is the usual construction A. 231; H. 387. for velit = velit poscere. 30. sine, etc.: Ariovistus was a long distance esset: 'If he himself (Ariovistus) should want anything of Caesar.' mitteret: subject of placuit. **27.** Ei legationi : = eis legatis; see N. to p. 50, 18. ille: Caesar. 24. placuit ei, ut: 'he (Caesar) resolved to.' **35**. negotii: B. 201, 2; A. 216, a, 1; H. 397, 3. **29**. venturum fuisse: B. 304, 3, b; A. 308, d; H. quid se: B. 178, 1, a; A. 239, c; H. 374; quid negotii, etc.: , what business either medium utriusque: 'midway between 26. velle sese: in trans. supply 'stat-25. qui postularent: 'to ask.' B. 33. mirum: agrees with

Messala, etc.: = B.C. 61. See N. to p. 48, 2. 16. provinciam: 'as a province.' B. 177; A. 239, a; H. 373, I. quod: 'as far as.' B. 283, 5; A. 320, d; H. 503, I., N. I. commodo: B. 220, 3; A. 248, R.; H. 337; H. 527, I. sibi, etc.: 'he himself and the Roman people would cherish uninterrupted kindly feeling and friendship with him.' 14. impetraret: sc. Caesar; i. e., si non impetrabo, — non neglegam. 15. M. Sequani) obsides redderent. B. 295, 2; A. 331; H. 498, 1. 12. iniuria: B. 220, 2; A. 248, R.; H. 419, III., N. 2. 13. fecisset—futuwards' (lit. 'any more'). 9. traduceret, redderet, permitteret, lacesseret, inferret: B. 316; A. 339; H. 523, III. 11. illi: = Scto maintain their cause against Ariovistus. 5. gratiam referret: see IDIOMS. 6. neque: 'and did not consider himself under obligation to discuss and investigate a matter of common interest.' 7. haec esse, quae: 'these were (the things) which'; explained by the following suo: Caesar was consul B.C. 59. See p. 3. 4. rex atque amicus: N. to p. 48, 29. The Roman Senate had played a double part. After the battle of Admagetobriga (see p. 63, 6), fearing the great power of Ariosese above, so as to bring neglecturum into close relation with its subject A. 320, d; H. 503, I., N. I. commodo: B. 220, 3; A. 248, R.; H. 419, III.; reipublicae, objective gen. See Idioms. 18. se: repetition of ram [esse]: in dir. disc., feceris (fut. pf.), -erit. B. 319, A, B, a; A. iuria: B. 220, 2; A. 248, R.; H. 419, III., N. 2. wards' (lit. 'any more'). this very time it was proclaiming its regard for the Aedui, and claiming him as a "ruler" and conferred upon him the title of "friend." But at Romans between him and the Helvetii, the Senate had secretly recognized vistus, and perhaps foreseeing the possibility of an alliance hostile to the Page 65.—XXXV. liceret: hardly necessary to the sense; trans. as if ut illi (= 8. quam: 'any'; N. to p. 50, 29, quid. 3. affectus: 'although treated.' amplius: 'afterconsulatu

emphatic. B. 350, 11, a; A. 344, i; H. 561, 1. qui: 'since he.' B. 283, 3, a; A. 320, e; H. 517. suo: refers to Caesar; sibi, to Ariovistus. 29. vectigalia: N. to p. 56, 1. deteriora: 'less profitable.' 30. iniuria: 'wrongfully.' B. 220, 2; A. 248, R.; H. 419, III., N. 2. 31. in eo, quod convenisset: 'in that (relation) which had been agreed upon.' not regulated according to the produce of each year. terring to populo Romano. subj. for what two reasons? rent; 'they who had conquered should command those,' etc. tellecturum: i.e., Caesarem intellecturum esse. quid — possent: 'what strength the Germans had.' B. 176, 2, a; A. 240, a; 238; H. 371, II., (2). in neminem. neminem: '(he would simply say,) that no one.' 35. congrederetur: 'let him come on!' B. 316; A. 339; H. 523, III. 36. in-'of brethren.' B. 353, 5, b; A. 190; H. 395, N. 2. 33. Quod: 'in regard to the fact that,' whereas.' B. 299, z; A. 333, a; H. 516, II., z, N. Freely, 'as far as Caesar's threat was concerned.' 34. se: = Caesarem. longe eis afuturum: 'would be of little avail to them,' 'far from helping them.' eis: B. 188, 2, 4; A. 229; H. 385, II., 2. fraternum: was weighed out in uncoined metal; compare the English "pound sterling." 32. penderent: the use of this word points back to the time when money 27. stipendiarios: obliged to pay the stipendium, which was a fixed tax, alterius: 'of a second person,' of another.' 37. inter: 'during'; stronger than the simple acc. of time. In 1. 35 secum refers to Ariovistus, sua to the imaginary opponent implied **XXXVI.** 21. qui: the antecedent is the implied subject of impera-25. suo: 'his own,' referring to Ariovistus. 22. victis: B. 236; A. 188; H. 441. another.' 24. suo: 'its own,' re-28. Magnam: vellent:

323; A. 341, d; H. 516, II. ne, etc.: 'not even by the giving of host-ages'; obsidibus, abl. abs.; N. to p 51, 21. 5. Treveri: sc. veniebant questum. 6. Sueborum: see Bk. IV., Chap. I and notes. 10. veobject. B. 324, I; A. 342; H. 529, II. 11. resisti: impers.; 'resistance could be made less easily.' B. 138, IV.; A. 146, c; H. 301, I. 12. magnis itineribus: see p. 30. 13. tridui: = trium dierum. B. 203, 2; A. 215, b; veniebant. B. 340; A. 302; H. 546. was marching eastward from the country of the Senones, where he had caught up with the fleeing Helvetii. Trace his route on the map. 14. octeribus copiis: the forces of Ariovistus already in Gaul. coniunxisset: by Ariovistus. quani, west of the Rhine and south of the Vosges mountains. 16. suis finibus: probably the territory ceded to Ariovistus by the Secupandum: gerundive. H. 396, v., N. I. Page 66.—XXXVII., 15. quod: why not qui? B. 250, 3; A. 199; H. 445, 4. B. 324, 1; A. 340; H. 528, I. viam: B. 176, 4, a; A. 238; H. 371, II., N. Caesar The gerund in the acc. does not take a direct XXXVIII. 3. transportati essent : i. e., 'n Aedui questum: 4. popularentur: B. Id: em-

phatic. high hill. **23.** pedum: B. 203, 2; A. 215, b; H. 396, v. Why not abl.? B. 217, 3; A. 247, c; H. 417, 1, N. 2. As a matter of fact the distance not defended by the river is 1600 feet. **24.** altitudine: B. 224; 'situation.' till the arrival of the Suebi. **21.** ut: 'as though,' 'just as if.' circumductum: with *flumen*. The Dubis (modern *Doubs*, 'Black River') of purpose. caution. night and by day.' an amphitheatre — have been discovered. the foundations of several structures of the Roman period - among them brought to light many traces of the Gallic city of Vesontio; and recently mains of the wall which 'made this mountain a stronghold' are still to be (montem) arcem: B. 177; A. 239, a; H. 373 and 373, I. Some re-A. 251; H. 419, II. (reliquum spatium) not surrounded by it; and this space is taken up by a here bends into the form of a loop, leaving only one side of the town Numerous excavations made at Besançon within a few years have **18.** ad bellum := bello. B. 192, 2, N.; A. 233. usui : dat. 20. ad ducendum bellum: 'for prolonging the war,' i. e., 19. facultas: 'abundance.' sibi praecavendum: 'that he ought to take every preradices: object of contingant. 21. ut: 'as though,' 'just as if.' id := oppidum.26. nocturnis, etc.: 'by

around the army. See p. 28. cibus: 'remarks.' larger to the Romans than they would have appeared to us. the English foot. Doubtless the barbarians of northern Europe seemed This is shown by the measurement of the foot; the Roman pes = .97 of were as a rule of smaller size than the average Englishman or American. We must remember, however, that the Romans, like the modern Italians, Other ancient writers speak of the great frame of the Germans ex percontatione: 'in consequence of the questions.' moratur : sc. Caesar. mercatorum: there were always many traders magnitudine: B. 224, I; A. 25I; H. B. 293, I.; A. 276, e; H. 467,

but probably officers in command of the light-armed troops. Little is these were not the praefecti equitum (see p. 23, and compare l. 15 below), ing, cowardly fear; while metus is a well-grounded dread of impending were of so little account; compare p. 22. as little to do as possible. We see here why Caesar's military tribunes these proved always a hindrance, as in this instance; and they were given creditors and others whose favor he wished to retain. In the campaign life, he no doubt filled many secondary positions with the relatives of the fashion for young men of means to get some experience in military known about them. Caesar left Rome heavily in debt. As it was quite causā: Caesar is politic as well as polite in ascribing the presence of these Page 67. 1. aciem: 'keen look.' 3. mentes animosque: 'minds and spirits.' 5. urbe : = Roma. 2. timor: 'panic,' a shrink-4. praefectis: amicitiae

B. 323; A. 341, d; H. 528, 1; 'which, as he said, made it imperative.' petebat ut — liceret: 'asked permission.' 10. vultum fingere: 'put on a cheerful expression,' 'control their features.' 11. abditi: 'hiding themselves.' B. 256, 1; A. 111, a, N.; H. 465. What kind of tents did the Romans have? See p. 32. 13. castris: B. 228, 1, b; A. 258, f; would have been the ordinary construction. A. 334.c. Cf. the scriptural "I know thee, who thou art." ut: 'that not.' B. 296, 2; A. 331, f; ones. See p. 22, 23. on account of efficient service. qui, etc.: praefecti equitum and decuririones: generally the bravest men in the army, promoted from the ranks shown by obsignabantur. H. 425, II., 2. A. 203, c; 344, g; H. 459, I, and 563; causa is abl. abs. alia causa ill.: '(each) one presenting a different excuse.' worthless men in his army to personal attachment to himself. H. 498, III., N. I. 21. signa ferii: i. e., 'adva 'should give the order.' B. 314; A. 336; H. 525, 2. entes dicto: 'obey the command.' B. 192, I; A of "obedient" from obediens, which = ob-audiens. Like the scriptural "Ye will not hearken unto me." 19. rem: acc. of anticipation; a nominative subject of posset testamenta: formal documents, written and sealed, as 17. vereri: implies a fear arising from a worthy 15. milites: the private soldiers. B. 192, I; A. 234, a; H. 391, I. i. e., 'advance.' Cf. the derivation 22. 8. diceret: fore audi-B. 253, 2;

cohort took part in the council of war. at this time had six legions. Usually only the six centurions of the first a legion? See pp. 21, 22. How many centurions in the council? is in indir. disc.

30. ap ometer. 1. 223; indicaret: in dir. disc., indicet. B. 277; 300, 2; A. 268; 338, R.; H. 523; II., I., N.

Sibi...persuaderi: 'he at least was persuaded.' B. 187, II., II., N.

31. Corrière. etc.: trans. by a clause what direction? This indirect question stands as subject of quaerendum origin, that in the latter part of the second century B.C. set out to invade and Teutones formed a vast horde of barbarians, mainly of Germanic memoria: B. 231; A. 256; H. 429. periculum: 'trial had been made.' 351, 4. vererentur, desperarent: B. 300, 1, 2; A. 338, 334; H. 523, II., I. What mood in dir. disc.? sua: 'their own.' 35. Factum (esse) B. 185, 2; A. 240, b; H. 453, 6. II., b; A. 230; H. 384, II., 5. 31. cognitis, etc beginning with 'after.' 32. eum = Ariovistum. [esse] and cogitandum [esse]. Sextiae (Aix, see p. 41) in Transalpine Gaul, B.C. 102; and at Vercellae, XI. 25. ordinum: how many ordines, and how many centuriones in They were well-nigh annihilated in two great battles, at Aquae se: B. 227, I; A. 255, a; H. 431, 4. The rest of the address 28. putarent: B. 323; A. 341, d; H. 34. quid tandem: 'what, pray.' H. 31. cognitis, etc.: trans. by a clause Cimbris et Teutonis: the Cimbri hostis:= Germanorum.26. quam in partem: 'in 33. Quod: 'but.'

prominent the fact. B. 314, 3; A. 336, b; H. 524, 2, 2). **Page 68. 1. servili tumultu**: 'at the time of the uprising of the meritus: sc. esse. B. 328, 2; A. 272, b; H. 536, 2, 1), N. in Cisalpine Gaul, the following year. the subj. would have been more regular; the indic. is emphatic, making vol. iii., pp. 232-235; Liddell's History of Rome, pp. 55/-562. See Mommsen's History of Rome,

in servili = servorum B. 251, 2; A. 199,  $\theta$ ; H. 445, 6. aliquid: adv. acc., 'somewhat,' considerably' usus: although barbarians, yet (tamen) the slaves had had the benefit of acquaintance with the Roman methods slaves.' The gladiators, who were for the most part slaves captured in advantage there is in steadfast courage' (lit. 'how much of good firmness of warfare, and of gladiatorial training. sudden war within the limits of Italy. quos: the antecedent is implied mans having become familiar with the prowess of the Germans in the many of these were of Germanic origin, Caesar, here speaks of the Rotheir standards, resisted the Roman arms for three years, B.C. 73-71. As war, rebelled under Spartacus, and, with other slaves that flocked to mans) and the rout of the Gauls alarmed any ' of the Romans, etc. beginning of the insurrection. referring to the lack of weapons among the followers of Spartacus at the has'). B. 301, 1; A. 287, d; 334; H. 529, 1.; 495, V. B, 2, b, β; A. 187, b; H. 445, 3, N. I. arint: sc. eos. The word tunnultus is used instead of bellum in case of any 9. Si quos, etc.: 'If the defeat (of the Gauls by the Ger-8. qui: 'and they,' the Helvetii. 5. hos: i. e., Germanos. 3. quantum, etc.: 'how much 2. quae: B. 235, A, 2 and pares esse: see inermos:

('giving up hope of battle') et dispersos, vicisse (cos) ratione et consilio ('by skill and strategy') magis quam virtute. X 14. rationi: B. 251, 4, a; A. sui potestatem fecisset ('and had given them no chance of attacking him,' lit., 'no chance at himself'), subito adortum (eos) desperantes iam de pugna diuturnitate belli, cum multos menses se castris ac paludibus tenuisset neque B. 332, c; A. 330, b; H. 534, I, N. I, (2). emphatic *non*, 'not at all.' B. 176, z, b;  $\ell$ 272, b; H. 536, 2, 1), N. 333, a; H. 516, II., 2, N. sibi curae : B. 191, 2, a; A. 233, a; H. 390, 1. 22. Quod : B. 299, 2; A. 333, a; H. 516, II., 2, N. dicto : N. to p. 67, 22. laturi : B. 328, 2; A. officium. viderentur: subj. in dir. disc. B. 286, 2; 314; A. 326; H. 517. Qui: '(Those) who assigned their fear to a pretence (of anxiety, i.e., a pretended anxiety) about the grain supply.'19. praescribere: sc. had defeated the Gauls there would be no chance against the Romans. cui. Ariovistus himself knew that for the clever tactics with which he 200, b; H. 445, 9. 10. Order: hos posse reperire, si quaererent, Ariovistum, Gallis defatigatis quibuscumque: the antecedent is eis (understood) depending Trans. Cui rationi, hac as though it were Hac ratione, 23. dicantur: sc. milites; trans. 'it is said that.' H. 176, 2, b; A. 240, a: H. 378, 2. has the force of an

followed by the dat. quibuscumque. The constr. of dicto (references to p. 67, 22) is like a wheel within a wheel. 25. fortunam: in all concerns **29.** de vigilia: p. 33 and N. to p. 52, 31. quam primum: see IDIOMS under quam. B. 240, 3; A. 93, b; H. 170, 2, (2). **30.** utrum — an: B. Ill-luck and wrong-doing on the part of commanders Caesar considers the chief causes of mutiny.

26. vita: B. 230; A. 256; H. 429.

28. longiorem: 'more distant.' repraesentaturum: 'he would at once do.' follow, thinking that a curse rested on it, or that a deity was against them. of life the Romans avoided any undertaking which had luck seemed to on defuisse and esse convictam. oratorical skill with which he brought it to a climax. showing to what motives and feelings of his men he appealed, and the mained Caesar's favorite. Make an analysis of this speech of Caesar's, praetoriam cohortem: 'body guard.' The tenth legion always re-'moreover, though.' something dishonorable; hence 'sense of honor.' 300, 4; A. 211; H. 353, I. pudor: properly feeling of shame at doing 32. non dubitaret: 'had no doubts.' **24**. dicto audiens : = obediens, hence **31**. Quod si:

6. primorum ordinum centurionibus: the centurions of the first cohort in each legion.

7. egerum.

an arrangement.' satisfacere.' be taken closely with iudicium; suum and imperatoris are in pred. with Page 69.—XII. 3. princeps: B. 239; A. 191; H. 443, N. 1. 4. ei gratias egit: 'thanked him.' See IDIOMS. fecisset: B. 323; 396, v. Why not abl.? B. 217, 3; A. 247, c; H. 417, I, N. 2. 12. locis apertis: 'through (lit. 'in' or 'by') open country,' i. e., free from on circuitu. Could it have been in the abl.? B. 203, 2; A. 215, b; H confidence in him than in all the others.' milium: sc. passuum; dep. but the general's.' esse. B. 198, 3; A. 214, c; H. 402. suum, sed imperatoris: 'not theirs, mountains and forests. and symbols are often connected. itinere, but follows exquisito. Follow his course on the map. de summa belli: 'on the general management of the campaign,' to xx:= viginti. In Latin phrases expressing number, words He was marching to the northeast from Vesontio. **11.** ex aliis : = ex ceteris omnibus; i. e., 'more **15**. milibus: Β. 223; Α. 257, δ; Η. duceret: this subj. of result explains

of sperabat, and is followed by the infin. fore, of which the subject is uti would be subj. in dir. disc. accessisset: sc. Caesar.
 petenti: sc. Caesari. clause is before the antecedent (id). 18. quod: indir. disc. to existimare. Notice that the relative Why? denegasset: B. 314; A. 336; H. 524; per se: 'so far as he was concerned.' 21. ad sanitatem: 'to his senses.' in spem veniebat: has the force

fers to a particular person. rel. pron. regularly precedes other connectives than cum. ex militibus: 414, IV., N. 3. 176, 3; A. 240, a; H. 378, 2. esset: 'if there should be any need of action.' horses, = in eas. Cf. "Hath not where to lay his head." tibus: B. 188, 2, d; A. 229; H. 385, II., 2. 32. commodissimum: agrees with imponere. Why neut.? mainly from the Aedui and their allies. See Chap. 15 and p. 22. in dir. disc. B. 316; A. 339; H. 523, III. alia ratione: 'on any other condition.'

30. interposita causa: 'by the pretext that had been How are ne and nt rendered after verbs of fearing? 29. veniret: venint 'back and forth,' between the two generals. 25. colloquio: dat. of purpose. for.' in eum: 'toward (i. e., bestowed on) him.' why not genitive: Because quidam is here not wholly indefinite, but re-Ariovistus understood as well as any one the hollowness of these 'facum: why does cum not stand first? Quod is emphatic, because the See N. to p. 65, 4-31. Gallorum equitatui: Caesar's cavalry was drawn Quod cum fieret: pertinacia: B. 214; A. 243; H. 414. ex: 'after.' 26. ultro citroque: facto: B. 218, 2, c; A. 243, e, R.; H. while, eo: 'thereon,' i.e., on the this 28. vereri: sc. dixit. quid: adv. acc. 23. pro: 'in return was being done." 24. beneficiis: **33**. equi-

equum rescribere: The phrase has a double meaning,—'enroll as cavalrymen,' or 'enroll as knights,' a rank of nobility. In this lies the is esse to be supplied? in loco habiturum: 'would regard as.' 3. ad point of the joke. Page 70. 1. plus facere: i. e., for the legion. 'n pollicitum:

embroidered robes, an ivory chair of state, and the like.

essent. quam rem: 'this distinction,' 'this honor.' from rocks (terrenus), generally thought to be the one here referred to officiis: 'in return for distinguished services.' latus esset: B. 323; A. 341, d; H. 528, I. pl. denos: 'ten apiece.' 11. ventum est: impers: ; trans. 'when they had come thither.' B. 138, IV.; A. 146, c; H. 301, I. 12. appelconstituerunt? bus: B. 223; A. 257, b; H. 379, 2. What distance in English feet? Cf. N. to p. 48, 16. 9. constiterunt: how different in meaning from agreed upon.' See Plan III., in which the hill is marked b. Caesar was the first Roman general to enter the valley of the Rhine.

6. ut erat dictum: 'as eight miles from Mühlhausen, there is a large (satis grandis) hill, free southern part of the Vosges Mountains and the Rhine. In Alsace, about 4. tumulus: this lay doubtless in the plain between the 7. equis: abl. of means; 'on horseback.' 13. munera: such as 15. aditum: 'ground 14. pro magnis missa: sc.

gative. **21.** prius, quam: = priusquam. B. 291, 323; A. 327; 341, a; H. 524; 520, II. **23.** ut . . . velit : 'to desire.' sui nihil : 'none of their standing.' B. 236; 201, a; A. 188; 216, a, 1; H. 441 and 397, I. facta essent: 'had been passed in their behalf.' ut: 'how'; interroshown,—no doubt an unjust insinuation. ance.' ipsis: i.e., Romanis. B. 187. IT. secutum: the word implies that Ariovistus had sought after the favors of approach,' 'access.' deret, pateretur: B. 316; A. 339; H. 523, III. 29. at: 'at any rate.' quos: B. 252, I; A. 105, d; H. 455, I. amplius: N. to p. 65, 8. following clauses are in apposition with eadem. tum, l. 21). ment to the Aedui, referring to their independence and power (principa-II.; 523, II., I, N. eis, etc. eis: B. 188, 2. d; A. 229; H. 385, 11., 2. What would be the mode of passet in dir. disc.? B. 277; 300, 2; A. 268; 338, R.; H. 486, 25. quod vero, etc.: order, quis posset pati id, quod . . . attulissent, eripi Aeduis intercederent: 'existed between themselves and the Aedui.' 20. honorifica: how compared? B. 71, 5; A. 89, c; H. 164. in eos ipsis: i. e., Romanis. B. 187, III.; A. 228; H. 386. 26. Postulavit eadem: 'made the same demands'; the quod . . . attulissent : spoken by way of compli-16. sua, etc.: see N. to p. 65, 3. 18. necessitudinis : 'alli-28. inferret, redipsis cum

direct form is in part given in H. 531. sand million dollars. pendium . . . belli: just so in 1871, as a result of the Franco-German *praemiorum*; hendiadys. B. 374, 4; A. p. 429; H. 636, III., 2. **35**. concessas: 'which had been,' etc. B. 337, 2; A. 292; H. 549, 4-ipsis: *Gallis*. obsides: like *sedes*, object of *habere*. **36**. sti-'because he had been,' etc. (lit. 'having been'). B. 337, 2, f; A. 292; H. 549, I. **34**. spe magnisque praemiis: trans. as if spe magnorum War, France was obliged to pay her conqueror an indemnity of a thou-XLIV. 31. pauca: object of respondit. 33. rogatum, arcessitum: 32. Transisse: the

over. B. 299, 2; A. 333, a; H. 516, II., 2, N. 14. nisi rogatus:

(without being asked.)

15. defenderit that clause (= ut amicus esset), not to amicitiam alone; 'this relation.' ject is amicitiam . . . esse. (to pay) the indemnity? 7. sua: 'their own,' i. e., the Gauls; they, however, told a different story. See Chapters 31, 37. 8. sibi ornamento, etc.: B. 191, 2, a; A. 233, a; H. 390, 1. 9. oportere: the subwhat case? B. 314, 4; A. 336, a, R.; H. 524, 1, 2). Page 71. 5. decertare: 'fight it out.' 2. sibi: i. e., Ariovisto. populum: populus [venisset] might have been expected iniquum: agrees with recusare, 'it was unfair to refuse id: refers to the thought of the preceding **3**. castra habuisse: = pugna18. Quid sibi vellet: 6. uti: 'enjoy'; followed by

(exercitum); the subject is Cuesurem. Qui nisi decedat: 'Now if he does not (should not) withdraw.' 31. hoste: sc. pro. Quod, etc.: Quod ('moreover'; N. to p. 53, 36), si te interfecero, faciam gratum ('a not to know' (lit. 'that he,' etc.). bello: B.C. 62. 25. ipsos: i. e. Aeduos. 27. Debere suspicari: 'had good reason to suspect.' 28. quod: conj., 'in that.' 29. habere: 'has (it) there,' sc. eum i. e., towards the Rhine.

20. illam: 'that part over concession should be made.'

21. nos: = Romanos. the other hand.' successes with ill-concealed alarm. See p. 1 et seq. pertum habere: almost = comperisse. B. 337, 6; A. 292, c; H. 388, I, N. 34. eius: = Caesaris. Whether Ariovistus here spoke the truth or not, thing pleasing'). on the fact.' se esse: ((he would like to inform him) that he, etc.

24. rerum: B. 204, I; A. 218, a; H. 399, I., 2. ut non sciret: 'as not to know' (lit 'that he') at 1 hours for the land of the la sc. Caesar. Quod...diceret: 'as to his saying,' 'as to his harping on the fact.' se esse: '/he would like to infer then did he (Caesar) mean'? out are spirited and brave. See Duruy's History of Rome, vol. iii. pp. king will fight his battles for him. The replies of Ariovistus throughsubject is se (= Ariovistum). In case Caesar will withdraw, the German in Roman politics. Caesar's enemies at Rome heard the reports of his he was evidently familiar with the party strifes and jealousies at this time 37. eius: 'on his part.' 32. gratum: here used as a noun. 19. hanc Galliam: 'this part of Gaul,'20. illam: 'that part over there.' Ut concedi non oporteret: 'no 38. confecturum: the 35. Quod: 'on 23. diceret:

Cévennes Mts., could have been held only with the greatest difficulty. the campaign 120,000 Gauls were slain. 7. ignovisset: the Romans with good reason had 'pardoned' them,—their country, lying beyond the 214, c; H. 402. Page 72. XLV. 1. in eam sententiam: 'to this effe show.' 2. quare: = quibus de causis. negotio: B. 214. H. 214. Derivation? posset: B. 300, I; A. 334; H. 529, I. 'its own,' referring to the subject of uti. liest period' of possession). B. 252, 5, c; A. 93, c; H. 458, I. = et non.antiquissimum quodque tempus: 'priority of time' (lit. 'each earesse Ariovisti: 'belonged to Ariovistus.' 5. Arvernos et Rutenos: conquered B.C. 121; in 1. in eam sententiam: 'to this effect,' i. e., 'to negotio: B. 214, 2; A. 243; В. 198, 3; А. 4. neque: **11.** suis :

H. 396, III. 19. committendum [esse]: 'that occasion ought to be given'; the subject is ut . . posset. B. 297, 2; A. 332, a; H. 501, I. **XLVI.** 13. geruntur: B. 293, 1; A. 276, e; H. 467, 4. 14. tumulum: B. 192, 1, a; A. 234, e; H. 437, 1. 17. quod omnino: 'any (weapon) at all.' 18. legionis: 'to the legion.' B. 200; A. 217; n'; the subject is  $ut ext{...} posset$ . B. 297, 2; A. 332, a; H. 501, 1. per fidem: 'through confidence' in his pledge. | 22. qua arro-

23. Romanis: B. 187, III.; A. 228; H. 386. interdixisset: indir. question. 24. ut: 'how.' diremisset: B. 300, I; A. 334; H. 529, I. gantia usus: 'with what arrogance.' Gallia: B. 214; A. 243; H. 414.

thing for him to send, etc.

Page 73. 2. visum est: mittere (1. 8) is subject. 3. C. Valeri 'all the more for this reason.' **31.** diei: B. 201, 3, a; A. 214, g; H. 398, 5. **32.** quin conicerent: 'from hurling.' B. 284, a, 3; A. 319, d; H. 504, I, N. A. 331, b; H. 498, I. why passive? = Ariovistum. sese cum periculo missurum: i. e., it would be a hazardous Legatum: an 'envoy,' not a lieutenant, from 'his own' Biduo: B. 223; A. 250; H. 423, 430.
 coeptae: 28. uti: 'asking that.'
 constitueret: B. 296, I;
 doi: Caesari.
 do: se: visa non est: 'seemed unreasonable.' eo magis: minus: suis: Caesaris.

it) . . . . ? B. 162, 4, a; A. 211, b; H. 353, 2, N. 4. Conantis: acc.; sc. 200. d, R.; H. 516, II. 12. Quid: = cur; adv. acc. same object in getting possession of his person. esset: B. 323; A. 341, neither feel so harshly towards him as towards a Roman, nor have the A. 80, a; H. 649. Thus Procillus took the name of Flaccus. Flaccus was governor of Gaul B.C. 83. 6. qua multa utebatur: 'which Ariovistus spoke fluently.' 7. in eo: 'in his case.' peccandi causa: through whom citizenship was bestowed, and adopted his gentile name. such cases, frequently the person honored became a client of the Roman tinction of citizenship upon foreigners who had been useful to them. would not let them speak, in order to forestall any explanation on their part these men were spies; hence he 'called out loudly' (con-clamavit) and Ariovistus apparently wished to convey to his army the impression that 'temptation to do wrong.' Procillus being a Gaul, the Germans would Ariovistus spoke fluently.' B. 187, 1, a; A. 225, d; H. 384, II., 2. The Romans often conferred the dis-Caburi: see p. 215, N. to C. Iuli Caesaris. 4. civitate: 'citizenship.' B. 176, 3, a; A. 240, a; peccandi causa:

might not lack opportunity.' diebus: B 277 ... au 529, II., N.I, I). tioned previous to the parleying with Caesar, is marked a. frumento: 16. diei: N. to p. 72, 31. 17. castra: this, the second camp of Ariovismiles northwest of Mühlhausen. See N. to p. 70, 4, and Plan III., d. his own ground by cutting off Caesar's supplies. 18. supportaretur: B. 214, 2; A. 243; H. 414. Ariovistus thought to force an engagement on tus, is marked c on the plan; the first camp, where his forces were sta-15. Caesaris castris: Caesar's camp is thought to have been several XLVIII. 14. milibus: distance expressed as degree of difference.

equo: B. 214, 2; A. 243, b; H. 414, I. 30. si quo erat, etc.: 'if it was necessary to advance or retreat to any place.' 32. sublevati: 'supporting themselves.' B. 256, I; A. III, N. I; H. 465. cursum: taken lit., 'running,' 'galloping.' apiece.' B. 81, 4; A. 95; 95, a; H. 174, 2, 1), and 172, 3. **27**. versabantur: 'were associated.' **28**. hi: the foot-soldiers. si quid, etc.: 25. numero: B. 226; A. 253; H. 424. 26. quos, etc.: whom they (the cavalrymen) had chosen from the entire force (selecting) a man 23. castris: 'within the camp.' B. 228, I; A. 258, f; H. 425, II., I, I).

lay almost directly north of it. The two camps were about two miles apart; the smaller camp not over half a mile from Ariovistus. acie here (marked e in the plan) is called *castra minora*, to distinguish it from **XLIX.** 33. eum: = *Ariveristum*; se is object of tenere. 35. castris: B. 192, 1; A. 234, a; H. 391, 1. 36. locum: the camp placed Caesar's first camp, which is called castra majora (marked d), and which

4, b; A. 201, d; H. 445, 9), 1 B. 282, 2; A. 317; H. 497, I. to the Romans." Moberly.

3. hominum . . . expedita : = sedecim milia hominum expeditorum.

5. quae copiae: 'in order that these attack on the intrenchments, which would be sure to give an advantage **Page 74. 2. castra munire:** see p. 31. "Caesar's main object in B. 223; A. 250; H. 417, 2. forces'; copiae takes the place of the antecedent repeated (milia; B. 251, Besides this, such an arrangement tempted the Germans strongly to an north and south; so that Ariovistus could not escape without fighting forming two different camps was to gain possession of the roads both 201, d; H. 445, 9), the relative being equivalent to ut each 6. Nihilo secius: 'none the less.'

streams, and the like. dictions' were drawn from the noise of water-eddies, the rippling of ng to the mark previously impressed. took up each bit of wood three times, and found in it a meaning accorddom over a white cloth. The person drawing the lot looked upward, small pieces, which were marked in different ways and scattered at ranan opportunity. 220, 3; A. 253, N.; H. 416 and 416 N. 2. 22. utrum . Having lopped off a bough from a fruit-bearing tree, they cut it up into H. 516, 11. 10. instituto suo: 'in accordance with his usual practice.' B. the like. declararent: B. 297, 3; A. 332, f; H. 501, III.

. necne: B. 162, 4; A. 211; H. 353, N. 3. ex usu: 21. sortibus: the early Germans drew lots in this way. **15**. quae: *ut ea*. vaticinationibus: these 'pre-**20**. esset: B. 323; A. 341, d; 12. potestatem fecit: 'gave

commence certain kinds of work "in the old of the moon." of the old German superstitions still linger. 'expedient.' 23. fas: 'the divine will.' ante novam lunam: a few Some people still will not

i. e., upon the wagons and carts. strong leather covering, much resembling the gipsy wagons of to-day. Cf. N. to p. 48, 20, carrorum. **35**. **Eo**: 'thereon' (see N. to p. 69, 33). 34. redis: the reda had four wheels, and was usually provided with a 248, R.; H. 419, III. many men in his six legions? See p. 21. 32. intervallis: B. 221; A. in order to hide from the enemy his real weakness in infantry. How 27. minus valebat: 'was weaker.' armed troops, called alarii because usually stationed on the wings (alae). 26. omnis: acc. 25. diei: N. to p. 72, 31. Harudes, etc.: locate all these from the map. alarios: = auxilia, the cavalry and light praesidium quod: 'such a garrison 29. ad speciem: 'for show,'

that he had an opportunity to look about and see where help was most needed.

18. inter aciem: 'at the front.' tertiam aciem: the guish him from his father. subsidio: B. 191, 2, b; A. 233, a; H. 390, 11. rear line waited as a reserve umvir (see p. 4); hence called adulescens, as we say "junior," to distinwing,' i. e., of the Germans. their short swords from above. up and pulled back the enemy's shields from the top, and stabbed with this case Caesar's men, in their eagerness, rushed on the foe, sprang neath, as they could do while still protected by their arms. the Roman soldiers, usually stooping slightly, ran one edge of their shields under the shields of the enemy and wounded him from undera phalanx by themselves. B. 47, 3; A. 63, f; H. 68. insilirent: B. 98. 2: A. 220, a; H. 503, I. 13. desuper: in hand-to-hand fighting = tempus. 9. coniciendi: dep. on spatium. If this were changed to the gerundive, what form would pila take? 11. phalange: see N. to p. 50, 0. 12. complures: 'in many cases.' B. 239; A. 191; closely with the right wing. noting and encouraging praiseworthy conduct; he himself was confined (quaestor) keep a general view of the whole, with the special purpose of lieutenant Page 75. phalangas: plural, because the warriors of each tribe formed over each of the six legions, then had the LII. 3. singulos . . . quaestorem: force till called into action. **6. Ita:** modifies acriter. 17. expeditior: 'more disengaged,' so 16. Publius Crassus: son of the tri-14. a sinistro cornu: 'on the left Caesar put a quartermaster 8. spatium:

Rhine in the direction of the dotted line on the plan is about five miles 21. prius, quam : = priusquam. 22. Rhenum, etc.: the

chains? B. 81, 4, b; A. 95, b; H. 172, 3. 32. vinctus: principal parts of vincio, vinco, and vivo? hostis: acc. 33. incidit in: 'fell in the way of.' quidem: what is its regular position? 34. honesprincipal uses of cavalry in the Roman army? See pp. 29, 30. interfecerunt: the slain were said to number 80,000. 27. Duae uxores: of the scene of battle. sidered a more firm and lasting bond by the ancients than by us. 36. ereptum, restitutum: is esse understood? tissimum: 'most honorable'; never trans. honestus (from honor) by "honest."

35. hospitem: the relation of host and guest was contrinis: why not tribus? altera. B. 253, I; A. 203, a; H. 459. 'had brought.' rat: = in matrimonium duxcrat (see IDIOMS); but duxcrat (1.28) means Chap. I, and notes. the Germans generally had but one wife. Sueba: nom. See Bk. IV. valley of the river Ill, and came to the Rhine about fifty miles northeast from the battle-field. Some texts, instead of quinque, have quinqueginta, which may be correct; in that case the Germans probably followed the from the battle-field. 26. ea: 'in it,' not 'with it.' equitatu: what were 30. filiae: nominative plural. harum: uxorum. natione: B. 226; A. 253; H. 424. Because catenae is a pl. word; 'three sets of 23. viribus: B. 219, I; A. 254, b; H. 425, II., 31. Procillus: Chap. 47 and N. 32. vinctus: principal 33. incidit in: fell 29. duxe-

tuna: nominative. ter: a sacred number. Page 76. 3. utrum: '(to decide) whether.' 1. eius: Procilli. calamitate: i. e., morte. consultum : sc. esse; 5. eum := Caesarem.

in history no more marked instance of the victory of organization, discipline, and generalship, over numbers, barbaric courage, and brute tate: the defeat of Ariovistus took place about Sept. 10; that of the Helvetii, the last of June or the earlier part of July. Thus, with not vince from time to time visited the principal cities to administer justice. ways in Latin may a purpose be expressed? The governor of a proforce, Read pp. 8-12. **11.** hiberna: see p. 33. in Sequanos: how rendered here? **12.** citeriorem: = Cisalpinam. Caesar's standpoint fighting force must have been several times as large as his. There is had overwhelmed several hundred thousand Gauls and Germans, whose over 35,000 soldiers, including the cavalry and light-armed troops, Caesar course of events there. doubtless to get as near Rome as the law allowed, in order to watch the is Rome. Caesar's chief object in going up into Cisalpine Gaul, however, was LIV. 8. Rhenum: B. 141, 3; A. 234, e; H. 437, I. ad conventus agendos: 'to hold court.' In how many 9. una aes-

## 300K II.

i. The Conspiracy of the Belgae; the War. I-XXXIII. в.с

336; H. 523, I. changing.' quos, being attracted to the fem. sing. to agree with partem. B. 250, 3; A. 199; H. 445, 4. Trans., 'who, we had said, form (lit. 'are') the the Vocabulary. 260, I; A. II5, 2, b; H. 469, II. bri: 'frequently,' agrees with rumores, but has the force of an adverb. first person, but always presents Caesar the doer in the third. to the preceding part of a work. i. e., in Book I. Chap. 54; so we use the word "above" when referring the winter, — a rare use of hiberna. winter quarters of the army, but the place where Caesar was spending to p. 76, 12 B. 143; A. 152, c; H. 435, N. I. seize upon the first pretext to invade their country; and they were perfectly their rights and defend their liberties. They saw clearly that Caesar would spiracy," was in reality the noble effort of a spirited people to maintain H. 542, 1. This uprising of the Belgae, looked upon by Caesar as a "condare: in dir. disc. coniurant, dant, the subject being Belgas. B. 314; ramus: plup., because Caesar looks upon the preceding book, in which the statement occurs (Chap. 1) as a finished work.

5. coniurare, Study pp. 38, 39. esse: B. 331, I.; A. 330, I; H. 535, I.; 535, I., 2. dixe-A. 199; H. 445, 4. Trans., 'who, we had said, form (lit. 'are') the third part of Gaul.' Caesar puts the name of the people for that of their the Vocabulary. Belgas: see p. 39 and map; also, Motley's "Rise of the Dutch Republic," Introd. §§ 11. and 111. quam: subject of esse, == Labieni: see N. to p. 51, 31. B. 239; A. 191; H. 443. A. 98, b; H. 446, N. 2. Caesar the writer sometimes speaks in the citeriore Gallia: = Gallia Cisalpina, for which see p. 38, and N. 4. tertiam partem: why acc.? B. 167, 168; A. 185; H. 362. Chapter I. 1. esset: B. 288, I, B; A. 323, 325; H. 521, consides; N. to p. 51, 21. inter se dare: 'were ex-Coniurandi: dep. on causas. B. 338, 1, a; A. 297, 298; afferebantur: force of the imperfect? B. certior fiebat: see IDIOMS, just before 3. litteris: B. 218; A. 248, c; H. 420. demonstravimus: the "editorial" ita uti: 'just as.' in hibernis: not the

i. e., powerful nobles; sc. sollicitarentur. rule'; see IDIOMS. B. 187, II., a; A. 227, 3; H. 385. levitate: B. 219; A. 245; H. 416. ments reported were accepted by Caesar as true. in indir. disc. The indic. is more emphatic, and shows that the stateveyed by Labienus, and hence following the rule for subordinate clauses might have been expected, as embodying part of the information con-H. 535, II. On the Germans in Gaul, see N. to p. 106, 4, Rhenus. inveterascere: 'become settled,' 'fixed.' moleste ferebai H. 543 and 544, I. homines: 'for hiring men,' i. e., mercenary soldiers. B. 339, I; A. 296; more powerful.' B. 236; A. 188; H. 441. IDIOMS, p. 385. In ferebant, as in the following indicatives, the subj ut — ita: 'as — so.' bant; for antecedent sc. ets, in apposition with Gallis, 'partly (those) who.' retur: B. 282; A. 317; H. 497, II. Galli, is meant. See p. 38. 7. noster: see N. to p. 47, 3. adduce-Gallia, not 'Gaul,' but only the central part, Gallia Cellica, the land of the 331, f; H. 498, III., N. I. omni pacata Gallia: = si Gallia omnis pacata esset. B. 305, I and 227, 2, a; A. 255, 310; H. 431; 507, III., N. 7. By B. 323; A. 341, d; H. 528, 1 and 516, 11. authority of the Belgae, 'because (as they said) they were afraid,' etc. (8) sollicitarentur: the subj. indicates that the reasons are given on the causes being introduced by primum, deinde, and etiam. and generalship of the age. for, barbarians as they were, they were pitted against the best discipline it was by no means to their discredit that they were finally conquered; justified in preparing to meet the aggressor. They fought heroically, and state of Gaul at this time, see p. 40. imperio nostro: 'under our sovereignty,' abl. of time and 15. poterant: 'would be able.' ip of the age. 6. causas: with esse, in indir. disc. after 'the causes were as follows' (lit. 'these'), the different Germanos versari: B. 331, IV.; A. 330, 3 and R.; 14. occupabantur: 'were seized upon.' novis imperiis: 'a change of 27,3; H. 385. 12. nonnullis: 8. nonnullis Gallis: 'some of a potentioribus: 'by the ne: 'that.' B. 296, 2; A. moleste ferebant: see minus facile: 'not so 13. ad conducendos 11. mobilitate,

numerous beasts of burden that carried the military stores, as well as for of Caesar. numbered VII. to XIV., inclusive. Study pp. 21-23. duas legiones: the XIIIth and XIVth. 16. nuntiis, litteris: B. 219; A. 245, b; H. 416, I., 2), N. I. legatum: B. 169, I, 2; A. 184; H. 363. 19. cum primum : see Idioms. Caesar had now eight legions, pabuli copia: for the Pedius was a nephew 17. inita aes-

A. 256; H. 429. movet: see Idioms. comparata: abl. abs., 'having provided for,' etc. the meaning 'delay' dubito is more often followed by the infin. is usually omitted. B. 337, 7; A. 113, d; H. 234. **25.** eos: i. e., Belgas. proficisceretur: B. 284, 3; A. 319, d; H. 504, 3, 2). With pass. periphrastic conj. is often used impersonally, and in such cases esse esse sibi, 'that he ought not to delay about setting out.' The infin. of the ment in their reports. H. 449, I. Belgis: B. 192, I; A. 234, a; H. 391, I. ea: acc. gerantur: subj. for two reasons. B. 283, 2; 324, I; A. 320, 342; H. 529, II.; 503, I. 22. cognoscant, faciant: B. 295, I; A. 331; H. 498, I. se certiorem faciant: 'inform him.' Why is se used? B. 244, II.; A. 196, a; 3; A. 276, a, H. 467, III. Senonibus: an important people upper part of the Seine. See map. reliquis: N. to p. 47, 12. 325, 323; H. 521, II., 2.

20. exercitum: the army was probably at Vesontio, the chief city of the Sequani, for which see N. to p. 66, 25, and map.

Dat negotium: 'directs.'

Dat: what kind of present? B. 259, the horses of the cavalry and the officers. constanter: 'consistently,' 'uniformly,' without disagree-**24**. locum: why not abl.? circiter: adv. with quindecim. diebus: abl. of time within which. B. 230: 23. manus: 'bodies of troops,' i. e., among Senonibus: an important people about the Dat: what kind of present? inciperet: B. 288, I, B; A dubitandum, etc.: sc. 25. eos: i.e., 26. castra

tos: notice that *legatus* sometimes means 'lieutenant,' and sometimes, as here, 'envoy,' 'ambassador.' primos: 'the chief men.' B. 236; A. 188; H. 441. civitatis: i. e., of the Remi. 4. qui dicerent: 'to say.' B. 282, 2; A. 317; H. 497, 1. se, etc.: indir. disc. to the end of 2; A. 156, a; H. 554, I., 2. ject of this and the following infin. an independent clause or one introduced by "that." IDIOMS. in fidem: 'to the protection.' 5. perm 314; A. 336, 337; H. 523, 524. CAUTION. Never render an infin. representing a principal clause of dir. disc. by the English infin, but always by means of the acc. and infin.: II. subordinate clauses take the subj. B. sentences from dir. to indir. disc., I. principal clauses are expressed by the chapter, dep. on dicerent. Remember that in changing declarative 'unexpectedly.' celerius omni opinione: 'more quickly than any one had expected' (lit. 'than every expectation'). B. 217, 4; A. 247; H. 417.

2. venisset: B. 286, 2; A. 326; H. 517. Remi: see p. 39 and map.

Galliae: B. 192, 1; A. 234, a; H. 391, I.; N. to p. 47, 10. The land of the Galli is here meant; see p. 38. ex Belgis: = inter Belgar.

3. legathe English colloquial phrase "of a sudden," "all of a sudden," i. e., neut. of the adj. used as a noun, with de forming an adverbial phrase like A. 128, a; H. 235. Page 78. III. 1. Eo: = ad fines Belgarum. 7. paratos: adj., in pred. **6.** coniurasse: = coniuravisse. B. 116; neque: trans. as if et non. B. 341, I, 5. permittere: sc. se as subet -- et: 'both -- and.' improviso: abl. sing. se suaque: see

rere; see N. to p. 82, 21. fratres: case? B. 169, I, 2; A. 184: H. 363. 12. iure, legibus: B. 218, I; A. 249; H. 421, I. Ius means 'principles of justice,' as distinguished from leges, enacted 'laws.' isomnium: i. e., Belgarum et Germanorum. iuvare : sc. eum, i. e., Caesar. 314; A. 342, 336; H. 529, II., 524. dem := eisdem.always stands between ne and quidem. colant: what mood in dir. disc.? from the standpoint of the Roman Province. See N. to p. 106, 4. were oppida different from vici? See N. to p. 49, 20. dare, facere, recipere, iuvare: after esse paratos. B. 325; A. 273, b; H. 533, II., 3. oppidis: B. 228, I; A. 258, f; H. 425, 2, N. 2. How 284, 3; A. 319, d; H. 500, II. Н. 533, п., 3. B. 347; A. 151, e; H. 569, III., 2. Notice that the emphatic word 9. cis Rhenum: the west side of the Rhine; Caesar writes utantur, habeant: subj. for two reasons. 14. potuerint, consentirent: B. quin consentirent: 'from uniting.' frumento, rebus: B. 218; A. 248; 10. his := Belgis. Suessiones: object of deter-11. ne — quidem: 8. recipere,

Germanis: B. 215, 2; A. 244, a, R.; H. 413. Rhenum: dep. on tra(ns) in tra-ductos. B. 179, 1; A. 239, b; H. 376, N. ibi: i. e., west of the Rhine, in Gaul. 19. incolerent: why subj.? See N. to se, I. 4 above. solos: in pred., 'the only (people of Gaul), who.' 20. memoria: abl. of dir. disc., are esse ortes, consedisse, expulisse, esse (1.19), fieri. 17. Belgas, etc.: the name is said to mean 'plunderers.' The origin of the Belgas, etc.: the preceding chapter. chief men of the Remi, who had given Caesar the information stated in worthy for a small part of the Belgae, but not for the people as a whole. elements were to a considerable extent infused into the race and speech. ple; but that, because of nearness to the Germans, gradually Germanic however, that they were originally and at bottom a Gallic, or Keltic, peogae has been much discussed, but remains uncertain. It seems probable, 240, a; H. 304, I., 3; 371, II. (2). plerosque: indir. disc. to sumerent (1. 23), dep. on reperiebat. The infinitives representing principal clauses adverbial acc., strictly speaking, a cognate acc. B. 176, 3, a; A. 148, d; 'what power they had' (lit. 'to what extent they were able'); quid is an Cimbri from entering.' disc. B. 283, 2; A. 320, b; H. 503, II., I; prevented the Teutons and Cimbros: see N. to p. 67, 36. 255; H. 431; trans. by a clause beginning with 'when.' Teutonos. Cimbros: "sea " ' - - ' -The tradition here given by Caesar may perhaps be accepted as trustessent, possent: B. 300, I; A. 334; H. 529, I. **15**. **Cum**: temporal, causal, or concessive? qua ex re: 'from this fact,' 'by reason of this.' B. 251, 6; What is the usual construction after verbs of quae: B. 90, 1, 2; A. 104, a; H. 188, II., 1. 21. prohibuerint: subj. also in dir. quid possent: his: i.e., the

also.' B. 290, 2; A. 155, I, a; H. 554, I., 5. 34. regionum: dep. on partis, which limits imperium. Britanniae: not the whole of Britain, 32. possidere: sc. eos (Suessiones). v 33. cum — tum: 'not only — but noverint: B. 314; A. 336; H. 524. p. 49, 2; see IDIOMS. 28. virtu licitus sit: subj. also in dir. disc. B. 300, I; A. 334; H. 529, I. cog. member of the war-council, each delegate or representative. arising from nearness and from intermarriage.' quod: N. to p. 47, 6. almost = omnia exploravisse; 'had found out everything.' 267, 1, 2; A. 284, 286; H. 525, 491. De: indir. disc. to the end of the chapter. eorum: i. e., Belgarum. 24. omnia habere explorata: sumant in dir. disc.; the sequence of tenses here requires the impf. B. 284, 297, 2; A. 319; 332, a; H. 501, 1., 1. 22. me A. 245; H. 416. 23. re militari: 'the art of war.' the name of) Galba'; N. to p. 49, 31. 36. summam belli: see IDIOMS. tinuerit: why subj.? probably only a portion of the island along the southeast coast. 35. obback to the subject of dicebant, the Remi. B. 244, I., II.; A. 196; H. 449, I. how declined? 29. conficere: 'muster.' armata milia: = milia hominum armatorum. A. 180, f; H. 453. electa sexaginta: sc. milia, 'sixty thousand picked men.' sibi: refers to the Bellovaci; but suos in l. 31 refers fieri: the subject is the clause uti . . . sumerent esse regem Galbam: there was a king (by 25. propinquitatibus, affinitatibus: 'relations 38. virtute, etc.: B. 226; A. 253; H. 424. **22**. memoria: B. 219; quisque : i. e., each sumerent: propterea **27**. pol-

map. and map. maxime feri: in pred. B. 74; A. 89, d; H. 170. 3. habeantur, absint: B. 314; A. 336; H. 524. Caesar here uses the pres. tense where the impf. would have been more regular. In vivid narration nos: small states (or tribes) in the Ardennes (Arduenna) region; see 79; 81, 2; A. 94; H. 174. Condrusos, Eburones, Caeroesos, Paemanovem: in what other ways may 'nineteen' be expressed in Latin? ses were means 'dwellers,' 'possessors,' and survives in the modern town of Arras, in Artois.

5. Caletos: the Calēti (or Calētae) and Walters 4. Atrebates: sc. polliceri. See map, south of the Morini. The name the tenses that the speaker used are sometimes retained in indir. disc. the Nervii, Bellovaci, Ambiani, Morini, Menapii, and Aduatuci, see p. 39 Words. XII: = duodecim; always read figures in the text with Latin
Words. 2. totidem: sc. armata milia polliceri. Nervios, etc.: for p. 78, 29), se posse conficere hills,' 'hill-men.' Bellovăci; the Viromandui were east of the Bellovaci. Page 79. 1. habere: sc. Suessiones. The word is thought to mean here not Germans, but men of the 7. uno: 'common.' along the lower course of the Seine (Sequăna) and west of the 8. appellantur: why indic.? Germani: B. 168, 2, b; A. 185; H. numero: B. 226; A. 253; arbitrari : sc. (from

15. Id: refers to manus distineri. posse—introduxerint, coeperint: B. 319, A, B, a; A. 337; H. 527, I. 17. populari: complementary infin. B. 328, I; A. 271; H. 533, I., I. 18. copias: difference in with the Romans. Cf. N. to p. 65, 4. 'how important it is.' rei publicae 330, 2; H. 535, II.

11. obsides: what case? B. 169, 1, 2; A. 184; H. 363. See N. to p. 51, 21.

Quae: 'these things.' B. 251, 6; A. 180, f; H. 453.

12. ad diem: 'at the appointed time,' as we say 'to a day,' 'to the minute.'

Divitiacum: a different person from the Divito be brought, etc. B. 297, I; A. 331, e; H. 501, II., I. 26 in: 'over.' erat: 'there was'; N. to p. 49, 31. praesidium: marked G on the plan; than one state. 420. post ... reddebat: = 'strengthened the rear.' quae: supply ca loca as object of reddebat. essent: B. 283, 2; A. 320, a; H. 503, I. posuit: see Idioms, and study pp. 31-33. Quae res: 'This position or 'location.' B. 251, 6; A. 200, c. 23. ripis: B. 218; A. 248, c; H. a mile northeast of the village of Berry-au-Bac. See Plan IV. castra finibus: 'the farthest part of the territory.' B. 241, 1; A. 193; H. 440, nam: see map; the name survives in the modern Aisne. do not really see with the eyes. B. 287, I; A. 324; H. 518. tellexit, just as we often use the word "see" of things we understand, but meaning between the sing. and the pl. of this word? sit: 'that they might not be obliged to fight.' B. 282; A. 317; H. 497, II. munis: i. e., of the Romans and the Belgae. 14. A. 334; H. 529, r. The subject is manus distincri. I; A. 222; H. 406, III.; indir. disc. to coeperint, dep. on docet. of the most prominent men among the Aedui, who were now in alliance tiacus mentioned p. 78, 33. See N. to p. 56, 12. This Divitiacus was one of a Roman institution to a Gallic body of counsellors. ment) by a gracious speech.' to keep open an avenue of retreat in case of disaster. sincerity of whose professions of loyalty was hardly beyond question, and river without trouble, to set a watch on the movements of the Remi, the well guarded, thus being able to get provisions from his allies across the parte: 'on the other side,' i. e., on the south bank of the Aisne, opposite traces of fortifications have been discovered at Berry-au-Bac. toribus. what were the officers in Caesar's army? Berry-au-Bac. See Plan IV., C. Caesar now had both ends of the bridge 24. commeatus: pl., because the supplies were furnished by more 9. liberaliter, etc.: 'having sought (to strengthen their attachabesse: dep. on cognorit; sc. eas (copias). eis: with explora20. flumen, exercitum: B. 179, 1; A. 239, b; H. 376. Axo
areas the name account. 22. ibi: the camp was on the north bank of the Aisne, about 25. efficiebat, ut, etc.: 'made it possible for supplies rei publicae [i. e., Romanae], salutis: B. 211, 10. senatum : Caesar applies the name See p. 22. 13. quanto opere intersit: **14**. intersit: B. 300, I; ne confligendum **19**. vidit : = in-28. pedum: B. В. 331, п.; 21. extremis

trench, so that the outline of the camp can be clearly traced. of Napoleon III., brought to light many remains of this rampart and probably about ten feet deep. viginti: eighteen feet broad, measured across the top; the trench was 203, 2; A. 215, b; H. 396, v. Excavations, carried on during the reign 29. vallo, fossa: why abl.? duode-

'attempt to burn the gates and undermine,' etc.; the present tense is sometimes used of actions attempted but never completed. B. 259, 2; storming a town. See p. 36, and Plate V., 6. succendunt the reading of the MSS.; many editions however have succedunt. together above their heads, just as the Romans were accustomed to do in 'along the entire (extent of the) fortifications.' B. 228, I, b; A. 258,f; H. 451, 5. oppugnatio: now unrecent and haec: 'as follows.' B. 246, 2; H. 450, 3. titudine: B. 227, 2, a; A. 255; H. 431. t VI. 30. his castris: 'this camp'; why pl.? nomine: B. 226; A. 253; H. 424. Bibrax: B. 169, I, 2; A. 184; H. 363. See map. 31. milia passuum: see N. to p. 48, 16, and B. 181, I; A. 257; H. 379. ex itinere: see Iddoms; on their way to Caesar the Belgae stopped to A. 276, b; H. 467, 6. facta: abl. abs., 'having formed a testudo,' by holding their shields close coepti sunt: why passive? ception. 230; A. 256; H. 429. attack Bibrax. sibrax. 32. aegre . . . est: see Idoms, p. 389. die: B. 256; H. 429. When is dies fem.? B. 53; A. 73; H. 123, ex-33. eadem atque: 'just the same as.' B. 248, 2; H. oppugnatio: how different from obsidio? Study pp. 34, 36. defensoribus: B. 214; A. 243; H. 413. 35. iaci: give the principal parts of iaceo, iacio, and iacto. murus: how different in meaning from totis moenibus: abl. of place, 34. circumiecta mulsuccendunt: this is 36. testudine

sitive, 'as envoys.' to whom? B. 244, 188; H. 441 and 449, 4. oppido: B. 187, III.; A. 228; H. 386. praefuerat: with tum = praepositus erat et tum praeerat: H. 471, 3. H. 521, II., 2. 4. summa nobilitate: B. 224; A. 251; H. 419, II. gratia: 'popularity.' inter suos: 'among his people.' B. 236; A. 188; H. 441 and 449, 4. oppido: B. 187, III.; A. 228; H. 386. 5. 338, 1, a; A. 298; H. 542, I. 3. nulli: B. 190; A. 231; H. 387. How declined? B. 66; A. 83; H. 151, I. Trans. 'no one was able to stand' (lit. 'no one had the power of standing'). fecisset: B. 288, I, B; A. 325; of homines in multitudo. B. 286, 2; A. 326; H. 517. consistendi: B. at hand, the storming of Bibrax. spoke of the Gallic mode of conducting an attack on a city in genin composition? eis = eorum. B. 201, I, a; A. 216, c; H. 397, 3, N. 3. eral; he now applies the general statement to the particular instance Page 80. B. 244, II.; A. 196; H. 449. 1. Quod: 'This.' In the preceding sentence Caesar 7. sustinere: here intrans. 6. eum : i. e., Caesarem. 2. conicerent: pl. from the idea submittatur: force of sub sibi, sese : refer legati: appo-

20 and 21. quos: Why masc.? B. 250, 2; H. 445, 3, N. 1. copiis: B. 221, 1; A. 248, a; H. 419, III., 1, 1). 16. ab:: i. e., distant from Caesar's camp. milibus: B. 217; A. 247 de causa: 'for the same reason.' potiundi = potiendi. B. 116, 2; H. 239. potiundi oppidi: B. 339, 1; A. 296; H. 544, 2, N. 5. Notice the difference of meaning with similarity of sound in accessit, discessit. fence'). propugnandi; B. 338, I, a; A. 298; H. 542, I. 'together with the hope of being able to hold the town' (lit. 'hope of deof pres.? B. 259, 3; A. 276, d. adventu: abl. of time and cause.

11. et—et: B. 341, 3; A. 155, 1, a; H. 554, 1, 5. cum spe defensionis: together with the hone of heims while in the latter than the control of the con ducibus: 'as guides'; why abl.? isdem (= eisdem): here used as a noun. bus: abl. of measure. B. 217, 3; A. 247, c; H. 417, 1, N. 2. with the subj.? marked **D D D**, that of Caesar, **A**. castra: See Plan IV., where the centre of the camp of the Belgae is H. 431. Difference between vici, oppida, and aedificia? See N. to p. 49, 13. morati, etc.: sc. hostes. = auctum est. Balearic slingers were employed by the Romans as light-armed troops. people of Crete were famous for their archery, and with the skilful which our word "nomad" comes; see Vocab. The Numidians and the Numidas: derived from a Greek word meaning 'wanderer,' from A. 180, f; H. 453. 8. Eo: i. e., to Bibrax, **10.** subsidio, oppidanis: B. 191, z, b; A. 233, a; H. 390, II. fumo: abl. of manner, cause, or means? hostibus: B. 188, 2, d; A. 229; H. 385, II., 2. ut: what does ut mean with the indic.? **14.** vicis, etc.: B. 227, 2, a; A. 255; de media nocte: 'about midnight.' milibus: B. 217; A. 247; H. 417. 17. quae: 'and this.' B. 251, 6; n. B. 218, I; A. 249; H. 421, I. 9. nuntii: cf. n. to *legati*, l. 5. 16. ab: adv. 'off,' 12. accessit:

'what the enemy could in the way of valor'). quid: neut. acc. used adverbially; strictly speaking, a cognate acc. B. 176, 2, a; A. 148, d; 240, a; H. 378, 2, and 371, II., (2). posset, auderent: B. 300, I; A. 334; H. 529, I. 22. periclitabatur: 'kept trying (to find out)'. B. 260, 3; A. 115, b; H. 469, II. esse: never trans. an infin. after a verb of seeing guished from skirmishing. B. 214; A. 243; H. 414, I. primum, and primus? A. 255, d, N.; H. 431, 2, (3). aciem instruendam: B. 339, 2; A. 296; H. 544, I. **24.** atque: did Caesar consider opportune or idence the idoneo := cum ('since') locus opportunus atque idoneus esset. B. 227, 2, d; or knowing by the English infin. with "to." 23. loco opportuno atque posset: 'what mettle the enemy had,' the mettle of the enemy' (lit. bus proeliis: 'skirmishes with cavalry,' cavalry skirmishes.' quid ... 200; A. 217; H. 396, III. VIII. 19. primo: what difference in meaning and use between primo, 20. opinionem virtutis: see Idioms, and B. proelio: a regular engagement, as distin-21. equestri-

was situated extended out just far enough to give room to draw up the army, then sloped down gently to the plain. On the side of the camp of which in Caesar's time is indicated on the plan by dotted lines. side of the camp was guarded by the river Aisne (see chap. 5), the bed clause quod . . . redibat explains the reason implied in the preceding abl. abs. castra: see N. to p. 79, 22 and 28; and Plan IV, A. One enemy). loci: B. 201, 2; A. 216, a, 3; H. 397, 3.

27. ex utraque parte: 'on each side.' 1 adverbially, strictly speaking; acc. of extent of space. reach the rear of the camp and attack from behind while his forces were against a flank movement on the part of the enemy, by which they might he stationed troops, with military engines. His purpose was to guard intrenchments he constructed redoubts (marked B B on the plan), where hill, toward the Aisne, the other down the north slope toward the Miette about a third of a mile in length. One ran down the south slope of the prolonged two lines of intrenchment at right angles to the sides, each was steep. Starting therefore from opposite corners of the camp, Caesar lying toward the river, and the side opposite to this, the slope of the hill encamped. the Miette brook runs, was a chain of heights on which the Belgae were Northwest of the camp, on the opposite side of a marsh, through which stronger word? B. 341, 1, c; A. 156, a; H. 554, 1, 2. object of occupare. engaged in front. brook; they are indicated on the plan by red lines. At the ends of these Directly in front of the Roman camp, the hill on which it 25. tantum: adversus: 'in front' (lit. 'turned toward' the acc. sing. neut. of the adj. used ubi := in quo. The 26. quantum:

redibat: i. e., that the slope was gradual down to the plain.

29.
transversam fossam: 'an intrenchment at right angles' to the direction steep slope' (lit. 'down-sinkings of the side'). spring in Cisalpine Gaul. See chap. 2. Caesar generally exposed his east to west; see Plan IV. of the hill. The greatest length of the hill was in the general direction of been fully tested, as a reserve force. 35. si quo: 'if anywhere.' opus veterans to the brunt of the battle, leaving recruits, whose powers had not to quid, l. 21. multitudine: abl. of cause. flanks.' **33.** suos: i. e., milites Romanos. p. 35. instruxisset: B. 288, I, B; A. 325; H. 521, II., 2. 32. quod....
poterant: 'because they were so strong in numbers.' tantum: see N. of the intrenchments? B. 241, I; A. 193; H. 440, 2, N. I. 31. tormenta: what were the principal military engines of the Romans? Study in purpose clauses? in result clauses? 'as a reserve force.' esset: see IDIOMS. esset: why not sit? The xiiith and xivth legions had been enrolled the previous duci: noun or verb? 30. ad extremas fossas: 'at the ends possent: how is ut translated 36. pro castris: the line of subsidio: dat. of purpose, 34. legionibus: with lateris deiectus: = 'a ab lateribus: 'on the 28. leniter .

and the Miette brook. See Plan IV. in acie: what was the usual ba order of the Romans? See pp. 33, 34. 37. eductas instruxera 'had led forth and drawn up.' B. 336, 3; A. 292, R.; H. 549, 5. Plan IV., where the forces of the Belgae are indicated by black lines. battle was drawn up on the northwest slope of the hill, facing the marsh in acie: what was the usual battle 37. eductas instruxerant:

ab illis initium transeundi (paludem) fieret, (eos, i. e., the enemy engaged of time in possent, 'if they should be able,' and potuissent, 'if (having made the attempt) they should have been unable.'

13. popularentur, abl. of cause. possent, expugnarent: N. to fieret, aggrederentur above stratum est: see p. 79, 22-25. assume the offensive. neither the Romans nor the Belgae; each side was waiting for the other to fieret: B. 324, I; A. 342; H. 529, II. **4.** aggrederentur: B. 282; A. 317; H. 497, II. **5.** contendebatur: see Iddoms, p. 389. neutri: i. e., in crossing over, hence in disorder and at a disadvantage) aggrederentur. fieret: B. 324, I; A. 342; H. 529, II.

4. aggrederentur: B. 282; A. indir. question. i. e., paludem. si: '(to see) whether.' B. 300, 3; A. 334, f; H. 529, II., I. What word might have been expected? transirent: subj. of 14. commeatu: B. 214; A. 243; H. 414, I. prohiberent: sc. ut. retreat difficult for him. to destroy this bridge in order to cut off Caesar's supplies and make redoubt under the command of Q. Titurius Sabinus. The Belgae wished end by a garrison (praesidium, Plan IV. G), and at the south end by the castellum: on the south bank of the Aisne; see Chap. 5 and Plan IV. Page 81. IX. 1. Palus: the low ground through which the Miette ows. See Plan IV. erat: 'there was'; N. to p. 49, 31. 2. Hanc: nostris: why dat.? 11. pontem: the bridge across the Aisne, guarded at the north 3. Order, nostri autem parati in armis erant, ut, si 6. secundiore proelio; B. 271, 1; A. 255, a; H. 7 dat.? 7. reduxit; force of re-? 8. demonnobis usui: B. 191, 2, a; A. 233, a; H. 390, 1. **12.** minus := non. Notice the distinction 10. eo consilio: 'with this design,'

ence, and from the south side of the the act of crossing. See Plan. Caesar's camp was south of the Miette and east of the bridge, he could send his cavalry across the bridge without danger of interferthe bridge, in order to avoid the marsh and the Miette brook. See the rest were driven back to their camp. crossed were cut down where they were; many were slain in the stream; crossed swords on the Plan. Those of the Belgae who had already Miette and the site of the modern village of Pontavert; see the mark of 17. eo loco: the engagement took place between the mouth of the Plan IV. Belgae were trying to cross the Aisne, probably a mile or two west of 15. certior factus: 'on being informed.' The cavalry of the equitatum, pontem: B. 179, 1; A. 239, b; H. 376. **16**. Numidas: N. to p. 80, 9. Aisne attack pugnatum est: see IDIOMS, the enemy

sake of.' than that where the legions were drawn up. Caesar's aggressive move-'that their expectation had cheated them'). neque: = et non. oppido: i.e., Bibrax. B. 339, 2; A. 301; H. 544, 2. 23. spem se fefellisse: 'that they had been disappointed in their expectation' (lit. river, were being destroyed by Caesar's cavalry and light-armed troops a detachment (partem suarum copiarum, l. 9) having tried to cross the enemy, that had remained in battle array facing the Roman legions, while 336, 3; A. 292, R.; H. 549, 5. 22. Hostes: i. e., the main body of the strong; see p. 78, 27-30) are meant, who 'could not be prevailed upon to stay longer' with the united host 'and not' go to the defence of their uterentur: in how many ways may a purpose be expressed in Latin? B. 282; 340, 1; A. 318. 30. copiis: not forces here. B. 218, 1; A. 249; the subj.; rarely, as here, by both in the same sentence. etc., by et. Constituo is followed sometimes by the infin., sometimes by constituerunt as embodying the decree, and is made co-ordinate with esse, 2, N. How compared? The subject of esse is quemque reverti. domum: B. 182, 1, b; A. 258, b; H. 380, 11, 2, 1). 28. introduxissent: B. 314: 26. optimum: in pred. paid the most careful attention to the provisioning of his army; see p. 10. victory lies through the soldier's stomach." Caesar, like all great generals, very defective. It is a maxim of modern warfare that "the way to engaged only in short campaigns, their arrangements for supplies were ment had the desired effect of checking the enemy. causa: abl., 'for the iniquiorem: 'quite unfavorable position,' or 'less favorable position' equitatu: forces of the Belgae (see page 79, 14) was thus successful. own country, now in danger of invasion. Caesar's plan of separating the **33**. **His**: B. 187, II., b; A. 230; H. 384, 5. H. 421, I. 31. Divitiacum: N. to p. 79, 12. 32. finibus: B. 187, III.; A. 228; H. 386. cognoverant: trans. as if impf. B. 262, A; H. 471, 3. aliorum, 'of others,' as opposed to domesticis, 'their own.' decertarent, A. 336; H. 524. convenirent: in dir. disc., convenite, or conveniamus; sc. B. 316; A. 339; H. 523, III. The clause (ut) ... convenirent follows circumventos interfecerunt: 25. looked upon as instrument; how is agency expressed in per: 'over'; ipsos: i. e., hostes. Why neut.? B. 15, A, 3; A. 29, c; H. 42, II., read N. to p. 77, 5, Coniurandi. As the Gauls for the most part 'surrounded and killed.' The Bellovaci (100,000 29. alienis : =

ing magno . . . tumultu, and in turn explained by the causal clause cum sition might be expected here? strepitu: B. 220; A. 248; H. 419, III. ginning with 'After.' . . properaret. 35. re: what 'matter'? Trans. this abl. abs. by a clause be-Trans., 'without any definite arrangement,' etc. secunda vigilia: from 9 to 12 P.M.; see p. 33. 248; H. 419, III. **36.** castris: what preponullo . . . imperio: abl. abs., explain-

cognita: with re; why abl.?

4. discederent: why are indirect questions put in the subj.?

B. 300; H. 528,2.

5. exercitum equitatum-'as the duration of daylight permitted' (lit. 'as the length of the day 'to be out of danger.' viderentur, continerentur: subj. by attraction. (those) on the rear of the line of march, to whom (the Romans) had come, 2; A. 317; H. 497, I. His: pl., from the idea of equites in equitatum. Why dat.?

9. Labienum: N. to p. 51, 31. 10. novissimos: sc. hostes; 'the rear.' milia: B. 181, I; A. 257; H. 379.

11. eorum fugientium: 'of them as they fled.'

12. cum . . . consisterent: 'since mum agmen: 'the rear' of the retreating Belgae. their departure only a feint, to cover up some stratagem. at day-break.' B. 241, 1; A. 193; H. 440, 2, N. I. 6. re: i. e., the fact that the Belgae had really retreated; previously Caesar had thought que: force of que? B. 341, I, b; A. 156, a; H. 554, I, 2. The cwas of less account than the 'army' proper, made up of legions. fugae: B. 192, I; A. 234, a; H. 391, I. 3. per: difference in meaning between per and ab denoting agency? A. 246, b; H. 415, I., I, N. I. ure the appearance of a rout.' B. 297, I; A. 332, e; 286, 2; A. 326; H. 517. 2. fecerunt, ut, etc.: 'they gave their departthe first to get under way, to be at the head of the retreating forces. nerent -que. B. 286, 2; A. 326; H. 517. after cum, above, co-ordinate with the compound pred., consisterent sustithan that of the first. dinibus: 'ranks.' Notice that the time of the second abl. abs. is later oughly, which are only different forms of one original word. B. 324, I; A. 342; H. 529, II. neque: 'and not.' necessitate: 'compulsion.' 15. clamore: the 'shouting,' 'din,' of the combatants at to those at the head of the retreating column. See Idioms, p. 389. were making a stand.' entium: 'of them as they fled.' form with ei as subject? castris: what preposition might be expected here? sub: 'about,' 'towards.' perturbatis: force of per-? 1. quisque . . . peteret: i. e., each one wished to be 13. priores: sc. hostes, subject of ponerent; refers praesidium: '(hope of) refuge.' ventum erat: B. 138, IV.; A. 146, c; H. 301, I. 19. erat imperatum: why not Cf. English through and thor-18. quantum . . . spatium : 14. abesse a periculo: moraretur: B. 282, H. 498, II., N. 2. Prima luce: The cavalry 7. novissi-

tory by the Aedui (see N. to p. 81, 33), Caesar proceeds to reduce the of the Belgae by the defeat at the Aisne and the invasion of their terrireciperent: = ne se prius — reciperent. survives in the city of Soissons. B. 292; A. 327; H. different states one by one. se reciperent: 'could recover themselves.' **XII.** 20. diei: B. 201, 3, a; A. 214, g; H. 398, 5. 520, 11. 21. Suessionum: see map; the name **22**. Remis: B. 192, 1; A. 234, a; Having now scattered the forces priusquam se—

antecedent supply ea with comparare. 27. usui: B. 338, 3; 191, 1; A. 233, 300; H. 390, II., N. 2; 542, III. Could oppugnando have been used an arrangement known as *chiasmus*. B. 350, 11, c; A. 344, f; H. 636, v. 4. paucis defendentibus: abl. abs., concessive; 'though there were but 'immediately after his arrival' (lit. 'on the march,' 'after the march'). sons, nearly thirty miles west of Berry-au-Bac; see map. 'thrown up,' 'constructed.' on the various operations of the siege, see pp. 34-36. flight, and now by night stealthily entered the town. 29. vineis, etc.: tary engines. In the mean time the fleeing hosts had paused in their instead of ad oppugnandum? 28. proxima nocte: Caesar in one day had marched from Berry-au-Bac to Soissons, and begun to get ready his milifrom a siege? See pp. 34-36. vineas agere: see Vocab. quae: as few defenders.' was a hard matter, and the difficulty of scaling the wall was greatly inladders reach to the top; if the moat was deep and wide, the filling of it was high, an attacking party must fill up the moat in order to make their esse: sc. id (oppidum). 24. vacuum: sometimes followed by the abl. without a preposition. Noviodunum means 'new town'; cf. Newton, Newcastle, Naples (from Neapolis, νεὰ πόλιs), Neuville, Neufchateau, Neustadt, etc. ex itinere: rentur: after petentibus. B. 295, 1; A. 331; H. 498, 1. 33. petentibus Remis: 'at the request of the Remi.' ut conservapositive, 'which they ('being,' 'since they were'), Gauls, 245, b; H. 416, I., 2), N. I. 23. Noviodunum: thought to have been on the site of Soisfossae: goes with latitudinem, while muri dep. on altitudinem, 26. expugnare: how did the storming of a city differ 25. latitudinem, etc.: if the wall of a town operum: 'siege-works.' magnitudine, celeritate: B. 219; A. 27. usui: B. 338, 3; 191, 1; A. 31. Galli: ap-30. iacto: The name had,'

XIII. 34. primis: = principibus. B. 236; A. 188; H. 441. for appositives? civitatis: = civium; kind of gen.? 35. Ga see p. 78, 35. 35. Galbae:

see Idioms, and B. 226, I; A. 253; H. 424. Breteuil, about fifty miles northwest of Noviodunum. See map. tulissent: when is *cum* temporal used with the subj.?

4. cir to p. 69, 36. 'boys' merely. his protection.' accessisset (1.8) to poneret, be brought out in trans.? How should the change of tense from contulissent to abesset, and from adv., with quinque. milia: how is extent of space expressed in Latin? expressing humiliation and entreaty. Page 83. se suaque: see IDIOMS. 2. Qui: 'they.' B. 251, 6; A. 180, f; H. 453. See N. 7. neque: = et non. 9. pueri: 'children,' not passis manibus: abl. abs., 'with outspread hands,' What are the principal parts of 3. Bratuspantium: to-day 6. an eius fidem: 'under maiores natu: 4. circiter:

pando and pation? more: abl. of manner, with passis. B. 116; A. 128, a; H. 235. 10. petierunt:

bella: trans. as if quaecumque bella, 'whatever wars.' ciderunt, (Aedui) sustentare ('hold out') consuerunt ( = solent). si qua bis. B. 319, A, B, a; A. 337; H. 527, 1. 22. auxiliis, opibus: abl. of manner, means, or cause? 23. si, etc.: in dir. disc., si qua bella inreferring to the request of the preceding sentence. si fecerit—[eum] amplificaturum [esse]: in dir. disc., si feceris (fut. pf. indic.), amplifica-21. eos: i.e., Bellovacos; could se have been used here? Quod: this, passion' common to all men of feeling at the sight of those in trouble. those helpless and entirely in his power, while mansuetudo is the 'commentia: why abl.? Clementia is the 'mercy' with which a man treats subj. also in dir. disc. B. 300, 1; A. 334; H. 529, I. 19 Britanniam: see p. 43. 20. sua: emphatic, 'his usual' (i. e., 'his own'). cle -and.' 17. Qui: as antecedent sc. eos with profugisse. here = auctores, 'advisers.' 18. civitati: why dat.? abstract nouns? B. 55, 4, c; A. 75, c; H. 130, 2. que: 'every kind of ill-treatment and insult.' What force has the pl. of rent, like a wheel within a wheel. A. 330, 3, e; H. 523, I., N. 14. fuisse: 'had been'; fuerunt in dir. disc. B. 317; A. 336, a; H. 523, I. qui dicerent: 'who kept saying.' B. 318; A. 336; H. 524. What meaning would dixerint have had in this connection? 15. Aeduos . . perferre: indir. disc. dep. on dicerent in the same of the s dep. on the idea of saying in facit verba. Study N. to p. 78, 4. B. 331, I.; cus: the Aeduan; N. to p. 79, 12. 12. eum: Caesar. facit verba: 'pleads.' 12. Bellovacos, etc.: indir. disc. to the end of the chapter, XIV. 11. Pro: 'On behalf of.' omnes indignitates contumelias-12. eum : Caesar. his: i.e., Bellovăcis. 16. et - et: 'both facit verba: principes:

conservaturum: why must esse be supplied? from the subjective genitive? sake of honor to Divitiacus'). see p. 79, 2, and map.

31. cum: temporal, causal, or concessive?

32. Nullum, etc.: indir. disc. to the end of the chapter. B. 331, I.; See map. route lay to the north, probably by way of Samarobriva (now Amiens). pledge of submission. him from demanding enough hostages to bind them securely in their acus's sake Caesar had spared the Bellovaci their lives did not prevent 27. sexcentos obsides: an unusual number. 224, I; A. 251; H. 419, II. 219; A. 245; H. 416. 25. in fidem: N. to l. 6 above. recepturum, 24. honoris, etc.: 'out of regard for Divitiacus' (lit. 'for the 30. Nervii: considered the most savage of all the Belgae; 28. eo loco: i. e., Bratuspantium. Caesar's See N. to p. 61, 23, iniuriis. Divitiaci: how does the objective differ multitudine: B. 226; A. 253; H. 424. nusual number. The fact that for Diviti-26. auctoritate: B.

rather to the manifestation of courage in brave deeds. existimarent: why subj.? Why not pres. tense? B. 314; 267, I, 2; A. 336; 286; 286, B. 331, I.; A. 330; H. 535. 34. rebus: why abl.? animos: 'spirit,' courage,' as a quality of character, while virtus, 'valor,' has reference new thing! force of the negative goes with the verb. Prohibition is not an entirely 'traders have.' A. 330, 3, e; H. 523, I., N. Study N. to p. 78, 4. l. 15 above. sese . . . accepturos [esse]: indir. disc. dep. on confirmare; see N. to 283, 3, a; A. 320, e; H. 517. p. 47, 12. 'rebuke'; incusare: 'find fault with,' 'blame.' quality (characteristic), which takes the place of an adj. R. I; H. 524, and 493, I. qui: 'since they'; would be used with subj. in dir. disc. B. 320, e; H. 517. 37. patriam: is this a noun or adjective? nihil vini: B. 201, 1; A. 216, a, 1; H. 397, 1. 33. inferri: sese: refers to eos understood, subject of confirmare. nihil pati vini: = (eos) non pati quicquam vini; the 35. -que: connects feros with a gen. of esse mercatoribus: 36. reliquos : N. to increpitare:

B. 187, II., a; A. 227; H. 385, II. 6. experiments or result? 7. in itinere: '(already) on the way? 8. per aetatem: '("" reason of (old) age.' 9. viderentur: why subj.? eum locum: there referred to was in the route on the map. triduum := tres dies. B. 181, 1; A. 256; H. 379. iter fecisset: 'had advanced.' Why subj.? inveniebat:= quaerendo cognoscebat.

2. Sabim: B. 37; A. 56, a, 1; H. 62, II, 2, (1). From Sabis comes the modern name of the river, Sambre. See map. milia: marshy country about Thuin, on the south bank of the Sambre, some we should say 'a place.' Perhaps the spot here referred to was in the B. 181, I; A. 257; H. 379. Why not abl.? B. 217, 3; A. 247, 6; H. 417, I., N. 2. **5.** Atrebatis: of the second declension only here. Cf. N. to 10. exercitui . . . esset: trans. freely, 'an army could not go.' unexpressed antecedent of qui; for subject supply eas, from ab his above miles northeast of Hautmont. Page 84. Viromanduis: also spelled Veromanduis. XVI. 1. eorum : i. e., Nerviorum. coniecisse: the object is mulieres, and the See map. Trace Caesar's

\_\_... 11. centuriones: see p. 22. order to choose. B. 280 ... A with the subj.? quidam: be careful never to confuse quidam with quidem Suessiones, and Bellovaci. 201, 1, a; A. 216, c; H. 397, 3, N. 3. tion for encampment, see p. 31. den that carried the impedimenta. Study pp. 29-31. pression consuctudine itineris, 'the usual marching order of those days.' 15. dierum: grammatically dep. on itineris, in thought dep. on the excenturiones: see p. 22. 12. qui—deligant: 'in B. 282, 2; A. 317; H. 497, I. On the choice of a loca-17. impedimentorum: here = the beasts of bur-**14.** facerent: when is cum temporal used ex . . . Gallis: with complures. Difference between impedimenta and dediticiis: i. e., the Ambiani,

abessent: fut. pf. and fut. indic. in dir. disc. Why subj. quitus: 'long ago.' tere: = 'to withstand the attack.' 22. Adiuvabat: the subject is the clause quod . . . effectrum, 'the fact that the Nervii,' etc. 23. anti-332, e; H. 500, I., I. reliquae: sc. legiones. tere: = 'to withstand the attack.' 22. Adiuv subject is ut ... auderent,—'it would come about, that.' 332, e; H. 500, I, I. reliquae: sc. legiones. contra in fighting trim. ment, before the soldiers could throw off their luggage and get themselves the first legion to come up, just as it reached the place chosen for encamp-В. 181, 1; А. 257; Н. 379. 19. in castra: i. e., to the place chosen for encampment. 'all the military power they have lies in infantry.' 'this branch of the service.' with cavalry.' (munimentum). **30**. intrari, perspici posset: trans. as if active and personal, 'one could not enter, look into.' Force of per- in perspici? trained, thorn bushes were planted. The whole formed a living and imtudinem). In the spaces along the line of defence not filled by trees thus along the trunk branches would grow out, above and on the sides (in latition. The stem of the tree would then increase in size very little, but trees near the root they were able to bend these down to a horizontal posiesse be supplied? cum: temporal, causal, or concessive? instar being in apposition with munimentum). penetrable hedge. See p. 23. instar muri: 'like a wall' (lit. 'the appearance of a wall,' g ago.' cum...possent: 'since they could do nothing nihil, quicquid: N. to p. 49, 2, plurimum. 24. ei rei: 'f the service.' Why dat.? quicquid... copiis: freely, consilium: 'the plan' of attack, described above. 21. futurum [esse]: dep. on demonstrarunt; the 28 . 18. quicquam negotii: see Idioms, p. 388. sub sarcinis, etc.: the plan was to attack effecerant, ut, etc.: B. 297, I; A. 332; H. 27. teneris, etc.: by cutting into young 31. omittendum: why must contra (adv.) consis-**29.** quo: = in quodquo: B. 282, I, a; 20. spatium: venissent: B. B. 297, 2.; A.

the top. this (hill) and opposite to it,' i. e., on the south side of the Sambre. tate: 'upward slope.' Sambre. southwest of the city of Maubeuge. See Plan V. 34. Collis: the hill on which the Roman camp was laid out; it was on the north side of the B. 251, 3; A. 200, b; H. 445, 9. The site here described lies on the river Sambre (Sabis) in France, near the Belgian frontier, about two miles Plan V. See Plan V. **33.** haec: 'as follows.' B. 246, 2; H. 450, 3. **35**. supra: l. z, above. See N. to p. 77, z. nascebatur . . . contrarius : 'rose up, facing ab . . . declivis : 'sloping down uniformly from 36. acclivi-

bottom,' Page 85. 85. 1. passus: acc. of extent of space: infimus: 'at the opposed in meaning to ab superiore parte, 'on the upper apertus: i. e., free from woods. H acc. of extent of space: infimus: 'at the 2. ut: 'so that.' 3. aper-

4. Secundum: a preposition. line running parallel with it, which marks the northern limit of the woods to loco: the space indicated on the plan between the river and the dotted 5. pedum: kind of gen.?

pp. 31-33. H. 231, 2. proxime; the MSS, vary between the two spellings. agmen claudebant: see IDIOMS. 12. praesidio impedimentis: B. 191, 2, a; A. 233, a; H. B. 341, I, c; A. 156, a; H. 554, I, 2, N. been used? **9**. consuetudine sua ratio and ordo express one idea. B. 255, 3; A. 205, b; H. 463, II., 3. ordoque: 'system and arrangement.' with the clause *ubi* . . . *visa sunt.* 21. tempus: in pred. after *conve- nerat*, 'which had been agreed upon as the time,' etc. committendi et non. quem ad finem: = ad eum finem ad quem = usque eo quo. B. 251, 4; A. 200, b; H. 445, 8. 17. cedentes: sc. eos (hostes). 18. quae primae venerant: 'which had been the first to come up.' B. 239; A. 14. identidem: 'repeatedly.' Notice that repeated action is implied also in the imperfects reciperent, facerent, auderent. 16. neque: = duae legiones: the XIIIth and XIVth; see Chap. 2. in the vicinity of the enemy. different from what,' were otherwise than.' habebat: sing. because north side of the river, where the Roman camp had been laid out. abs.; trans. with contenderunt, 'dashed up the hill,' i. e., the hill on the 23. copiis: what is omitted? Why? provolaverunt: force of pro-?
26. in manibus nostris: 'close at hand.'
27. adverso colle: abl. proelii: how may the gerundive be changed to the gerund constr.? ut: 191; H. 443. opere: 'the work' on the fortifications of the camp. See 390, 1. Study pp. 29-31, and the arrangement of the legions on Plan V. just as.' 20. visa sunt: here passive in meaning. 7. copiis: B. 222, 1; A. 248, a; H. 419, III., 1, 1). ty of the enemy. See p. 30. expeditas: predicative. See 10. collocarat: not collect. B. 116; A. 128, a; H. 235. 22. ipsi sese confirmaverant: 'had made up their minds.' 9. consuetudine sua: i.e., 'his usual practice' when dimenso: here with passive sense. B. 112, b; A. 135, b; **19.** prima: 'the first part of.' B. 241, 1; A. 193; H. 440, 2, aliter se habebat ac: 'were 8. ad hostis: could hostibus have quod: in apposition 11. proxume =

i. e., signum proelii committendi. constructing the rampart, an unusual meaning of agger. cedent sc. ei (milites) with arcessendi. aggeris: command to "fall in." What were the musical instruments of the Rovexillum: enemy from below. concurri: force of con-? **30.** Caesari: B. 189, 1; 349; A. 232; 344, i; H. 388; 561, 1. see p. 25. 31. proponendum, dandum, etc.: sc. erat, 35. successus: 'approach' 32. signum tuba dandum: as a aggeris: i. e., 'material' for 33. qui: as ante-34. signum:

attended to.' administranda, 'seemed necessary to be done,' 'ought evidently to be phatic non. wisdom of which was evident in cases of emergency. frequently placed a lieutenant in command of each legion, a plan the legions, the different lieutenants.' B. 81, 4; A. 95, a; H. 174, 2, 1). Caesar for him many a battle. B. 341, 1, c; A. 156, a; H. 554, 1., 2. The discipline of Caesar's army won sider as more important, the 'skill' (lit. 'theory') or the 'experience'? A. 233, a; H. 390, I. B. 176, 3; A. 240, a; H. 378, z. 1. difficultatibus, subsidio: see IDIOMS, and B. 191, 2, a; 2. scientia atque usus: which does Caesar con-5. singulis . . . legatos: 'their respective 8. videbantur: sc. 7. nihil := em-

quaerendo sua (signa). Rule for changing gerundive to gerund constr.? found in a maniple where he did not belong. in quaerendis suis : = inrust the metal and warp the wood-work out of place. partem: 'into whatever part (of the field).' 21. to come.' 22. ad haec constitit: 'by these in order to protect them from the weather; for exposure to wet would which was not taken off; others were covered with leather on the march 19. galeas: see pp. 24, 30, 31. scutis: B. 214; A. 243; H. 414.
20. tegimenta: some shields were made with a heavy leather covering. form and color the different legions and cohorts could be distinguished. it was important that the crests be in place, for by differences of these in crests, which were taken off from the helmets on the march. In battle accommodanda: for putting on their decorations, particularly the thus hostium must go with animus, not with exiguitas. that the word to which -que is attached always belongs after it in constr.; profectus: principal parts of *proficisor* and *proficio?* pugnantibus occurrit: 'finds them (already) fighting.'

17. hostiumque: notice aberant: gives the reason for signum dedit. quam quo: = quam ut eo.
15. in alteram partem: 'in the opposite direction,' i. e., from the xth and xth legions over to the xith and viith. See Plan V.
16. retinerent, perturbarentur, sustinerent, posset: B. 284, 4; A. 332, b; a; A. 200, b; H. 445, 9. Under ordinary circumstances it was a serious offence for a soldier to be 9. necessariis, etc.: 'having given (only) the indispensable 10. quam in partem : = in eam partem, in quam. B. 251, 4, 22. ad haec constitit: 'by these he took his stand.' **13.** animo: B. 226; A. 253; H. 424. 12. suae: 'their usual,' 'their well-known.' scutis: B. 214; 21. devenit: 'happened Quam: with in A. 243; H. 414. 18. ad insignia 14. quod . . .

legionibus: abl. abs., 'as the legions were ordo:=, the arrangement approved by military science. parte: 'different legions in different places.' XXII. 25. quam ut: why not with subj. as in 1. 12 above? scattered. B. 253, I, 2; A. 203, c; H. aliae alia 26. diversis

the enemy were so obscured by the thicket that Caesar could not tell sepibus interiectis: B. 227, 2, d; 240, 2; A. 255; 93, b; H. 431 and 444, I. ante: = supra; see Chap. 17, 18. **28**. certa subsidia collocari— 191; H. 443. where reserve forces could be advantageously posted. certa: B. 239; A. poterant: 'reserves could be definitely stationed'; i. e., the movements of ante : = supra; see Chap. 17, 18. **30**. provideri: sc. poterat. 27. resisterent, impediretur: B. 286, 2; A. 326; H. 517. 29. quaque: from quisque. from quisque. opus esset: see IDIOMS. 31. fortunae: dep. on eventus, 'issues.'

**EXIII.** 34. acie: gen. B. 52, 3; A. 74, a; H. 120. For the position of the legions here mentioned and the Atrebates, see Plan V. pilis emissis: 'having hurled their pikes.' What were the weapons of the Roman soldier? See pp. 23, 24. 35. vulneribus confectos: see of the 1xth and xth legions. having crossed the river, rushed. hill on which the Roman legions were posted, up which the Atrebates, the left of the Roman line. Idioms, р. 382. **37.** conantes: sc. eos (Atrebates). Atrebates: acc. See N. to p. 79, 4. 36. ex loco superiore: the slope of the compulerunt: derivation and force 38. Ipsi: the soldiers ea pars : i. e.,

to pursue the enemy, leaving the camp unprotected except on the right, where the xiith and viith legions stood. See Plan V. 7. non: with magno. intervallo: B. 223; A. 257, b; H. 379, 2. 8. constitisset: why sing? why subj.? duce Boduognato: B. 227, I; A. 255, a; H. Page 87. 1. locum iniquum: the ground south of the Sambre, sloping back from the river and covered with woods. resistentes a...nudatis castris: the vrith and xith legions in front, the 1xth and xth legions on the left of the camp, had abandoned their positions imperfect? profligatis Viromanduis; the Viromandui, like the Atrebates, had crossed sc. milites, from legiones. hostes: acc. occupied by the camp.' the XIIth and the VIIth. this case the left, whence the other legions had withdrawn. 228, I; A. 258, f; H. 425, II, 2, N. 2. The 'unprotected flank' was in the river, and were now driven back. quibuscum: ? why subj.? duce Boduognato: B. 227, 1; A. 255, a; H.
9. summam imperii: see Idioms. 10. aperto latere: B. totis: B. 350, 11, a; A. 344, e; H. 561, 111. 2. alia in parte: i. e., in front of the camp; see diversae: 'separately' B. 239; A. 191; H. 443. B. 142, 4; A. 104, e; H. 187, 2. erant congressi 11. summum castrorum locum: 'the height ex loco superiore: closely connected with 5. proeliabantur: force of the a, ab: 'on.'

XXIV. 12. levis armaturae pedites: see p. 21. una: 'together with them.' 14. dixeram: Chap. 1 respexissent (l. 18): force of re-? dixeram: Chap. 19. adversis: 'face to face.' cum eis reciperent,

in 1. 12. Notice the omission of conjunctions. the slingers and bowmen were included in the levis armaturae mentioned rebus: B. 219; A. 245, b; H. 416, I., 2), N. I. 22. virtutis opinio: 'reputation for courage.' 23. civitate: personified, hence were bringing up the rear. See Plan V. attendants of the baggage-train, of which the xIIIth and XIVth legions sent: B. 288, I, B; A. 325, 323; H. 521, II, 2. 19. praecipites: 'head over heels.' B. 239; A. 191; H. 443. eorum: the drivers and right had gained possession of the camp. they saw, to their dismay, that the Nervii by a flank movement on the front rush across the stream, they started to follow; but on looking back what was going on along the river. Seeing the legions at the left and in front, and hence the calones, who were stationed there, could perceive toward the Sambre, the rear of the camp was slightly elevated above the study pp. 31-33. As the hill on which the camp was, sloped a little getting back to it again. Notice the descriptive force of the imperfects in this chapter. hostibus: why dat.? 16. ab decumana porta, etc.: been routed on the other side of the camp at the time when Caesar's cavalry and light-armed troops that had Nervii came up so rapidly that they were already entering the Roman Why infin.? castris, impedimentis: B. 218, 1; A. 249; H. 421, I. distinguished from fremitus, general 'uproar,' 'hubbub.' legiones: the viith and xiith. domum: why acc.? in partem: see IDIOMS. 24 • cum: with vidissent, expressing time and 28. pulsos, etc.: is esse to be supplied? Sambre (see Chap. 19), were 21. ferebantur: 26. Numidas: N. to p. 80, 9; 20. clamor: 'shouting' 18. respexissent, vidisdiversos: participle. 'rushed off.'

mercy of the enemy. 32. sibi esse impedimento: 'were a hindrance their places in the ranks, but were crowded together and hence at the tion. ab ... cohortatione: = ab decima legione quam cohortatus erat. upon vidit; and there are several abl. abs. worthy of particular attenordinate clause is *ubi* . . . *vidit*, which is so long that *vidit* is repeated for the sake of clearness. Several infinitives with subject-accusatives depend has the verbs processit, iussit (p. 88, 9 and 11). The most important subthe first maniple of the cohort, which was looked upon as the standard to themselves,' = ' were in one another's way.' been the onset of the Nervii that the Roman soldiers could not keep 81. signis: the standards of the maniples; see p. 25. participles profectus and cohortatus (p. 88, 10) agree; for its predicate it sentence. of the cohort. The principal clause has for its subject Caesar, with which the 30. Caesar to possent (p. 88, 11), forms a single complex 34. See p. 25. signifero: here the one who carried the standard of B. 191, 2, a; A. 233; So fierce had

posts. posset: B. 283, 2; A. 320, a; H. 503, I. 8. uni: here = 'a'; cf. the French un, 'one,' which comes from  $unu\hat{s}$ . The English "an" and "one" were originally the same word. militi: B. 188, 2, d; A. 229; H. Book III. Chap. 5; VI. 38. ut: 'so that.' 3. ab novissimis: 'towards the rear.' 4. deserto proelio: this is the reading of the MSS., but does not make good sense. Supply laca with deserta, 'quitting their paulum: how different in meaning from paululum, paulatim, paulisper? perilous crisis,' in extreme peril' 12. militibus: why dat.? not *ut?* uti: what verify 11., 2. B. 282, I, a; A. 317, b; H. 497, II., 2. not ut? and to lessen the deadly effect of the enemy's missiles. spread out the ranks,' in order to give each soldier more room for action, of his men was an important element in his success as a general. Read "one" were originally the same word. the xiiith and xivth legions were not yet available, because too far off 5. ex inferiore loco: from the low ground along the river.
... angusto: see IDIOMS, p. 382.
7. subsidium: 'res front the enemy did not cease coming up, - and on both flanks,' etc. B. 240, 2; A. 93,  $\delta$ ; H. 444, I. **2.** vulneribus confecto: see IDI The brave Baculus did not die, but lived to fight several battles. Page 88. 1. primipilo: with confecto, abl. abs. See p. 22. proelio: B. 214; A. 243; H. 414. uti: what other verbs are followed by the abl.? 10. signa inferre : see Idioms. eo: adv. 9. nominatim: Caesar's personal knowledge 13. in extremis rebus: 'in the most 2. vulneribus confecto: see IDIOMS. 14. operam navare: see IDIOMS adventu: abl. of time and cause. 7. subsidium: 'reserve force'; hostis, etc.: 'that both in manipulos laxare: 'to **11.** quo: why fortissimo:

xiiith and xivth; see Plan V.

23. cursu incitato: 'having quickened their pace.' What relation of time between this and the preceding abl. abs.?

24. summo colle: 'the ton of the kill' on which is other, facing in the opposite direction, so that the rear of both was secure. conversa signa: B. 337, 2; A. 292, R.; H. 549, 5. See p. the enemy.' tur: B. 300, 1; A. 334; H. 529, I. Labienus, with the 1xth and xth legions, had driven the Atrebates in confusion across the river and gained possession of the camp of the of fearing? (two) legions gradually draw together, face about, and charge against 17. tribunos militum : Chap. 18, and Plan V Roman camp was laid out. 20. ferret, timerent: B. 286, 2; A. 326; H. 517. neque:= et timerent: sc. milites. How are ut and ne translated after a verb ing? aversi: 'in the rear.' 22. legionum duarum: the ex loco superiore: how was the enemy's camp situated? See 16. iuxta: i. e., next to the XIIth legion. See Plan V. Probably one legion simply took up a position behind the see p. 22. 26. gererentur, (28) esset, (29) versare-25. castris: B. 218, 1; A. 249; H. 421, 1. subsidio nostris: with what verbs 18 ut . . . inferrent: 'that the 22. legionum duarum: the

may two datives be used? 27. Qui: pl. from the idea of milites in legionem. quo...esset: 'in what condition the matter was,' = 'how matters stood.' 29. versaretur: agrees with the nearest in this agree. 'left nothing undone in regard to speed'). 'were.' the most important, subject. B. 255, 2; A. 205, d; H. 463, 1. Trans. 198, 3; A. 216, a, I; 214, c; H. 401, N. 4. nihil . . . fecerunt: 'they came up as fast as they could' (lit. nihil reliqui: B. 201, 2;

diers,' and thus atone for their cowardice in the earlier part of the battle. two reasons? 'the foremost,' 'those in the front ranks.' 37. etiam ... salutis: 'even in utter despair of safety.' 'in order that they might show themselves better than the legion-sol-(hostibus). B. 350, 10; A. 344, g; H. 563. 218, 3; A. 254, b; H. 425, II., I, I), N. 33. perterritos: with hostes.

34. inermes: with calones. Notice the nearness of inermes to armatis XXVII. 31. adventu: N. to l. II above. procubuissent: B. 283, 2; A. 320; H. 503, I. insisterent, etc.: what is the force of the imperfect? iacentibus: 'those that had fallen.' B. 187, III.; A. 20; H. 503, I. scutis: B. 33. perterritos: with hostes. cecidissent: subj. for what 36. quo . . . praeferrent: 32. qui: 'even such 38. primi:

his foes. quae: refers to the deeds just mentioned. facilia: predicacult (lit. 'from being most difficult'), their greatness of courage had made easy (of accomplishment).' Caesar often bears witness to the courage of description. etc.; a result clause, following as a sort of conclusion from the preceding order, ut iudicari deberet, homines tantae virtutis non nequiquam ausos esse, they had caught.' Page 89. 1. ex: 'on.' as from a hillock.' How compared? B. 71, 4; A. 89, b; H. 163, 2. 6. quae, etc.: 'things which, in themselves most difficonicerent, remitterent: sc. ut. 3. intercepta: 'that had been caught,' 'that 2. superessent: why subj.? ut ex tumulo: ut non, etc. :

the notes, and Plan V. in the way of,' was a hindrance.' to p. 77, 2, and Chap. 16. nihil impeditum: sc. esse, 'that nothing stood of the sea where the tide ebbed and flowed. of warriors to join in the great uprising of Gaul against Caesar, B.C. 52. See Book VII., Chap. 75. 10. pueris: 'children.' aestuaria: inlets their ancient strength, however, that they were able to send a contingent nected and accurate description of this battle, from a study of the text, 2; A. 272, b; H. 536, 2, 1). misericordia: N. to p. 83, 20. 19. imperavit: meaning, when followed by the dat.? by the acc.? See IDIOMS 16. possent: B. 314; A. 336; H. 524. gerated the losses of the Nervii in order to excite Caesar's compassion. See Chap. 4. vix: with quingentes. The ambassadors perhaps exag-15. milibus lx: the Nervii had promised for the war only 50,000 men. **XXVIII.** 8. Hoc proelio facto: = post hoc proelium. Give a conad internicionem: the Nervii so far regained 12. omnium: dep. on consensu. 17. usus : sc. esse. 11. dixeramus: see N.

of the Nervii. ut . . . prohiberent : i. e., from 'wrong and harm' to the weak remnant

A. 247, c; 214, c; H. 402 and 417, I, N. 2. This narrow slope, leading up to the top of the plateau on which the town stood, was on the west side. See Plan VI. 29. magni ponderis: B. 203, 2; A. 215, b; H. 26. despectus: pl., '(uninterrupted) views' over all the surrounding country, owing to the height of the hill. 27. pedum: B. 217, 3; 203, 2; Meuse, opposite the town of Huy, some miles below Namur. 25. Quod: is to be found on the hill Falhize, which lies on the north bank of the however, an eminent German authority, thinks the site of the oppidum and the Sambre, across the Sambre from Namur; see Plan VI. Goeler, oppidum: situated probably on the hill at the junction of the Meuse A. 233, a; H. 390, I. **XXIX.** 21. supra: see N. to p. 77, 2, and Chap. 16. B. 222, 1; A. 248, a; H. 419, 111, 1, 1). auxilio Nervii alias, alias: adverbs. eorum: the great throng of Cimbri and Teutones, who perished at Aquae i. e., on the west side. portare: to what kind of impedimenta does each verb refer? past action. tense from munierant, completed past action, to collocabant, continued Sextiae (102 B.C.) and at Vercellae (101 B.C.). (= custodes), praesidium: appositive. cum: concessive, 'although'; N. to p. 69, 36. partibus: 'sides.' Plan VI. 29. magni ponderis: B. 203, 2; A. 215, b; H. praeacutas: 'sharpened' at the end. Notice the change of **30.** Cimbris, Teutonis: N. to p. 67, 36. venirent: = in itinere essent. Why subj.? depositis: with impedimentis. auxilio Nerviis : B. 191, 2, b; 34. Hi: the 6,000 Aduatuci. 35. cum: causal. **22**. copiis : custodiam **32**. agere, 33. citra:

domicilio: rule for two datives? Page 90. 1. illatum: sc. bellum; see IDIOMS, p. 382.

mishes. tower was constructed out of reach of the enemy's missiles. See Plan hardly entered into Caesar's calculations in planning the attack and siege. on which the town stood was so steep and high that probably the rivers mention is made of the Meuse or the Sambre. The brow of the hill itself see Plan VI. tempt. 'what hands, pray.' 10. praesertim men of so small size,' 'such little chaps,' spatio: abl. of degree of difference. quibusnam: the -nam implies con-Gauls, not by Caesar. B. 323; A. 341, d; H. 516, II. 'remarks,' taunts.' quod . . . instrueretur: the reason assigned by the pp. 34-36. **6.** oppido : sc. *in*. 3. adventu: N. to p. 88, II. 5. vallo, castellis: these formed the line of circumvallation; 8. irridere, increpitare: historical infinitives. aggere: marked A on the plan. Some have thought it strange that in this description no 7. vineis, etc.: for the various siege operations, see 10. praesertim, etc.: 'especially (being) 4. parvulis proeliis: 'skirspoken contemptuously. turrim procul: the vocibus:

an insight into their stage of civilization. rent: B. 315, 1; A. 338, 334; H. 523, II., I. The Aduatuci thought the Romans would have to pick the tower up and carry it in order to move 12. brevitas nostra: see N. to p. 66, 31, magnitudine. 11. Gallis contemptui: 'an object of ridicule on the part of the Gauls.' This indicates their ignorance of mechanical contrivances, and gives

'against.' 24. traditis armis: = si arma tradita essent. B. 227, 2, 6; A. 310; H. 507, 3, N. 7. praestare: the subject is pati, 'that it would be better for them to endure any lot whatever.' 25. eum casum: and railway trains real gods, or demons. qui: 'because they.' B. 283, 3, a; A. 320, e; H. 517. 19. Unum: 'one thing' (i. e., ne — despo-liaret); indir. disc. to the end of the chapter. Study N. to p. 78, 4. divina: so the American Indians, it is said, thought the first steamboats and of the surrounding Gauls. 'such a condition,' i. e., of choosing between the mercy of the Romans 20. clementia ac mansuetudine: N. to p. 83, 20. 22. ne despoliaret: B. 316; A. 339; H. 523, III. 23. a: 16. qui: subject of dixerunt. 14. moveri, etc.: 'moving,' sc. turrim. 15. spectrose one sine ope 21. audirent : i. e.,

immediate carrying out of Caesar's orders. **31**. armis traditis: abl. abs. ram touched the walls, when captured should be given over to destruction. what two reasons? aries: see p. 35. In antiquity it was a rule of war that those besieged cities which did not capitulate before the batteringservaturum [esse], dedissent: in dir. disc., conservabo, dederrint (fut. perf.). B. 319, A, B, a; A. 337; H. 527, I. 30. attigisset: subj. for treating a prostrate foe mercifully. B. 220, 3; A. 245; H. 416. the wall, from the bottom of the moat up, was filled with darts. the edge of the moat. The deep space between the end of the agger and (Aduatucos). The pres. tense is used instead of the fut. to express the Cf. p. 89, 18–20. XXXII. 28. consuetudine sua: 'in accordance with his habit,' of **36.** summam, etc.: the agger had been prolonged as far as abl. abs. 32. quam: 'any.' See N. to p. 50, 29.
34. imperarentur: why subj.? facere: sc. eas 35. iacta: with multitudine,

Page 91. 3. pace sunt usi: 'they enjoyed peace,' kept quiet.'

the Roman sentries kept careful watch.

8. denique: 'at any rate.'

10. viminibus intextis: 'by weaving in twigs.'

11. tertia vigilia: formed a plot.' 7. praesidia deducturos [esse]: 'would withdraw the outposts,' from the redoubts and the line of circumvallation, where See p. 33. abl. of time. XXXIII. 12. ascensus, etc.: from this it would seem that the Roman What time of night was designated as 'the third watch'? 4. Sub: 'Towards.' 6. inito consilio: 'having

slavery. See p. 11. in . . . salutis: N. to p. 88, 37. 17. vallo: the Roman li cumvallation. 18. iacerent: B. 283, 2; A. 320: H. 503, 1. characteristic. tants of the town, as well as the people themselves, who were sold into nem: 'the booty' in this case included all the possessions of the inhabi-'fire-signals.' vance up a height in order to storm the Roman works. plain, so that the enemy, after rushing down from the town, must adline of circumvallation was on ground somewhat above the level of the 19. ad: adv., 'about.' 16. ut . . . debuit: 'as brave men were bound to fight.' 20. diei: B. 201, 3, a; A. 214, g; 21. cum: temporal, causal, or concessive? 22. sectio-See Plate V. 2. 23. milium quinquaginta trium: pred. gen. of 17. vallo: the Roman line of cir-15. concursum est : see IDIOMS, 14. ignibus: 22. sectio-

### EXPEDITION OF PUBLIUS CRASSUS TO THE WESTERN COAST. XXXIV. B.C. 57.

and the following tribes, see map. **EXECUTE:** 26. Venetos: see N. to p. 96, 7. Venellos: better spelling than *Unellos*, found in many editions. For the location of this comes the name of the town Rennes. has been found on Gallic coins, and survives in Essey. dedicated to Mars, have been discovered. of Corseult, in Brittany, near which the ruins of a Roman temple, and the following tribes, see map. Curiosolitas: Greek acc. of a Keltic word. B. 47, 3; A. 63, b; H. 68. The name survives in the town Aulercos Eburovices; see N. to p. 100, 25. 28. Oceanum: the Atlantic. Redones: from this tribe 27. Esubios: this name Aulercos : ==

iii. Events after the Reduction of the Belgae. XXXV. B.C. 57.

H. 529, II. XXXV. 33. incolerent: subj. by attraction. B. 324, I; A. 342;

of Gaul assembled; see p. 40. country was the sacred spot where once a year Druids from all parts 2. legationes: for legatos; see N. to p. 50, 18. emphatic position. 7. supplicatio: usually a 'solemn thanksgiving' lasted only three or from the ordinary camp? ment Touraine. 5. hibernacula: how did the winter-quarters differ modified form of the name remains in the city of Tours and the depart-Chartres, and in Chartrain, a division of France before the French was a part of Caesar's "province"; see p. 4. Revolution. Page 92. 1. se: refers to nationes; hence daturas, etc., are fem. quod: sc. id. 4. Andes: hence the name Anjou. See p. 33. B. 247, 1, b; A. 200, e; H. 445, 7. The name survives in the diocese 6. Italiam: see N. to p. 51, 31. 3. Carnutes: in their Illyricum: this also Turones: a 8. nulli:

#### BOOK III.

### THE WAR IN THE ALPS. I-VI. B.C. 57.

duodecima: Caesar had now eight legions, numbering VII. to XIV inautumn and early winter of B. C. 57. long to the year 56 B.C. (see pp. 4, 46); but the uprising of the Alpine tribes, narrated in Chapters 1-6, took place in the latter part of the the pass, and partly by plundering wayfarers. portoriis: see N. to p. 56, and grazing, partly by levying tolls on the goods of traders going through tains as from the hostility of the natives. These lived partly by mining arose not so much from the precipitous and perilous way over the mounpass now known as the Great St. Bernard, where the famous hospice is mentioned, on the map. one of the conspirators that murdered Caesar, B. C. 44. Servium Galbam: great-grandfather of the emperor Galba; he was I, B; A. 325, 323; H. 521, II., 2. The events of Book III., as a whole, begiving of hostages; finally, the ratification of peace. then the taking of strongholds; later, the sending of envoys, then the events, and should be rendered by clauses. First come the engagements, with an army of 30,000 men, in May, 1800. By this route Napoleon I. made his venturesome "crossing of the Alps," Octodurus. Rhone not far from Martigny, which is thought to occupy the site of flumen: to-day called the Drance; it flows into a great bend of the been a fortified town what word would have been used? Page 93. proeliis factis: the following ablatives absolute indicate successive How different in meaning from castris? Huic: i. e., Servio Galbae. Nantuatis: acc. 5. mittendi: sc. legionem, or milites. iter per Alpes: the 14. adiecta: 'adjoining.' Chapter I. 1. proficisceretur: = in itinere esset. B. 288, 17. alteram . . . relictam: 4. summas Alpes: 'the highest part of the Locate the Nantuates and the other tribes opus esse: see Idioms, p. 385. Italiam: see N. to p. 15. continetur: 'hemmed in.' the other part left free 6. periculo: the danger 12. vico: if this had castellis: derivalegione 51, 31.

part occupied by Galba. and turned the dwellings into winter-quarters. from them.' Galba drove the inhabitants out of one portion of the town 18. Eum locum: the

B. 339, 1; A. 296; H. 544. In how many ways may a purpose be expressed in Latin? **28.** tum etiam: a sort of "secondly"; cf. *primum* above. off individually,' not in cohorts or maniples. 27. commeatus: case? ribus singillatim: sc. detractis, 'because a great many had been drawn men'; the reason why is explained by the following abl. abs. mam: 'and that not entirely complete,' 'not having its full number of 24. ut . . . caperent: explains id. B. 297, 3; A. 332, f; H. 501, III.
25. consilium caperent: see Idioms.
26. neque eam plenissi. because taking the place of that clause as subject of the impers. acciderat. 23. multitudine: abl. of agent, because of the idea of homines in multiwhy not subj.? = in eum locum, i. e., in eam partem vici Octoduri. the ordinary meaning of cum? when is it used with the subj.? 20. eo: 19. hibernorum: 'of their wintering.' Id: neut. because referring to the following ut-clause, and nom. 22. impenderent: B. 324, 2; A. 342; H. 529, II. transissent: what is 21. concesserat:

but. 4. abstractos: sc. esse. nomine: 'under the name.' B. 220; A. 248, R.; H. 419, III. 6. provinciae: see p. 38 and map. 7. sibi persuasum habebant: B. 337, 6; A. 292, c; H. 388, I, N.; 'had (it = the fact) persuaded (to) themselves,' 'were convinced.' persuasum: neut. acc., agreeing with the clause Romanos - occupare et adiungere tional fact, that,' = 'and, moreover', the quod-clause is subject of accedenot written together? 'should rush down'; = decurrent of dir. disc. Page 94. 1. ipsi: i.e., the natives, the mountaineers. decurrerent: 3. Accedebat, quod: 'there was the addi-2. ne — quidem: why

H. 439. B. 138, IV.; A. 146, c; H. 465, I; 'help could not come.' p. 388. **praeter opinionem**: 'contrary to expectation.' sidio: B. 191, 1; A. 233, a; H. 384, 1, 3). **16. venir** 13. Quo : B. 251,6; A. 180, f; H. 453. tantum periculi : see IDIOMS, and the centurions of the been made.' 12. consilio: probably composed of the military tribunes pp. 31-33. 9. perfectae: agrees with what? B. 235, B, z, b,  $\gamma\gamma$ ; A. 187, a; refers to the construction of fortifications, alluded to on p. 93, 18. to the use of the soldiers, the erection of huts, etc.; while munitiones the laying out of streets, the adapting of the buildings already standing 8. opus hibernorum: 'the work on the winter quarters,' i. e., neque satis esset provisum: 'nor had sufficient provision first order of the eight cohorts in camp. 16. veniri: sc. posset. 19. itineribus: **15**. sub-

decided.' 'to a place of safety.' B. 218; A. 258, g; H. 420 and 420, 1, 3). isdem : = eisdem. 20. Maiori parti placuit: 'the majority ad salutem :

spect) they were at a disadvantage.' 30. alii: i. e., hostes. entirely of iron. on *nihil*; what kind of gen.? a nostris: 'on our side.' **32.** non modo: = non modo non. B. 343, 2, a; A. 149, e; H. 552, 2. defesso: i. e., on the side of the Romans. B. 237; A. 188; H. 441. Why ribus: abl. of quality. 28. ut: when does ut mean 'as'? H. 536, I. 324, 1; A. 342; H. 529, II. 25. decurrere, conicere: B. 335; A. 275; to gerundive? dat.? 33. excedendi: dep. on facultus. loci: what case would this be in if relinquendi were a gerund? Rule for changing from gerund H. 414, I. 29. eo : = in eam partem. = et nullum. IV. 23. Brevi spatio interiecto: = post breve spatium. gaesa: Gallic javelins, long and heavy, sometimes made ut: 'so that.' loco superiore: the rampart of the camp; see p 93, 18. loes ut mean 'as'? defensoribus: B. 214, I, d; A. 243; 26. integris: 'unimpaired.' 27. neque ullum: succedebant: 'relieved them.' rerum: dep. gen.? a nostris: 'on our side.' 32. non constituissent: subj. by attraction. B. hoc superari: 'in this (re-31. vi-

V. 35. pugnaretur: B. 260, 4; A. 277, b; H. 469, II., 2.

running clear around the camp. Such plurals are not uncommon. ad extremum casum: 'to the last crisis.'

4. Nervico: i. e., cum Nerviis, Neviorum. B. 353, 5, b; A. 190; H. 395, N. 2. The battle took place in the earlier part of the same year of of the rampart (valli; see p. 31) and thus making an opening into the camp.

2. fossas: pl., although there was probably but one moat, Page 95. 1. no 'while' with 'were.' ores facit: here almost = mandat. intermitterent: 'to stop.' B. 316; A. 331, f, R.; H. 523, III. 10. tela missa exciperent: 'should hist, present. B. 268, 3; 319, A, B; A. 287, e; 337; H. 495, II.; 527, I. centurionibus: how many in the eight cohorts? See p. 22. 9. certipresence of mind.'
7. unam: 'only one.' extremum auxilium:
'the last resource.'
8. experimentum: which Caesar is writing; see Book II., Chapters 19-28. simply on the defensive, 'and not hurl weapons in return.' (on their shields) the darts hurled at them, i. e., should act 1. nostris: B. 227, I; A. 255, a; H. 431, 4. Trans. by vallum scindere: i. e., by pulling up the stakes

the place whence or by which. B. 218, 9; A. 258, 9; H. 412, 11, 2. 14. sui colligendi: 'of recovering themselves'; sui is possibly pl. and dep. on **13**. Quod: = id quod. iussi sunt: sc. facere. portis: abl. of

pected). gen. sing. of suum. B. 339, 5; A. 298, a; H. 542, I., N. I. 16. potiundorum: older form for potiendorum. B. 116, 2; H. 239. 17. circumventos interficiunt: 'they surround and slay them.' B. 336, 3; A. 292, over.' 23. Order: Galba, quod—nolebat, etc. alio se, etc.: 'remembered that he had come into winter-quarters with one design, (but) saw that he had found the situation different (from what he had exutis goes with copiis. spoken of p. 93, 14, 15. R.; H. 549, 5. the gerund; generally, however, it is regarded as an idiomatic use of the of a conjunction is called Asyndeton. 27. nullo: etc.: 'as no enemy checked,' etc. alio — aliis: B. 253, I; A. 203, c; H. 459, I. 20. locis superioribus: the surrounding heights, 22. Quo proelio facto: 'when this battle was **21.** armis: B. 214, 1; A. 243; H. 414, I.; ex-3, c; H. 459, I. The omission **26**. **eius vici**: i. e., *Octoduri*. 28. Nantuatis: why

### ii. Campaign against the Veneti. VII.-XVI. B. C. 56.

P. Crassus: see N. to p. 75, 16. **36.** proximus mare: 'very the Ocean.' B. 141, 3; A. 261, a; H. 391, z; cf. N. to p. 47, 10. dibus: N. to p. 92, 4. hiemarat: B. 116, 1; A. 128, a; H. 235. are alone mentioned. Book II., Chapters 1-33. 'he had every reason to think.' was under Caesar's authority. See p. 4. 32. Sedunis: of the Alpine tribes the Seduni, as the most important, Page 96. 1. praefectos: officers of the auxilia; see N. to p. 67, 4 complures: goes with civitates. 30. cum: 'although.' inita: trans. as if prima. expulsis Germanis: see Book I., 30-54. 36. proximus mare: 'very omnibus de causis existimaret: 3. Esubios, etc.: see map. 31. z. Illyricum: this also 35. haec: 'as follows.' superatis Belgis: see

the wild and rugged nature of their country and their sea-faring life, the the dialect of the inhabitants of Brittany, who are at the present day the original Keltic language spoken in Caesar's time are still found in Bretagne, Brittany) to be given to the whole region. Traces of the by invading Germans (see p. 44), caused the name Britannia Minor (now This name remained till the influx of fugitives from Britain, driven out morican States, civilates Armoricae (see Vocab. for derivation of Armoricae). to the other. great carrying business by transporting men and goods from one country lations with Gaul were very intimate, so that the Veneti developed a Caesar's time, Britain was the centre of Druidism (see p. 40) and its re-Veneti were a very hardy people, whose power was felt far and wide. In VIII. 6. omnis orae maritimae:= omnium orae maritimae civi-7. regionum earum: limits orae. The Veneti, with the adjoining peoples, formed the Ar-Veneti: because of

the Veneti survives in Vannes. most secluded and old-fashioned people in France. The name of

350, 10; A. 344, g; H. 563. bors of the Veneti, and were forced to pay tribute.

11. omnes: object of habent.

12. vectigales: B. 177, 1, 2; A. 186, c; H. 373, 1, N. 2. Ab his, etc.: 'These took the first step by detaining'

13. suos se: B. the fewness of ports, many ships were obliged to take refuge in the haraperto: = magno impetu ('violence') aperti maris; hendiadys. B. 374, 4; A. p. 429; H. 636, III., 2. Because of the violence of the ocean and reveals itself among the French of to-day. 18. acturos, laturos esse: fickleness of the Gauls. The same national characteristic now and then 15. Gallorum . . . consilia: Caesar not infrequently alludes to the 1; 314, 3; A. 342; 336, b; H. 529, II., N. I, 2) and 524, 2, 2). 23. si—remittat: what would this be in dir. disc.? remittat: B. 316; A. 339; scientia, usu: B. 226; A. 253; H. 424. 20. acceperant: the indic. is unusual, and emphatic. B. 324. dedissent: dep. clause in indir. disc. 10. magno . . .

April. IX. 25. longius: 'too far away.' Caesar was in Cisalpine Gaul. naves longas: see pp. 36, 37. 28. cum primum: see Iddoms. Jose abl. abs. multum := magnope loci: N. to p. 48, 7. B. 219, 1; A. 254, b; H. 425, II., I, I) N. destria: 'by land.' aestuariis: 'ba acceleration of the control of the c B. 283, 3, b; A. 320; H. 529, II. on this account.' Spe: abl. IDIOMS, p. 383. **31.** legatos . . . coniectos [esse] explains *quod* . . . *adminissent*; 'in that envoys had been.' quod nomen: 'a title which,' i. e., the title of envoy or ambassador. **32.** ad: 'among.' fuisset: subject of admisissent, not to Caesar. B. 300, I; A. 334; H. 529, I. See 29. ad exercitum contendit: Caesar probably reached the army in May; we learn elsewhere that he was at Luca, in Cisalpine Gaul, in many inlets. 30. in se admisissent: for commississent; se refers to the Spe: abl. abs. multum := magnopere. aestuariis: the coast of Brittany is indented with 35. instituunt : = incipiunt. 36. Penatura

7. longe aliam atque: see IDIOMS. 8. in concluso mari: 'on a sea shut in,' like the Mediterranean, with which the Romans were naturally most familiar. 10. frumenta: why pl.? 11. quam plurimas: see IDIOMS. 12. Socios: 'as allies.' Osismos, etc.: see 4. ut, etc.: 'although everything might turn out contrary to their expectation.' B. 278; A. 266, c; H. 515, III. se posse: dep. on what map. From the Namnetes comes the name of the city Nantes; from the Lexovii, Lisieux. Page 97. **plurimum** : N. to p. 49, 2. 1. inscientiam : i. e., Romanorum. m: N. to p. 49, 2. 5. facultatem: 'supply.' 6. ubi: gesturi essent: why periphrastic? See N. to p. 49, 1. 14. auxilia: Caesar afterwards made the help 2. neque := et non

thus rendered by the Britons a pretext for invading their island. Book IV., Chap. 20.

- agency? tion of the Roman knights,' referring to the ambassadors (see p. 96, 12-14), who in this case at least had the rank of *equites*. B. 337, 5; A. 292, a; H. 549, 5, N. 2.

  20. ne ... arbitrarentur: like the preceding nouns, appositive of *mulla*; '(the fear) that,' etc. idem: subject of *licere*, 'the same thing.'

  22. novis rebus studere: see IDIOMS.

  23. homisame thing.' does the dat. with the pass. periphrastic conjugation properly express other reason for the mood? B. 292; A. 327; H. 520, I., 2. desire for liberty.' nes: why could not viros be used here? 18. iniuriae . . . Romanorum: 'the wrong done by the deten-How is the direct agent expressed in Latin? 24. conspirarent: dep. clause in indir. disc.; what natura: abl.; 'have a natural 25<sub>.</sub>
- of no palliation. He plays a prominent part in Shakspere's "Julius 'in order to keep their forces away,' i. e., so that they should not join the Veneti. Mood of curet, and why? Decimum Brutum: served with the land of the Galli; see p. 38. The Aquitani, being of different stock from the rest of the Gauls (see p. 40) had very little to do with them. the town Trèves.

  proximi? See p. 95 Caesar." history; whatever the motives of Brutus, the baseness of his action admits sassinated. There is no more striking instance of dastardly treachery in however, and accompanied him to the Senate-house the day he was asconfidence and esteem. Caesar also in the Civil War, and received from him many tokens of 36. Venellos: often spelled Unellos. See map. purpose. arcessiti [esse]: B. 328, 2; A. 272, b; 330, b; H. 534, I, N. I., (2) and 536, 2, I) N. 31. conentur: why subj.? 34. Galliam: here A. 339; H. 523, III. XI. 27. Treveros: the name of this powerful people survives in See p. 95, 36. 38. Pictonibus: the name survives in the town of Poiti-36. 29. adeat, contineat, prohibeat: B. 316; in officio: 'in allegiance.' 30. auxilio: dat. of Brutus joined the conspiracy against Caesar, 28. flumini: what other construction with 30. auxilio: dat. of 37. qui — curet:
- ers, and the province of Poitou.

  Page 98. 1. Santonis: see N. to p. 51, 25. fut. of dir. disc. 3. eo := in Venetos. posset: for indic.
- dit: 'it rises,' 'it runs in'; most MSS. and editions have quad bis accidit, 'which happens twice,' a reading inconsistent with horarum XII spatio; tongues of land; the *promunituria* were often rocky and high. pedibus: on the land side.' aditum haberent:= adiri possent. 6. cum XII. 4. fere: 'as a rule,' 'as a general thing.' incitavisset: 'when the tide had run in from the deep.' aditum haberent:= adiri possent. 5. lingulis: low is acce-

mans found it necessary to construct but one dike. See the small plan in and departed with "bag and baggage." In some cases probably the Roment as an agger (see pp. 35, 36), the townspeople had already taken ship the town. But by the time they were ready to attack, using each embanksides, thus giving a dry avenue of approach from the adjacent country to was low, they filled in the last stretch and shut out the water from both would allow, as at high tide the enclosed space would be under water. two massive parallel embankments, or dikes, working whenever the tide tide remained above water, the Romans prolonged toward the up to a level with.' Starting from the nearest point of land that at high ebbing of the tide. should happen to be there at ebb-tide). minuente, etc.: 'at ebb-tide.'

8. utraque re: 'by both circumstances,' i. e., both the flowing and the a fact conditionally true, would be stranded in the shallows, (in case they a fact conditionally true) Having prolonged their dikes almost to the city, quickly, when the tide A. p. 429; H. 636, III., 2. up near to it were stranded. Notice that afflictarentur is subj., while thus situated became an island; when the tide ebbed, ships that had come to pedibus above, 'by sea.' for there is only one tide every twelve hours. aggere ac molibus: 'by massive dikes'; hendiadys; B. 374, 4; 7. spatio: B. 231; A. 256; H. 429. **10.** operis := munitionum. rursus minuente, etc.: at high tide a town 11. adaequatis: abl. abs. with his; 'built Some editors change XII to navibus: corresponds extruso mari: abl.

fortunis: B. 188, 2, d; A. 229; H. 386, 4. coepera 12. cuius rei: 'and for this operation'; objective gen. cilius: 'all the more easily.' 16. summa: B. 350, 11, with the sheltered and comparatively still waters of the Mediterranean. A. 255, a; H. 431, 1, 4. In all these phrases there is an implied contrast 561, 111. 17. vasto, aperto mari, etc.: expressing cause. B. 227, I; **16**. summa: B. 350, 11, a; A. 344, e; H. coeperant: sc. oppidani. 15. eo fa-

and buffeting' of the sea. 'they had,' etc., according to the connection. and the following clauses sc. erant, to be rendered 'were,' 'were used,' armatae: 'equipped.' i.e., Venetorum. hanc: 'the following'; the particulars extend to 1. 32. as we) for.' Such an omission with namque is very common. ipsorum: XIII. 19. Namque, etc.: closely connected with the preceding. (But the Veneti have not the same difficulty in navigating these waters of beams, a foot in thickness [altitudinem here = crassitudinem], were please,' i. e., ' no matter how great.' = ut eo; why is quo here used for ut? planiores: 'more flat-bottomed'; sc. fuerunt. 20. aliquanto: 'somewhat.' 25 transtra, etc.: 'the cross-timbers, made vim et contumeliam: violence 22. prorae erectae: in this 24. quamvis: 'any you B. 223; A. 250, R.;

**36.** propter altitudinem: the ships of the Veneti stood too high out of water to be easily boarded. 'such as.' fleet) excelled in quickness only." 190; A. 231; H. 387. nostrae classi congressus: 'the encounter of in a different sense. velis: i. e., 'by sails of canvas.' put for the concrete. So we speak of "ships of great burden," though navium: = tam graves naves, 'so cumbersome vessels,' the abstract being count, a sort of correlative of propter - inopiam. for et hae quidem [eis erant]. eius: i. e., lini. tenuiter confectae: 'leather worked thin,' 'thinly dressed.' the chain-cables of the Veneti seemed worthy of remark. of clearness. thumb.' As pollex means also "great toe," digitus is added for the sake fastened (to the sides of the ship) with iron bolts of the thickness of a rostro: see p. 36, and the figure of the Roman war-ship. illis: i. e., Venetis. 33. ut una celeritate - praestaret: 'that it (the Roman 26. pro funibus: as the Romans used only cables of rope, 35. his: why dat.? nostrae: 34. reliqua: nom. neut. pl. 29. eo: 'on this ac-31. tanta onera **32**. classi : B. 27. alutae 28. hae:

ships, being flat-bottomed, when left by the tide settled easily and safely the wind, a nautical phrase. 4. consisterent: 'roc sonified, hence ab. B. 216, I; A. 246; H. 415, I, 2. notes "that upon which the necessity rests." on the ground. nihil: = emphatic non. B. 176, 2, b; A. 240, a; H. 378, 2. 5. navibus: B. 189, 1; A. 232; H. 388. The dat in cases like this deferreis, harpaginibus, the 'grappling-hooks' by which the Roman seamen caught hold of an enemy's vessel and drew alongside. See pp. 36, 37. Accedebat, ut: see IDIOMS. Page 99. 1. adigebatur : = adigi poterat. 4. consisterent: 'rode.' 3. se vento dedissent : = 'ran before 2. copulis:= manibus relictae: the aestu: per-

the complete equipment of a vessel ready for battle. ex portu, etc.: see Plan VII., and map. Trace out the courses of the fleets. The battle took 'could harm be done them.' B. 187, II., 6; A. 230; H. 384, 5. poles, by which they could reach and cut the ropes of the enemy's rigappositive of res. The Romans fastened sharp-edged hooks to long i. e., the decks and towers of the Roman vessels. erected,' i. e., on the Roman ships. tus, however, did not clearly understand.' the heights of St. Gildas. place in the Bay of Quiberon, Caesar's army being drawn up in sight on rum: here includes not simply the weapons, but also the ship's tackling XIV. 8. captis oppidis: 'by taking the towns.' 9. eis noceri: gravius: 'with greater force,' because falling from a considerable 20. magno 17. turribus excitatis: 'even though the towers should be e., on the Roman ships. ex: 'on.' 18. inferiore loco: usui: 'very useful,' 13. neque satis Bruto — constabat: 'Bru-15. quid agerent: 'what dat. of purpose. 19. missa: sc. falces:

man ship, which had caught hold of the enemy's rigging.

25. Gallicis navibus: 'on the part of the Gallic ships.' B. 188, 1, N.; A. 235; H. 384, 4, N. 2.

26. armamentis: the same as armorum above. usus: mare: why in with acc. rather than abl.? paulo fortius: 'a little braver (than usual),' unusually brave.' 348, 349; A. 344, i; H. 561, I. Plate V. fig. 5. cum: 'whenever. 23. comprehensi—erant: the plup. implies repeated action. B. 288, 3; H. 472, 2. navigio: the Rodered unmanageable. 21. non . . . falcium: of a shape not unlike that The ships of the Veneti, propelled by sails only, were thus ren-22. muralium falcium: see N. to Book VII., Chap. 22, and 27. uno: trans. as if eodem. 28. eo magis: 'all the more.' Reliquum: emphatic.

81, 4, a; A. 95, a; H. 174, 2, 1). We are not to suppose that Caesar's = hoc, i. e., such tactics, or such a stratagem. the enemy at once. their forces on one vessel at a time, instead of engaging the whole line of fleet outnumbered that of the Veneti; the Romans simply concentrated rounded by two or three Roman vessels 'at a time' (binae, ternae). 33. singulas, etc.: i. e., single ships of the enemy were sur-35. contendebant: B. 260, 2; A. 277; H. 469, II. 34. transcendere in: 'to board,' in the nautical

see N. to p. 59, 35. autumnal equinox. ment took place in the early fall, perhaps (as Long suggests) near the and in the previous military operations, we may assume that the engagefrom the time that must have been consumed in the building of the ships gotium: 'engagement.' in these regions is usually followed by a calm in the afternoon. movement) was discovered against this,' i. e., the boarding of their ves-Page 100. 2. cum . . . auxilium: when no remedy (i. e. counter 4. malacia ac tranquillitas: in early autumn a morning wind The date of the sea-fight is nowhere indicated. 8. ab hora fere quarta: about 10 A.M.;

sadors the gravest affronts that could be offered to the nation sending sons of ambassadors have been considered sacred, and insults to ambasthis account — in order that.' questions introduced by quo and quemadmodum. 216, a, 3; H. 397, 3. good judgment.' from the custom of placing wreaths on the heads of captives exposed for H. 554, I., 5. 12. gravioris: 'more advanced.' aliquid consilii: 'any **XVI.** 11. cum — tum: 'not only — but also.' B. 290, 2; A. 155, 1, a; 19. sub corona: see IDIOMS, p. 383. The expression arose 18. ius: 'inviolability,' 'sacred rights.' In all ages the per-13. navium quod: 'whatever ships.' B. 201, 2; A. 15. habebant: 'knew,' followed by the indir. 17. in reliquum tempus: 'for the 16. eo — quo: 'on

gave Caesar no trouble. these maritime states were so far reduced in strength that they afterwards can hardly suppose that the entire population was sold into slavery; yet of the conquered, see p. II; in this case he was certainly severe. sale at auction, as a sign that they were for sale. On Caesar's treatment

## THE REDUCTION OF THE VENELLI. XVII-XIX. B.C. 56.

runt: the shutting of the city gates on the approach of an army was a virtual declaration of war. **XVII. 20.** geruntur: B. 293, I; A. 276, e; H. 467, III., 4. **21.** copiis: three legions; see Chap. II. **22.** summam imperii: 'the chief I, N.; A. 235, a; H. 384, II., 4, N. 2. tent.' B. 176, 2, b; A. 240, a; H. 378, 2. opinionem timoris: see IDIOMS. 3 p. 73, 23. 32. duum: = auorum. spauo. wuy au... so that.' hostibus: = hostium, 'in the eyes of the enemy.' B. 188, every respect. people was becoming demoralized. third year of warfare with the Romans, so that the primitive life of the lerci Eburovices: one name; on the map abbreviated to AUL. EBUROhis paucis diebus: i. e., shortly after the arrival of Sabinus. copias refers to special 'forces' pressed into service for the campaign. See N. to p. 67, 2. pracbuit: 'produced.'

Page 101. 2. eo absente, qui: 'in the absence of him (i. e., Caesar) 26. nolebant: supply senatores, from senatu. **32.** duum : = duorum. 24. exercitum: an army composed of regular soldiers; **31**. loco: sc. in. 29. spes praedandi, etc.: this was the **36.** timoris: what kind of fear? castris: with tenebat; see N. to spatio: why abl.? 30. omnibus rebus: abl., 'in 35. nonnihil: 'to some excarperetur: 'criticised.' portas clause-25. Au-

non: impers., 'a lieutenant ought not,' etc. 3. teneret: B. 314; A. 336; H. 524. legato dimicandum

quam: = prinsquum. 21. concessum sit: B. 292; A. 527; 11. 520, 12. laeti: B. 239; A. 191; H. 443. ut explorata victoria abl. abs., 'as (they would have done) if victory had (already) been seabl. abs., 'as (they would have done) 19. quod . . . credunt: causal clause, appositive of res. Caesar had a keen insight into human nature. homines: what men? 20. prius, Sabinus would lead out.' **14. occasionem**, etc.: see IDIOMS, p. 387. **15**. iri: B. 138, II.; A. 146, c; H. 465, I. **16**. superiorum: 'former.' A. 334; H. 529, I. neque, etc.: 'and that no later than the next night cured.' B. 305, I; A. 310; H. 507, III., N. 7. 23. sarmentis: 'branches.' virgultis: 'brush,' 'bundles of twigs.' quibus:  $= ut \ ex$ . **XVIII.** 6. ex eis:  $= unum \ ex \ eis$ . pro perfuga: 'as if a deserter.' **21.** concessum sit: B. 292; A. 327; H. 520, 9. Qui: B. 251, 6; A. 180, f; c.' 11. prematur: B. 300, 1;

but were lacking in determination, in grit (mens). duced by et, que, or ac, the conjunction should be rendered 'but.' See portunitate, etc.: abl. of cause. 'but.' When a negative statement subject of daretur. B. 181, 1; A. 257; H. 379; closely connected with acclivia. cursu: 'at full speed.' **27**. spatii: = temporis, dep. on n me resistens: 'not at all resolute.' They had spirit enough (animus), Madvig, Latin Grammar, § 433, obs. 2. 36. equites := equites nostri.

Page 102. 2. animus: 'disposition.' 3. resistens: adj. minicastrorum. XIX. 25. ab imo: 'from the foot' of the slope. When a negative statement is followed by an affirmative intro-31. Factum est: 'it came about,' the result was.' 29. cupientibus: sc. eis. 27. spatii : = temporis, dep. on minimum, the **33**. ferrent: sc. hostes. **30**. portis: i. e., 26. passus: 34. ac: ę

iv. The Operations of Publius Crassus in Aquitania. xx-xxvii. в. с. 56.

states subject to Rome kept muster-rolls (tabulae), containing the names 118, now Narbonne. 15. finitimae: agrees with civitates regionibus: i.e., Aquitaniae. B. 192, 1; A. 234, a; H. 391, 1. nominatim: tosăges, now Toulouse. name as it stands is probably a wrong spelling for Lucius Manlius Nepos), dictum est: see Book I., Chap. I. a third part.'

8. gerendum: is a conquest. See N. to p. 97, 34. really no excuse for sending an army into Aquitania, except desire of great advantage in the mountainous regions of the south. Caesar had in the campaign against the Veneti, but were employed by Crassus to cavalry; see Chap. 11. The cavalry would have been of no use to Caesar called out without delay. of the men fit for service, so that in case of emergency these could be See N. to p. 103, 24. 14. Tolosa: an ancient city of the Volcae Tecwere routed in Aquitania by the lieutenants of the rebellious Sertorius. In that year Praeconinus, mentioned only here, and Lucius Mallius (whose H. 430. The defeat referred to occurred twenty-two years before, B. C. 78. 5. Publius Crassus: with twelve cohorts and a large body of unde = e quibus. **8.** gerendum: is esse to be supplied? **9.** ubi: = in15. finitimae: agrees with civitates. 16 Sontiatum: see pp. 39, 40, and map. Narbone: a Roman colony, founded B.C. paucis ante annis: B. 223; A. 259, d; 6. quae pars: 'a division, which.' 7. ex tertia parte: 'as forming

perspici. **XXI.** 24. victoriis: B. 218, 3; A. 254, b; H. 425, II., I, I), N. 25. putarent: B. 286, 2; A. 326; H. 517. quid ... possent: subject of line of march,' off his line of march.' N. to p. 75, 16. 26. adulescentulo: referring to the youth of Crassus; see 28. vertēre: = verterunt. 29. oppidum Sontiatum: toex itinere: 'leaving his

Some editions have structurae instead of secturae. referring perhaps to the digging of pits for obtaining iron ore, as distinguished from the more regularly constructed 'copper mines,' aerariae. ted? B. 228, I, b; A. 258, f; H. 425, II., 2. 31. cuniculis: underground passages, from which the Roman works could be undermined or set on fire. What is the literal meaning of the 30. vineas, turres: see pp. 34-36. alias — alias: adverbs: see Idioms. day Sôs, a name derived from Sontiates. 36. faciunt: sc. id, quod facere iussi sunt. cuius rei: 'a device in which.' Quibus: 'since they,' etc. 33. locis: why is in omitsecturae: 'excavations,' diligentia: abl. of

same time.' quid accidat: accidat is generally used of the happening of something that in case he died a natural death they committed suicide. quorum ... condicio: 'the terms of whose association (lit. 'of whom') are these.'
4. commodis: B. 218, I; A. 249; H. 421, I.
5. amicitiae: dat. si Where is the corresponding "although" implied? = cum devotis in 1. 3, resuming the construction interrupted by the long parenthetical sentence quos . . . recusaret; cf. the repetition of se in Book 1., Chap. 35.

12. tamen: what is the force of this word here? ria: ·B. 230; A. 256; H. 429. happen to them.' unfavorable, as our corresponding English phrase, 'if anything should however, that they bound themselves to live and die with their chief, and much uncertainty hangs about the institution of the soldurii. It is known, One Desired.' XXII. Page 103. 2. Adiatumnus: the name is said to mean 'The 9. recusaret: B. 283, 2; A. 320, a; H. 503, 1. cum his: mortem consciscant: see IDIOMS, p. 382. summam imperii: N. to p. 100, 22. 6. eundem casum una: 'the same fate at the eadem: i.e., as 3. soldurios: 7. memo-

82-72. In the First Civil was a prominent general of the popular party. H. 391, 1. 21. adventu: abl. of time. cum auctoritate, etc.: with adventu. 23. Duces: B. 167; 168, 2, b; A. 185; H. 373, 2. 24. omnes annos: i. e., during the whole period of the war with Sertorius, B. C., XXIII. 16. natura loci: N. to p. 48, 7, and IDIOMS, p. 17. quibus: 'after'; abl. of time within which. expugnatum treacherously assassinated (B. C. 72). held his own against the government for ten years, till at length he was treacherously assassinated (B. C. 72). **26. loca capere:** 'to choose Marius, and Sulla's return to Rome, he organized an army in Spain, and from the standpoint of Rome. Hispaniae: B. 198, 3; A. 214, c; H. 402, finitimae: agrees with quae. In the First Civil War (between Marius and Sulla) Sertorius **18.** quoque versum : = quoque versum. Aquitaniae: B. 192, 1; A. 234, a; 20. citerioris: i.e., After the death of expugnatum:

praesidii: see surrounded on all sides by the enemy. so as to command the different avenues of approach, and prevent being plained by the following infinitive clauses. locations' for encampments. object of sentire; see IDIOMS. cunctandum, quin: 'there must be no delay about.' How different from cotidie? IDIOMS, under part. gen. See p. 31. augeri: why not crescere here? 29. et: 'and still.' 27. Quod: 'this (fact),' ex-**31**. in dies: 28. diduci: 'spread out' 'every day.' 33. idem: satis

sus had little confidence in their loyalty or courage; they had been lately ary triple line. waiting to see.' levied. quid consilii: see IDIOMS, p. 388. upon the wings, here were placed in the centre of the line, because Cras-Crassus could present a longer front to the enemy than with the custom-**XXIV.** 35. duplici acie: by arranging his men in a 'double line,' 36. auxiliis: the auxiliary troops, usually stationed 37. exspectabat: 'was

Page 104. 2. tutius: in pred., agrees with *potiri*. Why is an infinitive or clause neuter? 3. obsessis viis: 'having blockaded the exspectari: impers.; '(saying) that there should be no delay about going to the camp.'

12. ad hostium castra: this is the only attach. [Romanos]; see pp. 23, 30. infirmiore animo: refers to the Romans. B. 224; A. 251; H. 419, II. 7. castris: why no preposition? going to the camp.' **12.** ad hostium castra: this is the only attack of the Romans on a fortified camp mentioned in the 'Gallic War.' hesitancy to attack. 8. opinione timoris: 'impression of fear' conveyed by the enemy's 4. sese recipere: see Idioms. 5. 9. hostes: nom. 3. obsessis viis: 'having blockaded the 10. omnium: sc. militum. impeditos: sc. eos

the top of the rampart of the camp. 20. circumitis hostium castris: 'having ridden about the enemy's camp.' 21. ab: 'on the side of.' Where was the porta decumana? See p. 32 and Plate IV., fig. 10. the agger used in besieging a town. 17. speciem ... pugnantium: 'the appearance and impression of combatants.' 19. loco superiore: **XXV. 14.** vallo munitionibus: B. 214, 2; A. 243; H. 414, I. 15. quibus: B. 218; A. 254, b; H. 425, II., I., I.), N. 16. lapidibus, so high that the Romans began to make a sloping mound up to it, like etc.; abl. of means. aggerem: the rampart of the enemy's camp was

**EXVI.** 25. erat imperatum: are all verbs of this sort impers. in the pass.? B. 138, IV.; A. 146, c. 26. praesidio castris: B. 191, 2, b; A. 233; H. 390, II., N. 1, 2). ab: 'from.' 28. omnium: sc. hostium. oculis — intentis: abl. abs. 29. diximus: in l. 14. 30. prius, gereretur: 'what was going on.' quam: = priusquam. videri: pass., 'be seen'; sc. possent. posset: B. 292, I, b; A. 327; H. 520, 31. quid rei

- subject of venisse. ing cause. newal of strength. 32. quod: refers to the thought in redinlegratis viribus, i. e., re-37. quae: notice the neut. pl., referring to milium, and 35. per: 'over.' 38. multa nocte: 'late at night'; see IDIOMS. **36**. campis: abl abs., express-
- in Eauze; the Ausci, in Auch; the Sibuzates, in Saubusse; and II., I, I), N. vives in Garonne. the name of the river Garumna (whence the name Garumni) still sur-Bagnères de Bigorre, a watering place in the Pyrenees; the Elusates, have left a trace of their name in modern Tarbes; the Bigerriones, in Page 105. **XXVII.** 3. Tarbelli, etc.: see map. 5. tempore: B. 219, I; A. 254, b; H. 425, The Tarbelli
- THE EXPEDITION OF CAESAR AGAINST THE MORINI AND THE MENAPII. XXVIII., XXIX. в. с. 56.
- exacta: see N. to p. 100, 8. 9. supererant, etc.: 'were the only remaining tribes that were.' B. 283, 2; A. 320, a; H. 503, I. Compare Book II., Chap. 4. neque: = et non. 11. longe . . . ac: 'in a way far different from' (lit. 'in a far other manner than'). B. 341, I, c; further than they should. A. 156, a; H. 459, z, and 554, I, z, N. 13. contendissent: why subj.?

  15. eo: = in eas [silvas ac paludes]. 16. initium: 'entrance.' 20. own military operations, interrupted at Chap. 16, is here resumed. prope Crassus completed the reduction of Aquitania. The narrative of Caesar's reppulerunt: better spelling than repulerunt. longius: 'too far,' i. e., 7. Eodem fere tempore: i. e., about the same time that locis: way by which, 'through places,' etc.
- guard, because engaged in cutting timber, etc. militibus: "" """ see IDIOMS,

  This connection. 25. pro vallo: see IDIOMS, est fastnesses. densiores silvas: = densiores partes silvae. through the woods, the enemy retreated further and further into the forrear of their baggage-train.' 28. tenerentur: notice the force of the impf., 'were coming within reach.' ipsi, etc.: as Caesar cut his way more often found in this connection. 25. pro vallo: see IDIOMS, under pro. 27. confecto: 'cleared.' extrema impedimenta: 'the xime: refers to time. 33. Aulercis: the Aulerci Eburovices; see N. to p. 100, 25. pellibus: i. e., in the tents, which were made of leather; see p. 32. XXIX. 23. quis: N. to p. 50, 29. imprudentibus: 'off their 34. pro-**30**. sub

#### B00Ķ IV.

i. The War with the Usipetes and the Tencteri. 1.-xv. b.c. 55.

of Germany) is better spelling than *Suevi*, which is found in many editions. annos: to be taken with exagritati. B. 181, 1; A. 256; H. 379. ful tribes. Suebi (from which comes the German word Schwaben, i. e., the name is said to mean "The Rangers," and comprised several powerthe Rhine.") has for its theme the defence of the Rhine. day the most stirring of the German national anthems ("The Watch on territory east of the Killie, via in inc. ... Gee Book II. driven back, and hordes of Germans were settling in Gaul. (See Book II. The clause qui... consulibus shows that by ea hieme 55 B. c. is meant; for Pompey and Crassus entered upon their consulship on the first of anno: give the syntax of anno in anno post, and postero anno. others'; i. e., those in the field. manserunt: 'who the Suebi must have been not far from 100,000 men. 2, 1). As the cantons furnished 1,000 warriors each, the armed force of A. 330, b; H. 534, I, N. Ι. 6. agricultura: B. 214, 2, A. 243; H. 414. Swabia, or Suabia, the name of an old Duchy in the southwestern part German invaders in check till the fifth century of our era; see p. 42. Keltic peoples has always been the natural boundary between the Germanic and the 'from (that part of) the ocean.' quo: = in quod. Rhenus: the Rhine mani: in apposition with both Usipetes and Tencteri. which flows into the Rhine about fifty miles below Cologne. Ger-Usipetes, Tencteri: from the region of the river Lupia (now Lippe), January in atque usus: 'the science and practice.' that year. Chapter I. 1. qui: B. 250, 3; A. 199; H. 445, 4. Previous to Caesar's time the Gauls had occupied (each 2. consulibus: see N. to p. 48, 2, and p. 45. year) have remained at home.' illos: 'the 9. singula milia: B. 81,4, a; A. 95, a; H. 174, 11. hi, illi: 'the latter,' 'the former.' 13. privati ac separati: 8. dicuntur : B. 332, c; 10. 5. Suebis: 4. a mari: qui domi

America Germany does not seem extremely cold in winter. vestitus: why gen.? 22. pellis: acc. haberent: trans. as if pres. B. 268, I; A. 287, a; H. 495, I. In cases like this the English idiom differs from used to the mild winters of Italy. To one from the northern states of most part.' B. 185, I; A. 240, a; H. 378, 2. grain,' etc. changed their location every year in order to get from fresh ground the best results of their imperfect cultivation. anno: why abl.? 15. fruownership. N.; H. 465. the Latin. the climate is very cold.' Caesar was writing from the standpoint of one disciplina: 17. genere, etc.: abl. of cause. could obtain no other food they ate grass. maximam partem: 'for the mento: vivo, like vescor, is sometimes used with an ablative: 'live on Germans tilled their land in common, and did not recognize individual possessions of others. Like many other barbarous peoples, the early i. e., belonging to an individual and marked off, or fenced off, from the 'occupy themselves with.' 20. homines: in apposition with eos (understood), the object of eam := talem.trans. as if dat. An ancient Greek writer tells us that when the Germans Trans. as if se lavant. agri: partitive gen. 23. aperta: 'exposed.' lavarentur: B. 256, I; A. III, a, 21. locis frigidissimis: abl. abs., 'though **19**. faciant: B. 323; A. 341, d; H. 516, venationibus: 'hunting expeditions.' 18. a pueris: see IDIOMS. 14. neque longius, etc.: they 16. sunt in: = versantur

abl. of price. **27.** desiderent: B. 323; A. 341, d; H. 516, II., 2. 'Moreover.' iumentis: B. 218, I: A. 249; H. 421, I. ceperint. manos) magis eo (consilio), ut habeant (eos) quibus vendant (ea), quae bello II. 25. Mercatoribus, etc.: i. e., Mercatoribus est aditus (ad Ger-26. quam quo = quam eo, quod, 'than for the reason that.' 29. prava: 'ill-shaped'; deformia, 'unsightly'

1. summi laboris: B. 203; A. 214, c; H. 402. See Quin etiam:

meaning 'on a horse'; with ep-hippia cf. hippo-potamus. their customs,' almost = 'in their judgment.' turpius, inertius: in pred.

6. habetur: 'is regarded.' ephippiis: from two Greek words they leave them. B. 228, I; A. 258, f; H. 425, II., 2, N. 2. 4. cum usus est: 'when it is necessary.' 5. eorum moribus: 'according to quamvis pauci: 'no matter how few.' quamvis: notice the difference in meaning and use; force of -vis? Івіомѕ, р. 390. Page 107. 3. eodem vestigio: 'on the same spot,' i. e., where quemvis,

significari: 'in matters ex parte: 'on one side.' III. 11. Publice: 'as a state,' in meaning the opposite of privatim, n matters pertaining to the individual,' as an individual.' the subject is the clause magnum . . . posse. a: 'from the (country of)'; the desolate 14. una

the Ubii. 'importance,' on account of military power. and the Germans in Book vi., Chapters 11-24. experti: concessive, 'although they had tried.' generis ceteris: i. e., than the rest of the Germans. 19. moribus: what case? cf. p. 106, 18. Caesar compares the customs of the Gauls H. 373, I, N. 2. captus: bordering on the Rhine opposite Cologne. See map. been 600 miles wide. agri: nom. waste spoken of probably lay east of the Suebi, but it could hardly have 'considering the capacity for development.' **22.** vectigales: sc. *eos* (i. e., Ubios). B. 177, 2; A. 186, c; 15. Ubii: west of the Suebi, and civitatis finibus : i. e., of 21. gravitatem: 20. multis . . 19. moribus: 17. eiusdem 16. ut est

the number is given as 430,000. 30. trans flumen, cis Rhenum: i. e., from the standpoint of the Roman province. 32. transire: are verbs of hindering usually followed by the infin.? vi contendere: 'use viotremum: 'finally.' **viam**: N. to p. 66, 13. 29. aedificia, vicos: see N. to p. 49, 20. IV. 24. causa: = condicione. **34.** se, suas: B. 350, 10; A. 344, g; H. 563. o p. 66, 13. **36.** equitatu: abl. of means. 27. triennium: how different from tres annos? 25. supra: Chap. 1. multitudinis: in Chap. 15 26. ad ex-35. tridui

Menapii on the west side of the Rhine. 5. fieret: B. 292, b; A. 327; H. 520, 11. Page 108. 3. trans Rhenum: i. e., to the east side of the Rhine. partem: acc. of time. 6. eorum: i. e., of the

ineunt: see IDIOMS. quorum: B. 209, I; A. 221, b; H. 409, III. Construction of eos? in vestigio: 'on the spot,' here 'at once.'

18. serviant: 'are slaves to.' plerique: i.e., viatores. ad...respondedistinguished from auditionibus, 'reports,' hearsays.' the pl. cogant). Gender and declension of vulgus? (hence the sing. circumsistat), then as composed of eager questioners (hence explain hoc. B. 297, 3; A. 332, f; H. 501, III. 15. veniant, cognoverint: Why subj.? 16. cogant: the subject is vulgus. B. 254, 4, a; A. 205, c, I; H. 461, I. Caesar first thinks of the crowd as a whole invitos: 'against their will.' cogant, quaerant, circumsistat, cogant, nihil: = emphatic non. B. 176, 3; A. 240, a; H. 378, 2. committendum: how used? 11. consuetudinis: B. 198, 2; A. 214, c; H. 402, his committendum: 'that no confidence ought to be placed in them.' ant: 'make replies invented to (suit) their wishes.' V. 8. infirmitatem: 'fickleness,' see N. to p. 96, 15. Trans., 'For it is a custom of the Gauls to compel,' etc. rebus: 'facts,' as 17. consilia 10. nihil

unite with the Germans in an attack upon him, and that the war would 20. ne occurreret: Caesar feared that the fickle Gauls would

with ea. 24. ab Rheno discederent: i. e., to proceed toward the interior of Gaul, in order to help throw off the Roman yoke. 25. supplied? make war upon them. for the fut. infin. pass. What other expression could have been used? represents the fut. perfect indic. of dir. disc. fore parata: a substitute omniaque: 'and (with the promise) that everything.' III., Chap. 29. the Aulerci and the Lexovii, between the Loire and the Seine; see Book against the Belgae in June. Cisalpine Gaul (where he spent his winters) to the army, we do not know. maturius: 'earlier,' in the season. What time Caesar usually came from thus become unmanageable. graviori: B. 240, I; A. 93, a; H. 444. not 'determined,' but declared his intention = se velle ostendit. Qua spe : = huius rei spe. entered upon the Helvetian campaign in March, and upon that missas [esse] legationes, invitatos [esse] eos: in apposition 27. pervenerant: i. e., at the time when Caesar resolved to **22**. Eo: = ad exercitum. 30. imperato: 'levied.' ad exercitum: the army was now among 26. Eburonum, Condrusorum: see 23. facta: is esse to be 31. constituit: postulassent:

A. 191; H. 433, N. 1. than two peoples been referred to, primos would have been used plea was as follows.' B. 246, 2; H. 450, 3. Germanos neque priores inferre: 'that the Germans were neither the first to make.' Had more plea was as follows.' 49, 31. 34. quibus: i. e., locis. Cf. "a Sabbath day's journey." VII. 32. iter — facere: see IDIOMS, p. 384. B. 246, 2; H. 450, 3. 36. neque recusare quin: 'nor refuse to.' 35. quorum . . . oratio : 'whose iter: B. 181, 1; A. 257; **33**. locis: N. to p. B. 239; H. 379.

mood in dir. disc.? B. 283, 2; A. 320, a; H. 503, I. i. e., agras; supply se with tenere. possederint: from possido.
unis: B. 66; A. 94, a; H. 175, N. 1. concedere: 'yieldee
fessed inferiority.'

8. reliquum: 'else.'

9. possin dicere: constr.? object? venisse, (5) posse: sc. se. Page 109. 3. resistere: sc. eis, as antecedent of quicumque. attribuant, patiantur: B. 316; A. 339; H. 523, III. concedere: 'yielded,' 'con-9. possint: what 5. iis: the Ro-6. eos :

derstood), subject of occupare. as his messages to Ariovistus, in Book I. of his answer, which must have followed much the same line of argument that nation. etc.: 'would command the Ubii to do so' (lit., 'would order this to the Difference in meaning between alius, alter, alienus. VIII. 10. visum est: sc. respondere. Caesar does not give the whole 16. apud se: how different in meaning from secum? Caesar could command the Ubii because he held hostages from 12. verum: 'a fair thing.' qui: the antecedent is eos (unmbiect of occupare.

13. alienos: sc. agras, 'of others.' 11. Sibi, etc.: see IDIOMS, **15**. licere : sc. 17. hoc,

- first, as we do. **22**. **ab**: 'from.' order to make an attack on the Romans with all their forces. between the Meuse and the Rhine. with which a given period began and ended, instead of taking only the next day but one. IX. 20. ab: 'from.'

  21. propius se: B. 192, 1, a; A. 234, e; H. 437, 1.

  ab: 'from.'

  23. diebus ante: B. 223; A. 259, d; H. 430.

  trans Mosam: i.e., on the left bank, while the rest remained post diem tertium: = tertio die, 'the third day after,' the In cases like this the Romans reckoned in the days 25. exspectari, etc.: i. e., in
- I, l. 4. **X.** 27. Mosa, etc.: for the proper names in this Chapter see pp. 38, 39, and map. 28. parte: i. e., 'branch,' 'tributary.' parte... influit: the meaning is that the Meuse (Mosa), after being joined by the Waal H. 443. origin; their name comes from a word meaning 'good meadow.' See Motley's "Rise of the Dutch Republic," Historical Introduction, § 11. the Lugdinum in Gaul (now Lyons). The Batavi were of Germanic called Lugdinum (now Leyden), which should never be confused with calus: also spelled Vahalis. Batavorum: their capital was afterwards nation is the correct one, it is now impossible to determine. of the Waal, or of both, has changed since Caesar's time. Which explamistake in regard to the facts; others still, that the bed of the Meuse, or scholars think that the text here is corrupt; others, that Caesar made a ent, however, the Meuse empties directly into the North Sea. ocean, forming the island of the Batavians; the implication is that the a long course. 30. Rhenus: the name is said to mean "the Runner." See N. to Chap. Meuse does not flow into the sea by any mouth of its own. At pres-(Vacalus, Vahalis), flows into the Rhine below, eighty miles from the p. 106, 15. 31. 36. sunt qui: 'there are some, who.' ex: 'from the country of,' 'among.' longo spatio: 'in 33. citatus fertur: 'flows swiftly.' B. 239; A. 191; piscibus: N. to
- with several of less importance. time, as now, there seem to have been two principal mouths of the Rhine, Page 110. ļ. capitibus: 'mouths,' we would say.
- stitutum: i. e., that the envoys should return the next day but one; see n ron 20. 5. congressi: sc. cum eo, 'meeting him.' 7. anteces-B. 217; A. 247; H. 417. A few days previous Caesar was a considerable distance from the Germans; see p. 108, 34. He had evidently not heeded the request mentioned p. 109, 21.

  4. ut erat conused without an object. in the van of the line of march? p. 109, 20. 5. congressi: sc. cum eo, 'meeting him.' 7. antecessissent: B. 324, 1; A. 342; H. 529, II. Why were the cavalry usually XI. 3. passuum XII milibus: abl., after a comp., with quam omitted. rch? See pp. 29, 30. praemitteret: here **8**. sibi: i. e., *Germanis*, not simply *legatis*. praemitteret: here

sake of procuring water.'

16. quam frequentissimi: 'in as great numbers as possible.' convenirent: convenite in dir. disc.

18. qui nuntiarent: '(men) to command.' B. 282, 2; A. 317; H. 497, I.

19. 'would accept.'

12. daret: why subj.? sc. petebant ut.

illo: adverb, 'to the same end.'

15. aquationis causi in dir. disc.? B. 293, III., 2; A. 328; H. 519, II., 2. sustinerent: i. e., act on the defensive. see Chap. 8, and B. 218, 1; A. 249; H. 421, I. fidem fecisset: see IDIOMS, p. 383. 9. mittendi: what would be the form if the gerundive were used? 15. aquationis causa: 'for the ea condicione: 'the terms'; 20. accessisset: what mood 11. usuros [esse]:

some Aquitanian with the right of citizenship. See N. to p. 73, 4. The nostros. 31. agminis: the main force; see p. 30. venissent: subj. for two reasons, — by attraction, and past tense after prius of Caesar's cavalry. from their horses. 22. cum: 'although.' 23. equites: B. 217, 3; A. 247, c; H. 417, 1, N. 2. ii, qui . . . Mosam: see Chap. 9. 26. indutiis: dat. of 'this mishap.' n. to p. 48, 29. horsemen. over the Gallic cavalry. Caesar afterwards made much use of German result of the skirmish showed the great superiority of the German definite number. purpose. ii, qui . . . Mosam: see Chap. 9.
26. indutiis: dat. of
27. resistentibus: sc. nostris.
28. desiluerunt: i. e., 21. ubi primum = cum primum, for which see IDIOMS. 37. potuit: why not subj., like accessisset, l. 20? ex equitibus: why not partitive gen.? Because dep. on a genere: B. 215; A. 244, a; H. 415, II. 34. amicus, etc.: 36. equo vulnerato: abl. abs. expressing time and 33. Piso: A Roman name, probably conferred on subfossis: 'stabbed underneath.' 29. deiectis: 'dismounted.' reliquos : sc. equis: i. e.,

pass by any day of battle? = 'not to let slip any chance of bringing on an engagement.'

13. diei: B. 201, 3, a; A. 214, g; H. 398, 5. eadem: i.e. as before.

14. nerfidia etc. to institutis own mainstife bla course. N. to p. 75, 3. 9. essent consecuti: subj. of indir. question. quibus:= eis. 10. nihil spatii: cf. IDIOMS, p. 388. 11. quaestore: see Vocab, and cf. Сf. Ідгомз, р. 390. 6. dum: 'until,' with subj. also in dir. disc. B. 293, III., 2; A. 328; H. 519, intulissent: subj. of characteristic and indir. disc.; 'by such men as.' 15. maioribus natu: see IDIOMS. they said, why did so many of them trust themselves in Caesar's power? Caesar accuses the Germans of bad faith. But if they did not mean what Page 111. XIII. 3. Hoc proelio facto: N. to p. 53, II. 7. dementiae: pred. gen. after esse, whose subject is expectare. 14. perfidia, etc.: to justify his own unjustifiable course **12**. quem: N. to p. 50, 29. 8. quantum auctoritatis: 'how great prestige.' 16. simul — simul: 'both — and.' pugnae: gen., 'not to

they could.' quid: B. 176, 3; A. 240, a; H. 378, 2; see also N. to p. 50, 29. de: 'in the matter of.' fallendo: 'by playing false.' 19. Quos: when is quod used with the subj.?

18. si quid possent: 'whatever they could' and a same a dictum: 'because, contrary to what had been said.' sui: B. 339, 5; A. 298, a; H. 542, I., N. I. Trans. as if se. quod . . . dictum: 'because, contrary to what had been said.'

17. atque: B. B. 251, 6; A. 180, f; H. 453. oblatos: sc. esse. gavisus: principal

and he suffered no scruple to stand in the way. matter seems treacherous and cruel; it was severely censured at Rome. perfidia. 31. Quo loco: i. e., castris. 33. inter carros, etc.: just as the Helvetii did; see Book I. Chap. 26. 34. puerorum: not 'boys,' but 'children.' 36. ad quos, etc.: Caesar's conduct in this whole German chiefs in Caesar's power. 27. spatio:=tempore. 28. -ne, an, an: 'whether, or, or.' B. 162, 4; 300, 1, b; A. 211, 334; H. 529, II., 3, 1).
29. praestaret: impers. 30. pristini diei: 'of the day before'; limits He had evidently resolved to exterminate these Germans at all hazards; A. 327; H. 520, II. XIV. 23. Acie triplici: see pp. 30, 33. 25. possent: B. 292; H. 520, II. 26. et — et: 'both — and.' suorum: i. e., the

12. libertatem: 'leave (to do so).' old men' really guilty of perfidy, why did he not put them to the sword, as he did the faithless senate of the Veneti (Book III. Chap. 16)? to p. 61, 14. 'after the dread.' had in Caesar's time. Waal now, however, is thought to have a different channel from what it Caesar means the confluence of the Meuse and the Waal (Vacalus or Vahalis, Chap. 10), which was regarded as a part of the Rhine. The 9. iis . . . fecit: if Caesar believed these chiefs and XV. 3. confluentem Mosae et Rheni: probably 8. cum: 'although.' capitum: not'heads'; N.

# ii. Caesar's First Expedition into Germany. xvi-xix. b.c. 55.

Chap. 9. commemoravi: Caesar uses the first person parenthetically voluit: explains illa [causa]. 16. suis quoque-rebus: 'for their own affairs also.' 18. Accessit quod: see IDIOMS. 19. supra: Chap. 9. commemorari 8; A. 331, f, R.; H. 499, 2. 25. imperium Rhenum finire: == Rhenum esse finem ('limit') imperii; see N. to p. 106, 4. se invito: Sugambros. only when referring to himself as the writer. See p. 18. N. to p. 51, 2. 24. intulissent: subj. by attraction. dederent: B. 295, 26. non aequum := iniquum 'an unfair thing'; 25. imperium Rhenum finire:= 22. quos : ==

the future.' movement.' thority? 31. id facere: supplementary infinitive after a passive verb, = quo minus id faceret, 'from doing that.' 32. exercitum, Rhenum: 429; H. 636, I., I. thority? **31.** id laret: 'claim'; would this be subj. in dir. disc.? B. 277; A. 268; H. aequum agrees with the clause Germanos transire. B. 179, I; A. 239, b; H. 376. potestatis: B. 198, 3; A. 214, c; H. 402; cf. Idioms, p. 390. Ariovisto pulso: where is the account of this given? miserant, fecerant, dederant: asyndeton. B. 341, 4, a; A. page 28. uni: meaning in pl.? 33. auxilium . . . temporis: 'present aid, and hope for that.' eius: 'his,' not' that.' 30. premerentur: reason assigned on whose autransportaret: sc. ut. Transrhenanis; i. e., Germans 27. sui imperii, id: 'that

average depth of the Rhine there is from 14 to 16 ft., the width from 1500 side'), similar pairs of logs fastened together were driven, but slanting these also,' forty feet down the stream (ab inferiore parte = 'on the lower these beams slanted a little. 14. (according to) the current.' 15 modo: 'not like a pile,' because a pile is driven in perpendicularly, while 13. adegerat: as we say, 'had driven (them) home'; the pluperfect implies repeated action. B. 288, 3; A. 280; H. 472, 2. non sublicate but slanted a little in the direction of the current. See Plan IX. a a.

11. ad: 'according to.' intervallo: abl. of degree of difference. lower end (ab imo). They did not stand perpendicularly in the stream, of each pair were two feet apart, fastened together, and sharpened at the and a half thick, were driven into the bed of the stream. The two logs reasons for supposing that Caesar's bridge was built near Bonn. 'plan.' Though the exact spot cannot be determined, there are good Caesar was always careful to keep the country behind him well secured. each other, the bridge may not have been more than 24 ft. wide posts, along the river bed. If so, since the pairs of posts slanted towards The distance 40 ft. was probably reckoned between the lower ends of the with each pair of tigna sesquipedalia. B. 81, 4; A. 95, a; H. 174, 2, 1). 40, e; H. 52, 3. Notice the distributive force, —forty feet in each case, **16.** quadragenum: contracted for quadragenorum. B. 21, 2, d; A. against the current (contra . . . conversa). See Plan IX., opposite a a. See p. 10. Page 113. inter se: 'apart.' 5. dignitatis esse: see IDIOMS, p. 390. 10. Tigna bina sesquipedalia: pairs of logs, a foot XVII. 4. satis tutum: when in a hostile region machinationibus: here probably 'rafts.' 15. his item contraria, etc.: 'opposite secundum naturam fluminis: 'with 9. Rationem:

beams, lying in the direction of the current, in each case connected a pair of tigna sesquipedalia with the corresponding pair of posts driven in 18. Haec: subject of distinebantur. bipedalibus trabibus: these

understand. They were probably something like those represented in the plans, marked c c. A glance shows that such braces would have quantum is acc. of extent, referring to bipedalibus. binis utrimque fibulis: what these 'pairs of braces' at each end were, it is not easy to fitted exactly the space between the two posts at each end. 19. quantum . . . distabat: 'the space between the posts (of each pair).' pontem has the force of a comparative. stream, braced the piers against the force of the current. ariete: '(serving) as a buttress.'

27. exciperent: B. 2 the place of planks; marked i on the Plans. in the direction of the bridge (at right angles with the current), joining materia iniecta: 'by laying timber on straight,' i. e., by laying girders the more closely. B. 223; A. 250, R.; H. 417, 2. 23. incitavisset: least fifty of them. the lower posts slanting up stream, the upper posts slanting down stream. The piers were now ready for the laying of cross-pieces and covering. proper distance) apart, and had been braced in opposite directions, i. e., disclusis: sc. tignis, 'now that these (the slanting posts) were kept (at the across (in the direction of the current), connecting two sets of posts. Some think that the *fibulae* were bolts, or wooden pins. **20. utrimque**, **ab extrema parte:** 'at both ends' of the pier formed by laying a beam brought about the result of which Caesar speaks—the greater the pressure the more closely the structure would have been bound together. 'and not' (lit. 'or not'). his being personified. N. 2. his defensoribus: abl. abs. expressing cause, = his defendentibus, presses purpose, as if dep. on causā. B. 339, 6; A. 298, R.; H. 544, 2, overthrowing the structure.' bridge against floating logs or other objects in the current liable to do H. 497, I. fluminis: marked e on the plans; these posts, driven so as to slant up woven probably of supple branches, were laid over the joists, to take rent; marked h h on the Plans. cratibus: sections of wicker-work, the piers; see d d on the Plans. directa: B. 239; A. 191; H. 443. В. 324, г; А. 342; Н. 529, п. Supposing that the piers were thirty feet apart, there must have been at longuriis: 'joists,' laid on the girders, in the direction of the cur-See Plan IX. b b, Plan VIII. b. Being two feet wide, they aliae [sublicae]: marked f f in the plans; they protected the 28. spatio: abl. of measure of difference, because supra 22. ea rerum natura: = 'such the character of 30. rerum: i. e., trunci, naves. The gen. of the gerundive sometimes ex-Haec: i. e., the bipedales trabes. 27. exciperent: B. 282, 2; A. 317; 29. deiciendi operis: 'for 25. sublicae ad . . . neu := neve**26**. pro

skill with which the bridge was built are a sufficient testimony to Caesar's 31. quibus: 'from the time that,' 'after.' The rapidity and

35. quibus pacem petentibus: 'to their request for peace.' 37. ex:

'ever since.' coeptus est: nase harmer'.' see that only a few of the Tencteri and the Usipetes escaped. 38. hortantibus iis: 'at the instigation of those.' From Chap. 15 we the Rhine (at Cologne, Maintz, Mannheim, etc.), and these with one genius in practical affairs. Even now there are only a few bridges across

tur: why subj.? 8 them to? ~.. in a 'state of siege' because overcome by the Suebi and forced to become tion seems intended to justify an expedition barren of results. clauses. B. 297, 3; A. 329, 2; H. 499, 3. In reality Caesar accomplished very little by the march into Germany. The following formal enumera-13. Quod: 'this fact.' the centre of the territory, which.' B. 241, I; A. 193; H. 440, 2, N. 2. them to, etc. B. 295, I; A. 331, a; H. 498, I. **11.** medium: in pred. agreeing with *locum* understood, = *in medio*; (as being) about the subject is satis. tributary to them; see Chap. 3. sidione: B. 214, I, a; A. 243; H. 414, I. The Ubii are spoken of as if 8. uti . . . demigrarent : sc. hortantes, 'urging 4. vicis, etc.: N. to p. 49, 20. 14. rebus: explained by the appositive ut-18. profectum [esse]: from proficio; 6. premeren-

# iii. Caesar's first Crossing over to Britain. xx-xxxvi. b.c. 55.

.p. 96, 7. 'slopes.' 22. Britanniam: see p. 43. quod . . . intellegebat: the aid given to the Gauls by the Britons seems to have been of little acnot eo? nearly exterminated, must have been informed about Britain; see N. to p. 96, 7. Neque enim—quisquam: 'for no one.' 28. illo: why 397, 2, N. omnia fere: 'and nearly all of these things.' B. 201, 1, b; A. 216, e; H. plished fact; hence the pluperfect. Trans. 'should have,' etc. imperfect. But Caesar here looks on the expedition as already an accomnovisset: usually after a historical tense a fut condition is put in the ing si-clauses stand as subject of fore. 26. adisset, perspexisset, cog-'be insufficient.' personal knowledge. on British soil, and the first ancient author to write about Britain from to justify a course of conquest. Caesar was the first Roman to set foot possible; he was not scrupulous about the absence of pretexts sufficient Caesar's design was to extend the Roman power wherever Exigua . . . reliqua: abl. abs., 'as a,' etc. **29**. iis: i. e., mercatoribus. B. 189, 2; A. 232, a; H. 388, 1. Gallis erant incognita: the Veneti, whom Caesar had so 23. inde: i. e., e Britannia. 24. deficeret: 25. sibi usui fore: see IDIOMS, p. 390; the follow-21. vergit: **27**. quae

mentioned Book I., Chap. I.; see p. 38.

33. quem usum belli: 'what skill in war.' Gallias: pl. because referring to the chief divisions of Gaul, **32**. incolerent: sc. eam.

are antequam and prinsquam used with the subj.? XXI. 36. priusquam ... faceret: 'before making the trial.' When

explained by B. 283, 2; A. 320, a; H. 503, I. With either explanation qui... auderat is ironical. 21. perspexisset: indir. question. portunity? qui: 'since he.' B. 283, 3, a; A. 320, e; H. 517. Or, ei — qui may be taken indefinitely, 'to one, who,' and auderet will then be 16. possit: sc. adire. adeat: B. 295, 8; A 17. fidem sequantur: see Idioms, under fidem. in pred. after habebatur, 'in high esteem.' B. 203, 3; A. 252, a; H. 404. i. e., apud Atrebates. 14. virtutem et consilium: 'courage and tact.'
15. regionibus: i. e., of Gaul, not of Britain, as shown by his. magni: Caesar in the battle at the Sambre, B.C. 57; see Book II., Chap 23. ibi: B. 270, 1; A. 330, f; H. 537, N. 1). liceantur: B. 282, 2; A. 317; H. 497, I. **6.** quam — classem : = eam classem, quam. B. 251, 4; A. 200, b; H. verbal force in traiectus. Morinos: see map. Page 115. 1. navi longa: 'a war-ship,' 'galley'; see pp. 36-37, and' ad Veneticum bellum: see Book III., Chap. 9. 2. praemittit : sc. eum. 19. quantum facultatis: partitive gen., 'so far as op-4. in Britanniam: acc. with in because of the adeat: B. 295, 8; A. 331, f, R.; H. 499, 2. 5. Huc: i. e., to the coast of the Morini. 13. Atrebatibus: conquered by 3. quam primum: see IDIOMS. dare: for se daturos esse. **18**. eo: i. e., ad

now August; cf. p. 114, 20. **30.** tantularum: how different in meaning from tantarum? B. 153; A. 164, a; H. 332. Britanniae ante-Н. 516, 11. will trusted itself to their power. ceiving kindly and taking under their protection a people that of its own barbari: 'because (as they said, being) foreigners.' 25. consuetudinis: (B. 204, I; A. 218, a; H. 399, I., 2), the custom the Romans had of reetc. B. 282, 2; A. 317; H. 497, I. de . . . con duct the previous season, B.C. 56; see Book III , 28. H. 467, III., 4. vicinity of modern Boulogne. 'collected,' in the harbor of portus Itius, now Boulogne. ponendas: 'ought to be placed before (the invasion of) Britain.' **XXII.** 22. in his locis: i. e., among the Morini, probably in the post tergum, etc.: N. to p. 113, 4. coactis: 'forced into service'; contractis, 'brought together, eos:=Morinos.elf to their power. **26.** fecissent: B. 323; A. 341, d; imperasset: what would be the full form? Why subj.? n Boulogne. 23. moratur: B. 293, I; A. 276, e; 24. qui—excusarent, pollicerentur: 'in order to,' . 317; H. 497, I. de . . . consilio, 'for their con-Navibus onerariis: cf. Idioms, p. 385 29. anni tempus: it was quod homines duas legi-

the other harbor, eight miles up the coast, where the eighteen transports were detained, was Ambleteuse. ab: 'off.' 37. tenebantur: when between 500 and 600. 38. equitibus: the number of the cavalry is not stated; it was probably followed by quo minus, = retinebantur, 'detained from being able.' number there were.' other officers of higher rank. fectis: probably = praefectis equitum, who would naturally go with the rel. pron., neut. acc., referring to navibus . . . onerariis as a whole; '(a The two legions taken over were the viith and the xth. are small and flat-bottomed, because of the shallowness of the harbors. These coasting vessels were not large; and the channel steamers to-day ones: reckoning 3600 men to a legion, there would be 90 men to a ship. 36. eo loco: probably portus Itius, Boulogne; Huc accedebant: 'in addition to this

quantum. esse to be supplied? Page 116. 3. legati non: trans. as if nulli legati. 4. eo praesidio, quod: = tanto praesidio, ducendum: is

line, — a great advantage to the enemy. (see map); here Caesar lay at anchor till the ninth hour, 3.30 P. M.  $[1\frac{1}{6} \times 9 = 10\frac{1}{2} + 5 = 15\frac{1}{6} - 12 = 3\frac{1}{2} = 3 \text{ hrs. } 30 \text{ min.} = 3.30 \text{ P. M.}].$ 13. angustis: 'steep' (lit. 'contracted,' 'drawn together'). contine-14 hours, of 60 min. each;  $14 \div 12 = 1\% \times 3 = 3\% + 5 = 8\% = 8$  hrs. 30 min. = 8.3c A. M.]. Britanniam attigit: doubtless near Dover bleteuse. progredi: i. e., by land. naves conscendere: see IDIOMS.

9. tardius, etc.: the cavalry did not get off till the fourth day after: 'weighed anchor,' from Boulogne. see p. 33, and N. to p. 52, 31. The date was Aug. 26. solvit: sc. naves, order be carried out,' etc. nuit: 2; A. 328; H. 519, II., 2. posset: from the top of the cliffs a missile could be hurled to the water water's edge, — an exact description of the coast near Dover. batur: 'was closely bordered,' i. e., the cliffs ran straight up from the the fourth hour, Aug. 26, would be about 8.30 A.M. [5 A.M. to 7 P.M. = without regard to season, divided the day into 12 hours, the beginning of the last week of August rises about 5 and sets about 7. As the Romans, 10. hora quarta: in the latitude of the English Channel the sun during or bad weather, according to the connection. tertia vigilia: what time? tempus, the fundamental idea being time, so that tempestas may mean good Chap. 28. esset administratum: 'the order was carried out.' followed by the clause (ut) . . . administrarentur, 'that every 7. tempestatem: 'weather'; notice the derivation from 18. cognosset, vellet: indir. question. mo-19. ut, ut: 'as.' 8. ulteriorem portum: i. e., Am-**16**. convenirent: B. 293, III., postularent: subj. by

ably toward the northeast. ministrarentur: B. 295,8; A. 331, f, R.; H. 499, 2. 22. secundum: notice the development of meaning; the word first meant 'following' sequence of tenses. H. 495, v. ad nutum: 'at the signal.' 21. adare expressed in the present tense, but in Latin conform to the laws of the by the tense of postularent, which takes its time from administrarentur. B. 268, I; A. 287, a; H. 495, I. Propositions true at all times in English 'since they' (i. e., the conditions of navigation). B. 283, 3, a; A. 320, a; H. 517, 3, 1). 20. haberent: trans. as if pres.; the tense is determined by the tense of factors. favor of the other view. helps it on), 'favorable,' etc. (sequor), then (because a tide or wind moving in the direction of a ship Caesar sailed seven miles west, but the balance of argument is greatly in Walmer and Deal, seven miles northeast of Dover. Some think that 23. ab eo loco: i. e., from Dover, prob-24. aperto ac plano litore: between

paulisper? egrederentur, from disembarking. 28. Erat: N. to p. 40. 21. 20 in alto. findam. Page 117. 1. generis: B. 204, I; A. 218, a; H. 399, I., 2. 2. pedestribus: = lerrestribus; on land.' 3. utebantur: 'were displaying.' ', perfectly familiar.' paulum: difference in meaning between paulum, paulatim, paululum, 'although,' 'while.' illi: hostes, Britanni. alto: 'in deep (water).' 30. militibus: B. 189, I; A. 232; H. 388. See IDIOMS, p. 389. locis: B. 228, I, b; A. 258, f; H. 425, II., 2.
31. oppressis: agrees with *militibus*, 'weighed down.' 33. cum: A. 248, a; H. 419, III., I, I), (I). quo genere: 'a means (of warfare) that.' 25. barbari: i. e., Britanni. 34. expeditis: 'unincumbered by armor.' 35. insuefactos: 'trained' to go into the water. The Britons followed by land, along 26. essedariis: ex arido: 'from dry land.' 27. copiis: B. 222, I; notissimis:

5. species: 'appearance.' inusitatior: 'less familiar.' The Britons, like the Veneti (see Book III., Chap. 14), were unaccustomed to see large kinds of tormenta, see p. 35. on our men-of-war, were often placed on the Roman galleys. For the mentis: great machines for hurling missiles, corresponding to cannon apertum: 'unprotected flank.' vessels propelled by oars. work or undertaking with an appropriate formula of prayer, to the gods Atque. 'and now.' 11. paulum modo: 'just a little.' contestatus deos: the Romans entered upon every important 4. Quod 'this,' or 'that.' B. 251, 6; A. 180, f; H. 453. 13. qui aquilam ferebat: (sc. is) aquilifer; see ad usum := ad navigandum.9. usui nostris : see Idioms, p. 390. inde: = e navibus longis.pedem retulerunt : see IDIOMS.

ii, qui in proximis navibus erant, ex iis (navibus) cum hos conspexissent. 'to a man.' cus: i. e., the loss of the eagle of the legion. 16. officium praestitero: see IDIOMS.17. magna: 'loud.'18. inter se in general or to a particular deity. 20. Hos . . . conspexissent : shortened expression for **18**. inter se: = 'one another.' B. 264, a; A. 281, R.; H. 473, I. 14. ea res: 'his undertaking.' universi: 'in a body,'

in universos: opposed in meaning to aliquos singulares above. paucos Romanos. gabat se (eis signis) quibus, etc. another from another'). a firm footing.' 24. signa subsequi: i. e., to keep with their own maniples, each in the maniple where he belonged. See p. 26. alius servare: 'keep the ranks,' 'remain in line.' firmiter insistere: 'get a firm footing.' 24. signa subsequi: i.e., to keep with their own see IDIOMS, under capere; the cavalry were still at Ambleteuse; see N. to p. 116, 33. belonged with the war-ships. 2; A. 115, 2, b; H. 469. from the perfects portraying something that took place but once. B. 260, of the imperfects, implying continued or repeated action, as distinguished ciebant: 'kept hurling'; notice throughout the description the vivid use this respect only. to p. 116, 9. navigia, or speculatoriae) were built specially for rapid movement, and vessels and used for various purposes; while the 'spy-boats' (speculatoria XXVI. 22. Pugnatum est: see IDIOMS, p. 389. from different ships were,' etc. (lit. 'one man from one ship, B. 253, 2; A. 203, c; H. 459, I. Trans. as if aggregabat were pl., ab: 'on,' referring to the side of the Romans towards the land. ad pristinam, etc.: i. e., his success was incomplete in **34.** neque: = et tamen non. 29. alii: the use resembles that on p. 51, 7, on which quibuscumque . . . aggregabat: = aggre30. scaphas: small boats, carried on all **33**. simul := simulatque. 28. plures paucos: i. e., plures hostes 36 insulam capere: 23. ordines arido: N.

rei: i.e., quod Commium in vincula coniecerant. 2. daturos [cssc], ...
imperasset: imperaveris in dir. disc.
4. supra ...
5. cum: temporal, causal, or
ambassador. cause (as he said) they had,' etc. Caesar the writer states the reason used personally, with they as subject? sibi, 'that pardon might be granted them'; used impersonally. Why not 7. proelio facto: = post proelium. remiserunt: sc. eum. concessive? causa: but the Romans would have lauded the defence of their own other person. assigned by Caesar the commander as if it were the thought of some Page 118. B. 323; A. 341, d; H. 528, 1, and 516, 11. oratoris modo: 'in the character of an ambassador.' XXVII. receperunt: with sε; see Ideas, quaeses: sc. sε. quaeque: = εt εα, quae.
 dir. disc. 4. supra: see Chap. 21. de-10. quod — intulissent : 'be-9. ignosceretur: sc 11. sine

followed by dat.? see IDIOMS. theirs by right. stances alter opinions. The Romans thought the rest of the world was shores against an armed force as a most noble action. Thus circum-B. 337, 2, f; A. 292; H. 549, I. ignoscere : sc. se. **13**. arcessitam := cum arcessiti essent**14**. suos := multitudinem12. imperavit: meaning when

encamped. 24. occasum: B. 192, 1, a; A. 234,e; II. 437, 1. 'to themselves.' B. 200; A. 217; H. 396, III. 25. deicerentur: driven from their course.' quae cum: 'since they.' tamen: ancoris inclis, 'in spite of the fact that anchors had been thrown out.' feriorem partem insulae: southwest from Deal, where Caesar was from the shore. 21. ex castris: Caesar's camp was probably on an elevated spot, not far portu: Ambleteuse. **XXVIII.** 17. post . . . quam : = quarto die postquam. ventum : see IDIOMS, p. 389. B. 287; A. 262, N.; 324; H. 518. face of the night'). adversa nocte: abl. abs. 'as the night was coming on' (lit. 'in the 19. sustulerant: 'had taken on board.' tempestas: 'storm'; see N. to p. 116, 7. provectae: 'putting out.' 20. solverunt: 'sailed'; cf. N. to p. 116, 25. deicerentur: were tamen: with superiore supra:

**XXIX.** 28. accidit . . . plena: 'the moon happened to be full.' qui dies: 'and this period (of the month).' Careful calculation has unprepared for what happened here. At Dover un unguared unprepared for what happened here. At Dover un unguared transportandum. is hardly perceptible (cf. N. to p. 98, 17); hence the Romans were entirely the rise and fall of the tide in the Mediterranean, as in our great lakes, tide, must have been about 3 A.M. Aug. 31.. 29. aestus maximos: shown that the full moon mentioned here, with the accompanying high 34. administrandi: 'of managing' the vessels. curaverat: 'had had the army brought over.' 32. aestus: subject. 35. funibus: the

winter. see IDIOMS, p. 389. **quod**: B. **247**, **I**, *b*; A. 200, *e*; H. 445, 7. **3.** posse acteristic result. **4.** usui: dat. of purpose, = *utilia*. Roman cables were made of rope; see N. to p. 98, 26. **Page 119. 1.** magna: B. 350, 11, a; A. 344, e; H. 561, 111. id quod: B. 247, 1, b; A. 200, e; H. 445, 7. **3.** possent: subj. of char-5. in hiemem: 'for the winter,' or, as we say, 'against the quod omnibus constabat: 'because it was clear hiemari, etc.:

factu: in pred., agrees with prohibere, producere. sine impedimentis: the baggage had been left in Gaul. 448, N. 11. quae erant: 'which was'; why pl.? hoc angustiora: 'all the smaller on this account'; abl. of cause and degree of difference. 8. inter se: 'with one another.' B. 245, I; A. 196, f; H. B, 340, 2; A. 303, R.; 12. optimum

tions.' in hiemem: not as in 1. 5. quod . . . confidebant: is this the reason assigned by the natives, or by Caesar?

15. postea: 'in the future.'

16. rursus: 'back' from peace to war, not' again.'

17. cas-H. 547. duxerunt: 'thought'; the subject is principes above rebellione facta: abl. abs., 'renewing hostilities.' frumer to p. 118, 14. tris: the chiefs had assembled at the Roman camp; see l. 8. suos: N. meatu, reditu: B. 214, 2; A. 243, a; H. 414, I. 14. rem: 'their operacommence the war. deducere: i. e., to the place where they were going to frumento, com-

naves, earum := earum navium, quae. B. 262, A; A. 143, c, N.; H. 297, I., z. 20. ex eventu navium: 'from what had happened to the ships.' ex eo, quod: 'from the fact just as the people of Great Britain to-day speak of "the continent." eas res: for eis rebus (two dat. with esse). ... comparabat: 'he was providing for every emergency.' about that the voyage could be made.' navibus. B. 218; A. 248; H. 420. 27. administraretur: 'his directions were carried out.' H. 445, 9. XXXI. 19. cognoverat: trans. as if imperfect, 'was familiar with.' 21. fore: what other form of the fut. infin. of esse? 25. quae: for antecedent supply ea with comparari. ut . . . effecit: 'he brought it continenti: 'the mainland,' naves: B. 251, 4; A. 200, b; reliquis: sc. **23**. quae

guard.' which was really the case. B. 284, 4; H. 502, 2. What other reason for subj. here? parte: 'direction.' videri: passive. 35. partem: N. to p. 49, 31. quod erat: 'which was really the case.' 36. aliquid novi consilii: see IDIOMS, four arm and follow him immediately. remaining six cohorts he ordered two to mount guard, and bade the other at the four gates of the camp; these Caesar at once ordered out; of the legion were out foraging. Of the tenth legion four cohorts were on guard XXXII. initum : sc. esse. 34. quam consuetudo ferret: 'than usual'; see IDIOMS. 29. geruntur: hist. pres. with dum. cohortes, etc.: the soldiers of the seventh 30. frumenta-

hollow square (see p. 34), but the more compactly they stood the more effective the missiles of the enemy 'from all sides.'

7. demesso fru-4. suos: i. e., the soldiers of the seventh legion.

5. conferta: 'crowded together' (abl. abs.); the men were probably trying to form a dere: 'to relieve guard.' 3. armari: B. 256, I; A. III, a, N.; H. 465. Page 120. 1. stationibus: why pl.? 2. in stationem succe-

mento: abl. abs.; trans. by 'as,' etc. una: 'only one.' sos, occupatos: sc. nostros, object of adorti. 10. incer abl. abs.; in the confusion the ranks could not be regularly formed. 10. incertis ordinibus: 9. disper-

equos sustinere: 'check their horses when at full speed.' 22. brevisc. tempore, 'in a moment.' equitum turmas: i.e., of the Britons. 17. illi: the warriors from the chariots. 18. receptum: a noun. 20. praestant: 'exhibit'; jective or objective gen.? 13. terrore equorum: 'fright caused by the horses.' Is equorum subboard those hard pressed, and quickly passed beyond the reach of danger. riors defeated in any part of the line they swiftly drove thither, took on the drivers could see how the battle was going. If they saw their warchariots meanwhile withdrew a little from the thick of the fight, so that horsemen. The tactics were simple. The drivers dashed against the enemy, the men in the chariots sprang out and fought on foot. The In the battle-line they seem to have alternated sometimes with bodies of were two-wheeled, and carried several men, perhaps six besides the driver. to have been provided with scythes, like those of oriental peoples. A. 217 R.; H. 359 N.I, 4). The war-chariots of the Britons do not seem **XXXIII.** 12. ex essedis: attributive of pugnae, like an adj. or a gen. 14. ordines: i.e., of the enemy.

of securing. **33.** quae: = tales ut. B. 283; A. 319; H. 500, I. drew' from the open country, probably into strongholds. qui := ei qui. the Romans were busy in fortifying their camp, etc., the Britons 'with-30. reduxit: force of re- in composition? able, 'favorable to himself' (lit. 'his own'; B. 244, 4; A. 197, b; H. 449, 2). and novitate abl. of cause. 28. Quo racto: concessive meaning, 'unfavor-without an object. 29. alienum, suo: opposed in meaning, 'unfavor-without an object. XXXIV. 25. rebus: abl. of means, while nostris is dat. after tulit, in perpetuum: 'forever.' 31. occupatis, etc.: while 36. faciendae:

542, I., N. I. Page 121. **1.** sui: see N. to p. 95, 14, and B. 339, 5; A. 298, a; H. 2. rebus: abl. of means.

too few to be of any use except to follow up a fleeing foe, see p. 34.

10. ac: 'but.' secuti: sc. nostri. tanto spatio... potuerunt: B.

223; A. 257, b; H. 379, 2; 'so far as speed and strength allowed.' ut . . . effugerent. XXXV. 4. idem: subject of fore, explained by the appositive clause 7. ante: in chap. 21. The thirty horsemen were

"to." **XXXVI.** 15. quem ante imperaverat: see chap. 27. 17. propinqua die aequinoctii: 'as the equinox (or 'equinoctial

made some harbor or were stranded on the beach Caesar does not say. qui is for reliquae, those in the ships being taken by symesis instead of the ships themselves. B. 235, B, 2, c; A. 187, d; H. 438, 6. **portus capere**: and Ambleteuse. quos reliqui: 'as the rest'; sc. milites ceperunt; relibeen nearly a month in Britain without being able to advance a mile from the shore." hiemi . . . subiciendam: 'the voyage ought not to be exseason') was drawing near,' a time when storms are unusually prevalent. The equinox fell on Sept. 24. It is thought that Caesar left the island at least a week before that date. Thus, as Moberly suggests, he "had in the middle of the Channel it is still running east. ried southwest. A current along the French coast sets to the west while If the main part of the fleet reached Boulogne, they must have been carsee Idioms under capere. posed to the bad weather.' 22. paulo infra: whether the two transports 21. eosdem portus: probably Boulogne

#### The Uprising of the Morini and the Menapii. XXXVIII. в. с. 55. -IIAXXX

ships that would be apt to become unmanageable in a strong current. moreover, it would be precisely the two largest and most heavily loaded and therefore probably differed much in size and sea-going qualities; the ships were forced into service and gathered from different quarters, 31) there would be 10,200 men, i.e. about 5,000 to a legion. But the to a ship, in the 68 ships (12 out of the 80 had been lost, see chap. 22 and give a clue to the number of men in a legion; for at the rate of 150 men ships carried each the same number. This passage has been thought to H. 527, I. ponere: = deponere. 28. cle,' a common manœuvre. See p. 34. ing,' i. e., 'on hearing the shouting.' runt: sc. eos, the three hundred. see p. 116, 4. camp constructed by P. Sulpicius Rufus for the defence of the harbor; based on this passage. No estimate of the number of men in the 68 ships can therefore be justly whole reasoning rests on an unwarrantable assumption; for most of А. 233; Н. 390, п. XXXVII. 24. circiter trecenti; about 150 men to a ship, in case the 23. Quibus navibus: the two transports mentioned 26. non ita magno: 'not very large.' 33. postea vero quam : = posteāquam vero. See Vocab. under legio. castra: perhaps a 28. orbe facto: 'having formed a cir-**27**. nollent: B. 319, A, B; A. 337; **30**. suis auxilio: B. 191, 2, b; ad clamorem: 'at the shoutcircumstete-

paludum: the pl. indicates that there was dryness in many different marshes. - characteristic result, by attraction. B. 55, 4, c; A. 75, c; H. 130, 4. XXXVIII. 3. Qui cum: 'since they.' 4. reciperent: subj. for two quo: cf. N. to p. 69, 33, siccitates

his friends for him in the face of all the opposition that his enemies and supremacy. opened up to his fellow-countrymen new and vast regions for conquest sults; but great fame was thereby won by the daring general for having that into Germany (see N. to p. 114, 14), was followed by no tangible rederant: see N. to p. 52, 35. 10. hiberna: see p. 33. 12. reliquae neglexerunt: sc. obsides mittere. The expedition to Britain, as ee. quo perfugio: = perfugium, quo. B. 251, 4; A. 200, b; H. 445, 9. superiore anno: B. C. 56; see Book III. chap. 28. 9. in silvas abdicould arouse. Hence the thanksgiving decreed at Rome, obtained by **13**. supplicatio: cf. p. 92, 6–8. 12. reli-

#### BOOK V.

CAESAR'S SECOND EXPEDITION TO BRITAIN. I.-XXIII.

does not include veteres [naves] above. modum, formam: the 'plan' of the vessels in general, the 'shape' in particular. 6. subductiones: of opposing currents of both of the Channel, the irregularity of the coast-line, and the constant meeting the tides, as Caesar thinks, but is rather to be found in the narrowness the "choppy" waves are shorter than those in mid-ocean, and of less height. The cause of this does not lie wholly in the frequent changes of the more on this account.' verbs are followed by the abl.? quam eae sunt, quibus. water and with less depth of hold. Cf. p. 98, 20-22. quam quibus:= vessels were made more flat than usual, with less elevation above of storms and tides. Cf. N. to p. 128, 19. humiliores: sc. naves. The Book IV., chap. 29) led him to take every precaution against the violence to. Caesar's experience on the British coast the preceding summer (see trans. as if sing.; the pl. is used because more than one ship is referred 'should have ships built,' etc. B. 295, 1; A. 331; H. 498, 1. [naves]; see N. to p. 48, 20, guam. ant over each legion. in form and meaning? in Cisalpinam Galliam; see N. to p. 51, 31. consucrat: what peculiarity hibernis: i.e., among the Belgae; see p. 122, 10. vantage over adverse winds and currents. employed after impero? Page 123. Chapter I. 1. consulibus: see N. to p. 48, 2, and p. 45. maribus: the only instance of the abl. pl. of mare. see N. to p. 48, 20, guam.

4. possent: B. 324, I; A. 342; H. aedificandas, reficiendas: is esse to be supplied? curarent: The equipment of the ships with oars gave them the adlatiores: sc. facit eas. Cf. N. to p. 115, 33, duas legiones. legatis, etc.: Caesar frequently placed a lieuten-Cf. p. 75, 3; p. 86, 5. 3. quam plurimas 7. nostro mari: the Mediterranean. 12. ad armandas naves: 'for rigging out 9. ibi: i.e., in the English Channel, where air and water. atque . . . magis: 'and that, too, all fieri: what mood is usually 10. transportandam : 2. in Italiam : == 5. Earum: actuarias:

'appoints commissioners to assess the damage.' see Iddoms, p. 384. 18. qui doceant: B. 282, 2; A. 317; H. 497, I. What other uses of qui with the subj. \( \) 19. omnibus rationibus: 'in every way.' Why abl.? 20. Percepta: force of \( per-\tilde{e} \) 'having heard \( through\_t'', 'to the end.' 22. nisi, etc.: give rules for the change an Illyrian king, Gentius, B. C. 167. mans declared them free of taxes because of the help they rendered against anchors, etc. conventibus: N. to p. 76, 12. 14. Galliae citerioris:= of conditional sentences to indir. disc. there was an abundance of the broom plant for cables and of metal for Pirustis: of this barbarous people little is known, except that the Ro-Galliae Cisalpinae, for which see p. 38. Illyricum: N. to p. 92, 2. Cf. n. to. p. 98, 19 and p. 99, 12. 16. civitatibus . . . imperat: 24. arbitros . . . aestiment: 13. Hispania: in Spain

with the subj.? matters, he had travelled at least 2000 miles. or early in June; in five months, besides attending to so many important the year (see l. 2 above), had passed through Transalpine Gaul, held court in Cisalpine Gaul, passed over into Illyricum, settled disturbances II. 27. inde: i. e., ex Gallia citeriore, for which see p. 38. exercitum: Caesar, as Long remarks, had left his army in Belgium early in and held court there, and now returned to his army in Belgium, in May When with the indic.? circuitis: participle. 28. cum: when used

Roman miles = nearly 27% English miles; see N. to p. 48, 16. huic rei: 'for this purpose.' quod militum: 'whatever soldiers,' = 'as many soldiers as.' B. 201, 2; A. 216, a, 3; H. 397, 3, N. 5. 11. conconcessive, 'although in,' etc. 2. cuius: i. e., cu trans. as if cuius were quod. supra: in Chap. I. states or individuals. -que: 'but'; see N. to p. 101, 34. bantur: B. 332, c; A. 330, b; H. 534, I., N. 1 (2). matters with conquered tribes and the settlement of difficulties between cilia: 'assemblies,' appointed by Caesar for the adjustment of various to p. 115, 36. Boulogne, whence Caesar set out on his first expedition to Britain, cf. N 4. Collaudatis: how different from laudatis? 'and that they were not far from being ready to launch in a few days. Page 124. 1. studio: B. 219; A. 245; H. 416. 7. milium: B. 203, 2; A. 215, b; H. 396, v. Thirty 2. cuius: i. e., cuius generis naves; pra: in Chap. I.
3. neque, etc. 6. portum Itium: in . . . inopia:

taking sides with a state or a faction in a quarrel. see Idioms, simulatque: bant: more than once Caesar gained the advantage over his enemies by 13. Haec civitas: i. e., of the Treveri. 15. demonstravimus: N. to p. 77, 2. duo . . . contendeand N. to p. 49, 2. also written simulac. **14**. supra: see p. 87, 21-23; p. 97, officio: Cf. pp. 40, 41. plurimum - valet: 'allegiance.'

30. Sese, etc.: see N. to p. 78, 4, and B. 331, 1; A. 330, 3, e; H. 523, I., N. 31. quo: B. 282, I, a; A. 317, b; H. 497, II, 2. 32. imprudentiam: 'lack of foresight.' laberetur: 'fall away,' i. e, the dence of friendly intent. and might do so unless Indutiomarus in approaching him gave some evipermission, because he had reason to treat Indutiomarus as an enemy, 'give up allegiance.' 26. adventu: abl. of time and cause. Deep,' and survives in the name of the forest-covered range of hills in  $esse:= arma\ ferre.$ 20. gererentur: why not gerebantur? northeastern part of France and in Belgium, the Ardennes. per aetatem: 'by reason of (old) age.' 22. Arduennam: the word is said to mean, The 33. si, etc.: it was necessary to get Caesar's 28. consulere: see Idioms. 21. iis — in silvam abditis:

- 7. magni: B. 203, 3; A. 252, a; H. 404. IDIOMS. gratiam: 'popularity.' 11. A. 320, e; H. 517. 12. hoc dolore: 'ai favor was being conferred by himself,' etc. supplied? the lot of those chiefs that were to be taken over to Britain. Is est to be sc. Caesar. cum - tum: see IDIOMS; 'and he not only was considering that this Page 125. IV. 2. filio, propinquis: why abl.? consolatus: i. e., both for his own loss of power and for 5. nihilo: why abl.? **12.** hoc dolore: 'at this grievance.' 6. quod: 'and this (favor).' 10. graviter tulit: see eius: i. e., Cingetorix. 3. evocaverat:
- junction with the Seine. See map. Why is loco abl.? 13. Itium: see Vocab. **22**. abesset: B. 288, I, B; A. 325, 323; H. 521, II., 2 14. Meldis: on the Marne, near its 21. obsidum loco: 'as hostages.'
- VI. 23. Erat: N. to p. 49, 31. una cum: 'along with.' Dumnorix: brother of Divitiacus; he had been unfriendly to Caesar from the first. annually (see Book 1., Chap. 16), and were naturally vexed at the report 29. graviter ferebant: see IDIOMS. The Aedui elected a magistrate eum: sc. esse. 26. animi, auctoritatis: B. 203, I; A. 214, c; H. 402. 27. Accedebat huc, quod: 'There was the further consideration, that.' ante: see Book I., Chap. 16-20. island as an enemy. centre of Druidism (see p. 40), and Caesar was preparing to invade the pretext was not wholly without justification; I, b; A. 298; H. 542, I. afraid of the water.' B. 323; A. 341, d; H. 516, II. navigandi: B. 338, 33. quod . . . timeret: 'because, as he said, he was religionibus: 'by religious scruples.' This **24**. in primis : = imprimis. for Britain was now the neque: 'and

courage, to do anything. 5. fidem, etc.: 'to the rest (i. e., those not in Caesar's custody) he gave his pledge.' 6. Galliae: B. 200; A. 217; 3. nobilitate: B. 214, I, b; A. 243; H. 414. 4. interficere: verbs of fearing with the infin. have the meaning, 'be afraid,' 'not have the H. 396, III. Page 126. 2. territare: historical infin. 6. Galliae: B. 200; A. 217; fieri, etc.:

et non. se absente: see IDIOMS. 25. pro sano: 'like a man in his senses.' praesentis: se. Caesarris: cf. p. 63, 31-33. neglexisset: would norix in allegiance.' contineret, cognosceret: subj. of purpose.

18. tempestatem: N. to p. 116, 7. conscendere in naves: see norix in allegiance.' notices that the windmills are built so as to receive the northwest wind. loco: portus Itius, Boulogne. 14. Corus ventus: a wind from the northwest, hence highly unfavorable to setting out from Boulogne.

15. omnis temporis: 'of every season.' The traveller in Holland. 13. dies: When are expressions of time put in the acc.? eo loco: portus Itius, Boulogne.

14. Corus ventus con contribus contribus con contribus con contribus con contribus contrib this be subj. in dir. disc.? knowledge.' meaning would ex have here? insciente Caesare: 'without Caesar's 16. dabat operam, etc.: 'he was giving his attention to keeping Dum-VII. 11. posset: sc. (Caesar) eum coercere et deterrere. 28. liberae, etc.: see Idioms, p. 390. 24. faciat, interfici: B. 319, A, B; A. 337; H. 527, I. neque:= **19.** impeditis: = occupatis. 26. revocatus: force of re-? 'called 25. pro sano: 'like a man in his 20. a: what different

numero quem: = eodem numero quem, i. e., 2000; see l. 32, and p. 125, 18-19. 36. ad solis occasum: 'about sunset.' Careful calculasolvit: see Idioms. Caesar sailed from Boulogne on the 18th or the 20th of July. naves tions, based on the references in this chapter to the tides, indicate that see IDIOMS. pro tempore: 'according to the emergency.' **31**. continente: N. to p. 119, 25. 34. consilium caperet: 35. pari

see pp 36, 37. 'although.' the place near Dover (Deal), where Caesar had landed the preceding year (B. C. 55). Trace the route on the map; cf. Book IV., Chap. 23, and praiseworthy. Ocean; then, taking advantage of the change of tide, they rowed back to west wind was highly favorable. **2. orta luce:** 'at day-break.' The troops were carried by the tide to the northeast, out into the German Page 127. 1. Africo: a glance at the map shows that the south-5. caperet: see IDIOMS. 12. 7. navigiis: abl. of means. Accessum est: annotinis [navibus]: called veteres naves in Chap. 1, 2. orta luce: 'at day-break.' see Idioms, p. 389. 6. admodum laudanda: 'highly 8. longarum navium:

traders and speculators who accompanied the expedition. referring to the galleys and transport vessels used in the first expedition. commodi: sc. causā. Cf. Book IV., Chap. 22. nodi: sc. causā. octingentae: B. 217, 3; A. 247, c; H. 417, I, Trans., with quae, 'of which more than eight hundred.' privatis [navibus]: vessels belonging to the

fight.' 19. qui . . . essent: 'to guard the vessels', B. 282, 2; 191, 2, b; A. 317, 233; H. 497, I.; 390, I. de tertia vigilia: N. to p. 52, 31, and p. 33. 20. navibus: dat. of advantage. molli: 'sandy.' 21. aperto: 'open,' hortibus decem: from different legions, perhaps two cohorts from each. notice the verbal force, the process rather than the result being referred on the west bank of the stream. approach the river from the east. ex loco superiore: i.e., the elevation as Long suggests, fits the description here; for Caesar would naturally river is low, but on the opposite side there is high ground. This locality, twelve miles from Deal, near which Caesar landed, the east bank of the essedis: see Book IV., Chap. 33 and N. flumen: the Stour. About free from rocks or other obstructions. to; 'for fortifying the camp.' 29. ex . . . propugnabant: 'came out of the woods in small bodies to **16**. exposito: force of ex-? 31. testudine, aggere: see pp. 35, 36. **24.** equitatu: B. 222, 1; A. 248, a; H. 419, III., I, I). 27. natura et opere : see ĮDIOMS castris: why dat.? deligatas ad ancoram : see 35. munitioni:

7. funes: see N. to p. 98, 26. 5. nuntiarent: subj. of purpose or result? sent out by Caesar was still visible to those remaining in the camp (by attraction)? B. 283, I; H. 529, II, N. I, 2). itineris: cf. Idioms, p. 388. extremi: 'the re 341, d; H. 516, II. Page 128. X. 1. diei: why gen.? 8. concursu: 'dashing together.' extremi: 'the rear' of the detachment subsisterent, possent: B. 323; A. 2. fugerant: why not subj. 6. afflictas: 'shattered.' aliquantum

to the camp in battle order; and in case of an attack by the enemy, not to stop the retreat but to beat them off without interrupting the march. with his own eyes.'

13. sic: 'namely,' sums up the preceding thought, eaden ... perspicit. amissis, etc.: concessive abl. abs., 'although,' etc.

14. negotio: 'trouble.'

15. fabros: a body of artisans regularly ac-11. revertitur: see N. to l. 23 below. skilled workmen. for the work at hand, Caesar drew from the ranks the soldiers that were companied the army (see p. 23); but as these in this case were insufficient 10. revocari, resistere, etc.: the command was to march back continenti: N. to p. 119, 25. 12. coram perspicit: 'sees Labieno: on the

sent there, the natives again collected in their stronghold. ing of the wreck of the fleet, as stated above l. 11. While he was absome think) from the camp, that Caesar went down to the coast on hearsee p. 127, 19. ferred to by Homer, and was universal in antiquity. For this operation up on the shore, when not in use or when repairs were necessary, is redissimum: why neut.? rant := fuerant.no accurate notion about the course of the Thames. 28. a mari: i. e., from the sea where Caesar landed, near Deal. He had ma (abl.) imperii: see Idioms. from the enemy; see Chap. 9. It was from this place, rather than (as Caesar's vessels were specially adapted; see p. 123, 5-9. and laborious undertaking? B. 203, 1, 5; A. 214, c; H. 402. 18. commodissimum: why neut.? 19. subduci: the custom of hauling ships of) the legions. mainland, near Boulogne. See Chap. 8. 23. 17. etsi ... laboris: 'although it was a wearisome eodem: i.e., to the fortified place lately taken 27. Tamesis: what is the acc.? 16. legionibus: 'with (the aid 29. intercesse-18. commo-25. sum-

and the fir are both said to be native in Britain; Caesar, not happening ries ago. the copper mines of England were not much worked till about two centu-Sussex, where the making of iron has not long been discontinued." suggests that "the iron of the maritime tracts may have been that of thence, as early as 900 B.C., some say 1000 B.C. lead,' but 'tin.' timber and wicker-work, with a high roof. shade-trees (p. 162, 33-35); but we learn from the Greek geographer Page 129. 1. nominibus, etc.: e.g., there were tribes in Britain called Atrebates, Belgae, and Parisii. 3. Hominum: 'population.' ern and eastern coasts. Cf N to p. 96, 7, and p. 78, 34, etc. Many andence to prove that the aboriginal inhabitants belonged to the Keltic The primitive money of the Romans also was uncoined metal; cf. N. to nected in derivation with pecunia? Strabo that they were often of good size, round in shape, constructed of to by Caesar are the thatched roofs (p. 141, 33), and the surrounding 4. Gallicis [aedificiis]: The only characteristics of Gallic houses referred i.e., sprung from the soil, brought into being in the region they occupied. cient peoples besides the Britons thought themselves "autochthones," Gauls, some tribes of whom early obtained possessions along the southbranch of the Indo-European family, and hence were kindred with the tory of Britain before Caesar's time. There is, however, sufficient eviis quos natos (esse), 'that they originated.' Nothing is known of the his-33. proditum [esse]: 'that there is a tradition.' The subject 9. cuiusque: = omnis. 7. Nascitur: 'is found.' plumbum album: not 'white-The tin-mines of Cornwall were worked, and tin exported 10. fagum, abietem: the beech 6. taleis ferreis: 'iron bars.' 8. ferrum: Long

account of its insular position and the influence of the Gulf Stream. heat and cold vary less from the mean temperature than in France, on 'for pastime.' Druids. Cf. Levit. 11, 6: "And the hare, because he cheweth the cud, but divideth not the hoof; he is unclean unto you." 11. animi causa: hare, etc., had a place in the system of transmigration taught by the putant: the reason underlying these scruples is not known; perhaps the to hear of them, inferred that they were not found there. 12. temperatiora: in England the extremes of both Leporem ...

32. vicies: the circuit of Britain is in reality much over 2000 miles. light till nearly 10 P.M. tiquities, pp. 615, 616. ex aqua: attributive. B. 201, 1, a; A. 217, R.; in the Roman camp, for the purpose of marking the watches (vigiliae, water-clocks.' One or more water-clocks (clepsydrae) were always in use any part of Britain. see IDIOMS, under sub; the statement about the long night is not true of likely Greek geographers, whose works have perished. sub bruma: 24. nonnulli: what writers Caesar had in mind is not known; they were probably the islands lying off the west coast of Scotland are referred to. Isle of Man, the Latin name of which was Monopia. 23. subjectae [esse]: 'to be near by'; rule for agreement of subjectae? insulae: called Mon. The name Mona is sometimes incorrect Isle of Man, the Latin name of which was Monopia. Mona: doubtless Anglesea, which by some of the inhabitants is still —as? B. 341, 1, c; A. 156, a; H. 554, 1, 2, N. In hoc [latere]: side.' medio cursu:—in medio transmissu, 'half-way across.' transmissus: gen., dep. on spatio. spatio: abl. of characteristic, made co-ordinate with minor by sed. side.' dimidio' minor: see IDIOMS. rum: sc. latus. 16. appelluntur: principal parts? 'for which almost all the ships from Gaul make.' 17. inferior: corresponds to aller, l. 15. Hoc, Altegovernor there, over a hundred years after the expeditions of Caesar. British Isles were not sailed around by any Roman till Agricola was take lies in the statement that the west side of Britain faces Spain. to rely upon the reports of traders and others. H. 416. 28. Tertium [latus]: corresponds to unum (l. 14), and Alterum (l, 18). breviores: in the northern parts of Scotland one can see to read by day-Caesar had no opportunity to make careful investigations, but was obliged Cantium: now called Kent; the word is said to mean 'corner.' The different kinds are described in Smith's Dictionary of An-14. natura: 'by nature,' here = 'in shape.' B. 219; A. 245; contra: 'opposite.' The following description is not exact, as The name Mona is sometimes incorrectly applied to the certis, etc.: 'by exact (measurements made by means of) 18. vergit ad: 'faces.' 25. Nos: why pl.? 26. nisi: = nisi quod, 27. ut . . . opinio: see Idioms, p. 383. 21. atque: after pari, the same 20. Britannia: case? 19. qua ex parte: 'on this His most important mis-In hoc [latere]: 'on this

Book IV. Chap. 30-32. **36.** lacte, carne: N. to p. 106, 15. **37.** caeruleum: 'bluish.' The color given by woad is like that of indigo. evident from several expressions (such as ex agris, frumentatum, etc.) in how does the pl. of this word differ in meaning from the sing.? See plerique: to be taken with the pred., 'for the most part.' frumenta: tudine: the customs of the Gauls are described in Book VI. Chap. 11-20. 'most civilized.' **34. omnis:** N. to p. 47, I. XIV. 33. Ex his: i.e., of the inhabitants of Britain. capillo, etc.: see IDIOMS, p. 390. That the Britons near the south coast had cultivated crops is 35. Gallica consuehumanissimi:

made has been questioned. (sc. domum) is a common expression, referring to the conducting of a bride to the house of her husband. The truth of the statements here Page 130. 2. deni duodenique: 'ten, and (sometimes) twelve.' habentur: 'are considered.' 5.  $qub := ad \ quos$ . deducta est 5. qub := ad quos. deducta est

into the space between the two cohorts, in the manner described in the not been on the first expedition. hort of the legion was composed of the heaviest and most hardy men. (temforis), post aliquod tempus.
mans had halted for the night. N. to p. 120, 12. 16. inter se: 'apart.' novo genere: these two cohorts had evidently 258, f; H. 425, II., 2. **XV.** 7. tamen ut : = ita tamen, ut. 10. intermisso spatio: = post intervallum 14. primis [cohortibus]: the first co-17. per medios: the Britons dashed 11. munitione castrorum: the Ro-**8.** partibus: B. 228, I, b;

relieving one another at different points.' alios . . . exciperent: 'were sar means that when the British and the Roman cavalry were engaged, the danger was equalized, whereas the Britons, when they used chariots, the danger was equalized. became evident.' nostros: i. e., milites legionarios. 22. possent, auderent: why subj.? 23. neque, etc.: the Roman infantry could not debat huc, ut: see IDIOMS. rari: see IDIOMS. dispositas: 'outposts here and there.' alios . . . were at an advantage." the best explanation of this obscure sentence is given by Peskett: "Caebus: 'on foot'; see N. to p. 120, 12. 28. Equestris . . . inferebat: fight well except in ranks. 26. cederent: 'fell back.' XVI. 20. sub oculis : = in conspectu. cedentibus, etc.: see Idioms. 21. intellectum est: 'it 31. stationes 29. Acce-27. pedi-

nius : = minus acriter. XVII. 35. rari: 'infrequently.' B. 239; A. 191; H. 443. ie-

foraging party. Page 131. 3. sic uti, etc.: 'the enemy dashed against those that tres legiones: an unusual number of troops for a

ment with the three legions. 5. subsidio: 'on the support (of the legions).' B. 219, I; A. 254, b; H. 425, I, I), N. 6. praecipites: acc., 'head over heels.' 7. sui colligendi: N. to p. 95, I4. 9. Ex: 'after.' 10. auxilia: i. e., Britannorum. summis copiis: see the standards, etc. They did not dare to commence a regular engagehad ventured outside the ranks to forage, so that they came up close to IDIOMS.

see N. to p. 101, 34. endurance of Caesar's men overcame every obstacle. of the legions, and dislodge any force that might be lying in wait for them. sent up and down the south bank of the Thames, to guard the advance Caesar's progress. Most authorities, however, reject this explanation, cansider them a relic of an old fishing weir.

19. praemisso: century, speaks of them, and identifies them with the stakes set to oppose near Walton bridge. Bede, a writer of the earlier part of the eighth tury ago there were remains of some very ancient stakes in the Thames, down to the water, and projecting forward toward the middle of the stream. 18. defixae: driven into the bed of the stream. Till a cencourse; Caesar means that there was only one ford in the region in which he came to the Thames. Follow his route on the map. 14. hoc: 21. cum: 'although.' capite, etc.: see IDIOMS, p. 382. The pluck and London. hamshire. The river is fordable in many places in the upper part of its 17. praefixis: i. e., driven into the bank where it sloped Caesar probably crossed the Thames near Kingston, above 12. consilio: the 'plan' of the Britons is explained in 13. fines Cassivellauni: to-day Middlesex and Bucking-23. -que: 'but'; Till a cen-

did not dare to go far from the legions, and their activity in destroying marching'; hendiadys. B. 374, 4; A. p. 429; H. 636, III., 2. subjective or objective gen.?

33. hoc metu: 'from fear of this.'

34. Relinquebatur, ut: 'The only alternative left to Caesar was to.' N. to p. 120, 12), there must have been over 600 chariots. 'most of.' milibus quattuor: if each chariot contained six men (see **36**. noceretur: cf. IDIOMS, p. 389. bat := observabat.was thus limited by the endurance of the foot-soldiers in marching about XIX 25. contentionis: 'of continuing (the war).' amplioribus: 31. eiecerat: why not subj.? A. p. 429; H. 636, III., 2. The cavalry 32. equitum : 26. serva-

2. Caesaris . . . secutus: see IDIOMS. where else refers to this visit of Mandubracius. of gen.? dubracius. Page 132. 8. praesit, obtineat: B. 282, 2; A. 317; H. 497, I. XX. 1. Trinobantes: in Essex and Suffolk; see map. 7. Cassivellauni: 'at the hands of Caswallon'; 3. venerat: Caesar no-5. ipse: i. e., Man-

not for permanent residence. Remains of several such strongholds have been discovered in England. 21. natura . . . opere: see IDIOMS. many of the Britons.' been discovered in England. 21. natura . . . opere: see IDIOMS. 24. tulerunt: 'could not stand.' -que: 'but.' 25. multi: 'a great exact locality. oppidum: generally thought to have been near St. Albans. 17. satis: 'quite.' 18. Oppidum vocant: 'call (it) a town.' 19. cum: 'whenever.' 20. incursionis...causa: i.e., had received the embassies; he gives no clue by which to determine the tioned, see map and Vocab. 14. Cenimagni: north of the Trinobantes; for the other tribes menbantes, Caesar made the other tribes willing to submit. Read p. 11. 13. Trinobantibus, etc.: by his kind treatment of the Trinogenerally thought to have been near St. 16. eo loco: the place where Caesar

28. supra: in Chap. 14. See N. to p. 77, 2.
29. Cingetorix: of course a different person from the Cingetorix mentioned in Chap. 3.
31. castra navalia: see Chap. 11. de improviso: N. to p. 78, 1. XXII 27. in his locis: about St. Albans. geruntur : why pres.?

of the season 'might easily be wasted' in needless delays. 5. in annos singulos: 'yearly' vectigalis: partitive gen.; cf. N. to p. 56, I. As quest of Britain was seriously commenced under the emperor Claudius singulos: 'yearly.' vectigalis: partitive gen.; cf. N. to p. 56, I. As Caesar stationed no garrisons in Britain, the tribute was never paid. repentinos: N. to p. 96, 15. 4. id . . . posse: the remaining part 'he lays the strictest injunctions on Cassivellaunus.' Cf. N. to .p. 121, 17, and pp. 43, 44. (A. D. 43), but not completed till the reign of Domitian, about the year 61. He left the independence of the country virtually unimpaired. The con-Page 133. 2. continenti: N. to p. 119, 25. Notice the force of the 6. interdicit atque implerat:

meatibus: 'in two trips'; abl. of manner. 13. hoc: sc. aumo. superiore anno: B. C. 55; see Book IV., Chap. 20-34. 14. portaret: subj. by attraction, also of characteristic. 15. inanes, etc.: the empty the line of fortifications (see p. 128, 19, and N.). 11. duobus

13. hoc: sc. anno. the water, 'launched'; the ships had been beached and enclosed within the middle of September, having been in the island two months or over-20. aequinoctium suberat: Caesar left Britain, therefore, shortly after another load, and those made on the continent and sent across by Lavessels were of two kinds, both those used in the first trip returning for 21. consecuta: abl. abs., a rare use of this word. Cf. N. to p. 121, 17. necessario angustius: 'of necessity quite closely.' XXIII. 9. refectas: cf. Chap. 10, 11. deductis: 'drawn down' to 17. locum caperent: 'reached their destination,' i. e., Britain. 11. duobus cominita: cf. IDIOMS,

perhaps Caesar here wrote *Bellovacis*; at any rate this tribe seems to where. Labienus was out in the Ardennes (Arduenna) direction, Cicero pushed forward to the Sambre (Sabis) near modern Waterloo, and Sabinus **XXIV**. **24**. subductis: N. to p. 128, 19. means 'Bridge across the Samara.' See map. in Cisalpine Gaul; Caesar writes from the standpoint of Rome. valley." See map, where the probable locations of the different camps and Cotta still further, probably to Tongres (Aduatuca) in the Meuse (Mosa) was supported in the rear by the three at Samarobriva (Amiens) and else-"Durocortŏrum (now Rheims) was their central point. The legion there principle of arrangement in distributing his troops, Moberly well says: p. 122, 3. have been the one meant. Labienus was out in the Ardennes (Arduenna) direction, Cicero 28. civitates: why not abl.? Ex quibus unam: of Caesar's aliter ac : see IDIOMS, and B. 241, 1, c; A. 156,  $\alpha$ ; H. 554, 1, 34. trans Padum: i. e., north of the Po, Samarobrivae: the word 26. siccitates: N. to

probably means that all the camps were situated within a circle having a radius of 100 miles, i. e., so that no two camps were over 200 miles Page 134. 8. milibus . . . centum: the expression is obscure; it 9. quoad: B. 293, III., 2; A. 328; H. 519, II., 2.

bat: 'because a great many were involved.'

21. comprehense mittere: 'fo taba intermediate to 13. benevolentia: how different from beneficium? A. 292, R.; H. 549, 5. 11. Erat: N. p. 49, 31. summo loco: 'the highest rank.' m beneficium? 15. Tertium...

tiomari: he now becomes a formidable enemy. Cf. p. 41. 28. praesto, etc.: see IDIOMS. The two chiefs had come to the borders hiberna: see p. 33. what form might be expected here? oppugnatum: when may the acc. of the supine be used? of their territory in order to receive the Roman lieutenants. 30. manu: abl. of accompaniment; N. to p. 77, 23. 25. Diebus . 26. Ambiorige, Catuvolco: see l. 2 above. 35. aliqui: 29. Indu-Treveri:

322; A. 336-339; H. 523-527. Order: Caesaris in se, (se) debere plurimum ei, etc. etc.: the indir. disc. extends to 1.35; review N. to p. 78, 4, and B. 313-Page 135. XXVII. 5. missu Caesaris: see IDIOMS. Order: This cleverly contrived and Sese confiteri, pro beneficiis

faciat: 'In doing this.' H. 520. eductos, deducere: 'to take the soldiers out of, ... and conduct (them).' A. 292 R.; G. 667 R.I; H. 549, 5. 34. Quod cum sc. an non. rum esse consilium: 'They (the Romans) were to consider' velintne: G. 345; H. 384 II. 4 N.I. 25. habere, etc.: 'considered the claims of duty.' 27. hospitio: N. to p. 75, 35. 28. conductam (mercede): hired for pay.' 29. biduo: how different from diebus duebus? Ipso-22. alterae: a rare form, = alteri. A. p. 38, foot-note; G. 35 k., end; H. 151, I N.I. legioni, subsidio: rule for two dat.? 24. initum: is esse to be supplied? Why neut.? Quibus . . satisfecerit: 'since he had done his duty by them,' in attacking the Roman camp. A. 227 e; H. 544, 2. esse, etc.: see IDIOMS under diem. qua: N. to p. 50, 29. normal form of the tribal government in Gaul was democratic, and important offices were filled by election. Cf. p. 40. 15. in se: 'over him.' Why is se acc. ' 21. oppugnandis: A. 299 a; G. 430; the conditions of his authority were such.' ut . . . multitudo: the destruction. 9. quod: rel. pron. 10. ei: tor sun, 1. e., Amor A. 235 a; G. 343 R.2; H. 384 II. 4 N.2. 12. de: 'in regard to.' attack on the camp referred to is that mentioned on p. 134, 31. coactu civitatis: 'forced by his state.' 14. suaque, etc.: 'and wily speech had the desired effect of luring the Romans on to their 30. sentiant: what mood in dir. disc.? A. 327; G. 579; 10. ei: for sibi, i. e., Ambiorigi. 14. suaque, etc.: 'and that The

bantur: this clause implies Caesar's disapproval of the course adopted.

Page 136. 3. ausam [esse]: principal parts? 4. vix erat credendum: = vix poterat credi, 'it was scarcely credible.' 5. eos: of an enemy.' 654 R.2; H. 523 II. 2. 11. re . . . premi: 'that there was no trouble about supplies.'
13. quid esse: subj. of rhetorical question in dir. disc. A. 338; G. p. 69, 6, those in the council. XXVIII. 9. rem: 'this fact,' referring to the following quad-clause. 37. audierunt: why not subj.? capere consilium: see IDIOMS. 14. auctore hoste: abl. abs. 'on the advice 6. primorum ordinum centuriones: N. to 38. etsi . . . dicesupplies.'

A. 308 d; G. 659, 2 and 662; H. 527 III. castra oppugnaturos esse. 22. spectare calamitatis: see IDIOMS, p. 388. 19. arbitrari: sc. sc. 21. si... esse: what form of conditional sentence would this be in dir. disc.? A. 308 d; G. 659, 2 and 662; H. 527 III. ad castra venturos esse: == XXIX. 15. Contra ea: = contra. sero: 'too late.' facturos [esse]: sc. sc. clamitabat: 'kept shouting.' The use of this word implies an improper manner on the part of Titurius. 17. aliquid calamitatis: see IDIOMS, p. 388. 19. arbitrari: sc. sc. 21. si... the advice of the enemy (lit. 'the enemy as adviser'), but the real state of the case.' 23. magno dolori: cf. IDIOMS, p. 390. 22. spectare: sc. sc. 'He had in view not Ariovisti

durius: cf. Idioms, under si. 30. omnis: N. to p. 47, 1. 31. unam salutem: 'their only hope of safety' B. 350, II, a; A. 344, e; H. 561. mortem: Caesar nowhere tells us when or how Ariovistus died. Book I., Chap. 53. 1., Chap. 53.
 26. persuaderet: B. 315; A. 338; H. 523. II.
 28. in utramque partem: 'for either emergency.'
 29. si . . . m: 'their only hope of safety.' B. 350, II, a; A. 344, e; H. 561, 32. quem habere exitum: N. to l. I3. above.

and con." is: = talis, 'and I am not the one to be,' etc. opposition was maintained.' Vincite: 'Have your own way.' XXX. 35. in utramque partem: 'on both sides,' as we say, "pro 36. ordinibus: for centurionibus. resisteretur: 'the

Fage 137. 1. terrear: B. 283, 2; A. 320, a; H. 503, I. hi: the soldiers, to whom while speaking he probably pointed. 2. quid: N. intereant: '(and) they would not be perishing.' acciderit: N. to p. 103, 5; why not subj.?

scerentur, quibus esset persuasum (subj. of characteristic). The merciless writing of officers that had lost their lives in his service. irony of this sentence seems not entirely creditable to a commander Thus all unite in trying to justify the course resolved upon. 18. ut ... persuasum: 'like men convinced'; in full, ut ('as') ei proficithe wearisome watchings of the soldiers,' in case they should remain. no remaining without danger, and why the danger would be increased by etc.: 'Every reason is thought of, (to prove) both why there would be manus: see IDIOMS. 12. Pronuntiatur: see IDIOMS, p. 389. quid: '(to see) what.' 15. instrumento: 'furniture.' 16. i. e., by the hand. 9. unum: 'one (and the same) thing.' XXXI. 6. Consurgitur: cf. IDIOMS, p. 389. comprehendunt : 16. Omnia, 11. dat

shut in on all sides'). see p. 29. demisisset: 'had descended.' 23. bipertito: 'at two points.' a: 'off.' 27. novissimos: for novissimum agmen; convallem: force of con-? ('a valley

way) that all (resources) seemed to fail him.' negotio: 'crisis.' 33. qui: as in l. 29. 30. trepidare, etc.: these inf. are historical. **XXXIII.** 29. qui: 'since he.' B. 283, 3, a; A. 320, e; H. 517. 0. trepidare, etc.: these inf. are historical. 31. ut, etc.: '(in such a quod: for id, quod. 34. auctor: 'adviser.'

35. communi: with saluti.

Page 138. 1. officia praestabat: see IDIOMS, under praestare day under such circumstances the forming of a hollow square is the usual tribunos militum et centuriones. iusserunt: i.e., Cotta and Titurius; as subject of pronuntiare sc. 2. obire: 'attend to.' quoque: how declined? 4. in orbem, etc.: see Idioms. ္ပ possent,

refer back to quisque. Hetu: Peskett well remarks that "when we read of soldiers weeping, it should be remembered that the southern nations which together form one member of the sentence, the second member having for its verb complerentur.

12. properaret: for the subject criticised.' 6. militibus: A. 235 a; G. 343 R.2; H. 384 II. 4 N.2.

8. non sine: = emphatic cum, an instance of litotes. A. 209 c; H. 637 joy or grief." check all outward expression of strong feeling, whether in the way of and that the tendency of modern education and habits of thought is to of Europe are naturally more emotional in character than the northern, 10. quaeque: the -que connects discederent and properaret, Cf. p. 34. 5. reprehendendum non est: 'is not to be

antecedent supply ea with reservari. 17. existimarent: imp. mood in dir. disc. pugnandi: trans. as if pugnantium, 'fighting men.' 18. fortuna: personified, the goddess of fortune. 24. nihil: (A. 240 a) object of recipientes, which agrees with nostros (understood). G. 331 R.3; H. 378, 2) (saying that) 'no hurt could be done them.' fortuna: personified, the goddess of fortune. esse praedam: 'that the booty belonged to them.' quaecumque: as XXXIV. 13. consilium: 'presence of mind.'

primipilus (see p. 22), and was probably now serving as an evocatus Jocum: i. e., in the circle. 35. conflictati: 'though overwhelmed.'
36. horam octavam: N. to p. 59, 35. 37. pugnaretur: see
IDIOMS, p. 389, and A. 326; G. 588; H. 515 III. esset: A. 320 a; G.
633, 634; H. 503 I. ipsis: why abl.? 38. Tito Balventio: A. 23; a;
G. 343 R.2; H. 384, 4 N.2. superiore anno, etc.: Balventius had been 569; H. 472, 2. 28. refugiebant: rorce of the imperseur: campartem: i.e., that part of the troops which left the circle to charge against the enemy, was on all sides exposed to attack. 30. eum often as' with the pluperfect indicating repeated action. A. 280; G. (see p. 21). XXXV. 26. iis: i. e., barbaris. 28. refugiebant: force of the imperfect? eam 27. cum: 'whenever,' 'as

'authority.' 2. eiusdem ordinis: i. e., primipilus. 3. vento: 'who had been surrounded.' G. 671; H. 549, 4. adversum os: see IDIOMS, under adversum. Page 139. 1. auctoritatis: be careful not to translate this word as 3. circum-

**XXXVI.** 6. rebus: A. 245 b; G. 407 R.I.; A. 416 N.I. tantem: why not cohortari? A. 292 e; G. 536; H. 535, I. 4. 339; G. 664; H. 531. 10. impetrari... pertineat: 'that the request might be granted, so far as the safety of the soldiers was concerned.' interponere: change this sentence to the dir. disc. according to A. 336-7. cohor-

of the soldiers.' 'that the request might be obtained for (both) their own safety, and that this? 12. fidem interponere: see IDIOMS. ille: Titurius. videatur: A. 334/; G. 462, 2; H. 529 II. I N.I. 14. de . . A. 320 d; G. 629 R.; H. 503 I. N.I. 11. ipsi: i. e., Titurio: nocitum iri: fut. infin. pass. What idiom is commonly used instead of 14. de . . . posse: 13. si

Ambiorix and the Eburones. he would cut neither hair nor beard till he had wreaked vengeance on Suetonius tells us that when Caesar heard of the massacre he vowed that under Titurius and Cotta at least 5400 men must have perished. (see Book VII., Chap. 44-51), were the most serious reverses which Caesar experienced in the entire Gallic War. In the fifteen cohorts of the war-whoop of the American Indians. 28. cum: 'although.' 31. ad unum: see Idioms. This disaster, and that before Gergovia XXXVII. 17. quos tribunos: = eos tribunos, quos. in praesentia: 'at the time.' 19. Ambiorigem: A. 234 e; G. 356, 4; H. 437, I. 21. condicionibus: 'terms.' 24. ululatum: suggestive 24. ululatum: suggestive 28. cum: 'although.'

'under the command of.' hiemet: mood, and why? 7. nihil negotii: see IDIOMS, p. 388. oppressam legionem interfici: 'for the legion to be overpowered and destroyed.'

8. cum: = 'not to let slip.' 4. sui: A. 298 a; G. 429 R.I; 542 I. N.I. in perpetuum: 'forever.' 6. legatos duos: Cotta and Titurius Sabinus. Page 140. XXXVIII. 3. hortatur: sc. cos. ne . . . dimittant:

lignationis munitionisque: i. e., of getting timber for the fortifying of eorum: i. e., Nerviorum (understood from l. 9, above).
 de improviso: N. to p. 78, 1.
 Huic: i. e., Cicero, whose camp was in the territory of the Nervii: see map. **XXXIX.** 11. Ceutrones: a small state north of the Grudii (not given on the map), of course a different people from the Ceutrones in the Alps, mentioned Book 1., Chap. 10. 12. Grudios, etc.: see map. 21. vallum conscendunt: the soldiers stood on the ram-16. quod: for id, quod.

circumference), would give a distance of about 40 feet from tower to equal intervals around the camp of a legion (assumed to be 4600 feet in modifies cxx. missi: 'those sent,' a part used as a noun. 1; H. 561 I. XL. 24. Mittuntur: the sending is emphasized. A. 344 i; G. 675. H. 561 I. 25. pertulissent: sc. eas nuntii; force of per? 26. The calculation has been made that 120 towers, placed at 27. admodum: 'fully,'

bus: (B. 353, 5, N.; H. 359, N. 1, 4)), breastworks, made of branches woven together, used to strengthen the exposed sides of the palisades and towers.

38. cum: 'although.' tenuissima valetudine: abl. of characteristic, 'in very delicate health.' hurled his dart through one of the intervening spaces. loricae experati-**37.** pinnae: wooden battlements, or projecting points, above the palisades and towers, behind which the soldier could find shelter after having lantur: 'are built up in stories'; see Plate VI., figure 6, where the representation of a rampart with palisades, towers, and trench, is given. out. muralium pilorum: much larger than the common pikes, and hurled from walls, or perhaps used only to thrust with. 36. contabuattack was so long continued that the ordinary supply of weapons gave excitantur: 'were erected.' in the towers, the practical advantage of the structures becomes apparent As this space could be readily covered with the missiles of those were erected.' 34. opus: equivalent to what part of 35. praeustae sudes: 'stakes charred at the end'; the

spare himself. (about him) of their own accord, and their pleadings, he was forced to Page 141. 1. ut, etc.: 'so that by the rushing together of soldiers He was, as it were, "waited on by a committee of the

se: 'as far as they were concerned,' i. e., the Nervii. camps, which, they said, were all being attacked. 11. rebus: B. 219, 1; A. 254, b; H. 425, 1, 1), N. hoc: with animo, abl. of characteristic, 'had this feeling.' 13. consuetudinem: i. e., hibernorum. 14. per praesidii: see Idioms, p. 388. his: i.e., the Romans in the other 'ground.' sperare: sc. se (Cicero). adiutore utantur: in dir. disc., 'employ me as a mediator.' utantur, mittant: represent 4. sermonis aditum: 'pretext for an interview.' 9. ostentant: 'point to.' faciundae: = faciendae. B. imperatives of dir. disc. **18**. armato: 'in

sarily long, it has been suggested that we should read pedum (as some trans. as if quos. exercitu: the Roman army. 23. nulla copia: abl. abs. 24. quae: = talis, ut (ea). B. 283, 2; A. 320, a; H. 503.

1. 27. milium passuum xv: as this distance seems unneces. breadth at the top. had been deceived. pedum ix: in height. miles) seems far more likely to be correct than 15,000 paces (15 Roman MSS. have it) instead of passuum; 15,000 feet (a little less than three XLII. 20. spe: the hope of deceiving Cicero as Titurius Sabinus 83 turres: movable towers after the Roman fashion, for 22. quosdam: probably an error of the MSS.; 21. pedum xv: in

testudines: see p. 36. which see p. 35. ad: 'according to.' 29. falces: N. to p. 179, 35.

**38.** ea : = tanta. resolution.' perhaps fragments of burning straw were carried by the wind all byer the tulerunt: sc. ignem; the subject is Hae, the huts being looked upon as agents in spreading the flames. The fire leaped from roof to roof, or 'barracks'; the winter-quarters were provided with huts instead of tents. B. 353. 5, N.; H. 359, N. 1, 4). fervefacta iacula: javelins, either themselves on fire, or wrapped about with burning stuff. 33. casas: long enough to ignite inflammable material, such as straw. heated red-hot, and thrown by means of slings. They retained their heat 36. sicuti: = tamquam, quasi. 37. agere: 'to move up.' = tanta. praesentia animi: 'firmness of resolution,' firm 32. ferventes . . . glandes: balls made of kneaded clay, 34. ignem comprehenderunt: 'caught fire.' ex argilla: 35. dis-

'just as'; just as they stood, crowded together, so they fell.
cessum: 'a chance to draw back.' non dabant: 'would II., I, N. I. **10**. loco: why abl.? **13**. si: 'whether.' where is the word made emphatic by ne — quidem placed? Page 142. 1. cum: causal, or concessive? 14. quorum: sed eorum. non dabant: 'would not give.' er.' B. 309, 3; A. 334, f; H. 529, 4. ne — quidem : . 9. re-8. ut:

attack.' 38. deiectus, etc.: 'stumbling (lit. 'being carried down') into a hollow, i. e., the dart that had pierced his shield and stuck in his sword-belt. tences? inimicus: how different in meaning from hostis? 35. veruto: draw his sword.' B. 337, 2, a; A. 290, a; H. 549, I. **33. Succurrit**: why are *Transfigitur*, *Avertit*, and *Succurrit* placed at the beginning of the senin Pulionem.
30. Pulioni: B. 188, I, N.; A. 235, a; H. 384, II., 4, N. 2.
31. Avertit . . . vaginam: 'This mishap turned the scabbard from (its place).'
32. conanti: sc. ei, dat. of disadvantage, 'as he was trying to 28. quo, (29) hunc: both refer to the fallen Gaul. 29. in hostem: 22. locum: 'opportunity.' rivalry.' 21. Quid: trans. as if Cur. B. 176, 3, a; A. 240, a; H. 378, 2. de . . . simultatibus: 'about military honors (locis) with the keenest 300, I; A. 334; H. 529, I. rions of the first rank. **XIIV.** 16. Erant: N. to p. 49, 31. qui approprinquarent: B. 283, 2; A. 320, a; H. 503, 1. The men were soon to become centu-26. Mediocri spatio: i. e., between Pulio and the enemy. **19**. quinam : for uter. 25. irrumpit: 'thither he directed his omnibus annis: 'year in and year out.' anteferretur : B.

'worthy to be considered superior.' Fage 143. 3. utrumque versavit: 'changed the positions' relations') of both.' 5. utri: 'to the output the positions'. anteferendus: (Or

7. et maxime quod: 'and chiefly because' confecta vulneribus: see IDIOMS. 8. res: 'the garrison' or 'force.' 11. intus: in the with Gauls.' and the letter concealed within. inter Gallos versatus: 'mingling camp. 12. honesto: N. to p. 75, 34. prima: as in prima hieme.

15. illigatas: the in- (il-) makes it probable that the dart was hollow XIV. 6. Quanto, etc.: see IDIOMS. A. 250; G. 400; H. 417, 2. 17. Ab eo cognoscitur: = (Caesar) ab eo cognoscit.

the rebellious Nervii. 25. veniat, etc.: in dir. disc., si . . . poteris, veni. A. 339; G. 655; H. 523 III. Reliquam partem exercitus: un-**XLVI.** 18. hora undecima: 5 p. M.; see N. to p. 59, 35. 20. ab eo: Caesar was at Amiens, Crassus at Montdidier. See map. 24. Labieno: at Lavacherie. See map. reipublicae commodo: see IDder L. Roscius and L. Plancus; see Chap. 24. IOMS. Labienus was stationed at an important point near the country of

34. non . . . moratus: 'with tolerable haste.' 35. occurrit: sc. Caesari. 38. ut: how rendered after expressions of fearing? A. 331 f; attribuit: sc. ei. 32. impedimenta: see p. 23. litteras publicas: state documents,' the quartermaster's accounts, despatches, and the like. etc.: Caesar was already on the march when Crassus reached Amiens, and sent orders to him to take charge of the troops and stores there. G. 552; H. 498 III. N.I. XLVII. 29. antecursoribus: i. e., of Crassus. 31. Crassum,

Page 144. 1. quos ... sure Page 144. 1. quos ... sure Page 155; G. 636; H. 517. 2. remittit: the re- impues ... 320 e; G. 636; H. 517. 2. remer refers to the destruction of Titurius Samessage. 3. rem: refers to the destruction of Titurius Samessage. 3. rem: force of per-? ('writes at length' or 'in detail').

Samarobriva. 7. requerat: = reactive erat, that been requered.

8. celeritate: on the rapidity of Caesar's movements see pp. 9, 10.

magnis itineribus: see p. 30.

12. Graecis litteris: in Greek characters, not necessarily in the Greek language. All educated Romans tion of (having) three legions'; since Labienus could not join him, Caesar had with him only the legion of Fabius and that previously at Greek alphabet (see Book I. Chap. 29). It is said that at times Caesar "used a somewhat simple cipher, each letter being the fourth from its true place in the alphabet."

15. amentum: a strap or thong attached understood Greek; and some of the Gauls were familiar at least with the Samarobriva. to a javelin and used in throwing; it imparted to the weapon a whirling XLVIII. 6. opinione . . . deiectus: 'disappointed in his expecta-7. redierat: = redactus erat, 'had been reduced.'

epistolam. Force of per-? made to whirl. 19. neque: = et tamen non. epistolam. Force of per-? 22. afficit: 'fills.' motion, thus insuring accuracy, on the same principle that rifle balls are 21. perlectam: sc.

a very dangerous thing.' 38. aequo . . . celeritate: 'that without anxiety he might slacken his pace.'

Page 145. 2. haec, etsi erant: 'this, although it was.' Why is tur; Caesar did not cross the stream.

36. Erat . . . ree: 'it was a very danger. demonstravimus: N. to p. 77, 2. 2 may a purpose be expressed in Latin? posed to make a second venture. took Cicero's first message had seemingly not returned or was not disrepetit: 'gets another Gaul' (lit. 'seeks again a Gaul'). 25. per: A. 246 b; G. 403; H. 415 I. I N.I. 29. deferat: in how many ways 28. supra: see p. 143, 11. **30.** faciat : A. 331 f R.; G. The Gaul that 27. Gallum

words give a clue to the number of men in a legion. See Vocab. under legio; N. to p. 121, 24; and p. 21.

3. angustiis viarum: i. e., by making the streets and lanes of the camp narrower than usual. 5. hostibus: = hostium. A. 235 a; G. 343 R.2, H. 384, 4 N.2. castra pl. in form? hominum milium septem: 'consisting of' or containing,' etc.; as Caesar had two legions with him (p. 144, 7), these

stream, on the sloping ground leading up to his camp. A. 197 b; G. 299 R.; H. 449, 2. 18. concursari, agi: impers., 'that there be rushing about,' 'that they act.' (se continet in suo loco) ut, si . . . posset, citra vallem, etc. locum: 'a position favorable to himself,' that is, on 8. ad aquam: i. e., at the stream, which flowed through the val-9. Galli: sc. continent, etc. 10. Caesar, etc.: Order, Caesar tt, citra vullem, etc. 11. suum that is, on his side of the

turf. 31. omnino nemo: 'no one at all.' In what two ways is nemo forcing admission through them and began to destroy the fortifications.

28. eā: i.e., through the gates; adv.

30. portis eruptione facta: enemy, thinking that the entrances were firmly barricaded, despaired of sod, as high as the rampart but of the breadth of only a single sod. The tiam: N. to p. 59, 35 made emphatic here? Caesar's men had blocked up the entrances of the camp with barriers of enemy's feeling of contempt Caesar even withdrew his men from the Caesar was. 20. traducunt: i. e., across the stream, over to the side on which **23.** pronuntiari: cf. IDIOMS, p. 389. **24.** horam terpo. 59, 35. **27.** in speciem: = ad speciem, 'for show.' 21. nostris . . . deductis: in order to heighten the 32. armis: case, and why?

- drawn up for review. ing even a trifling damage upon them was left.' 35. neque . . . relinqui 'and that no opportunity for inflict-38. producta: i. e.,
- (see p. 144, 3), who had learned of the circumstances from survivors (see p. 139, 32). 8. quod: 'in that.' 9. legati: Titurius Sabinus. hoc: 'this (misfortune).' 10. beneficio: abl. of means. Caesar had previously received an account of the disaster from Labienus honor in military annals. the face of such overwhelming odds have won for this defence a place of wounded.' Page 146. 1. non, etc.: 'that not one soldier in ten had escaped un-4. merito: the ability and courage displayed by Cicero in 5. appellat: 'addresses.'
- ' When anything unusually important and striking takes place men pass sages were transmitted so rapidly is explained in Book VII., Chap. 3: now autumn) to midnight would be less than ten hours. The way mesborder of which the camp of Labienus was situated. refers not to the subject, but to the agent, Lucio Roscio. say, 'among others.' quin - acciperet: 'without his receiving.' (sc. Galli), nom. R.2; H. 174, 2, 3). the distributive numeral used instead of the cardinal? A. 95 b; G. 95 R.2; H. 174, 2, 3). 27. quid consilii: see Idions, p. 388. reliqui: in addition to the two legions mentioned p. 144, 7. 22. tribus legionibus: Caesar now had the legion of Cicero with him, guarded the stores at Amiens (Samarobriva) in Caesar's absence. marus: he had prompted the attack on Titurius Sabinus and Cotta; see receive the message, and pass it on to their neighbors.' the news over fields and districts by shouting; different persons in turn ante mediam noctem: from the ninth hour (about 2.30 P. M., for it was Labienus. A. 326; G. 610; H. 515 III. eo: to Cicero's camp. A. 247 c; G. 311 R.4; H. 417, 1 N.2. Aremoricae: derivation? 13. per Remos: 'through the country of the Remi,' on the 21. reducit, remittit: force of re-? Fabium: he had 28. explorabant: 'were trying to find out.' 30. 'without his receiving.' 32. In his: we should Lucio Roscio: see Chap. 24 and map. See Vocab., and N. to p. 96, 7. 23. trinis: why is 15. abesset: sc. 19. Indutio-35. milia:
- adventu: abl. of time. in Galliam: why not in Gallia? ficio: 'in allegiance.' used of an important, solemn, or threatening announcement. 5. in oftiaret: causal, 'giving them to understand,' etc. The verb denuntio is 151, 5; H. 239. omnem: 'as a body.' of crimes against the state. consilio: i.e., through the decision of some tribunal that tried those guilty Page 147. LIV. 4. alias - alias: see IDIOMS. cum ... denun-8. frater Moritasgus: sc. regnum obtinebat. 12. satisfaciundi: = satisfaciendi. 13. senatum: a council con 10. publico

affirmative point of view. **20.** Idque . . . cum: 'and this (the fact last stated) I am inclined to think is so far remarkable, not only,' etc. The indir. question is the object of *scio*, a constr. which with *hand* preceding *scio*, generally implies an the other.' 19. Gallici belli: 'in the Gallic war.' non suspecta nobis: 'beyond suspicion in our view.' A. 232 a; G. 352; H. 388, I. subject of valuit is the following infin. clause. 15. principes: 'the leaders in making war.' 17. alteros — alteros: 'the one people eius opinionis: 'so much of that reputation.' 14. Tantum . . . valuit: 'so great influence had the fact,' etc. The of the corresponding body at Rome. sisting of the chief men of the tribe, to whom Caesar applies the name G. 459 R.: H. 529 II. 3 2) N.2. dicto audientes: n. to p. 67, 22. 22. tantum

## THE REVOLT OF THE TREVERI. LV.-LVIII. в. с. 54.

see Book IV., Chap. I-15. 32. lapsus: 'disappointed.' 34. tota Gallia: 'throughout Gaul.' What classes of words are put in the locapersuaded.' 30. cum . . . dicerent: 'since, as they (the Germans) said, they had tried it twice.' A. 341 d R.; G. 541; H. 516 II. I. 31. tive abl. without a preposition? Ariovisti bello: see Book I., Chap. 30-54. Tencterorum transitu: see Book IV., Chap. 1-15. 32. lapsus: 'disappointed.' 34. tota 107, 11. 29. persuaderi: G. 199 R.; H. 465, I; 'but no state could be 37. publice, privatim: N. to p.

vēnit: not convěnit; what tense?

8. crnciatit.

10. supra: in Change 2. facinoris: the uprising of a conquered people to recover their former liberties Caesar naturally regards as a crime!

5. Hoc: = arown accord.' ad eas civilates. On the way to the Senones he would need to pass through the territory of the Remi. See map. Page 148. LVI. 1. intellexit: sc. Indutiomarus. ultro: 'of their ab eo non discessisse: = in eins fide mansisse. veniri: 'that (they) were coming'; cf. p. 94, 16, and N. 14. huc: =

29, quid. occasionem . . . gerendae: see IDIOMS, under res. timoris opinionem: 'the impression of fear.' Labienus was try same tactics that Caesar had lately made use of with so great success; cf. kind of cognate acc, 'was feeling no anxiety.' LVII. 17. loci natura: cf. N. to p. 48, 7, and IDIOMS. Labienus was trying the 19. quam: N. to p. 50, 18. nihil: a

duced into the camp. Labienus had no cavalry of his own with which to LVIII. 29. in dies: see IDIOMS. 30. intromissis: i. e., intro-

cavalry into his camp, Labienus took care that the fact should not become 'that he had caused to be collected.' discedere. known to the enemy. carefulness'; custodiis: 'by keeping guard.' Once having conveyed the carry out his design against the Treveri. 37. visum est: 'they thought best'; sc. tanta diligentia: 'with so great 31. quos . . . curaverat:

sentence. minis: the Ourthe. the others. nactum: gaining time in the delay caused by the cavalry following up A. p. 299: H. 637 XI. I. 2. praecipit: followed terent; interdicit: belongs before neu . . . vulneret. pauloque . . . Galliam: notice Page 149. 1. dispersi, dissipati, discedunt: notice the alliteration. Comprobat: 'justifies.' habuit: 'found.' 7. occiderint: sc. eum. A. 320 a; G. 633, 634; H. 503 I. 11. possunt: sc. consectari et occidere. 2. praecipit: followed by unum ... pethe brevity and force of this closing 9. unum [illum]: 'him alone.' 6. mora . . . flu-13.

## BOOK VI.

## i. General Uprising in Gaul. I-VIII.

political leader. staying.' A. 341 the place of the xivth that had perished; the other two were numbered and xv. Caesar had now ten legions.

13. ante exactam hiemem: why impf. tense? service.' Pompey was nominally superintending the supply of grain to entire division of Cotta and Sabinus, the hostility stirred up among the Treveri by Indutiomarus, and, above all, the general longing for see IDIOMS lost under Cotta and Sabinus was doubled. three new legions contained 30 cohorts, the number of the 15 cohorts amicitiae: between Pompey and Caesar. detrimenti: 'any loss.' i. e, the opinion of the Roman power entertained by Gaul. visset: 'had enlisted under the consul.' every effort to win for himself a position of undisputed supremacy as a prohibited from entering Rome. with Caesar. Cf. pp. 3, 14, 15. the governing of Spain to his lieutenants. He was yet on good terms ever, he remained near Rome, watching the course of events, and left mand; instead of administering the affairs of his province himself, how-As proconsul of Spain, he had at this time six legions under his com-Pompeio: Pompey had been consul B. C. 70, and a second time B. C. 55. freedom felt throughout Gaul." Page 150. Chapter I. 1. causis: well stated by Moberly: "the death of Dumnorix, the comparative failure in Britain, the loss of the Rome, but in reality giving far more attention to politics, and making ad signa convenire: see p. 26. 7. iuberet mpf. tense? magni: A. 252 a; G. 379; H. 404. A. 341 d; G. 541; H. 516 II. Caesar had now ten legions. general having a military command (imperium) was by law 15. quid — possent: N. to p. 78, 16. remaneret: 'since (as Caesar said) he (Pompey) was ä ad urbem: see IDIOMS, and N. to p. reipublicae: 'for the public good.' 3. delectum: cf. p. 22. 5. reipublicae causa: 'in public rogavisset: subj. by attrac-7. iuberet: why subj., and One of the legions took 12. tribus, etc.: as the 6. consulis . . . roga-8. opinionem: 4. Gneo

- sidibus: abl.; 'exchange hostages as a guarantee (for the payment) of money.' 25. Cisrhenanis: in Gaul; cf. N. to p. 106, 4. Senones, II. 17. docuimus: cf. Book v., Chap. 58.20. ulterior further off: 21. inter se confirmant: 'bind one another.' N. to p. 108, 21. etc.: see Book v., Chap. 54. 28. maturius: 'earlier (than usual)'; cf. 20. ulteriores: 'those 22. ob-
- vere: 'at the beginning of spring,' probably the earlier part of March. ut instituerat: = ut facere consuerat, 'according to his practice.'
  venissent: i. e., to the council. initium: in pred.; emphatic poby the subj.? 4. ea . . . concessa: = eis loco praedae ('as booty') militibus concessis. 7. hiberna: at Samarobriva (Amiens). primo Page 151. III. 1. proximis . . . legionibus: probably the three legions that had been placed in winter quarters about Samarobriva (Book the Senones and the Parisii could not have been very close or binding the modern city. Paris did not become an important town till the sixth occupied only the island in the Seine, which forms but a small part of sition. 10. omnia postponere: 'to make everything (else) second.'
  Lutetiam Parisiorum: "the first mention of Paris in history." Lutetia improviso: N. to p. 78, I. 3. possent: when is prinsquam followed v., Chap. 53), and that under Fabius among the Morini (v. 24). 12. consilio: = consilio belli. The political union between
- 1V. 16. princeps eius consilii: 'the leader in that scheme.'
  17. Conantibus [eis]: dat. or abl.? 18. posset: why not indic.?
  19. sententia desistunt: see IDIOMS. 20. per Aeduos: 'with the support of the Aedui.' 21. fide: 'protection.' Aeduis: why abl.? 24. custodiendos: why is esse not to be supplied? A. 294 d; G. 431; H. 544, 2 N.2. Eodem: probably Agedincum. 25. Remis: the headship among the states of Gaul that they had once possessed. Cf. p. 61, 6, where petentibus Aeduis is dat, and N. to p. 82, 33. The Aedui were eager in every way to extend their sway and regain the Remi, as the Aedui, were on friendly terms with Caesar. H. 544, 2 N.2. Eodem: probably Agedincum. Book I., Chap. 31. 22. aestivum . . . belli: see IDIOMS, p. 390.
- 'at him.'

  31. ex...odio: these petty tyrants among the Gauls seem generally to have been capricious and cruel.

  32. pro explorato: 'as certain.'

  33. reliqua eius consilia: i. e., 'what other plans he might have on foot.'

  35. perpetuis: 'continuous': cf. Book III., Chap. 28. 36. uni: difference in meaning occurrence of this word? 37. hospitium: N. to p. 75, 35. 38. 2um. Germanis: A. 235 a; G. 343 R.2; H. 384 II. 4 N.2. entire attention.' V. 28. totus . . . animo: 'with all his heart and soul,' 'with his 36. uni: difference in meaning between sing, and pl 30. quis: N. to p. 50, 29. huius: objective gen., 38. venisse:

- followed by the abl.? gredi: = se coniungere, coire. cogeretur: = necessitate coactus conaretur;
   sc. Ambiorix.
   4. mittit: sc. Caesur.
   7. praesidio: why is fretus Page 152. 1. prius, quam: when followed by the indic.? 3. con-
- 'as a guard.' mium: one of Caesar's puppet-kings. See p. 115, 13. custodis loco: the marshes. VI. 10. pontibus: bridges across the streams, and causeways over 14. hostium numero: 'as enemies.'
- cause.' natura: nom. nonnullos, etc.: 'from force of nature some were favoring the Gallic 'as a part of his plan.' Labienus prepares a ruse for the enemy. 28. mille: here a noun. A. 94 e N.; G. 308; H. 178. Erat: N. to p. 49, 31.
  29. flumen: perhaps the Ourthe.
  30. habebat in animo: see Idioms.
  31. Augebatur: sc. eum hostibus.
  32. in consilio: tum: the cavalry of Caesar's army was largely composed of Gauls. dubium devocaturum: = in discrimen vocaturum [esse]. 'off'; constr. of milibus? 21. via: why abl.? Chap. 24. hiemaverat: plup., because it was now summer (p. 151, 22). 20. in corum finibus: probably at or near Lavacherie; see Book v., VII. 18. geruntur: why pres.? A. 276 e; G. 220 R.I; H. 467, 4 22. missu Caesaris: see IDIOMS. 23. a: ibus? 27. equitatu: 'body of cavalry.' 36. equi-33. in
- Page 153. 1. ordinibus: = centurionibus. 'what his plan is.' 3. suspicionem: 'impr causal, 'because the camps were so near each other.' what his plan is: 3. suspicionem: input
- tition of the thought in cum his; they not only went off at the same time from its condition of insurrection. 'face about towards the enemy.' stravimus: in Book v., Chapters 3 and 56. as the Germans, but accompanied these into Germany. 20. nobis ducibus: dat, the "editorial" zw. A. 98 d; G. 195 R.7; H. 446 N.2. imperatori: i. e., Caesar. 22. signa . . . converti: gum esse: '(saying) that it would be wearisome.' Read N. to p. 78, 4. VIII. 9. cohortati inter se: 'urging one another on.' 30. civitatem recepit: 'recovered the state' of the Treveri 26. impetum modo: 'the bare 32. comitati eos: not a repe-34. demon-10. lon-
- THE SECOND EXPEDITION INTO GERMANY. IX-XXVIII. в. с. 53.
- Chapters 7 and 8 being a digression to describe the operations of La-36. Caesar . . . venit: the narrative refers back to Chap. 6,

- bienus. 37. causis: the reasons here assigned by Caesar hardly seem adequate (cf. Book IV., Chap. 16). The first expedition had certainly been barren of results (see N. to p. 114, 14), and could raise no great hopes of brilliant conquest. Perhaps Caesar wished to show both his enemies and his friends that, notwithstanding the rebellions in Gaul, he had the country so well in hand that he could well leave it to engage in military enterprises elsewhere.
- Page 154. 1. miserant: sc. Germani. 4. pontem: the bridge was probably situated not far above Bonn. Cf. Book IV., Chap. 17 and Notes. Nota... studio: 'since the plan (of such a bridge) was familiar and had been tried, (and) the soldiers worked with much enthusiasm.' 8. purgandi sui: cf. N. to p. 95, 14, and p. 111, 16. 9. qui: when used with the subj.? 12. poenas pendant: see IDIOMS. 13. amplius obsidum: see IDIOMS, p. 388, under Partitive Genitives.
- X. 18. denuntiare: N. to p. 147, 4. 29. silvam: the Bacenis wood appears to have formed a part of the great Hercynian forest (Chap. 24), which extended over a large portion of Germany. It is mentioned by Caesar only, and is thought by some to have been in the region of the Hartz Mountains, or perhaps identical with the Thuringian Forest. See map. 31. ab: on the part of. 32. ad eius initium silvae: in Meiningen, the western part of Saxony, Goeler thinks.
- XI. 35. perventum est ad: 'since we have reached.' alienum: 'foreign to the subject,' 'out of place.' This interesting and valuable digression on the customs of the Gauls and Germans is probably introduced to draw attention from the fact that Caesar, from a military point of view, utterly failed to accomplish anything by his second expedition into Germany. He marched over the Rhine, and marched back again, without fighting a battle or taking a prisoner. The moral effect of the expedition, however, upon the Gauls and his fellow-countrymen was doubtless great.
- Page 155. 2. partibus: 'districts.' On the state of society here described, see p. 40. 4. eorum: = Gallorum. 5. quorum: refers to qui . . . existimantur, not to corum. summa: 'control,' 'final decision.' 6. redeat: subj. of characteristic. eius rei causa: 'with this object in view,' referring to the clause ne—egeret. institutum videtur: '(that practice) seems to have become established.' 7. auxilii: A. 223; G. 389 R.2; H. 410 v. 1. 8. quisque: i. e., each patron, or party leader. 9. habet: habeat would have been more regular. A. 309 a; H. 511, 1. 10. Galliae: dep. on ratio; 'There is this same state of affairs throughout Gaul as a whole.' 11. divisae: N. to p. 47, 1.

XII. 12. Cum: = quo tempore, 'at the time when.' 13. Hi: 'the latter.' Before the Sequani, the Arverni had held a position of leadership; see Book I., Chap. 31. 15. clientelae: 'dependent states.' 16. iacturis: 'sacrifices'; cf. N. to p. 62, 12, and read Book I., Chap. 32.

21. publice: 'as a state.' 23. occupatam possiderent: 'had seized upon, and were in possession of.' A. 292 R.; G. 667 R.I; H. 549, 5. 24. Divitiacus: N. to p. 56, 12. 25. imperfecta re: 'before the matter was settled.' 26. Adventu: abl. of time and cause. commutatione rerum: 'a change of relations.' Aeduis: why dat.? 28. comparatis: i. e., for the Aedui. 30. reliquis rebus: 'by all other means.' 32. quos... intellegebatur: 'and since it was understood that these enjoyed Caesar's favor equally (with the Aedui).' gratia: abl. of specification. 34. Remis: trans. as if Remorum. A. 235 a; G. 343 R.2; H. 384 II. 4 N.2.

Page 156. XIII. 1. aliquo numero: 'in any consideration,' 'of any account.' Read pp. 40, 41. 3. servorum loco: 'as slaves.' nullo: old form, = nulli. 4. consilio: dat.; 'is invited to (share in) no deliberation.' 6. in . . servos: 'these (the nobles) have over them all the same rights as masters over slaves.' 7. duobus: refers back to 1. 2. 8. Illi ... intersunt: 'The former preside over the services of religion.' 9. procurant: not 'procure.' religiones: such as, questions concerning atonement for wrong committed, interpretation of omens and signs, rites and ceremonies. See IDIOMS. 10. disciplinae : = discendi. 11. hi: the Druids. eos: = Gallos. **13.** quod: why not quid? 14. idem: nom pl., 'also.' 16. sacrificiis, etc.: see IDIOMS, under interdicere. 18. his: why dat.? 'from these all withdraw, 'these all avoid.' 21. honos: old form of honor. mortuo: 'When he dies.' 27. loco consecrato: probably a sacred grove, near modern Dreux. 29. Disciplina: 'system,' i. e., of the 30. reperta, translata: A. 272 b; H. 536, 2, 1). The truth seems to be that, in Caesar's time, Druidism in Gaul, affected by the general degeneracy of society, had long been declining; but that in Britain, owing to the isolated situation of the island and the backwardness of the inhabitants, it was still flourishing with undiminished vigor. It probably originated in Gaul. 31. diligentius: 'with special thoroughness.' eam rem : = eam.

XIV. 34. pendunt: N. to p. 65, 32. 36. disciplinam: 'training.' 37. versuum: 'lines,' probably composed in metrical form to facilitate memorizing.

Page 157. 1. litteris: 'to writing,' we should say. cum: 'although.'
2. rationibus: 'accounts.' litteris: 'characters.' See N. to p. 61, 106,

and p. 144, 12. 3. quod . . . velint: 'because (as they claim), they do not wish to have their system spread abroad, etc. A. 341 d; G. 541; H. 516 II. 5. litteris: why abl.?  $quod := id \quad quod = nam \quad id$ . The truth of Caesar's statement is beyond question. 8. animas: 'the life,' 'the soul' as life-principle; the Latin often uses the pl. where the English prefers the sing. The doctrine to which Caesar alludes is that known as Metempsychosis, or transmigration of souls. It was believed in by the ancient Egyptians, by Plato and Pythagoras and their followers, and is held to-day by the Buddhists. 9. hoc: i. e., this belief in the soul's immortality. 10. metu . . . neglecto: causal abl. abs., 11. terrarum : = orbis terrarum = 'the earth' (lit. 'the 'since,' etc. circle of lands'). de rerum natura: 'about nature.' The mystic, half-poetic teachings of the Druids have awakened great interest among scholars; but very little is known about them. Read the article on Druidism in the Encyclopædia Britannica, last edition.

- XV. 14. Alterum: cf. p. 156, 7-8. cum: 'whenever.' 15. incidit: 'breaks out.' 17. versantur: 'engage.' 18. genere: 'family,'='position.' plurimos, etc.: owing to the feudal organization of society, members of the nobility could acquire vast power. Orgetorix had 10,000 retainers, besides many others under obligations to him; see Book I., Chap. 4. 19. Hanc, etc.: 'This is the only source of influence and power that they are familiar with.' 20. noverunt: A. 143 c N.; G. 228, 2 R.I; H. 297 I. 2.
- XVI. 21. dedita: 'devoted.' A. 291 b; G. 439; H. 550 N.2.

  23. pro: 'as.' The Romans in their early history sometimes resorted to human sacrifices, as did also the Persians.

  25. pro . . . reddatur: suggestive of the ancient Hebrew principle, "whoso sheddeth man's blood, by man shall his blood be shed."

  28. habent instituta: almost equals instituerunt. A. 292 c; G. 230; H. 388, I N. simulacra: rude cages of wickerwork, having in shape some resemblance to the human form.

  30. quibus: the antecedent is simulacra. Several practices of the Gauls point to a vein of extreme cruelty in the Gallic character; cf. Book v. Chap. 56, Book vii. Chap. 4. This may serve to throw light on the statement, sometimes made, that the horrible excesses of the French Revolution could have occurred in no other civilized country than France. Cf. pp. 42, 43.
- **XVII.** 35. Deum: gen. pl., = deorum. Mercurium: Caesar applies the names of Roman gods to the divinities of the Gauls; the Gallic names cannot in all cases be determined. Mercury probably corresponds to the Gallic Teutātes, Apollo to Belěnus (or Belen), Mars to Hesus (or

Esus), Jupiter to Tarănis (or Taran, = 'Thunderer). 37. itinerum: 'of journeys.' Mercury is dux viarum in that he points out the road, and dux itinerum because he accompanies the traveller on the way.

Page 158. 2. Apollinem: for the beliefs about Apollo and the other deities mentioned, see Vocab., and Murray's "Manual of Mythology." 6. ceperint: pf. subj. instead of the fut. pf. indic.; for devovent in meaning looks forward to the future. cum superaverunt: post victoriam. 9. neque: et non. 10. capta: acc. 11. posita tollere: i. e., to take up and carry off things set aside as votive offerings to the gods.

**XVIII.** 13. patre: not a regular title of Pluto, but a term suggested by the relationship of children claimed by the Galli. 14. ob eam causam: i. e., because sprung from the god of the Lower World, the realm of darkness and night. 15. numero . . . noctium: the early Germans also reckoned periods of time by nights instead of by days. A survival of this custom is found in our words fortnight (= fourteen nights), sennight (= seven nights), twelfth night, etc. 16. ut . . subsequatur: i. e., instead of saying, "the first day of the month," "the first day of the year," as we do, they said "the first night of the month," or "of the year." The practice probably originated in the measuring of time by the courses of the moon, in which the night would naturally form the starting-point of reckoning. 18. ab reliquis: i. e., from all other peoples. 21. turpe ducunt: 'consider it disgraceful.'

XIX. 22. Viri: 'husbands'; the Germans use the word Mann in the same way. pecunias: not necessarily money, but 'property' in general. Derivation of pecunia? dotis nomine: 'by way of dowry.' 23. tantas, etc.: from his own property the husband set aside an amount equal to the dower received with the wife. The income from this common fund, or estate, was saved up, and when the husband or wife died went to the survivor. This custom could have been in vogue only among the higher classes; for the common people were very poor. 25. uter: 'whichever,' husband or wife. vita: why abl.? 26. eum: why 27. in: 'over.' vitae necisque potestatem: among the early Romans also the father had the power of life and death over wife, children, and slaves. 28. illustriore loco: 'of higher rank.' ... venit: 'if suspicion has arisen in regard to (the cause of) death.' 30. uxoribus: the pl. implies the practice of polygamy among the higher classes of Gaul. 30. in servilem modum: see IDIOMS, under in. 32. excruciatas interficiunt: 'they torture and kill.' See N. to p. 157, 30, and A. 292 R.; G. 667 R.I; H. 549, 5. pro cultu: 'considering the civilization.' Showy parades and brilliant fêtes are a marked characteristic of French life. In view of the fact that the ancient Gauls to so great a degree (as we learn elsewhere) loved pomp and finery, is it not significant that modern Paris is the leader of the world's fashions? Cf. pp. 42, 43.

33. vivis cordi fuisse: cf. IDIOMS, under Esse with two datives.

35. supra hanc memoriam: = 'before our time.'

36. iustis: 'proper,' 'complete.'

- XX. 37. Quae civitates: = eae civitates, quae. rempublicam: 'public affairs.' 38. habent sanctum: 'have enacted'; cf. N. to p. 157, 28. The singular provision mentioned was established as a check upon the rashness and impetuosity of the Gauls. Cf. N. to p. 96, 15. quis, quid: N. to p. 50, 29.
- Page 159. 1. rumore: a vague, unauthenticated, perhaps secretly circulated saying, a 'rumor'; while fama is rather the open and definite 'report' of news having some basis of truth.

  5. visa sunt [occultanda]: 'which they have thought best to conceal.'

  6. ex usu: see N. to p. 61, 25.

  7. per concilium: 'at a council.' No "Freedom of the Press" among the ancient Gauls!
- **XXI.** 9. druides, etc.: though the Germans had no Druids, we learn elsewhere that there was a regular priesthood among them. praesint: A. 320 a; G. 633, 634; H. 503 I. Cf. p. 156, 8. 10. student: 'pay heed.' Deorum, etc.: the religion of the early Germans was a kind of nature-worship, but hardly so simple as here represented. They worshipped several gods besides the three that Caesar mentions; and the prophetic utterances of women were considered inspired. Cf. Book I., Chap. 50, and notes; read Murray's "Manual of Mythology," pp. 309-325. 13. venationibus: N. to p. 106, 16. in . . . militaris: 'in warlike pursuits.' ab parvulis: 'from early childhood.' Cf. Book IV., Chap. I. 19. renonum: 'reindeer-skins.'
- XXII. 22. in: we would say 'of.' 24. in annos singulos: 'each year,' 'yearly.' gentibus cognationibusque: 'families and clans.'
  26. agri: dep. on quantum. See N. to p. 106, 13 and 14. 27. consuetudine: 'residence.' 28. agricultura: A. 252 c; G. 404 R; H.
  422 N.2. 30. accuratius: 'with greater care.' frigora, aestus: force of the pl.?' 'seasons of cold and heat,' not cold and heat in the abstract. A. 75 c; G. 195 R.5; H. 130, 2. vitandos: why not neut.?
  32. animi aequitate: 'contentment of mind,' freedom from jealousy and ambition. 33. cum (causal) quisque videat: 'each one seeing.' potentissimis: i. e., potentissimorum opibus. Implanted in these early Germans was a spirit of independence and love of freedom that rendered impossible among them marked class distinctions or despotic rule.

**XXIII.** 35. maxima laus: see IDIOMS. In connection with this chapter review Book iv., Chap. 3. 36. proprium virtutis: 'a proof of courage.' 37. neque quemquam: = et neminem.

Page 160. 1. bellum illatum defendit: 'repels an invasion.' praesint: A. 320 a; G. 633, 634; H. 503 I. ut — habeant: 'to the extent of having.' Notice that military power is conferred by election, deliguntur. 4. communis: i. e., common to a whole tribe or people. 6. Latrocinia, etc.: barbarous peoples 5. ius dicunt: see IDIOMS. in all ages of the world have considered freebooting and piracy outside their own borders as not simply legitimate but even praiseworthy. 9. quis; indefinite. 10. profiteantur: 'that habent: 'involve.' they are to give in their names.' A. 339; G. 655; H. 523 III. hominem: 'person'; could virum have been used here? 12. ex his: i. e., of those who have promised to follow. In this voluntary relation between leader, or chieftain, and followers, lies the origin of the peculiar relations between lord and vassal in the middle ages. 13. his: A. 229; G. 344 15. prohibent: sc. eos, unexpressed antecedent R.2; H. 385 II. 2. of qui.

The statements in Chapters 22 and 23 about the institutions of the early Germans are of the highest interest and value; for they point to principles of government the fuller outworking of which in the feudal system and in the English Constitution have had much to do with shaping the political history of Europe and even of America. Those who wish to pursue the subject farther may read Stubbs, "Constitutional History of England," Vol. 1., Chap. 1 and 2; Stillé, "Studies in Mediæval History," Chap. 2; Hallam, "View of the State of Europe during the Middle Ages," Chap. 2; Robertson, "History of the Reign of Charles V.," A View of the State of Europe, and notes.

XXIV. 19 inferrent, mitterent: asyndeton. See A. p. 298; G. 475 R.; H. 636 I. I. 20. trans Rhenum: i.e., into Germany. Cf. N. to p. 106, 4 Rhenus. 22. Eratostheni: see Vocab. Graecis: what Greek writers are referred to it is impossible now to determine. video: used instead of intellego or cognovi because Caesar obtained his information in regard to the matter by reading. Volcae Tectosages: a widely scattered Ganic people, the tribal home of whom in Caesar's time was in the Province, near the Pyrenees. A large body of them, however, early settled in the countries now known as Bavaria and Bohemia, where they long held their own against the Germans. Another portion of them joined the great Gallic migration to the east, and formed a part of the Galatians (cf. p. 41). 24. occupaverunt: not 'occupied.' quae . . . tempus: 'and that people up to the present time.' sese continet: 'has maintained itself' (lit. 'keeps itself together').

of things made use of. arum: the two provinces, Cisalpine Gaul and the 'Province' in Trans-26. opinionem: 'reputation (for).' 27. inopia: lack of resources, 'poverty'; while egestas, 'want,' 'need,' refers rather to the condition resulting from poverty. patientia: "20' 'patience.' 28. provinci-31. ipsi: Galli. illis: Germanis. 30. usus: pl., because of the number and variety assuefacti superari: 'getting used to being

ringian Forest, the Erzgebirge, the Giant Mountains (Riesengebirge), and the Romans had along all of their highways. the great Carpathians. recta . . . regione: 'along the Danube,' 'parallel with the Danube.' The Hercynian Forest covered the region of the Black Forest, the Thu-36. Helvetiorum, etc.: look out the boundaries here given on the map. G. 228, 2 R.I; H. 297 I. 2) Sc. Germani. 'nine days' journey' 'for a rapid traveller' would perhaps be 175 to 200 XXV. 33. supra: 1. 21. demonstrata: 'mentioned.' 34. titudo: 'breadth,' from north to south. iter: see N. to p. 108, 34. 35. mensuras itinerum: i.e., by means of milestones such as Oritur: sc. Hercynia Silva. noverunt: (A. 143 c, N.;

dicat: A. 320 a; G. 633, 634; H. 503 l. dierum iter lx.: perhaps 600 miles. 7. quae: 'such as.' reliquis locis: 'in other parts' of Page 161. 2. sinistrorsus: 'to the left' of the Danube, towards 8. sint, differant: subj. of characteristic. dierum iter lx.: perhaps

sketch of the animal, in which the two horns would appear as one.

12. sicut: 'as it were.' palmae: i.e., of the hand when the fingers are extended.

14. natura: 'natural characteristics.' In point of of attributing but one horn to the reindeer from having seen a profile cornu: it has been suggested that Caesar may have fallen into the error ing to describe. to the reindeer. fact the horns of the female reindeer are shorter than those of the male. 10. Est: N. to p. 49, 31. bos, etc.: Caesar seems to refer He had evidently never seen the animal that he is trymedia: A. 193; G. 287 R.; H. 440, 2 N.I. 11. unum

in derivation with our word "elk." 16. capris: — figurae (dat.) caprarum. varietas: 'mottled appearance.' 17. antecedunt: 'fall below (the reindeer).' crura sine nodis, etc.: it is difficult to account for phant also are without joints. up against these. 23. omn vellous as Caesar. so absurd an error as this in a writer so careful and averse to the mar-15. alces: the word is of Germanic origin, and connected The belief was long current that the legs of the ele-23. omnes: acc. A. 344 e; G. 675, I, 3; H. 20. ad . . . applicant: 'they lean

561 111. above would break through. hole with timber so weakened by notches that a heavy animal passing nated in a distorted account of a kind of pitfall, made by covering a deep mine.' ut . . . relinquatur: 'that the upper parts have (only) the appearance of standing (firmly).' 25. consuetudine: 'in accordance with their habit'; kind of abl.? This wonderful story may have original. ab: 'at' (lit. 'starting from'). 24. subruunt: 'under-

35. quae: = ut eac. 36. parvuli excepti: 'caught when very young.' Fage 162. 1. ab labris: 'at the brim,' i. e., the rim about the large the same animal." 32. captos interficient: 'catch and kill.' A. 292 R.; G. 667 R.I; H. 549, 5. se durant: 'harden themselves.' 34. qui, etc.: just so the hunting of the wild boar was formerly in great repute.

35. quae: = ut eae. 36. parvuli excepti: 'caught when very young.' use in the Middle Ages. end of the horn. Drinking horns of a somewhat similar pattern were in have been found. Peskett remarks that "There is little doubt that the bison here described has become extinct; but the skeletons of several Wild Bull and Unicorn of the Authorized Version of the Bible refer to XXVIII. 29. specie . . . tauri: See IDIOMS, p. 390. The kind of 2. utuntur : sc. lis or eis. The early Ger-

## CHASTISEMENT OF THE EBURONES. XXIX-XLIV. B. C. 53

mans were hard drinkers.

They had both beer and wine

**XXIX.** 3. Caesar, etc.: the narrative, broken off at Chap. 10, is here resumed. 5. supra: Chap. 22; cf. Book 1V., Chap. 1. demonstravimus: N. to p. 77, 2. 6. student: N. to p. 159, 10. 8. auxilia: forces that the Germans would send to help the rebellious Gauls. west bank, at the other end of the bridge. 14. frumenta: N. to p. 54, 35. It was now the latter part of July, or early in August. 15. Arduennam: see N. to p. 124, 22. 17. milibus: sc. passuum. The A. 334 f; G. 462, 2; H. 529 II. I N.I. **22.** subsequi: cf. N. to p. 90, 34, facere. distance is doubtless greatly exaggerated. Cf. p. 154, 13-19. 10. in extremo ponte: 'on the end of the bridge' celeritate: cf. pp. 9, 10. 19. si: 'to see whether.'

potest: 'has great influence;' cf. N. to p. 49, 2, plurimum. 29. incideret: sc. Bazilus; cf. IDIOMS, under incidit. prius, quam: rule for mood the way he got out of it. was manifested both by the way that Ambiorix fell into danger, and by after priusquam? The clause corresponds to sicut . . . casu above; the power of fortune XXX. 26. quo in loco: = ad eum locum, in quo. 31. magnae fuit fortunae: see IDIOMS, p. 390. 34. domicilia Gallorum: N. to p. 129, 4. 27. Multum —m. 29. incide-

tinuous.' poisonous; the ancients considered the berries also poisonous. More likely (as Long suggests) he cursed Caesar. 18. qui: 'since he.' tinuous.' 12. insulis: low tracts of land that became islands when the tide ran in. 16. cum: causal or concessive? 17. omnibus Page 163. XXXI. 6. iudicio: ablative of cause, 'purposely, designedly. A. 211 a; G. 460; H. 529, 3, 2). 7. tempore exclusus: 'shut off, prevented (from gathering his forces) by (the shortness of) time.' 8. cum: 'since'; why with subj.? 11. continentes: 'continentes: ' A. 320 e; G. 636; H. 517. taxo: the juice of yew-leaves is said to be . . . Ambiorigem: 'calling down on Ambiorix all manner of curses.'

droz. 24. unam: 'one and the same.' 27. si ... violaturum: in dir. disc., si ita feceritis, ... non violabo. A. 337; G. 659; H. 527 I. survives in the town of Sègne, that of the latter in the district of Con-N. to p. 150, 12. cupy the old camp and be spared the labor of fortifying. cations of the camp abandoned by Cotta and Sabinus. See Book v., Chap. 26-37. 34. sublevaret: sc. Caesar. The soldiers could oc-32. probarat: explain the contraction. 33. munitiones: the fortifi-XXXII. 20. Segni, Condrusi: see map. The name of the former

from the preceding line, because '(limit of) time' or 'period' rather than 'day' is meant. A. 73; G. 70; H. 123, exception. in praesidio: at Aduatuca. 10. frumentum: see p. 28. 11. reipublicae com-Brussels and Antwerp. 8. post diem septimum: 'on (lit. 'during') the seventh day after.' 9. quam diem: notice the change of gender side the regular legions. that Caesar had now withdrawn the twelve cohorts left to guard the three, the ten legions were all disposed of. We must suppose, therefore, modo: see IDIOMS, under commodo. If Caesar really went to the Schelde, the region referred to lay between think that Scaldem is a mistake in the MSS. for Sabim. 7. partis: acc. great to be twice traversed, as Caesar travelled, in seven days. Some does not flow into the Meuse; and its distance from Tongres seems too bridge over the Rhine (Chap. 29), or that these were auxiliary troops out-(Tongres) under Cicero, and Labienus, Trebonius, and Caesar had each Page 164. **XXXIII.** 5. tribus: as one legion was left at Aduatuca 10. frumentum: see p. 28. 6. Scaldem: in point of fact the Schelde

defend'; subj. of characteristic. 17. omnis: acc. with partis. 18. abdita: 'secluded.' 19. vicinitatibus: abstract for concrete; 'definite,' i. e., among the Gauls.

17. omnis: acc. with partis. 'neighbors.' XXXIV. 15. Erat: N. to p. 49, 31. supra: in Chap. 31. certa: 21. in ... tuenda: 'in protecting the army as a 16. defenderet: 'was able to

to get the help of Indian tribes in the early wars in this country. the foe than cause any hurt to his soldiers. Caesar let loose upon the diligentia: abl. for their freedom, and had inflicted a most telling blow upon him. 32. Ut...difficultatibus: 'Considering the nature of the difficulties.' Eburones their savage neighbors, just as the French and English used wickedness in Caesar's eyes lay in the fact that they had fought bravely Sabinus Caesar felt the most bitter hatred; cf. N. to p. 139, 31. Their on account of their destroying the fifteen cohorts under Cotta and protection. 23. quae . . . res: 'a circumstance which, nevertheless, in a 25 . 27. sceleratorum: referring to the Eburones, for whom confertos: i. e., in masses, in divisions, for mutual 33. ut, etc.: that he might rather do less damage to

25. praesidii tantum: 'so small a garrison.' ut...possit: 'that not even the rampart in its entire extent can be manned.' 26. neque quisquam: = et nemo. 27. quam praedam: trans. as if eam praedam, acc. to agree with quibus; fortunatissimos would have been more regular. polior? 18. latrociniis natos: see p. 160, 6, and N. 22. tenuem: 'trifling.' 23. fortunatissimis: in and a company of the comp 8. afferret: why subj.? 12. supra documus: in Book IV., Chap. 16. 14. pons, praesidium: see Chap. 9 and 29, and N. to p. 113, 9 16. ex G. 617; H. 445, S. 5. legionem: the xivth, under Cicero, with the military stores at Aduatuca (Tongres). 6. fortuna, etc.: cf. p. 163, 5. 165. XXXV. 4. diem: cf. N. to p. 164, 8, and A. 200 a; 28. duce: 'as guide'; why abl.?

instructions.' Nervii; see Book v. Chap. 38-52. qui: 'although he'; concessive, hence followed by the subj. H. 515 III. praeceptis: 'according to the had bravely withstood a most violent attack on his camp among the 30. Cicero: the year before (autumn of B. C. 54) Cicero 34. progressum: sc. eum esse. 36. illius: Cicero.

10. facta potestate: 'having obtained permission.' recovered in the few days that Caesar had been gone. 8. sub vex-illo: being of different legions and maniples, they went off by them-selves under a flag, instead of with a regular standard; cf. p. 25nine legions off on expeditions. 7. hoc spatio, etc.: they had recovered in the few days that Caesar had been gone. 8. sub vex-(a march of only) three miles.' Page 166. 2. quo . . . posset: 'by which hurt could be received in 6. unus: 'only a.' legionibus: the

**XXXVII.** 11. Hoc...casu: 'Just at this critical moment.'
12. eodem illo cursu: 'with that same gallop.' ab: 'on the side of.'
14. objectis silvis: causal abl. abs. appropringuarent: A. 327; G. 579; H. 520 II. 15. tenderent: 'had their tents.' A. 342; G. 631;

A. 235, a; H. 384, II., 4, N. 2. v., Chap. 26-37. occiderint: subj. because Caesar is giving the thought of the soldiers.
28. barbaris: trans. as if barbarorum. B. 188, I, N.; superstitions from the locality.' veniat: 'where the men should fall in.' 22. signa ferantur: 'an advance should be made.' probably situated on a hill. Totis . . . castris: see IDIOMS, p. 389. B. 300, 3; A. 334, f; H. 529, II., I, N. I. funduntur: 'pour around,' 'swarm around.' B. 256, I; A. III, a, N.; H. 465. ex reliquis partibus: 'on the other sides.' si: 'to see whether.' rear gate; cf. p. 32. recipiendi sui: cf. n. to p. 95, 14. funduntur: 'pour around,' 'swarm around.' B. 256, The tents of the traders were in this case just outside the 26. calamitatem : described in Book 25. ex . . . fingunt: 'draw 20. locus: the camp was quam . . . con-18. Circum-

previous battles, viz., that with the Nervii (see p. 88, 1, and N.), and that in the Alps (see p. 95, 3-8).

38. in statione: 'on guard.' in Caesar's army centurion, primipilus; nat in the Alps (see p. 95, 3-8). 38. in statione: 'on guard.' Page 167. 1. Relinquit animus Sextium: 'Sextius faints.' XXXVIII. 32. primum pilum duxerat: Baculus had been first 33. superioribus proeliis: 'in (the narration of) see p. 22. ad Caesarem: 'under Caesar,' i. c.,

per manus tractus: see IDIOMS, under per.

(afar).' camp. 8. recipiat: force of the subj.? modo conscripti: the xIvth legion had been lately enrolled. See p. 163, 34-38, and N. to p. 150, **11.** quin: = qui non, 'as not to be upset.' XXXIX. 10. exspectant: 'they wait (to see) what order will be given.' 7. Hic nulla munitio: the foragers were three miles from 6. exaudiunt: force of ex-? 'from (a distance),' from

the new xivth legion some centurions of lower rank from the other legions, both as a reward of merit and as an example of courage to the (they say) the camp is'; reason for subj.? 20. at: 'at least.' 21. alii: sc. censent. 23. docuimus: see p. 166, 8, and N. inter se cohortati: N. to p. 153, 9. 30. eam: i. e., vim et celerilatem. 34. virtutis causa: 'on account of bravery.' Caesar had promoted into (they say) the camp is'; reason for subj.? the soldiers) give it as their opinion.'

18. Alii—censent: 'some (of they sav) the command.' 17. in . . . manipulos: the drivers try to force their way 38. pars: two cohorts (over 700 men) perished.

Page 168. XII. 6. fidem non faceret: 'he could not convince (Cicero and the soldiers).' 8. alienata mente: abl. abs., 'bereft of reason.' 9. neque... contenderent 'and the model... that, had the Roman army been unharmed, the Germans would not 310; H. 507, III., 3, N. 7. have attacked the camp.' 9. neque ... contenderent: 'and they were maintaining incolumi exercitu: abl. abs.; B. 305, 1;

admirandum: sc. hoc (= haec res). for not even the least chance.' Caesar has much to say about "fortune" in times of reverses. used with the subj.? one thing,' after questus. indicavit: 'concluded.' **16.** amnline (27) and N. 12. eventus: acc. pl., 'issues,' 'chances.' 14. 13. essent emissae: when is quod causal casu: dat., for casui, '(saying) that... unum: '(only)

the autumn rains had begun. eagerness (of pursuit) were almost surpassing their natural powers.' and were maintaining, etc.' captured were looking about for Ambiorix, just seen by them in flight, in . . . diviso: 'sent apart in all directions.' deducto exercitu: 'after the army should have been led away.' inopia, cattle, and perhaps other animals, as 15-17. frumenta: force of the pl.? see Idioms, p. 23. numero, etc.: cf. N. to p. 164, 33. 389. animals, as shown by agebatur, and p. 165, 30. in eum locum: 'to such a pass. 28. in praesentia: 'for a time.' <u>35</u>. paene ... vincerent: 'in their 27 anni tempore: autumn; ut, etc.: 'that 25. praeda:

saries of life. to furnish the outcast with fire and water, these representing the necesformula of exile, by which every one within certain limits was forbidden interdixisset: see IDIOMS under interdicere. This was the usual Roman custom referred to was that of putting traitors to death. Page 169. more ... sumpsit: see IDIOMS under more. The ancient Roman XLIV. 15. ad conventus agendos: see N. to p. 76, 12. 6. duarum cohortium: cf. p. 167, 38, and N. 11. aqua...

# BOOK VII.

OUTBREAK OF THE REBELLION. Vercingetorix. I-V.

giones. 6 legions were at Agedincum, 2 among the Lingones, 2 by Caesar. See Book vr., Chap. 44. 14. omnibus: 'by every sort of.' 15. Galliam . . . vindicent: 'assert the freedom of Gaul.' 16. rationem esse habendam: 'that they must see to it.' 19. le-21. praestare: impers. Give rules for changing dir. to indir. disc. the borders of the Treveri, - ro in all; see quad, explained by retineri ... passe. res: 'the condition of affairs.'
7. urbano motu: 'the disturbances in the city,' i. e., at Rome. neque: only Cisalpine Gaul is referred to. instituit: == coepit. by one, but in a body, responding to the general. provincia: probably niores: men of age for military service, i. e., between the ages of 17 and rdered out all men throughout Italy capable of bearing arms. 51, 31. 2 conventus: N. to p. 76, 12. Cencounter with his personal enemy, T. Annius fore the storm," as events were soon to show. Italiam: see N. to p. et non. 8. qui: 'since they.' B. 283, 3, a; A. 320, c; H. 517. 12.

Acconis: leader of the rebellion of the previous year, and put to death levies were made in haste, the soldiers did not take the military oath one Riots immediately ensued at Rome of so serious a nature that the Senate Page 170. Chapter I. 1. Quieta Gallia: it was the "calm be-4. conjurarent: = una iurarent. In times of danger, when the Clodii: murdered in an Milo, in Jan. B. C. 52 BookVI., Chap. 44. **6.** quod : = id

subject is ne . . . deserantur. militaribus signis: the Gauls went armed iureiurando ac fide: 'by oath and pledge of honor.' tur: 'from fear that (report of) the compact may get abroad.' solemn.' to war-councils: see Book v., Chap. 56. 27. **25.** principes := primos, 'that they will be the first of all to,' obsidibus cavere: cf. p. 150, 22, and N. ne res 29. gravissima: 'most sanciatur: the effera-

- tur: cf. Idioms, Passives used Impersonally. Page 171. 2. eius rei: the beginning of the war. discedi-
- been done.' 14. ante ... vigiliam: before 9 p. m. spatium: = 'a distance, which.' milium: pred. gen. revenues (N. to p. 56, 1), and buying grain, slaves, and the like tiandi: the Romans in Gallic cities were chiefly engaged in farming were posted all along the route, ready to receive and at once transmit the 11. clamore, etc.: cf. N. to p. 146, 16. On this occasion probably men III. 4. dies: referring to tempore eius rei above; fem because meaning not 'day,' but 'period,' 'limit.' B. 53; A. 73; H. 123. 6. nego-13. gesta essent: concessive, 'although these things had milium: pred. gen. **15**. quod
- cf. N. to p. 157, 18. of Gaul, is meant. See p. 38, and N. to p. 62, 10 and 12. 19. clientinoun, 'the hesitating.' quod; 'and up to (lit. 'before') what time.' 35. armorum quantum: 'how many arms.' perium: 'the military authority,' = the position of commander-in-chief. for this and the following peoples, see Vocab. and map. bus: Gallic noblemen frequently controlled several thousand 'retainers'; 17. Galliae: probably the land of the Galli, the central division 25. adit: 'has access to.' 38. dubitantes: used as 36. quodque : = et 30. Senones:
- causa: = si qui levius peccaverunt. Page 172. 1. tormentis necat: N. to p. 157, 30. leviore de
- the force of the Aedui from the north, while the Arverni might hem them in from the south. See map. -ne: here = utrum. 19. nihil constat: 'not at all clear.' B. 176, 3: A. 240, a; H. 378, 2. nobis: nally so. 15. quibus ... cognoverint: 'whose plan, they had learned, was this.' 17. ipsi: the Rithmines .... of the name Luther. N. to p. 77, 2, demonstravimus. B. 256, 1; A. 111, a, N.; H. 465 Aedui were friendly to the Romans, their dependents were at least nomi-V. 5. Lucterium: in this name Voss thinks that he finds the origin the name Luther.
  8. fide: 'protection,' 'clientship.' As the 20. iunguntur: 'unite themselves.'
- ii. Caesar's return to Gaul; first military operations VI-XV.
- a time, Clodii. Gaul. with great authority. 21. Italiam: why not abl.? Caesari: at Ravenna, in Cisalpine virtute: 'energetic action.' Pompey was made sole consul for 22. urbanas res: 'matters in the city'; cf. N. to p. 170, 2, Pompei: for Pompeii; see N. to Iuli,

- p. 170, 19, legiones. 27. iis: i. e., Gallis. 26. provinciam: i. e., 'the Province'; cf. p. 38, and N. to
- getting to Narbo ought to take precedence of every (other) design.' in this chapter, see Vocab. and map. 34. antevertendum [esse]: the subject is ut . . . proficisceretur; 'that VII. 31. Nitiobroges: for this and the other peoples mentioned 33. versus: part. of vertor.
- Gaul (p. 170, 4); they did not form a regular legion. Page 173. 4. supplementum: the troops lately levied in Cisalpine
- putabat: sc. Lucterius. 8. proficiscitur: sc. Caesar. 9. tempore: 'season'; it was now the latter part of February (B. C. 52).

  10. discussa: 'cleared away.'

  13. ne, etc.: 'not even to a single VIII. 7. intra praesidia: within the line of garrisons by which Caesar had secured the western and northern parts of the Province. more definite than fama, 'by report.' person,' to say nothing of an army. 17. nuntiis: 'by messengers';
- refreshed.' 33. quid de sua salute consilii: 'any plan involving his nersonal safety.' 35. prius, quam: why followed by subj.? fictitious or assumed reason = 'through pretended anxiety' about the new force, etc. In reality Caesar had no intention of going back to the information of his proposed movements from the Gauls. that that was his destination. Great caution was necessary to keep Agedincum and joined his legions before even his own men suspected Province to look after his recruits stationed there, but pushed on to opinione praeceperat: 'had conjectured.' per causam: used of a ventura [esse]: 'would take place' (lit. 'would come in experience'). Gorgobinam: see Vocab., and p. 61, 6-9, and N. 23. haec de: 'these (movements) on the part of.' 25. Bru-
- pledged to his interests he would soon find them enemies. 'him.' Caesar. 7. educeret: sc. legiones. 8. duris su will'; pl., because many states and individuals are referred to.

  doceant: 'to explain'; kind of subj.?

  14. Agedinci: bus: 'by difficulties of transportation.' 'him,' Caesar. A. 258, c; H. 425, II. Page 174. X. 5. ne, etc.: if Caesar failed to protect the Gauls 7. educeret: sc. legiones. 10. **14.** Agedinci: B. 232, I; 8. duris subvectionivoluntates: 'good-
- was now Agedincum. 17. quo: when used in the sense of ut? XI. 16. Altero: = postero; trace out Caesar's route on the map. The transportation of supplies to the front as he Caesar's base of operations

diem. quaeque ... imperat: = et ea, quae ad eam rem usui sint, expenit et fieri imperat. 28. sint: how different :fut. pass. infin. besieging. in possession of the enemy. Cf. p. 10. 22. quara primum: see IDIOMS. iter faceret: i. e., to Gorgobina, which Vercingetorix was venit: sc. Caesar. diei tempore: i. e., by the lateness of the hour; terent (subj. of purpose), eius tuendi causa, comparabant. kept marching south would be endangered if he left towns behind him 30. profugerent: sc. Cenabenses. 24. ductum iri: 'that it (the siege) would be prolonged'; praesidium, etc.: i. e., praesidium, quod Cenabum mit-

- men for the pluck and endurance they had shown during the few weeks town as well as their possessions; cf. p. 11. Caesar thus rewarded his Page 175. 2. praedam: including probably the inhabitants of the
- plere: 'to man the wall.' 17. in oppido: = qui erant in oppido. significatione: 'demeanor,' behavior.' novi aliquid consilii: 'some the purpose of Caesar's action. 14. Quem: 'this' (the cavalry). ut...consuleret: object of oratum; while ut...conficeret explains new scheme.' **15**. in spem venerunt: see Idioms, under spem. **16**. murum com-XII. 6. Ille: Caesar. in via: 'on the way' to Gorgobina. 19. omnes incolumes: acc.
- German horsemen Caesar does not say. instituerat: = ut facere con-XIII. 21. Germanos equites: N. to p. 110, 33. 22. ab initio: from the beginning' of the Gallic war. When he first employed the 29. regione: dep. on in before finibus.
- spring, probably March.

  Page 176. 1. host XIV. 32. Vellaunoduni, etc.: B. 232, I; A. 258, c; H. 425, II. 4. alia — atque: 'different from what.'

  37. anni tempore: early
- in every direction, as.' 8. -ne --ne:= utrum an. 9. quibus amissis: 'without which.' 11. sint: subj. also in dir. disc., characteristic. neu --neu:= ne aut --aut. 12. proposita: 'handy.' in every direction, as.' spatio . . . quo: 'for so great a distance from their (the Romans') track triotism, in the face of invaders, rarely fails to bring response. and barns where grain and fodder were stored. of avoiding a decisive battle, cutting off the enemy's supplies and 13. Haec: refers to what precedes, illa to what follows. commoda: 'private interests.' Such an appeal to the feeling of pa-1. hostes: i. e., the Roman. aedificiis: the granaries 12. proposita: 'handy.' 2. rei familiaris This policy 3. hoc

mus, who wore out Hannibal, and our own Washington. successfully employed by many generals, — among others, Fabius Maxiharassing him at every turn, was the very best that, under the circumstances, the Gauls could pursue. The proposal of it reveals in Vercingetorix generalship of a high order. Similar tactics have been mare: sc. se. 16. victis: i. e., to the Gauls, if conquered.

open squares; its population was not far from 40,000. **28.** flumine, etc.: see Plan X (facing p. 178). et: omit in trans. **30.** ipsorum: the delegates of the Bituriges. **31.** vulgi: of the general body of delegates from the other states. The exemption of Avaricum from the general destruction of cities was the first great mistake of the Gauls in pulcherrimam: Avaricum occupied a beautiful site, and had many fine IDIOMS, p. 389. 24 position of the word. this campaign, the outcome of which was to be so disastrous for them. tary burning of cities, especially at such a season, evinces a truly heroic **XV**. **18**. urbes: B. 217, 3; A. 247, c; H. 417, I, N. 2. 22. amissa: neut. pl. used as noun. 24. Procumbunt: the *falling* is emphasized by the d. Gallis: B. 188, I, N.; 235, a; H. 384, II., 4, N. 2. Deliberatur: see This volun-

# iii. The Siege and Sacking of Avaricum. xvi-xxviii

Plan X., 2. XVI. 32. minoribus: 'shorter,' 'easy.' 33. locum castris: see

met the emergency by going out at uncertain times and in different adoriebatur: cf. N. to p. 176, 13. The Britons had tried the same tactics in the year 54; see Book IV., Chap. 30, 32. 5. etsi, etc.: 'although, so far as provision could be made by calculating in advance, our men directions.' Page 177. 1. in ... tempora: i. e., hourly. 3. dispersos ...

to sustentarent ('were bearing up against'), giving the resulting condiabl. of cause tenuitate, indiligentia, incendiis. bringing promised supplies; see Book I., Chap. 16. 15. quod: as antecedent supply frumentum with consumpserunt. 16. affecto exercitu: concessive, 'although the army was involved'; modified by the abl. of cause tenuitate, indiligentia, incendiis. 18. frumento: cf. p. 28. the Roman yoke galling, and would gladly have thrown it off if they had dared. Once before they had given Caesar serious trouble by not nullo studio: 'without enthusiasm.' The Aedui had doubtless found vineas, turres: see pp. 34-36 and Plate VI. tion and implying that the hunger continued so long as the grain was Notice the change of tense from caruerint, stating a historical fact, supra: p. 176, 27-29, and Plan X. **18**. frumento: cf. p. 28. 13. alteri: the Aedui. 10.

the light' (of), 'as.' mander.' of building the agger, etc. the noble courage exhibited. B. 284, 2; A. 332, b; H. 502, 2. ignominiam acciperent: 'suffer defeat.' 20. nulla . 29. parentarent: derivation? subj. also in dir. . . indigna: the dignity of expression well suits 25. illo imperante: 'under him as com-22. in opere: engaged 'in the work' 27. loco: 'in

the German tactics, the superiority of which over their own the Gauls the manner described in Book I., Chap. 48. Vercingetorix had adopted expeditis, etc.: light-armed foot-soldiers fought among the cavalry, after had learned to their cost. Cf. N. to p. 110, 33. **34.** Avaricum: B. 192, I, a; A. 234, e; H. 437, I. 38. pervenit: sc.

might attempt to cross. their position: = locus editus atque apertus of 1. 3 above; see Plan X. 3.

6. non latior: concessive, 'although not wider.'

8. generatim: Caesaris. iniquitatis: B. 208, 2; A. 220; H. 409, II. reputation,' rather than 'safety.' themselves off. safe from all attack where they were, and that they were simply showing Caesar intimates, rather ungraciously, that the Gauls knew that they were videret: 'if one should look at.'

12. aequo Marte: see Vocab.

14. inani simulatione: 'with mere parade,' spoken contemptuously. bog grown over with bushes and underbrush, through which the Romans explained by the more definite in civitates. Roman soldiers. Page 178. XIX. 5. Collis: i. e., on which the Gauls had taken up 15. conspectum suum: 'the sight of them,' the **18**. cum: causal or concessive? sic ut: 'firmly resolved to.' 9. saltus: places in the 20. salute: **19**. sua : = 11. qui-

sc. ei esse. the camp. command. etc.: 'because (as they said) he had,' etc.

26. sine imperio: Vercingetorix had left his army temporarily without placing any one in breaking the strength of Hannibal. porarily. Romans at times lost faith in Fabius Maximus as he was slowly 24. proditionis: B. 208, I; A. 220; H. 409, II. B. 299, 2; A. 333, a; H. 516, II., 2, N. 33. persuasum: 37. is: the one appointed commander-in-chief temcui rei: i. e., immediate battle with the Romans. 31. Quod castra movisset: 'In regard to having moved 25. quod,

'resign (his generalship) to them, if they thought they were,' etc. si: 'to see whether.' B. 300, 3; A. 334, f; H. 529, II., I, N. I. imperatorem: Caesar. Page 179. 4. qui: 'since they.' 8. ipsis remittere [imperium]: 15.

councils expressed approval by beating with their 24. armis concrepat: the early Germans also at their spears upon their

shields. 26. summum, etc.: the ingenious ruse of Vercingetorix had turned the fickle Gauls at once; they were now as much in favor of him as a few hours previous they had been against him. 27. maiore ratione: 'on a more reasonable method.' 29. communem: i. e., to the Gauls. If the Bituriges single-handed should succeed in resisting Caesar, they would have all the credit of the victory. 30. eos: Bituriges. oppidum: Avaricum.

**XXII.** 33. summae sollertiae, etc.: versatility is a striking characteristic of the French. 34. quoque: from quisque; here = 'any one.' 35. falces: = falces murales, strong poles, to one end of which was fastened a heavy point for prying, and a hook for pulling stones out of the enemy's wall; whether they were usually worked by hand or by machinery is not known. See Plate V., 5. In this case the Gauls caught hold of the falces with nooses, turned them aside, and having gotten a firm grip on them, drew them over inside the walls by means of windlasses (tormentis). 37. subtrahebant: 'drew away' the agger by running mines under it, so that it sank down into the ground. 38. ferrariae: iron is still mined in the region about Bourges (Avaricum).

Page 180. 2. turribus contabulaverant: = turribus contabulatis instruxerant, or compleverant. The towers were built of wood, and two or more stories in height above the wall. See Plan X. 4 b. coriis: the hides were put on to protect the towers against the firebrands of the besiegers. 3. aggeri ignem: cf. pp. 35, 36. 5. cotidianus agger expresserat: 'the daily (addition to the) agger had raised.' On the agger the Romans had wooden towers, which were raised gradually as the height of the agger was increased. See Plan X. 4 a. 6. commissis . . . malis: 'by building up between the corner-posts of their towers.' When the Gauls erected a tower on the walls they left the upright posts at the corners of full length, projecting above the stories at first built; the height could readily be increased, as circumstances might demand, by laying crosspieces above, between these corner-posts already in position. 7. apertos cuniculos: '(the construction of) the open galleries' in the agger, through which timber and other material were carried to the front. As the agger was prolonged nearly to the wall, the enemy hurled sharp darts and other things into the ends of these passage-ways to hinder the progress of the work.

**EXIII.** 11. Trabes, etc.: in connection with this description, study Plate VI., figure 3. In the construction of the Gallic wall, first, beams were laid parallel on the ground at right angles to the direction of the wall and two feet apart. Some distance from the outer ends these beams

were firmly fastened by means of tie-pieces (probably mortised in), running at right angles to them and parallel with the line of the wall. Between the outer ends of the beams large rocks were carefully fitted; the remaining spaces were filled up level with the top of the beams with earth. The first layer (ordo) was now done. Above this a second layer was laid in the same way, but so that the ends of the beams of the upper layer rested on the rocks of the lower. In like manner the remaining layers were constructed, rocks and beams alternating, till the wall was raised to the requisite height. The outer surface of the wall presented an appearance something like that of a checker-board. directae: 'at right angles' to the line of the proposed wall. perpetuae in longitudinem: 'without a break along the (entire) length (of the wall).' ciuntur: by the tie-pieces, running the same direction as the wall; see Plate VI., 3. 16. idem illud intervallum: two feet. gulae, etc.: 'the different beams are held in position by (corresponding) rocks laid in between.' 19. expleatur: why not indic.? in speciem varietatemque: 'in point of diversified appearance.' 24. perpetuis: i. e., by a 'continuous' line of tie-pieces, each 40 feet long, and fastened at the ends to the ends of those adjoining it. 25. perrumpi: 'broken to pieces' by the battering-ram and heavy missiles. 'wrenched asunder' by the falces murales.

- XXIV. 26. cum: 'although.' 29. latum, altum: the greatness of the dimensions given has led some to doubt whether the figures are correct. 33. cuniculo: 'by means of a countermine,' prolonged out under the agger. 35. ab utroque latere: 'on both sides' of the agger, designated by the two towers at the corners of the front. Cf. Plate VI. 2. 38. quo: = in quem locum.
- Page 181. 1. vix . . . posset: 'could hardly be perceived.'
  4. reducerent: 'drew back' the movable towers on the agger. 5. aggerem interscinderent: they cut the agger in two to prevent the spreading of the flames throughout the entire length of the structure. The agger was constructed largely of timber.
- **XXV.** 8. hostibus: B. 188, I, N.; A. 235,  $\alpha$ ; H. 384, II., 4, N. 2. 9. pluteos turrium: wooden breastworks, probably covered with hides, on the tops of the towers. 10. nec . . animadvertebant: = et animadvertebant, non facile adire, etc. apertos: sc. milites, 'exposed' by the destruction of the plutei. 11. recentes: 'fresh.' 13. quod: '(something) which.' 15. per manus—traditas: 'passed from hand to hand' till they reached him; it was his work to hurl them into the agger, in order to add to the fury of the flames already burning. 16. e regione turris: 'in a line with,' i. e., 'directly in front of a

tower,' one of the towers on the agger. scorpione: a machine resembling a catapult, used principally for shooting small, pointed darts. Cf. Plate VI. 8. 18. iacentem: 'as he lay.' 20. nec prius, quam: Caesar states this with evident admiration of the courage exhibited.

\*\*XVI. 24. consilium ceperunt: see IDIOMS. 25. non magna: 'with no great.' 29. tardabat: 'would delay.' 31. proiectae: 'casting themselves,' 'falling.' suorum: i. e., husbands. 35. non, etc.: 'knows no pity.' 36. Quo timore: 'from fear of this' giving of information, explained by ne... occuparentur.

Page 182. XXVII. 1. directis operibus: 'the works (i. e., military engines, a rare meaning of opus) having been placed in position.'
7. expeditis: here a participle.
9. praemia: cf. pp. 28, 29.

by the Romans. 16. circumfundi: impers. Caesar knew that if he could get possession of the wall on all sides there would be no hurry about securing the spoils. 19. a militibus: sc. interfecta est. 21. Cenabi: locative. 22. aetate confectis: 'infirm with old age.' A more horrible slaughter is not recorded in history. 26. multa nocte: 'late at night.' 27. vulgi: cf. N. to p. 176, 31. 28. ut, etc.: 'so that he took care to have his friends and leading men of the states meet (the fugitives) on the road at some distance (from the camp), in order to divide them up and conduct them to those of their own state in the part of the camp that had from the first been assigned to it.' The defenders of Avaricum had been drawn from different states.

# iv. Operations among the Aedui, and before Gergovia. XXIX-LVI.

XXIX. 31. consolatus, etc.: sc. Vercingetorix. 32. ne... demitterent: 'not to lose heart altogether.' 34. artificio quodam: spoken with contempt. 35. si qui: 'whoever.'

Page 183. 1. Avaricum defendi: see Chap. 15. 2. factum [esse]: 'it had come about'; the subject is uti . . . acciperetur. 8. effectum habere: trans. as if efficisse. B. 337, 6; A. 292, c; H. 388, I, N.

**XXX.** 13. ipse non... fugerat: the implication is that as a rule Gallic leaders who had made a failure gave up at once and went into hiding. 16. re integra: 'at the outset.' 19. in spem veniebant: see Iddoms under spem. 21. castra munire: Vercingetorix wisely

adopted the Roman method of encampment, as he had previously adopted the cavalry tactics of the Germans. Cf. N. to p. 177, 35. 22. insueti laboris: 'though unused to labor.'

XXXI. 28. capere posset: 'could win over' the Gauls yet remaining out of the league. posset: B. 284, I, 2; A. 320, f; H. 503, II., 2.
31. quem, etc.: '(stating) what number and before what time.'
32. saggitarios: these were to match Caesar's light-armed troops.
37. conduxerat: sc. mercede, 'had hired.' The Aquitanians, being of different stock from the rest of the Gauls, felt little interest in the general Gallic movement against Caesar.

Page 184. XXXII. 4. cum: concessive. 6. legati: 'as envoys.' 7. maxime necessario tempore: 'at a most urgent crisis.' 9. rem: i. e., the public weal. magistratus, etc.: cf. p. 56, 7-8, and N. 12. florentem: 'influential.' 17. suas . . . clientelas: 'that each of them had his own backers.' Quod: N. to p. 53, 36. 19. positum in: 'depended on.'

**XXXIII.** 23. aluisset, ornasset: subj. by attraction. . . . confideret: 'that party which had least confidence' in its power, = 'the weaker party.' 26. quod, etc.: as the chiefs, according to the laws of the Aedui, could not leave the state to come to Caesar, he 28. iure, — legibus: N. to p. 78, 12. must go to them. inter := (eos), inter quos.32. alio . . . oportuerit: 'at a time and place other than was proper.' 33. fratrem: Cotus. fratre: Valetirenuntiatum: 'declared elected'; sc. esse. duo . . . prohiberent: the excellence of this regulation throws light upon the political advancement of the Aedui. 37. intermissis magistratibus: 'in case of vacancies in the magistracy'; properly the interval between the going out of one magistrate and the inauguration of his successor. As a rule the retiring Vergobret appointed his successor: since Valetiacus had unlawfully chosen his brother to the office, the Druids, by virtue of the right they had to fill the magistracy in case of vacancy, proceeded to nominate and install Convictolitavis, treating the appointment of Cotus as null and void. Possibly Caesar has not told the whole truth in regard to the matter. It seems probable that the division of parties among the Aedui was on the question of loyalty to himself; at any rate, a number of the Aedui soon joined the rebellion against him.

Page 185. XXXIV. 2. controversiarum: B. 206, 2; A. 219; H. 406, II. omnibus omissis rebus: 'laying everything (else) aside.'
4. devicta Gallia: = cum Gallia devicta esset. 11. ab altera parte:

Vercingetorix was on the west side of the Allier (Elaver). Caesar, leaving Decize (Decetia) marched along the east bank in the direction of Gergovia, which he could not reach without crossing the stream. See map.

XXXV. 13. uterque . . . conspectu : 'each army was in sight of the other.' 14. e regione: 'directly opposite' each other. dispositis: by Vercingetorix. 18. vado: "the Allier is now everywhere fordable in summer," says Moberly, "but this is from drainage and the natural rise of the river bed." 23. constare: 'to be full.' From the six legions with him Caesar first chose out 20 cohorts (= 2 legions); then arranged the remaining 40 cohorts so that on the march they presented the appearance of 6 full legions, and sent them on in the direction he had been following. 25. perventum [esse]: i. e., that the legions had gone about the usual distance of a day's march, and had halted, to encamp. Vercingetorix, following along on the other side of the river, would naturally encamp too, thus leaving the coast clear for Caesar and the two legions that had stayed back to build the bridge. Thus Caesar's ruse succeeded perfectly. Vercingetorix had not yet learned to keep scouts in the rear. 26. pars inferior: the piles had not been destroyed below the water line.

**XXXVI.** 31. eo loco: the place where Caesar had encamped, after crossing the Allier. quintis castris: 'in five marches,'='on the fifth day,' a camp being taken as a measure of time, because at the close of every day's march a camp was fortified; see pp. 31, 32. Vercingetorix was already at Gergovia when Caesar came. 33. situ: Gergovia lay on a high plateau, accessible only from the south and southeast, and by a narrow projection on the western slope of the Risolle Heights. See map, and Plan XI. (facing p. 190).

Page 186. 1. expedisset: 'had arranged for.' 2. castris... positis: on a terrace of rock south of the town and at the top only a few feet below the level of the plateau; marked GALLIC ENCAMPMENT on the Plan. Vercingetorix had thus an extremely favorable position. 4. iugi: 'ridge,' 'terrace,' the minor elevations of which are referred to in collibus. qua despici poterat: 'wherever a view could be obtained.' 5. horribilem: i. e., on account of the number and impregnable position of the Gallic troops. 10. quid: = quantum. suorum: dep. on quōque. 11. e regione oppidi: 'directly opposite the town' on the south. collis: a limestone spur of the height on which the town stood, now called la Roche-Blanche, 'White Rock'; a village of the same name lies close by. 12. munitus: i. e., principally by nature. circumcisus: 'scarped.' 13. aquae, etc.: for their water-supply the enemy

relied mainly on the Brook Auzon.

14. hostes: object of prohibituri.

15. non nimis: 'not very.'

Tamen: in spite of the fact that this hill was guarded by the enemy.

16. castris: Caesar nowhere indicates the position of this, his main camp (= castra maiora, 1. 18); but excavations carried on under the direction of the Emperor Napoleon III. brought to light undoubted traces of it on the height so marked in the Plan, — south of the lake of Sarlièves, which is now drained. subsidio veniri posset: 'help could come.'

17. ibi: on the hill mentioned in l. 11.

18. duodenum: = duodenorum. B. 25, 6, a; A. 40, e; H. 52, 3. Each of the two trenches was 12 feet wide.

19. minora [castra]: as this contained two legions, in the large camp there must have been four legions besides the auxiliaries and cavalry. Study Plan XI.

**XXXVII.** 23. demonstravimus: in Chap. 32, 33. 26. praemium: received from the Arverni. 27. imperio: dat. of purpose. Unam: 'the only one.' 28. detineat: subj. also in dir. disc. B. 283, 2; A. 320, b; H. 503, II., I. 30. sic, etc.: 'yet only so far as he had been sustained in a perfectly just claim.' 34. veniant: B. 277; A. 268; H. 486, II. 37. ratio perficiendi: 'a means of carrying out (their plan).'

Page 187. 1. Placuit [eis]: 'They resolved.' 2. mitterentur: 'on the point of being sent,' having been raised in response to Caesar's request, mentioned p. 185, 5. 3. fratres: these were to try to win over to the scheme of revolt the Aeduan contingent already serving under Caesar.

**XXXVIII.** 5. exercitu: the 10,000 recruits raised for Caesar.

9. Eporedorix, Viridomarus: both favorites of Caesar, though afterwards traitors to his cause; Litaviccus was lying. proditionis: B. 208, I; A. 220; H. 409, II.

10. indicta: not from indico; see Vocab.

13. pronuntiare: 'from uttering.' What other constructions often found after prohibeo?

16. collocuti [esse]: B. 328, 2; A. 272, b; H. 536, 2.

19. consilii sit res: 'it were a matter of choice.' B. 307, I, 2; A. 312; H. 513, II.

21. An: B. 162, 4, a; A. 211, b; H. 353, 2, N. 4.

23. persequamur: 'let us avenge.'

25. cives Romanos: these, relying on the protection of the Aedui, were probably conveying to Caesar the supplies mentioned in the next line.

29. permovet: sc. totam civitatem.

XXXIX. 34. traditum: 'introduced.' 35. nominatim evocati: 'specially summoned.' 36. illa: 'that' already spoken of in Chap. 33. 38. summis opibus: 'with all their might.'

Page 188. 3. quod . . . provideat : considered a subordinate clause; hence the subj. 6. levi momento: 'of small account'; abl. of price.

- xL. 10 ad contrahenda castra: i. e., to reduce the size of the camp so that it could be defended by the two legions left behind; for Caesar had but six legions at Gergovia, four having been sent with Labienus to the north. (Cf. Chap. 34.)

  11. posita [esse] in: 'to depend on.'

  13. Fratres Litavicci: see p. 187, 3 and N.

  15. necessario tempore: 'in the emergency.'

  18. omnibus: i. e., Caesar's soldiers. quemquam: 'a single person'; more emphatic than quem.

  19. illi: the soldiers of the Aedui deceived by Litaviccus (cf. Chap. 38).

  22. mortem deprecari: 'to plead for life.'
- XLI. 27. conservatos: sc. esse eos. 28. castra movit: Caesar had encamped after having received the submission of the Aedui. 30. quanto . . . fuerit: 'how critical the condition of affairs has been.' 31. castra: i. e., the camps before Gergovia. 32. succederent: 'were relieving.' 34. in vallo: 'on the rampart'; see p. 31.
- Page 189. 1. tormenta: cf. p. 35. discessu eorum: 'on the departure of the enemy.' 2. obstruere, addere, apparare: the present tense implies that the messengers left Fabius engaged in the work. 4. ante . . . pervenit: Caesar had learned of the defection stirred up by Litaviccus about midnight (p. 188, 1); he started with his troops immediately, and marched 25 miles (p. 188, 16); after three hours' rest he brought his force back again, reaching Gergovia before sunrise. His men had marched 50 Roman miles in a little over 36 hours.
- **XLII.** 9. iili, etc.: cf. N. to p. 96, 15. 10. pro re comperta: 'as an assured fact.' 12. Adiuvat rem proclinatam: 'helps to precipitate matters.' 14. ad legionem: probably going to join his legion at Gergovia. Aristius seems to have been accompanied by a detachment of soldiers, and probably the traders put themselves under his protection. 15. idem facere: i. e., to leave Cabillonum at once.
- XLIII. 24. sui: N. to p. 95, 14. gratiā: see Vocab. 26. ea res: the profit accruing from the booty. 30. nihil—gravius iudicare: 'that he would pass no very severe judgment.' 35. exercitum contraheret: i e., unite his forces with the four legions under Labienus.
- Page 190. XLIV. 1. Haec: i. e., how to get away from Gergovia without giving the impression of flight. cogitanti: sc. Caesari. B. 257, 2; A. 290, a; H. 549, I. 2. minora castra: on la Roche-Blanche; see N. to p. 186, 11. 3. collem: a part of the Risolle Heights, marked (Collis Nudatus) on the Plan. 7. Constabat inter omnes: 'All agreed.' quod: = id, quod. 9. hunc: sc. dorsum, from the masculine form. The northwestern slope of the Risolle Heights is meant, along

which there was a narrow approach to the town grown up with brush. alteram partem: the west side; from the standpoint of the main camp. 10. illos: the Gauls. Now that one hill (la Roche-Blanche, Chap. 36) had been lost, if Caesar should get possession of another he might extend his line of works along the whole south side of the city, thus shutting the Gauls off from their main water supply (see N. to p. 186, 13) and from foraging in the plain. 13. hunc [dorsum]: N. to l. 9. 14. evocatos: i. e., from the top and eastern parts of the Risolle Heights, thus leaving the hill deserted on the side facing Caesar's works.

**XLV.** 15. mittit: towards the point which the Gauls were engaged in fortifying, mentioned 1. 9 and 1. 13 above. By seeming to concentrate his forces against this position Caesar drew the attention of the enemy altogether from his real design, the seizing of their camp. dimentorum: here 'beasts of burden.' 19. stramenta: 'packsaddles,' used only for the conveyance of burdens and not adapted for riding. In southern countries frequently these are left on the animals for weeks at a time without being removed. 22. easdem regiones: the lower ground southwest of the smaller camp, toward Chanonat; as they proceeded in this direction the purpose of the manœuvre would seem to the Gauls to be, to skirt the base of the Risolle Heights on the south and make a dash against the point they were fortifying from the 24. neque: = et non. spatio: 'distance.' 25. Legionem: marked DETACHED LEGION on the Plan. 27. illo munitionum : 'to that point of the fortifications' mentioned in l. 13. B. 201, 2; A. 216, a, 4; 28. insignibus: N. to p. 86, 18. The crests and standards could be seen by the enemy from the plateau of Gergovia, above the embankment thrown up inside the trenches connecting the two camps. 29. raros: 'in scattered parties.' 34. incommodi: dep. on quid.

Page 191. 1. occasionis...proelii: 'that they were attempting a surprise, not a battle.' Caesar's purpose was not to hold the Gallic encampment but simply to raid it, thinking that after a successful dash of this sort he could withdraw from the siege with his credit good.

2. alio ascensu: i. e., to the plateau of Gergovia, on the east; see Plan.

XLVI. 5. recta regione: 'in a straight line.' mille ducentos passus: in this ascent of 1200 paces (a little over an English mile) the troops would have to surmount an elevation of about 600 feet. The plateau of Gergovia lies at least 450 feet above the top of the hill la Roche-Blanche (see Napoleon's Atlas, Plan 22).

6. quicquid huc, etc.: 'whatever curve there was in addition to this (direct distance of 1200 paces, built in the road) for the purpose of making the slope easy (to ascend).'

7. A medio colle: = medio in colle: cf. IDIOMS.

8. ferebat: 'permitted.'
9. murum: see Plan, Gallic Wall. tardaret: subj. of purpose.
10. inferiore spatio: that part of the slope of the hill below and outside of the wall.
standing close to each other.
13. trinis: B. 81, 4; A. 95, b; H. 172, 3.
16. superiore . . . nudata: explained by ut . . . conquieverat.

XLVII. 18. id ... proposuerat: cf. N. to l. I above. The opinion is current that Caesar has falsified in regard to his intentions in making this assault. It is thought that he seriously planned by a daring attempt, when the enemy had been drawn off by a feint, to capture the city; but that, having failed in this, he passed the matter over as a mere dash, whose purpose was simply to humble the enemy and encourage his own men. This view does not seem plausible, because of the nature of the instructions given before the battle (see Chap. 45). About these Caesar would hardly have ventured to falsify, for the reason that, when the memoirs were given to the world, those lieutenants placed in command of the legions (p. 190, 31) were still living, and Caesar knew that they might bring any untruth at once to public notice. After the Gallic War several of Caesar's lieutenants became his bitterest enemies. gionis decimae: cf. N. to p. 68, 33. 20. constituit: 'planted,' 21. valles: a depression in the slope, just west 'brought to a halt.' of the village of Merdogne. Caesar with the tenth legion was on the east side of this (see Plan, xth Legion, 1st Position), the other legions on the west side. 23. retinebantur: expresses attempted action. B. 260, 3; A 277, c; H. 469, II., I. 29. hostem: the Romans. 30. vestem: 'clothing' abstract sing, used instead of concrete pl. 32. neu := et ne. 34. demissae: 'let down' outside the city wall by taking hold of the hands of those remaining on the wall. 36. Avaricensibus: 'gained at Avaricum,' which Caesar permitted his men to sack with all manner of atrocities. See Chap 28. 37. neque ... ascenderet: 'and that he was not going to let any one scale the wall before himself.'

Page 192. XLVIII. 3. ii: sc. hostes alteram partem: N. to p. 190, 9. 4. munitionis: notice the verbal force, 'of fortifying.' 7. sub muro: 'at the base of the wall' on the outside. 11. liberos ... proferre: the women of the ancient Germans frequently in battle placed themselves and their children in sight of their husbands and fathers, in order to inspire greater courage. 14. non facile—sustinebant: 'could not easily hold out against.'

XLIX. 18. sub infimo colle: 'at the base of the hill' on which the small camp stood. See Plan, SEXTIUS, 1St POSITION. 21. progressus: trans. as if regressus. See Plan, Xth Legion, 2nd Position.

- L. 23. loco, numero, virtute: B. 219, I; A. 254, b; H. 425, II., I, I), N. 24. Aedui: they had been directed to scale the height of Gergovia from the east (p. 191, 3 and N.), and were hence north of the retreating legions. See Plan. 26. manus distinendae causa: 'to separate the enemy's forces.' 28. insigne pacatorum: 'an indication of those at peace,' = 'indicating friends.' As the dress and armor of the Aedui were Gallic, the mistake of the panic-stricken soldiers in supposing them enemies was a natural one. 32. eiusdem legionis: the VIIIth (p. 191, 35).
- Page 193. 6. suis saluti fuit: 'he saved his men' by taking up the attention of the enemy till they could make good their escape.
- **LI.** 8. deiecti sunt loco: 'were forced down from their position.'

  9. aequiore loco: see Plan, Xth Legion, 3rd Position.

  12. locum superiorem: see Plan, Sextius, 2nd Position.

  Legiones: driven by the Gauls down the entire ascent leading to the town; once on level ground, however, and supported by the Xth and XIIIth legions, they turned and drove back their pursuers.

  15. septingenti: B. 217, 3;

  A. 247, c; H. 417, I, N. 2. desiderati: 'missing.'
- LII. 17. cupiditatem: 'eager desire' for victory, not for booty. sibi: 'for themselves.' 20. quid . . . posset: 'what the effect of a disadvantageous position is.' posset: trans. as if pres. B. 268, 1; A. 287, a; H. 495, 1. 22. exploratam victoriam: Caesar was not so sure about the victory at the time; cf. Chap. 19, and N. to p. 178, 14. 24. Quanto opere—tanto opere: see Vocab. under *Quantō*.
- **LIII.** 32. ad extremam orationem: 'at the close of his address.' 35. ante: cf. p. 189, 35-36. 36. idoneo loco: Caesar wished to entice the Gauls into a general engagement, where they would be at a great disadvantage. Vercingetorix, however, was wise enough to avoid a regular battle.
- Page 194. 1. satis . . . factum: these words hardly conceal the fact that the siege of Gergovia was a complete failure, and in several respects a serious reverse.

  5. eo: i. e., flumine.
- tiv. 6. Ibi: on the east side of the Elaver (Allier), in the territory of the Aedui.

  8. opus esse: see IDIOMS. Viridomarus and Eporedorix were going to turn traitor to Caesar, and wished for an excuse to get away from him.

  10. perspectam habebat: trans. as if perspectart.

  12. B. 337, 6; A. 292, c; H. 388, I, N.

  13. his: Viridomarus and Eporedorix.

  14. quam humiles: cf. Book VI., Chap. 12, and Book I., Chap. 31.

  18. omnium temporum: 'of all (previous) periods.'

- 20. mandatis: 'instructions,' points which Caesar gave Viridomarus and Eporedorix to understand they were to use with their fellow-countrymen.
- LV. 21. Noviodunum: now Nevers; this town Caesar had taken as his permanent base of supplies. 23. pecuniam publicam: i. e., the military chest. 28. Bibracti: locative. 33. negotiandi causa: N. to p. 171, 6. 35. obsides civitatum: held by Caesar as pledges of loyalty. The capture of these by the Aedui had much to do with hastening the spread of the rebellion. See p. 198, 15.
- Page 195. 1. frumenti quod: 'whatever grain.' 6. si: '(to see) whether.' B. 300, 3; A. 334, f; H. 529. I, N. I. 8. ex nivibus: i. e, the melting of the snow on the mountains. It was now harvest-time, probably early in July; cf. l. 24, frumentum in agris.
- **LVI.** 11. si . . . periclitandum: haste was necessary in order to get over the Liger before the enemy should have gathered any greater forces to prevent his crossing. Retreating to the Province was out of the question; he must push to the north, and effect a junction with Labienus at all hazards. 17. Labieno: dat. of advantage. 20. vado: probably at Bourbon, near Decize, where there has always been a ford. pro . . . opportuno: 'good enough considering the emergency,' though under ordinary circumstances dangerous and impracticable. 22. disposito equitatu: by stationing the cavalry in a compact line across the stream, the force of the current was broken, so that the infantry could keep their footing in the deep water while marching over. 26. instituit: = coepit. Caesar's objective point was Agedincum.
  - v. Expedition of Labienus against the Parisii. LVII-LXII.
- **LVII.** 28. supplemento: N. to p. 173, 4. Agedinci: B. 232, 1; A. 258, c; H. 425, II. 30. Lutetiam: cf. N. to p. 151, 10. 33. Summa imperii: see IDIOMS.
- Page 196. 1. perpetuam paludem: this 'continuous marsh' probably lay along the little stream Esonne, extending back from its junction with the Seine. On the north side of it the Gauls were securely posted. See Plan XII.
- LVIII. 4. vineas agere, etc.: Labienus proposed, under cover of vineae, to build a causeway over the marsh in the face of the enemy, throwing in fascines and earth as if filling up the most of a besieged city.

  5. iter munire: 'to construct a road.' id difficilius confieri: the implication is that the difficulty arose less from the attacks of the enemy

than from the yielding nature of the marsh. 7. eodem . . . pervenit: Labienus had come from Agedineum along the left bank of the Seine as far as the Esonne. Not being able to cross this, he marched back the way he came as far as Melun, there passed over to the east side of the Seine, and followed the course of the river down to Paris unhindered. See Plan. 10. eo: 'thereon.' 13. ponte: across the Seine at Melun. 14. secundo flumine: see Idioms. 17. e regione Lutetiae: 'directly opposite Paris.' For the positions of the camps of Labienus and the Gauls, see Plan XII.

- LIX. 19. audiebatur: 'men were hearing,' 'the report was being circulated.'
  21. itinere et Ligeri: 'from marching, and from (crossing) the Loire.'
  26. rerum: 'circumstances.' aliud—atque: 'different from what.'
  27. ut: introducing a subj. of purpose. Labienus had now to plan not merely about inflicting damage upon the enemy, but even about making sure his retreat and getting back in safety to Agedincum.
  29. altera ex parte: on the north; see Plan. opinionem: 'reputation.'
  33. flumen: the Seine; Labienus was now on the east side, while Agedincum lay to the southwest of the river.

  34. virtute: 'determination.'
- **LX.** 38. singulas equitibus Romanis: 'each to a Roman knight.' These knights were "unattached officers waiting till they were appointed to a legion."
- Page 197. 2. ibi: four miles below Paris, near the site of the village of Point-du-Jour. 5. adverso flumine: see IDIOMS. The skill shown in this stratagem reveals in Labienus the true general. 9. eum locum: N. to ibi above.
- LXI. 14. transmittitur: across the Seine, not far below the Gallic camp. 16. tumultuari: pass. used impers. 19. tribus locis: the Gauls heard the uproar in the Roman camp, thought that a large detachment was going up the river, and were informed by scouts of the approach of Labienus from below. Accordingly they separated their forces into three divisions, one of which went up-stream, another mounted guard on the bank of the Seine opposite the Roman camp, and a third went to meet Labienus. Thus the ruse of Labienus was successful in scattering the forces of the enemy, though not in taking them on the rear by surprise as he had perhaps intended. 22. e regione castrorum: on the bank of the Seine, 'in a line with (the Gallic) camp.' 23. progrediatur for progrederetur, as if following a historical pres.; 'which was to advance (only) so far.' 24. naves: the lintres of 1. 7 above, which were being rowed up-stream with great tumult.

**LXII.** 26. nostri: Labienus with three legions and the cavalry; five cohorts had remained at the camp, and the remaining five of the same legion had gone up-stream.

27. hostium acies: the division of the enemy that had marched down stream from their camp. The probable scene of the battle is indicated on the Plan by crossed swords.

31. ab dextro cornu: see IDIOMS.

33. quem locum: 'the position, which.'

34. cum: concessive.

35. suspicionem: 'indication.'

36. quisquam: emphatic by position.

38. septimae legionis: the VIIth legion made a flank movement and turned the enemy's rear.

Page 198. 6. ceperunt: 'reached' the elevated ground on which Labienus had taken his stand. neque: = et tamen non. 8. quos: sc. ei. 10. ubi . . . erant: see p. 174, 17, and N. 11. Caesarem: Caesar had been marching to the north of the Loire, and met Labienus probably near Joigny, on the Yonne. See map.

vi. Spread of the Rebellion, and Defeat of Vercingetorix at the Vingeanne. LXIII-LXVIII.

**LXIII.** 13. quantum—valent: 'so far as they can.' 15. apud eos: at Noviodunum; see Chap. 55, and N. to p. 194, 35. 16. dubitantes: N. to p. 171, 38. 17. communicet: sc. secum. 18. summa imperii: see IDIOMS. 23. illi: the former, including both Remi and Lingones. 27. principatu: see p. 155, 36-38. 28. requirunt: 'miss,' 'wish back again.' neque: trans. as if et non. 30. summae spei: 'of the greatest promise.' Eporedorix, Viridomarus: N. to p. 187, 9, and N. to p. 194, 8.

**LXIV.** 32. Ipse: Vercingetorix. 33. huic rei: i. e., *obsidibus* dandis. 34. Peditatu: B. 219, 1; A. 254, b; H. 421, III.

Page 199. 1. contentum: part. of contineo used as adj., 'satisfied.'
4. aequo animo: see Idioms. corrumpant, incendant: imp. or hortatory subj. in dir. disc. aedificia: N. to p. 176, 2. Vercingetorix was consistently carrying out the policy he had proposed at the outset; see Chap. 14, and N. to p. 176, 13.

5. qua iactura: 'since by this loss.'

8. huc: = ad hos.

9. Allobrogibus: in the Province.

10. Altera ex parte: i. e., on the west, reckoning from the territory of the Aedui, which for the time being Vercingetorix made his base of operations. For the different peoples mentioned see Vocab. and map.

14. superiore bello: the uprising of the Allobroges in B. C. 60, for which they had been terribly punished by the Romans. Vercingetorix hoped that their old hatred of the Romans had not died out.

LXV. 22. intra... muros: i. e., into their fortified towns and 25. interclusis omnibus itineribus: 'if all the behind their walls. roads should be blocked up' by the enemy's cavalry, 15,000 in number 26. provincia: 'the Province,' while by Italia (see p. 198, 33). probably Cisalpine Gaul is meant; cf. N. to p. 51, 31. civitates: the Ubii were friendly to Caesar; what other German states are referred to it is impossible to determine. 28. superioribus annis: B. C. 55 and 53; see Book IV. Chap. 16-19, and Book VI. Chap. 9-28. 29. qui... consuerat: after the manner described in Book I., Chap. 48. Vercingetorix had adopted the same tactic (see p. 177, 34-35, and N.). Caesar had had a division of German cavalry before this (cf. p. 175, 21, and N.). 30. minus idoneis: the German horses, though hardy, were small and scraggy; see Book IV., Chap. 2. evocatis: the evocati were perhaps mounted for service on the staff. Cf. p. 21.

**LXVI. 38.** trinis castris: marked **V V V** on Plan XIII. From the place where he was joined by Labienus (Joigny on the Yonne, southeast of Agedincum), Caesar had marched eastward, and was now east of Dijon, near the little river Vingeanne, a tributary of the Saône. Here the engagement described in Chapters 66, 67, took place.

Page 200. 2. Gallia: Vercingetorix does not consider the Province a part of Gaul. 3 Id: the retreat of the Romans to the Province. 4. parum profici: 'that little would be gained' if the Romans were allowed to escape unharmed. 6. impeditos: sc. eos (Romanos). pedites, etc.: Vercingetorix proposed to attack the Romans on the march. If the Roman infantry, thus caught at a disadvantage, should attempt to protect the baggage-train, their retreat would be hindered; if they should leave the baggage to its fate and try to protect themselves, they would be cut off from their supplies. Either alternative, Vercingetorix reckoned, would in the end put complete victory within his grasp. 10. spoliatum iri: fut. infin. pass. 12. Id: the manœuvre proposed. faciant: sc. equites, or praefecti equitum, from 1. 1. 13. copias: he would display the infantry before the camp as an inspiration to the cavalry, who were to make the attack. 17. perequitasset: fut. pf. indic. in dir. disc.

LXVII. 18. iureiurando: the oath given in lines 15-17 above. It would be interesting to know how many of them kept their vow!

19. duae acies, una [acies]: the three bodies of Gallic cavalry, marked g g g on the Plan.

20. a primo agmine: 'on the van' of the Roman line of march.

21. equitatum tripertito: see Plan, e e e.

Pugnatur: see Idioms, p. 389.

23. impedimenta... recipiuntur:

each legion protected its own baggage. 25. signa inferri: 'that an advance be made.' 27. Germani: see Plan XIII., x.; to them is due the credit of having turned the tide of battle. Cf. N. to p. 110, 33. 29. flumen: the Vingeanne. 36. Eporedorix: see Vocab. (1).

Page 201. LXVIII. 6. quantum: 'so far as.' 8. situ: see l. 12, and N.

### vii. THE SIEGE AND FALL OF ALESIA. LXIX-XC.

LXIX. 12. Alesia: the site of Alesia has been determined with absolute certainty. The town was situated on the top of an oval elevation, a part of which is now occupied by the village of Alise Ste. Reine (see Plan XIV.). The base of the height is washed on two sides by small streams, the Ose and the Oserain, which flow near by into the Brenne, a tributary of the Yonne. To the west, along the Brenne, a level plain, shut in by hills on the north and south, extends about three miles. On the remaining sides are ranges of heights similar to that on which the city stood. The highest point of Alesia rose about 500 feet above the beds of the brooks on each side. Excavations carried on under the direction of the Emperor Napoleon III. brought to light abundant traces of Caesar's works, verifying in a remarkable way the statements of the text. colle summo: cf. N. to p. 58, 5. admodum edito loco: 'having a very elevated position.' 14. flumina: the brooks Ose and Oserain. 16. in longitudinem: i. e., to the west. 17. spatio: the average distance between the height of Alesia and the tops of the surrounding hills is about a mile. 18. fastigio: here applied to the horizontal top of an elevation, - a rare use of the word. The principal hills about Alise Ste. Reine are Mont Réa and Bussy Heights on the north, Pennevelle Heights on the east, and Flavigny Heights on the south. See quae ... locum: = omnem eam partem collis, quae ad orientem solem spectabat, copiae Gallorum compleverant. 20. fossam maceriamque: marked P, S on the Plan. 21. munitionis: not a continuous line of works, but a series of fortified encampments, the spaces between which were guarded by frequent redoubts (castella). The sites of the encampments and of several of the redoubts were discovered in the course of Napoleon's excavations (indicated on the Plan by angular and circular red lines). 22. tenebat: 'extended.'

**LXX.** 29. supra: in line 15 above. Summa vi: see IDIOMS. 30. Germanos: cf. p. 199, 27, and N. 32. Praesidio: 'support.' nostris: = nostrorum. B. 188, I, N.; A. 235,  $\alpha$ ; H. 384, II., 4, N. 2. 34.

angustioribus portis relictis: 'since the (spaces) left (in the wall for) gates were quite narrow.' 35. munitiones: i. e., hostium.

Page 202. 2. pro vallo: 'as a rampart' for Caesar's cavalry to retreat to in case of any reverse.

4. munitiones: = fossam et maceriam of l. 1; see p. 201, 20 and N. veniri: impers. 'that the enemy are coming.'

6. castra: just east of the city, inside of the Gallic wall and trench. See Plan.

LXXI. 10. perficiantur: B. 292; A. 327; H. 520, I., 2. consilium capit: see IDIOMS; the 'plan' is explained by omnem . . . dimittere.

14. neu: = et ne. 15. meritum: participle. 16. Quod: N. to p. 53, 36. 17. Ratione inita: 'having made calculation.' 19. parcendo: "by shortening the rations," we should say. opus erat intermissum: 'there was a break in the (Roman) line,' between two redoubts; see N. to p. 201, 21. 20. secunda vigilia: what time? Cf. p. 33. Frumentum omne: i. e., within the city. Vercingetorix puts the inhabitants under martial law. 21. capitis poenam: see IDIOMS.

22. paruerint: subj. of characteristic. 24. pro oppido: on the east side.

LXXII. 28. haec: 'the following' or 'as follows.' B. 246, 2; H. 29. directis lateribus: 'with perpendicular sides.' so that the ditch was as wide at the bottom (solum) as at the top. This trench (marked f f f on the Plan) extended across the level plain just west of the town between the two brooks, Ose and Oserain. Its entire course has been discovered by means of excavations. 31. id: sc. atque fecit. hoc. etc.: Order, hoc consilio, ne, quoniam . . . cingeretur, de improviso . . . 32. esset — complexus, cingeretur: subj. by attraction, expressing the ground of the *ne*-clause. 33. nec := et non. totum corpus, etc.: 'the entire extent of the works could not be completely manned with soldiers.' corona: = an encircling, a posting at every 36. Hoc spatio: 400 ft., measured west of the trench f f. duas fossas: indicated on the Plan by parallel red lines. eadem altitudine: '(both) of the same depth,' 8 to 9 ft., as shown by Napoleon's 38. aqua, etc.: deposits of silt and gravel, showing the excavations. action of water, have been found about the middle of the inner trench. Post: 'Behind;' the outer ditch served as a trench for the rampart; study Plate VI., 1.

Page 203. 1. aggerem: 'earthwork,' the line of earth thrown up on the west side of the outer trench. vallum: the 'palisade' erected on this earthwork, like the palisade of a camp (cf. p. 31), and 3 or 4 feet in height.

loricam: a 'breastwork,' made by weaving supple branches closely together, and put on the exposed side of the palisade.

2. pinnas: 'battlements,' made of framework covered with wickerwork (taking the place of boards), projecting above the palisade at certain intervals, and 6 to 8 feet in height. Behind these the soldiers could find shelter after having hurled their weapons over the palisade. cervis: 'stag's-horns,' 'chevaux-de-frise,' tops of young trees, from which the foliage and twigs had perhaps been removed, leaving only the larger branches projecting from the trunk; these were planted along the earthwork at the foot of the palisade, projecting outwards over the trench and towards the town. See Plate VI., I, the projecting branches at the foot of the tower.

3. pluteorum: 'parapets,' here a comprehensive term designating the wood-work above the earthwork as a whole, — including the palisade, the breastwork, and the battlements.

6. materiari, frumentari: co-ordinate with munitiones fieri as subject of Erat. 10. summa vi: see IDIOMS. dendum [esse]: impers., 'that an addition ought to be made.' minore numero: Moberly calculates that to man the whole line of works 38,000 men would have been required, - a much larger force than Caesar could 13. admodum firmis ramis: abl. of provide for this purpose. characteristic (or quality) limiting truncis, 'with quite strong branches.' 14. delibratis: the bark was peeled off in order to make them smooth and slippery, so that any one trying to step over would be able to get no firm footing on them. perpetuae: 'continuous,' running parallel with the rampart on the side towards the town. quinos: notice the distributive force, 'each five feet deep.' 15. Huc: 'In these,' the five par-16. revincti: 'securely fastened' by attaching the lower ends to cross-pieces, which were buried in the earth when the trenches were filled up. ab ramis: 'with the branches (only),' the other parts being in the ground. See Plate VI., r a. Quini: five rows, one 18. vallis: dat., referring to the sharp, pointed in each trench. 19. Ante quos: 'In front of these' rows of branches of the cippi. 20. scrobes: 'wolf-pits.' Pits were dug, cippi, towards the town. three feet deep and small at the bottom, arranged diagonally (see Vocab. under quincunx) in eight rows, three feet apart. In these smooth stakes were set, sharpened at the upper end, but not projecting above the level of the ground more than four inches. At the bottom of the stakes earth was packed in firmly to the depth of a foot, leaving still a depth of two feet in the pits, which were concealed from view by placing brush over them. See Plate VI., r b. In the course of Napoleon's excavations many of these pits were brought to light, and found to

correspond exactly with the description here given. 'crow's-feet,' upright iron bars with pointed hooks projecting from the upper end, fastened to blocks of wood, which were sunk firmly in the Several of the hooks have been found. See Plate VI., I c.

**LXXIV.** 32. secutus: 'keeping to.' 34. munitiones: an outer line of works, outside of the Roman encampments, to protect against the Gallic army that was coming to relieve the town. See Plan. 'facing in the opposite direction' from the works described in the last two chapters, the purpose of which was to hem in Vercingetorix. 35. multitudine: i. e., hostium. si ita accidat: i. e., si magna multitudo adveniat. 36. eius discessu: these words are probably an incorrect reading of the MSS.; as they stand they can only mean 'on his departure,' 'even in case he (Caesar) should be away.' 37. ex castris egredi: i. e., for the purpose of foraging. dierum: cf. p. 202. 17-19; distinction between subjective and objective gen.?

Page 204. LXXV. 3. convocandos, imperandum: why must 4. cuique: sc. principi. ex civitate: 'from esse be supplied? his state, goes with numerum. B. 201, I, a; A. 217, R.; H. 359, N. I, 4). 5. frumentandi rationem habere: 'to make systematic provision for the grain-supply.' 6. Aeduis: for the states mentioned in this chapter, see pp. 38-40, map and Vocab. Notice particularly the survivals of Gallic names in the names of modern towns and localities. The Aquitani did not join the rebellion (cf. N. to p. 97, 34, and N. to p. 183, 37), nor did the Volcae and the Helvii (cf. Chap. 64), nor the Remi, Lingones, and Treveri (cf. Chap. 63). With these exceptions, the movement of all Gaul outside the Province against Caesar was unanimous. 24. pro: 'out of regard for.'

LXXVI. 25. Commii: see Book IV., Chapters 21, 27, 35; Book V., 28. iura, leges: N. to p. 78, 12. Chap. 22; Book VI., Chap. 6. 29. libertatis vindicandae: 'in the asserting of freedom.' verentur: 'men were touched.' que: 'but'; N. to p. 101, 34.

Page 205. 3. summa imperii : see IDIOMS. delecti: part. used 4. administraretur: in what ways may a purpose be ex-5. ad: 'towards'; had the approaching host been pressed in Latin? able to march into the city, ad would have been omitted. B. 182, 3; A. 258, f, R.; H. 380, II., I (I). negue — quisquam := emphatic et nemo. 6. aspectum modo: 'the sight merely,' 'the bare sight.' 7. ancipiti proelio: 'with fighting on two sides.' Cf. p. 59, 31 and N. 'on the outer side.'

**LXXVII.** 10. die: why fem.? N. to p. 171, 4. 14. quarum: 'of which,' the opinions being taken instead of the persons holding the opinions. suppeterent: subj. because expressing the opinion of those who voted for the sortie. 15. videtur: sc. mihi; 'the speech of Critognatus, I think, ought not to be passed over (without mention).' 17. auctoritatis: gen. of characteristic (or quality) as if with esse. 20. ad concilium: = 'to give their advice.' 21. sit: hortatory subj.; 'Let me take issue with those,' 'I would take issue with those.' 23. ista: for istud (B. 250, 3; A. 199; H. 445, 4), spoken contemptuously; 'that (impulse) of yours is.' 24. offerant: subj. of char-**25**. quam : sc. *ei*. **26**. tantum . . . potest : 'so great acteristic. weight does the standing of those (who favor it) carry with me.' 27. nullam: i. e., vitae iacturam. 28. respiciamus: B. 274; A. 266; H. 484, II. 29. nostrum: objective gen. Quid — animi. 'What feelings,' 'What heart' for fighting. 30. milibus lxxx: the **32**. Nolite exspoliare: B. 276, c; A. 269, army of Vercingetorix. a, 2; H. 489, 1). 33. qui: those coming to the relief of the besieged. **35.** prosternere, subicere: sc. nolite. **36.** An: B. 162, 4, a; A. 211, b; H. 353, 2, N. 4. 38. animi causa: 'for the sake of amusement, 'for the fun of the thing.' exerceri: 'are training.' B. 256, I; A. 111, a, N.; H. 465.

Page 206. 1. illorum, (2) eorum: refer to the Gauls. 2. his: the Romans. adventum: emphatic by position. 4. Quid . . . est: = Quid consilii mihi est, = 'What plan have I (to propose)?' Facere: sc. meum consilium est. 5. Cimbrorum, Teutonum: 'with the Cimbri and Teutones,' who had ravaged Gaul and parts of Spain before they were cut off by Marius. Cf. N. to p. 67, 36. 7. aetate: = per aetatem, in Book II., Chap. 16; cf. N. to p. 84, 8. 9. institui: 'that (such an example) be presented.' 10. quid, etc.: 'what resemblance had that war (with the Cimbri and Teutones) to the present one?' 17. ulla alia condicione: 'with any other terms.' 19. finitimam: 'the neighboring (part of).' 20. securibus: see Vocab., and Plate II. 4.

LXXVIII. 26. subeundam [esse] condicionem: 'submit to terms.' 27. Mandubii: i. e., the inhabitants of Alesia and those who had fled from the surrounding country into the city.

'to receive them.' B. 336, 3; A. 292, R.; H. 549, 5.

20. The suppliants, cast out by Vercingetorix and rejected by Caesar, perished wretchedly in the spaces between the city and the Roman lines, —by no means the least item in this catalogue of horrors.

LXXIX. 34. colle exteriore: southwest of the city; see Plan, GALLIC ARMY OF SUCCOR. 37. demonstravimus: in Chap. 69. 38. abditas: 'drawn back,' not 'concealed.'

Page 207. 2. Concurrent: i. e., Galli, qui in oppido sunt. 4. proximam fossam: the trench nearest the city, described in Chap. 72, and marked f f f on the Plan.

LXXX. 7. utramque partem: both the inner and the outer lines of works. 12. Galli . . . interiecerant: after the German fashion; cf. p. 177, 35 and N. 14. succurrerent, sustinerent: B. 282, 2; A. 317; H. 497, I. 15. complures: i. e., of Caesar's cavalry. 18. ii: the Gauls in the town. 19. ululatu: cf. N. to p. 139, 24. 21. recte ac turpiter factum: 'a thing done rightly and (one done) basely' = 'a brave or a cowardly action.' utrosque: on the side of the Romans as well as the Gauls. 23. Cum — pugnaretur: = 'After the battle had been raging.' 26. sagittarii: among the cavalry; they had not yet learned to keep up with the cavalry after the manner of the Germans, described in Book I., Chap. 48. 27. cedentes: used as noun, acc.; 'those retreating.' sui colligendi: N. to p. 95, 14.

LXXXI. 31. hoc spatio: 'during this interval.' 32. harpagonum: designed to pull down the Roman breastworks and palisades.

33. campestres: i. e., on the plain west of the city. 34. qua: = ut eā, 'that by this sign.' obsidebantur: why not subj.? Cf. B.

324, I; A. 342; H. 529, II., N. I, 2). 35 crates proicere: in order to cover over the trenches. 36. vallo: the outer Roman rampart, shown by excavations to have extended from the Ose brook across the plain and some distance up the slope of the Flavigny Heights.

Page 208. 1. educit: sc. eos. 3. fundis librilibus: stones weighing a pound, and attached to the end of a strap or short rope; skilfully thrown, they became a formidable means of warfare. sudibus: pointed stakes, burned at the end to harden the point, and used as javelins. Similar darts were made by Cicero, when, owing to the long duration of the attack on his camp, the supply of regular weapons gave out. See p. 140, 35, and N. 4. glandibus: leaden bullets, of the shape of an acorn, hurled by means of a sling. 5. tenebris: the attack had begun about midnight (see p. 207, 32).

LXXXII. 12. stimulis: see p. 203, 28-31 and N. scrobes: see p. 203, 19-27 and N. 13. transfodiebantur: 'were impaled.' 14. pilis muralibus: see N. to p. 140, 35. 16. superioribus castris: of the

Romans, on Flavigny Heights. See Plan, A, B. 17. interiores: i. e., those in the city, the army of Vercingetorix. 19. priores fossas: first came the inmost trench (f f f on the Plan), then two parallel trenches 400 ft. west (see Chap. 72); in the intervening space were the ingenious and complicated contrivances described in Chap. 73. Peskett well remarks that, "The result of this unsuccessful attempt of the Gauls shows Caesar's wisdom in constructing so many lines of defence. Had the Gauls in Alesia been able to advance up to the outer" line of works, which was being attacked by the army of succor, "the two forces by a simultaneous assault would probably have broken through the lines and inflicted a serious defeat on the Romans." 21. re infecta: 'without gaining their object.'

**LXXXIII.** 23. Bis: the first repulse is described in Chap. 80. 25. a septentrioribus: 'on the north'; the height referred to is probably Mont Réa. 28. declivi: the slope was southerly, towards the city and the plain. castra: see Plan, D. 32. virtutis opinionem: 'reputation for courage.' quid...placeat: 'what plan they may think best to carry out, and in what way.' 37. itinere: indicated on the Plan by a dotted line, Route of the Gallic Army of Succor.

**Page 209. 2.** supra: see p. 208, 25–30 and N. **3.** campestres: N. to p. 207, 33.

**LXXXIV.** 6. cratis: acc. pl.; cf. N. to p. 207, 35. 6. falces: N. to p. 179, 35. Vercingetorix had adopted the Roman siege tactics and instruments. 7. Pugnatur . . . temptantur: chiasmus. B. 350, 11, c; A. 344, f; H. 562. 9. concurritur: cf. IDIOMS, p. 389. 11. qui post tergum: the cries of combatants at the outer line of works would be heard in the rear of those defending the inner line, and vice versa. 12. pugnantibus: B. 188, 1, N.; A. 235, a; H. 384, 11., 4, N. 2. suum, etc.: 'their own (escape from) danger depended on the safety of others.' 13. omnia . . . perturbant: Caesar had a keen insight into human nature.

LXXXV. 15. Caesar: Caesar is thought to have taken his position of observation on the Flavigny Heights, at or near the point designated on the Plan by a red cross. 16. Utrisque...occurrit: 'Both (Gauls and Romans) reflect.' 17. quo...conveniat: 'when the mightiest effort should be put forth.' 20. exspectant: 'look forward to.' 21. demonstravimus: see p. 208, 34 et seq. 23. testudine facta: as in an assault on a town; cf. p. 36, and Plate V., 6. The Gauls evidently had shields of the Roman pattern. 24. Agger: see pp. 35, 36. 25. conjectus: sc. est.

LXXXVI. 30. deductis...pugnaret: 'to draw off his troops and make a sortie.' 31. nisi: closely connected with *necessario*.

33. Interiores: cf. p. 208, 17, and N. 35. ea, quae: cf. l. 6 above.

36. propugnantes: i. e., Romans; acc. 37. falcibus: N. to p. 179, 35. 38. vallum, loricam: N. to p. 203, 1.

Page 210. LXXXVII. 1. Brutum: N. to p. 97, 37. 7. circumire, etc.: i. e., to make a flank movement and turn the enemy's rear.

8. Labienus: N. to p. 51, 31.

LXXXVIII. 13. colore: ancient purple, corresponding nearly to our scarlet; on the *paludamentum* see p. 25. Notice throughout this chapter the vividness of style, which is heightened by the omission of conjunctions. 15. haec declivia et devexa: 'these descending slopes'; Caesar passed down the northwest side of the Flavigny Heights, in full view of the enemy. 17. excipit: 'follows.' 19. tergum: sc. hostium. 28. Quod: N. to p. 53, 36.

LXXXIX. 36. ad utramque rem: 'for either alternative.'

Page 211. 1. Ipse: Caesar. 2. Vercingetorix: Vercingetorix (as we learn elsewhere), having arrayed himself in splendid armor, mounted a horse adorned with trappings, passed slowly out from Alesia, and rode around Caesar sitting to receive the prisoners; then, halting before Caesar, he sprang from his horse, laid off his armor, and without a word placed himself at the feet of his conqueror - "every inch a King!" For six years after this he languished in a Roman dungeon; at length in B.C. 45 he was put to death to celebrate Caesar's great triumph. Thus closed the career of the greatest of the Gauls, - the first national hero of 3. si: '(to see) whether.' B. 300, 3; A. 334, f; H. 529, II., 4. toto: dat. for toti. capita singula: i.e., a captive to each Thus fell Alesia, after one of the most soldier; cf. N to p. 61, 14. remarkable sieges on record. Caesar's devices for rendering impassible his lines of defence, for ingenuity and adaptation to the purpose for which they were intended, have never been excelled in the annals of military engineering. They are a further evidence of that readiness to meet emergencies and that practical mastery of mechanical details previously shown in the construction of the bridges over the Rhine. Further than this, Caesar's success well illustrates the inevitable superiority of discipline, generalship, persistency, and hard work over vastly greater numbers, even in the face of every disadvantage of position and surroundings. For the Gauls the fall of Alesia was the crowning disaster of a hopeless struggle. They staked all on the relief of the city, and lost. But if Caesar instead of Vercingetorix had suffered complete

defeat, little doubt that Gaul would long have remained unconquered, and that the course of European history would have been changed. The siege of Alesia may well rank among the decisive military operations of the world's history.

XC. 6. civitatem: 'he recovered the state' from its condition of rebellion. 9. in hiberna: the legions were distributed so as to be a support to one another in case of need, and at the same time so as to command the whole country. The strength of Gaul had been so far broken that little danger was to be apprehended from rebellion. 13. Remis: these from the first had been friendly to Caesar. 20. ex litteris: 'from despatches.' 21. supplicatio: cf. p. 92, 7, and N.

### ON THE STUDY OF CAESAR.

THE student of Caesar should give his attention to three things—the thought, translation, and explanation.

The Thought: A page of Caesar is not a mere exercise in parsing, contrived to discipline the mind and tax the patience of the student. It is a fragment of the world's literature. It has been transmitted down through the centuries and spared by the destructive agencies of time because it contains thought,—thought of such interest and value that men would not willingly let it pass into oblivion. Approach the Gallic War, then, as a work which the verdict of the ages has pronounced a literary masterpiece; in studying it your first task will be to grasp the underlying thought.

In learning to read Latin, the aim should be as early as possible to gain the ability to understand the thought in the order in which the Roman reader or hearer took it in. First it is necessary to know the forms; without a clear idea of the force of inflectional changes further progress is impossible. Great pains should be taken also with the learning of new words; they should be memorized accurately, so as to become a permanent addition to your outfit as a student of Latin. With reference to the exact method by which you may most readily get at the thought of the Latin, no brief rule can be laid down; labor omnia vincit. When you have the general idea of one sentence, go over the following sentences in like manner, trying to determine the drift of the paragraph, or chapter, or lesson.

If you have now a fairly clear conception of the thought, the next thing is to master the constructions. Never be content with a careless half-notion of the meaning. You will never really understand a sentence till you can explain every form and word in it. Here parrot-like glibness in the repeating of grammatical rules is not the chief thing. Be sure that you understand how and why, that you cannot simply give the rule but explain the principle involved. At first look up all grammatical references; later on, as you become familiar with Caesar's constructions, refer to the grammar only in cases of uncertainty. Try often to read your lesson and understand it without reference to grammar, notes, or vocabulary, making the connection explain obscure points; but never leave a lesson till you are sure that you understand the thought in it as well as if it were expressed in English.

Translation: Languages differ in their ways of expressing the same thought. In translating Caesar, be careful not to transfer to English forms of expression peculiar to the Latin. Render Latin by English, not by Latin-English. The following points are worthy of special mention:—

- a. After verbs of saying, perceiving, knowing, and the like, the Latin infinitive with its subject-accusative should be rendered into English by a clause.
- b. The Latin uses the copula esse in many relations where we must employ an entirely different form of expression. For examples see IDIOMS, p. 390.
- c. The Latin often uses the passive voice of intransitive verbs impersonally, in order to make prominent the action rather than the agent. Whenever possible, translate such by a noun designating the action, with a suitable verb; in other cases translate by the active voice, and supply a personal subject according to the connection. Study IDIOMS, p. 389.
- d. The Latin has several uses of the genitive case that should never be translated into English literally. Study IDIOMS, p. 388.
- e. The Latin ablative absolute is in many instances employed where the English prefers clauses or phrases. Render it rarely by the English nominative absolute, but rather by clauses introduced by when, as, after, now that, if; by by and a participle, with or without an object; by a preposition and a noun, etc.
- f. The Latin relative often expresses relations between clauses and sentences altogether foreign to the English relative. In such cases it should not be translated by which or who, but as the sense requires; as, in clauses of purpose (with the subjunctive) by to (with the infinitive); in clauses of characteristic result often by so that he (she, it, they); in causal clauses, by since or because he (she, it they); in concessive clauses, by although he, etc.; at the beginning of a clause or sentence, often by and he, he, they, this, that, etc.

Never be content with your translation of a lesson till you are sure, first, that it represents exactly the thought of the original; secondly, that it is expressed in so perfect English that the same sentences, if in an English essay, would receive your teacher's approval. Remember that Caesar is one of the world's great writers; try to bring out in English the clearness, conciseness, and vigor of his style.

Explanation: It is not enough to comprehend clearly the thought of Caesar, and to be able to express this in the best English; there yet remains the understanding of everything connected with the portion read. Having mastered the construction of your passage and carefully translated it, be not satisfied till you can explain intelligently the references in it to persons, places (including rivers, mountains, towns, etc.), states or tribes; events, dates, military organization or tactics, manners and customs. Investigate the significance of Caesar's writings and career in the light of history and the development of European civilization. Thus pursued, the study of the Gallic War will become both interesting and profitable.

### HELPS TO THE STUDY OF CAESAR.

### CAESAR.

Froude: Caesar, A Sketch. N. Y., 1879. Well written, but partisan. Trollope: Life of Cicero, 2 vols. N. Y., 1882. To be read as an anti-

dote to Froude's Caesar.

TROLLOPE: The Commentaries of Caesar. Phila., 1880.

LIDDELL: History of Rome.

Long: Decline of the Roman Republic, Vols. III.-V.

Mommsen: History of Rome, Vol. IV.

MERIVALE: History of the Romans under the Empire, Vols. I., II.

NISARD: Les Quatre Grands Historiens Latins. Paris, 1874.

DURUY: History of Rome, Vol. III.

Seeley: Roman Imperialism, etc., Lecture i.

CRUTTWELL: History of Roman Literature, pp. 187–198.

SIMCOX: History of Latin Literature, Vol. I. DRUMANN: Geschichte Roms, etc., Vol. III.

Delorme, deutsch bearbeitet von Doehler: Cäsar und seine Zeitgenossen

Leipzig, 1873.

NAPOLÉON III.: Histoire de Jules César, 2 vols. with Atlas Paris, 1865. Accessible also in an English translation. Of especial value because embodying the results of the researches and excavations carried on under the direction of the Emperor.

SHAKESPERE: Fulius Caesar.

### THE GALLIC WAR - CRITICAL AND TEXT EDITIONS.

HOLDER: Books I.-VIII., with complete Index. Tübingen, 1882.

FRIGELL: Books I.-VIII. Upsala, 1861.

NIPPERDEY: Gallic and Civil Wars, etc. Leipzig, 1847. DINTER: Gallic and Civil Wars, etc. Leipzig, 1880.

# THE GALLIC WAR—EDITIONS WITH EXPLANATORY NOTES.

Kraner: 13th ed., rev. by Dittenberger. German notes. Berlin, 1883 Doberenz: 8th ed., rev. by Dinter. German notes. Leipzig, 1882. RHEINHARD: With illustrations, plans, and German notes. 4th e Stuttgart, 1883.

HERZOG: With German notes. Leipzig, 1831.

Schneider: Gallic and Civil Wars. Latin notes. 2 vols. Halle, 1849. Peskett: Books I.-VII. With English notes. Cambridge, 1878–1882. Moberly: Books I.-VIII. With English notes. 2d ed. Oxford, 1878. Long: Books I.-VIII. With English notes. New ed. London, 1880. Merryweather and Tancock: Books I.-III. With English notes. 2d ed. Oxford, 1879.

L'ABBÉ BOUÉ: Books I.-VIII. Illustrated, with French notes. Paris, 1886.

### SPECIAL DICTIONARIES.

EICHERT: Vollständiges Wörterbuch zu den Schriftwerken des C. J. Cäsar. 8th ed. Hannover, 1883.

EBELING: Schulwörterbuch zu Cäsar. 3d ed. rev. by Draeger. Leipzig, 1884. CREAK: Complete Dictionary to the Gallic War. London, 1877.

MEUSEL: Lexicon Caesarianum. Issued in parts, completed as far as Hostis. Berlin.

MERGUET: Lexicon zu den Schriften Cäsars und seiner Fortsetzer. Jena, 1886.

## WORKS HELPFUL IN THE SPECIAL STUDY OF THE GALLIC WAR.

FALLUE: Analyse Raisonnée des Commentaires de Jules César. Paris, 1862. GLÜCK: Die bei Caesar vorkommenden Keltischen Namen. München, 1857. ZEUSS: Grammatica Celtica. 2 vols. Leipzig, 1853. Gives special attention to the Keltic words and names in Caesar.

ZEUSS: Die Deutschen und die Nachbarstämme. München, 1837.

Vaniček: Fremdwörter im Griechischen und Lateinischen. Leipzig, 1878. Wagler: Hilfsbüchlein zu Caesars Bellum Gallicum. Berlin, 1881.

A. VON GOELER: Caesars Gallischer Krieg, etc. 2d ed. Tübingen, 1884. RÜSTOW: Heerwesen und Kriegführung Caesars. Nordhausen, 1862.

RUSTOW: Atlas zu Caesars Gallischem Krieg. Stuttgart, 1868.

DE SAULCY: Les Campagnes de Jules César dans les Gaules. Paris, 1865. Long: A criticism of De Saulcy in the Westminster Review, Vol. XXI., pp. 399-417.

JAL: La Flotte de César. Paris, 1861.

A. VON KAMPEN: XV. ad Caesaris de Bello Gallico Commentarios Tabulae. Gotha, 1879.

DESJARDINS: Géographie historique et administrative de la Gaule romaine. 3 vols. Paris, 1876-1885. One of the finest historical monographs in any language.

THIERRY: Histoire des Gaulois. 3 vols. Paris, 1835.

STUBBS: Constitutional History of England, Vol. I., Chaps. 1 and 2. MARTIN: Histoire de France, Vol. I. Specially valuable on Druids.

### IDIOMS AND PHRASES.

- a dextro cornu, on the right wing. a fronte, in front.
- a novissimo agmine, on the rear.
- a pueris, from childhood.
- a sinistro cornu, on the left wing. ab armis discedere, to lay down arms.
- urbem ab eis defendere, to defend the city against them.
- ab milibus passuum duobus, two miles off.
- ab tanto spatio, so far off.
- ab tergo, on the rear.
- se absente, in his absence.
- accedit (huc) ut, or quod, there is the additional fact (or circumstance) that, and besides.
- aciem convertere, to face about.
- acies media, the middle of the line. acies oculorum, the keen glance of
- acies oculorum, the keen glance of their eyes.
- ad ancoras deligatae (naves), lying at anchor.
- ad conducendos homines, for hiring men. (ii. I.)
- ad equum rescribere, (1) to enroll in the cavalry, (2) to raise to knighthood. (i. 42.)
- ad extremum, at the end, at last, finally.
- ad Genevam pervenit, he arrived in the vicinity of Geneva.
- ad hune modum, after this fashion, thus.

- ad milia quindecim, about fifteen thousand.
- ad salutem contenderunt, they rushed to a place of safety.
- ad speciem, for show.
- ad unum, to a man.
- ad urbem, near the city.
- vulnera adversa, wounds in front.
- hostibus adversis occurrere, to meet the enemy face to face.
- in adversum os, right in the face. adverso colle, up the hill.
- adverso flumine, up-stream, against the current.
- aegre ferre, to take to heart, be vexed.
- aequo animo, contentedly, without anxiety.
- aere alieno premi, to be in debt. afficere supplicio, to punish.
- affici magno dolore, to be greatly annoyed, etc.
- agere cum eo, to confer with him. cum tribunis agunt, they arrange
- with the tribunes. agere gratias, to thank.
- agmen claudere, to bring up the rear.
- alias alias, at one time at another.
- alienum tempus, an unfavorable
- alienus locus, an unfavorable place, location.

alii aliam in partem, some in one direction, others in another; in different directions.

aliter atque (or ac), otherwise than, different from what.

alius aliā causā illatā, one presenting one pretext, another another; each one presenting a different excuse.

alius alii subsidium fert, they help one another.

res erat in angusto, matters had reached a crisis.

animum advertere, to notice.

ante exactam hiemem, before the end of winter.

apud eum, in his presence.

longe alius atque (or ac), far other than, very different from.

contra atque erat dietum, contrary to what had been agreed upon. idem atque, the same as.

audiens dicto esse, to be obedient.
aversi circumventi, surrounded on
the rear.

aversum hostem videre, to see a foe in flight.

bellum defendere, to ward off war. bellum ducere, to prolong a war (i. 38).

bellum gerere, to carry on war, wage war.

bellum inferre, to make war. bono animo esse in (with acc.), to be well disposed toward.

capere consilium, to form a plan. capere locum, to reach a destination. capere portum, insulam, to "make" a harbor, an island.

capere urbem, to capture a city.

capite solo ex aqua exstare, to stand up to the chin in water (v. 18).

capitis poenam, capital punishment, the death penalty. capitum decem milia, ten thousand souls.

castra movere, to break camp, decamp.

castra ponere, to pitch camp, en-

causā, with gen., for the sake of, on account of.

honoris Divitiaci causā, out of respect for Divitiacus.

qua de causa, for this reason.

causam dicere, to plead a case.

causam inferre, to allege a reason.

cedentibus et insequentibus, to the pursued and the pursuing.

celerius opinione, sooner than was expected.

certiorem Caesarem facere, to inform Caesar.

certior fieri, to be informed.

civitate donatus, granted citizenship, made a citizen (i. 47).

collocare nuptum, to give in marriage.

committere proelium, to commence an engagement, join battle.

rei publicae commodo (abl.), to the advantage of the commonwealth, or with advantage to the state.

idem conari, to make the same attempt.

confectus vulneribus, exhausted with wounds.

confectus aetate, weakened by age. conficere exercitum, to raise an army.

conicere in fugam, to put to flight, rout.

sibi mortem conseiscere, to commit suicide.

consilium inire or capere, to form a plan.

conspicari licet, one may see.

consulere aliquem, to consult any one, ask advice.

consulere alicui, to consult for (look out for the interest of) any one.

consulto cedere, to draw back (retreat) purposely.

tempus quod convenerat, the time which had been agreed upon.

convertere signa, to face about.

sub corona vendere, to sell into slavery. See N. to p. 100, 19.

cum primum, as soon as.

cum — tum, not only — but also, pace. both - and.

cursu incitato, quickening their

dare in matrimonium, to give in marriage.

dare in fugam, to put to flight. dare inter se, to exchange.

dare manus, to yield.

dare operam, to take pains. de improviso, unexpectedly, suddenly. hope.

hae spe deiecti, disappointed in this se animo demittere, to lose heart, despair.

deprecari mortem, to plead for life. diem dicere, to appoint a day.

ius dicere, to administer justice.

dimidio minor, smaller by half, one half smaller.

dubitat id facere, he hesitates to do

non dubitat, quin, he does not doubt

non dubium est, quin, there is no doubt that.

duce Caesare, under the leadership of Caesar.

ducere in matrimonium, to marry. ducere uxorem, to marry.

egredi navi, ex navi, to disembark. eo, before comparatives, all the; as eo magis, all the more.

ex aqua mensurae, water-clocks (v. 13).

ex equis, ex equo, on horseback.

ex itinere, on the march, leaving the line of march.

ex loco inferiore, from a lower position, or point of view.

ex loco superiore, from a higher position, or point of view.

ex usu Galliae, of advantage to Gaul, expedient for Gaul.

exspectat si eant, he waits to see whether they will go.

expedita legio, a legion unencumbered with a baggage train. See p. 23.

extrema hieme, at the end of winter. rear.

extremi (as part of an army), the

facere excursionem, to make a

non facere fidem, not to convince.

facere imperata, to carry out the orders.

facere impetum in (with acc.), to make an attack on.

facere iter, to march.

facinus in se admittere, facinus admittere, to become guilty of a crime, commit a crime.

hoe proelio facto, after this battle.

proelio facto secundo, after a successful engagement, or since the result of the battle was favorable.

facultas navium, supply of ships.

ferre auxilium, subsidium, to render aid.

ferre condicionem, to propose terms. ferre graviter, moleste, to be annoved, vexed.

signa ferre, inferre, to advance. See p. 26.

consuctudo fert, is usual.

ut fert illorum opinio, as their opinion goes.

fidem habere alicui, to have confidence in any one.

fidem interponere, to pledge one's honor.

fidem praestare, to give proof of one's good faith.

Caesaris fidem sequi, to attach one's self to Caesar.

in eius fidem venire, to put one's self under his protection.

fingere sibi, to imagine.

fingere vultum, to control the features (i. 39).

gerere bellum, to wage war, carry on war.

gratiam habere, to feel thankful. gratiam referre, to make return. gratias agere, to thank.

gratum facere, to do a favor (i. 44). graviter ferre, to take to heart, be annoyed.

habere eodem loco, to consider in the same light.

habere exercitum coactum, to have an army collected, to have gathered an army together.

habere id compertum, to have learned that (i. 44).

habere in animo, to intend.

habere orationem, to deliver a speech, make a speech.

habere sibi persuasum, to be convinced.

idem qui, the same as.

idem sentire, to have the same feeling.

imperat equitibus, he commands the cavalry.

imperat obsides civitati, he levies hostages upon the state, obliges the state to furnish hostages.

state to furnish hostages.
polls in Arare, a bridge over the Arar.
in arido, on dry land.

in circuitu, in case one goes around.

in dies, every day, daily. in itinere, on the march.

in perpetuum, forever.

in praesentia, for the present, at the time.

in reliquum tempus, for the future.

in servilem modum, as in the case of slaves (vi. 19).

in statione, on guard.

in vestigio, on the spot.

in vicem, in turn.

incidit bellum, a war breaks out.

incidit in eum, fell in with him (i. 53).

inferre bellum, to make war.

inferre iniuriam, to inflict an injury.

inferre signa, to advance.

inferre signa conversa, to face about and advance.

collis infimus apertus, a hill cleared at the base.

inire consilium, to form a plan.

inita aestate, at the beginning of summer.

iniussu Caesaris, without Caesar's bidding.

inter se cohortati, urging one another on.

inter se dare, to exchange.

inter se different, they differ from one another.

duobus pedibus inter se, two feer apart.

inter xv annos, during fifteen years.

interdicere aqua atque igni, to forbid the use of fire and water, to banish.

interdicere sacrificiis, to prohibit from attendance at sacrifices, excommunicate.

interdixit Romanis omni Gallia, he forbade the Romans occupying any part of Gaul.

ipsi se interficiunt, they kill themselves with their own hand.

sua ipsius (ipsorum) domus, his (their) own house.

iter facere, to march.

iudicium optimum facere, to pass a very favorable opinion.

ius dicere, to administer justice.

largiter posse, to have great power, influence.

legionen conscribere, to enroll a legion.

loco alieno, in an unfavorable place, position.

loco obsidum, as hostages.

loco suo, in a favorable position, place.

habere eodem loco, to consider in the same light.

maior pars, the greater part, the majority.

maiores (with or without natu), old men, ancestors.

in manibus esse, to be close at hand.

manipulos laxare, to spread out the maniples, open the ranks.

manus conducta, a force serving for pay, a hired band.

maxima laus, the highest merit, most praiseworthy.

medio in colle, half way up the hill. memoriā nostrā, in our own day.

memoriä tenere, to remember.

memoriam deponere, to cease to remember, forget.

memoriam prodere, to transmit the remembrance.

missu Caesaris, sent by Caesar.
oratoris modo, as an envoy, or ambassador.

moleste ferre, to be annoyed.

more maiorum supplicium sumere, to punish after the ancient fashion.

linguā ballieā multā uti, to speak the Gallic language fluently.

ad multam noctem, till late at night.

multo die, late in the day.

multum valere, to be very powerful.

natura atque opere (manu), naturally and artificially.

navem, in navem (naves) conscendere, to go on board, embarknaves armare, to fit out ships.

naves deducere, to launch ships.

naves in litore eiectae, ships stranded.

naves longae, war-ships, galleys.

naves onerariae, freight-ships, transport-ships.

naves solvere, to set sail, weigh anchor.

naves subducere, to draw ships up on land, beach.

navi, ex navi, egredi, to disembark. ex navibus expositi, landed, placed on shore.

navigia speculatoria, spy-boats.

nihilo minus, secius, none the less, no less, just so.

nisi rogatus, without being asked (i. 44).

novis rebus (or imperiis) studere, to desire a revolution.

non ita magnus numerus, not a very large number, not very many.

occupationes reipublicae, business of state, public affairs (iv. 16).

officium praestare, to do one's duty. operam dare, to take pains.

operam navare, to do one's best.

opinio timoris, *impression of fear*.

opinio virtutis, *reputation for courage*.

opus est, there is need, it is necessary.

opus facto est, there is need of
action. [circle.

in orbem consistere, to form a ordines servare, to keep the ranks, remain in line.

primi ordines, the centurions of the first rank (i. 41; v. 30).

ordinibus perturbatis, the ranks being broken, out of order.

ratio ordoque agminis, system and arrangement, regular order, of the line of march.

- pedem referre, to retreat.
- sub pellibus, in tents.
- pendere stipendium (or vectigal), to pay tribute.
- per manus tractus, dragged, passed, from hand to hand (vi. 38).
- ad Alpes pertinent, extend as far as the Alps.
- eodem pertinere, point to the same thing.
- petere, ut liceat, to ask permission. placuit ei mittere, he thought best to send.
- plurimum posse, to have the greatest influence, be very powerful. See N. to p. 49, 2.
- plus posse, to have greater influence, be more powerful.
- poenas pendere, to pay the penalty.

  poenas persolvere, to pay the penalty.
- poenas repetere, to inflict punishment.
- Gallia (sometimes Galliae) potiri, to become master of Gaul.
- prae magnitudine sua, in comparison with his own greatness.
- se praesente, in his presence.
- praestant Gallis virtute, excel the Gauls in respect to courage.
- praestare fidem, to give proof of one's good faith.
- praestare officia ducis, discharge the duties of a commander, take the place of a commander.
- praestare virtutem, to show courage.
- praestat pati, quam, it is better to suffer than.
- praesto fuit Sabino, he met Sabinus (v. 26).
- milites premi (urgeri, laborare) videt, he sees that the soldiers are hard pressed.
- prima aestate, primo vere, at the beginning of summer, of spring.

- prima luce, at early dawn.
- prima nocte, at the beginning of night, night-fall.
- primum agmen, the van. See p. 29.
- principes consilii, the leaders in the scheme (vi. 44).
- pro beneficiis, in return for favors. pro his, on behalf of these.
- pro multitudine, in proportion to the population.
- pro perfuga, vallo, as a deserter, rampart.
- pro sano, as a sane man, like a man in his senses.
- pro tempore, pro re, as the time, as the circumstances demanded.
- proeliis parvulis, in skirmishes.
- publice privatim, as a state or in the name of the state — as individuals. See N. to p. 107, 11.
- quae cum ita sint, since this is true, since the case stands thus.
- quaevis fortuna, any lot you please. post diem quartum, quam, four days after, the fourth day after.
- quam, with superlative adjectives and adverbs, as possible.
- quam maximus, as great as possible, the greatest possible.
- quam primum, as soon as possible.
- quanto—tanto, quo—eo, quo hoe, with comparatives, the—; as, quanto gravior—tanto crebriores, the severer—the more frequently.
- decem diebus, quibus, ten days after. quinis aut senis milibus passuum, five or six miles each day.
- nullum tempus intermiserunt, quin mitterent, they let no time pass without sending.
- nobilissimus quisque, all the nobles. antiquissimum quodque tempus, priority of time (i. 45).

rari propugnabant, they were fighting in scattered parties, in small bodies (v. 9).

se recipere, to withdraw, retreat.

recusare mortem, to shrink from death.

recusare quominus sint, to refuse to be.

referre pedem, to retreat.

religiones interpretari, to solve religious questions.

religionibus impediri, to be hindered by religious scruples.

male re gesta, the attempt being unsuccessful, after an unsuccessful attempt.

occasio rei bene gerendae, negotii bene gerendi, a chance of fighting a successful battle, of gaining an advantage.

res certiores, sure information.

res communis, a common interest, common interests.

res gestae, deeds, exploits.

res secundae, prosperity.

rogare sacramento, to enlist.

satis commode, very conveniently. se suaque omnia, themselves and all their possessions.

secundo flumine, down-stream, with the current.

secundum ea, besides those things. secundum flumen, next to the

stream, along the river. secundum naturam fluminis, according to the natural course (or

sententiā desistere, to give up a scheme.

si quid erat durius, in case of any difficulty (i. 48).

ad signa convenire, to muster.

signa inferre, referre, etc. р. 26.

sol oriens, the East. occasus solis, the West.

current) of the river.

in spem venire, to begin to have hope. sub bruma, at the time of the winter solstice, in winter.

sub monte, at the foot of the height. sub occasum solis, about sunset.

sub vesperum, towards evening. sumere diem, to take time.

sumere supplicium de eo, to inflict punishment on him, punish him.

in summa, as a whole.

summa belli, the supreme command of the war.

summa exercitus, the army as a whole (vi. 34).

summa imperii, the supreme power, chief authority.

summa omnium rerum, the final decision of everything.

summa vi, with might and main. summis copiis, with all their forces, in full force (v. 17).

ab summo, from the top.

sustinere equos, to check the horses (iv. 33).

se sustinere non potest, he can no longer hold himself up, stand (ii. 25).

una via, only one way.

in una virtute consistere, to depend on courage alone.

Sequani uni, the Sequani alone.

multum valere, to be very powerful. vehi curru, to drive.

vehi equo, to ride.

veniam dare, to pardon.

vereor ne, I fear that.

vereor ut, I fear that not.

versari in castris, to be in the camp.

versari in periculo, to be in danger. versari in proeliis, to be engaged in fighting.

terga vertere, to turn to flee, flee. eos in vestigio poenitet, they regret immediately.

eodem vestigio remanere, to stay on the same spot. vim facere, to use violence.

vindicare in aliquem, to bunish any one. quid sibi vult? what does he mean?

#### Idiomatic Genitives.

## i. Partitive. A. 216; G. 366-371; H. 397.

aliquid calamitatis, some disaster.

novi aliquid consilii, some new plan (or other).

aliquid itineris, some distance. amplius obsidum, more hostages. minus dubitationis, less doubt. multum aestatis, a great part of the summer.

nihil agri, no land, no territory. nihil negotii, no trouble. nihil reliqui, nothing left; see i. 11; N. to p. 88, 29. nihil vini, no wine.

plus doloris, more grief, more

pain.

quam minimum spatii, as little time as possible.

quantum boni, how much advan tage, good.

quicquam vestitus, any clothing. quid negotii? what business? quid rei est? what is the matter? quod navium, what ships, whatever ships.

satis causae, reason enough, sufficient cause.

satis praesidii, a sufficient garrison. sui nihil deperdere, to lose none of their standing (i. 43).

tantum repentini periculi, so great sudden danger.

## ii. Objective. A 217; G. 361, 2; H. 396 III.

Helvetiorum iniuriae populi Romani, see N. to p. 61, 23. magno sui cum periculo, with great danger to himself.

Romanis sui potestatem facere, to give the Romans a chance at him.

# iii. Genitive of value. A. 252 a; G. 378, 379; H. 404.

magni haberi, to be considered of much account, much thought of. rei publicae (gen.) magni inter-

est, it is of great consequence to the state.

tanti eius apud me gratia est, my regard for him is so great.

iv. Genitive after adjectives. A. 218; G. 373; H. 399.

peritus rerum, belli, skilled in af- | locus medius utriusque, a place midway between both (i. 34).

v. Genitive after adverbs. A. 214 g; G. 371 R.4; H. 398, 5.

postridie eius diei, the next day | pridie eius diei, the previous day, after, the following day.

fairs, in war.

the day before.

### PASSIVES USED IMPERSONALLY.

accessum est ad Britanniam, they reached Britain (v. 8).

committendum non putabat, he was thinking that he ought not (so) to act, that occasion ought not to be given (i. 46).

concedi non oportet, it ought not to be granted, concession ought not to be made (i. 44).

concursum est, a rush was made, they rushed together.

constabat hiemari in Gallia oportere, it was clear that they must spend the winter in Gaul.

consurgitur, they rise in a body, all rise.

contendebatur proelio equestri, the contest was carried on with an engagement of the cavalry.

contendendum est nobis, we must make haste.

non nobis cunctandum est, quin, we must not delay to.

deliberatur, the matter is discussed.

militibus de navibus desiliendum, et in fluctibus consistendum, et cum hostibus erat pugnandum, the soldiers had to jump down from the ships and get their footing in the water and fight with the enemy.

non dubitandum est nobis, quin, we ought not to doubt, that.

in vulgus militum elatum est, it got abroad among the rank and file of the soldiers (i. 46).

si enuntiatum sit, if disclosure should have been made.

exspectari non oportet, quin eatur, ought not to delay to go.

hominibus sacrificiis interdictum est, men are forbidden attendance at sacrifices.

ut sibi ignosceretur, petit, he begs that pardon be granted him.

mandatum est, a commission was given, the matter was intrusted (i. 30). manetur, they remain, he remains.

maturandum est nobis, we must make all haste.

navibus nocetur, the ships are damaged.

quibus rebus occurrendum est, these circumstances ought to be provided for, this emergency ought to be met (i. 33).

non hostibus parcitur, no quarter is given to the enemy.

inopia nobis pereundum est, we must perish from want.

mihi persuadetur, I am convinced.

praecavendum est, every precaution should be taken.

ei praeceptum est, he was instructed, directed.

prodeundum est, ought to advance.

pronuntiatur, notice is given, announcement is made.

prospiciendum est rei frumentariae, provision must be made for supplies pugnatum est, fighting went on, the battle raged.

minus facile resisti potest, resistance cannot so easily be made.

aegre sustentatur, the defence was maintained with difficulty.

totis castris trepidatur, there is a panic throughout the camp. ventum est, he (or they) came.

in eos vindicandum est, punishment ought to be inflicted on them.

## ESSE IN IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS.

i. With predicate genitive. A. 214 c; G. 365; H. 402, 403.

aestivum tempus instantis belli est, summer is the season for the impending war, ought to be devoted to the impending war (vi. 4).

quid consilii Caesaris est? what plan has Caesar in mind? what does Caesar intend to do?

est hoc Gallicae consuetudinis, this is a peculiar custom of the Gauls. summae dementiae est exspectare, it is the highest folly to wait.

esse suae dignitatis, to be consistent with his dignity.

magnae fuit fortunae, it was a case of rare good luck.

iudicium imperatoris est, it is for the general to decide.

sui quicquam esse imperii postulare, to claim anything as under one's own rule.

have summi ut sint laboris efficient, these (by training) they make capable of the greatest exertion, of the greatest endurance.

est legati, it is a lieutenant's duty.

esse liberae civitatis, to belong to a free state.

res erat multae operae ac laboris, the operation cost great effort and toil. erat magni periculi, was very dangerous.

ii. With dative of possession. A. 231; G. 349; H. 387.

est mihi, est tibi, I have, you have.

est Caesari, Caesar has.

Caesari mecum nulla amicitia est, I have no friendship with Caesar, there is no friendship between Caesar and me.

iii. With two datives. A. 233; G. 350; H. 390 I.

erit mihi curae, I will attend to it.

dixit, sibi curae futurum esse, he said that he would attend to it.

mihi est cordi, it is agreeable to me, suits me.

ea erant Caesari usui, those things were of use to Caesar.

praesidio impedimentis erant, they served as a guard for the baggage.

his difficultatibus duae res erant subsidio, two things served to offset these disadvantages (ii. 20).

magno fuif Germanis dolori, it was a cause of great vexation to the Germans.

amicitiam populi Romani nobis ornamento et praesidio, non detrimento, esse oportet, the friendship of the Roman people ought to be an honor and protection to us, not a disadvantage:

iv. With ablative of characteristic. A. 251; G. 402; H. 419 II.

sunt specie tauri, they (the uri) have the appearance of a bull.

sunt horridiore aspectu, present a more frightful appearance.

sunt capillo promisso, they have flowing hair.

sunt ingenti magnitudine corporum, they are of gigantic stature (or size).

# VOCABULARY.

# ABBREVIATIONS.

```
= active (voice).
                                          indecl. = indeclinable.
abl.
         = ablative.
                                          indef.
                                                   = indefinite.
abs.
         = absolute.
                                          indic.
                                                   = indicative.
acc.
         = accusative.
                                          inf.
                                                   = infinitive.
adj.
         = adjective.
                                          interi.
                                                   = interjection.
adv.
         = adverb, adverbial.
                                          intr.
                                                   = intransitive.
         = common (gender).
                                          irr.
                                                   = irregular.
causat. = causative.
                                          lit.
                                                  = literally.
chap.
         = chapter.
                                          m.
                                                  = masculine.
         = comparative.
                                          MSS.
                                                   = manuscripts.
comp.
         = conjunction
conj.
                                          n., neut. = neuter.
dat.
         = dative.
                                          nom.
                                                  = nominative.
decl.
         = declension.
                                                   = numeral.
                                          num.
def.
         = defective.
                                          p., pp.
                                                  = page, pages.
dem.
         = demonstrative.
                                          part.
                                                  = participle.
dep.
         (in vocabulary) = deponent.
                                                  = passive.
                                          pass.
dim.
         = diminutive.
                                          pers.
                                                  = person.
e.g.
         = exempli gratia = for ex-
                                          pf.
                                                  = perfect.
              ample
                                          pl.
                                                  = plural.
                                                  = pluperfect.
         = et cetera = and so forth.
                                          plpf.
etc.
et seq.
        =et sequentia = and what
                                          pred.
                                                  = predicate.
            follows.
                                          prep.
                                                  = preposition.
excl.
         = exclamation.
                                          pres.
                                                  = present.
f.
         = feminine.
                                          pron.
                                                  = pronoun.
freq.
         = frequentative.
                                          rel.
                                                  = relative.
fut.
         = future.
                                         sing.
                                                  = singular.
                                         subj.
                                                  = subjunctive.
         = genitive.
gen.
ibid.
         = ibidem = in the same place.
                                         sup.
                                                  = superlative.
id.
         = idem = the same.
                                          trans.
                                                  = transitive.
                                          v.
                                                  = verb.
i. e.
         = id \, est = that \, is.
                                                  = vocative.
         = imperative.
                                          voc.
imp.
impers. = impersonal, impersonally.
                                          1, 2, 3, 4 \text{ with verbs} = 1st, 2d, 3d,
                                            or 4th conjugation.
impf.
         = imperfect.
```

# VOCABULARY.

QUANTITY. In this vocabulary the quantity of words is marked according to prose usage, as it is deemed unwise to unite poetic license and prose quantity in such a way as to create an impression in the mind of the student that vowels are indifferently long or short in certain syllables. "Common" marks of quantity are not employed; for example, final o is marked long, except in the few instances where it is short.

DERIVATION. In the derivation of words no attempt has been made to give ultimate or hypothetical roots. Only such aid is given in this direction as can be readily appreciated, applied, and remembered by a student possessing as little capacity for philological research as does the average boy or girl who reads Caesar.

IDIOMS. Very many of the more common idioms contained in the Table preceding the Vocabulary are repeated here.

THE LETTER J. The Vocabulary, consistently with the text, does not employ the letter j, but the consonant i. As an aid, however, to those pupils accustomed to the letter j, words containing the consonant i are also given (in parentheses) with the j; e. g. abiungo (or abjungo).

**A.** with proper names stands for *Aulus*.

a. d. = ante diem.

a, ab, abs, prep. with abl., (a is used only before a consonant; ab, before a vowel or a consonant; abs, only with te), from, by, on the side of, on, at.—a dextro cornu, on the right wing.—a tergo, in the rear. Sometimes as adv. with abl. of degree of difference, off; as, ab milibus passuum octo, eight miles off.—See Iddoms.

abditus, pf. pass. part. of abdo. abdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, [ab + do], 3, a., put away, remove, hide.

abdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, [ab + duco], 3, a., withdraw, lead away.

abeō, -īre, -īvī, (-iī), -itum, [ab + eo], irr., n., go away, depart. abesse, pres. inf. of absum.

abfutūrus, fut. part. of absum. abiciō (or abjiciō), -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, [ab + iacio], 3, a., throw away, cast off, fling down, hurl.

abiēs, -ietis, f., a fir-tree, spruce.

abiungō (or abjungo), -iungere, -iunxī, -iunetum, [ab + iungo], 3, a., separate, detach, disjoin.

abripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum, [ab + rapio], 3, a., take away by force, carry off, tear away.

- abscīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, [abs+caedo], 3, a., cut off, lop off, cut away.
- absēns, part. of absum, used as an adj., absent. se absente, in his absence.
- absimilis, -e, [ab + similis], adj., unlike.
- absistō, -sistere, -stitī, [ab + sisto], 3, n., withdraw, go away, desist from, keep off from, leave off.
- abstineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, [abs + teneo], 2, a. and n., hold at a distance, hold back; abstain from, refrain from, spare.
- abstrahō, -trahere, -traxī, -tractum, [abs+traho], 3, a., drag or pull away, drag off, take away by force.
- absum, -esse, -fuī, [ab + sum], irr., n., be distant, be absent or away from; be wanting or lacking; be exempt from.
- abundō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ab + unda, a wave], I, n., overflow; abound in, be rich in or well provided with.
- ac (atque), conj., and. [For other meanings and use, see atque.]
- accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, [ad + cedo], 3, n., move towards, approach; be added. See IDIOMS.
- accelerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ad + celer], I, a. and n., quicken, hurry, hasten, make haste.
- acceptus, pf. pass. part of accipio, used as an adj., acceptable, welcome, beloved.
- accidō,-cidere,-cidī, [ad + cado], 3, n., fall, fall to, befall, happen, occur, fall to the lot of, turn out. Impers., accidit, it happens.
- accīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, [ad + caedo], 3, a., cut, cut into, fell.
- accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, [ad + capio], 3, a., take to one's self, receive, accept; hear, learn.

- acclivis, -e, [ad + clivus], adj., sloping upwards, rising, ascending.
- acclīvitās, -tātis, [acclivis], f., upward slope, ascent, inclination.
- Accō, -ōnis, m., a chief of the Senones.
- accommodātus, pf. pass. part. of accommodo. As an adj., suited, adapted to, fit.
- accommodō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ad + commodus], I, a., fit, fit on, adjust.
- accūrātē [accuratus, ad + cura], adv., carefully, with care, exactly.
- accurro, -currere, -cucurro or -curro, -cursum, [ad + curro], 3, n., run to, run up to, hasten, rush up.
- accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ad + causa], 1, a., call to account, accuse, reproach, blame, censure.
- ācer, ācris, ācre, adj., sharp, keen, violent.
- acerbē [acerbus], adv., sharply, harshly; with discontent or sorgow.—si acerbius inopiam ferrent, if they found the scarcity too severe.
- acerbitās, -tātis, [acerbus], f., harshness, bitterness, severity, hardship, sorrow, trouble; pl. sufferings.
- acerbus, -a, -um, [acer], adj., bitter, harsh, cruel, severe, disagreeable.
- ācerrimē, superlative of acriter. acervus, -ī, m., a heap, pile.
- acies, -eī, f., (old gen. acie occurs, ii. 23), sharp point or edge of a weapon; keenness or fierceness of the eye; line of an army, line of battle, a battle.—convertere aciem, to face about.— acies media, the centre.
- acquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, [ad+quaero], 3, a., gain, oblain, procure, acquire.

acriter [acer], adv., sharply, fiercely, vigorously, courageously.
 — cum acriter resisteretur, when a vigorous resistance was made.

actuārius, -a, -um, [ago], adj., easily moved, swift. — navis actuaria, a swift sailer, driven by both oars and sails.

actus, pf. pass. part. of ago.

acuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum, [acus, a needle], 3, a., sharpen.

acūtus, pf. pass. part. of acuo; as an adj., sharp, pointed.

ad, prep. with acc. only, to, towards, up to, in the vicinity of, according to, near to, next, among, at, to the number of, until, for.—ad multam noetem, till late at night.—ad Genavam, near, or in the vicinity of, Geneva.—ad extremum, at last, finally.—ad hune modum, after this manner.—ad vesperum, towards evening.—ad unum, to a man. Also as adv. with numerals, about, nearly.—ad duodecim, about twelve. Also see IDIOMS.

adāctus, pf. pass. part. of adigo.
adaequō, āre, āvī, ātum, [ad +
aequus], I, a., make equal to,
bring up to a level with, become
equal to, keep up with.— adaequare cursum, to keep pace
with.

adamö, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ad + amo], I, a., conceive an affection for, love exceedingly, covet.

adaugeō, -augēre, -auxī, -auctum, [ad + augeo], 2, a., increase.

addīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dīctum, [ad + dico], 3, a., assent, hand over, assign, deliver, yield.

addō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, [ad + do], 3, a., give to, add, join to, make additions to. — addunt de Sabini morte, they tell him in

addition about the death of Sabinus.

addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -dūctum, [ad + duco], 3, a., lead to, bring. lead, draw, induce, influence.—in eam se consuetudinem adduxerunt, they have so trained themselves.

ademptus, pf. pass. part. of adimo.

adeō, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -itum, [ad + eo], irr., n. and a., go to, approach, advance, reach, visit, attack.

adeō, [ad + eo, from is], adv., to that point, so, so much, so far, to that degree.

adeptus, pf. part. of adipiscor. adequitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ad

+ eques], I, n., ride towards, ride up to.

adhaereö, -haerēre, -haesī, -haesum, [ad + haereo, cling], 2, n., stick to, cling to.

adhaerēscō, -haerēscere, -haesī, -haesum, [ad + haeresco], 3, n., stick to, adhere; remain clinging or hanging.

adhibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitum, [ad + habeo], 2, a., bring to, bring in, admit, call in, invite, summon, use, employ.

adhortor, -ārī, -ātus, [ad + hortor], I, dep., a., encourage, rally, incite.

adhūc, [ad + hue], adv., hitherto, up to this time, as yet, still.

Adiatunnus, -ī, m., a chief of the Sontiates. See iii. 22, N. to p. 103, 2.

adiciō, (or adjicio), -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, [ad + iacio], 3, a., throw to, fling, hurl, throw up to, join to, add.

adigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, [ad + ago], 3, a., drive to, drive home, drive in, move up, throw up to; bind (by oath), compel. — omni-

bus ad iusiurandum adactis, all being bound by an oath.

adimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, [ad + emo], 3, a., take away, destroy, cut off, remove.

adipiscor, -ipiscī, -eptus, [ad + apiscor, seize upon], 3, dep., gain, obtain, acquire.

aditus, .ūs, [ad + eo], m., approach, access, a going to, means or right of access. — facilem aditum habere, to be easy of access. — aditum sermonis, access for conversation.

adiaceō (or adjaceo), iacēre, iacuī, [ad + iaceo], 2, n., lie near, border on, be adjacent.

adiūdicō (or adjūdico), -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ad + iudico], I, a., adjudge, award, assign.

adiungō (or adjungo), -iungere, -iunxī, -iunetum, [ad + iungo], 3, a., join to, add, unite.

adiūtor (or adjutor), -ōris, [adiuvo], m., an assistant, helper, mediator.

adiuvō (or adjuvo), -iuvāre, -iūvī, -iūtum, [ad + iuvo], I, a., help, aid, assist, support.

Admagetobriga, -ae, f., a town in Gaul. i. 31.

admātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ad + maturus], 1, a., ripen, mature, hasten, precipitate.

administer, -trī, [ad + minister, servant], m., assistant, servant.

administrö, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [administer], I, a., serve, assist, perform, carry on, manage, execute, superintend, direct, arrange for.

admīror, -ārī, -ātus, [ad + miror], 1, dep., a. and n., wonder at, admire, be surprised at. — maxime admirandum videbatur, it seemed most surprising. admissus, pf. pass. part. of admitto.—equo admisso, at full gallop.

admitto, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, [ad + mitto], 3, a., allow, permit, admit, commit.—admittere facinus, become guilty of a crime.— admittere dedecus, permit the disgrace.

admodum [ad + modus], adv., lit.

up to the measure, to a degree;
exceedingly, very much, especially,
very; with numbers, fully, at least.

admoneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, [ad + moneo], 2, a., warn, advise, remind.

adolēscō, -olēscere, -olēvī, -ultum, [ad + olesco, grow], 3, n., grow up, reach adult age.

adorior, -orīrī, -ortus, [ad + orior], 4, dep., rise up against, attack, assail; attempt.

adortus, pf. part. of adorior, having attacked, attacking

adscīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītum, [ad + scisco, approve, after examination], 3, a., approve, admit, receive, adopt.

adsum, -esse, -adfuī (affuī), [ad + sum], irr., n., be near, be close at hand, be present; assist, aid.

Aduātuca, -ae, f., a fortress nearly in the centre of the Eburones, perhaps identical with *Tongern*, S. W. of Maestricht.

Aduātucī, -ōrum, m., a people of northeast Gaul descended from the Cimbri and Teutones. They promised a contingent of 19,000 men in the great Belgic insurrection, but on hearing of the defeat of the Nervii returned home.

adulēscēns, -entis, [adulesco], c., a young man (or woman), a youth.

adulescentia, -ae, [adulescens], f., youth, the state or age of youth.

adulēscentulus, ī, (dim. of adulescens), m., a very young man, a mere youth, a stripling.

adventus, -ūs, [ad + venio], m., arrival, coming approach.

adversārius, -ī, [ad + verto], m., one turned towards or facing another, an adversary, opponent, foe, enemy.

adversus, -a, -um, (part. of adverto), adj. (lit. turned to or towards), in front, opposite, unfavorable, adverse, unsuccessful.—adversis hostibus occurrunt, they meet the enemy face to face.—in adversum os, full in the face.—adverso flumine, up the stream.

adversus, prep. with acc. only, opposite to, against.

advertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, [ad + verto], 3, a., turn to or towards; especially in the phrase, animum advertere, perceive, notice, observe.

advocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ad + voco], I, a., call, summon.

advolő, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ad + volo, fly], I, n., fly at or to, hurry forward, rush upon, pounce upon.

aedificium, -ī, [aedifico], n., building.

aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [aedes, house, + facio], I, a., build a house, build, make, construct.

Aeduus, -a, -um, adj., Aeduan; as noun, an Aeduan. In pl. the Aedui, a powerful Gallic tribe, living between the upper waters of the Saône and Loire. Their chief town was Bibracte, now Autun. At one time they were held in subjection by the Sequani, but were set free by Caesar. Their chief officer was called Vergobret; he held office

for one year, and had the power of life and death over the people. aeger, .gra, .grum, adj., sick, dis-

abled; weary, feeble.
aegerrimē, sup. of aegre, adv.,

with very great difficulty.

aegrē [aeger], adv., with difficulty, scarcely, hardly.

Aemilius, -ī, m., L. Aemilius, a cavalry officer in charge of a decuria of Gallic horsemen.

decuria of Gallic horsemen.

aequāliter [aequalis, equal], adv.,

evenly, regularly, uniformly.

aequinoctium,-ī,[aequus+nox], n., the equinox, i. e., the time of year when day and night are of equal length.

aequitās, -tātis, [aequus], f., evenness, justice, fairness. — animi aequitate, in a contented spirit.

aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [aequus], I, a., equalize, make equal, put on a level.

aequus, -a, -um, adj., equal, level, just, fair, equitable, reasonable. — aequo animo, without anxiety, [Engl. equanimity]. — aequo Marte, in a contest on an equal footing, in a fair or equal fight.

aerāria, -ae, [aerarius], f., a copper mine.

aerārius, -a, -um, [aes], adj., belonging to copper or bronze.

aereus, -a, -um, [aes], adj., made of copper or bronze.

aes, aeris, n., copper, bronze; money.—aes alienum, debt, i. e., another's money, money owed another.

aestās, -tātis, f., summer.

aestimātiō, -ōnis, [aestimo], f. valuation, estimation, esteem; value, price.

aestimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [aes],
 I, a., estimate, value, reckon; regard, judge, determine.

- aestīvus, -a, -um, [aestas], adj, of summer. tempus aestivum, summer, summer time.
- aestuārium, -ī, [aestus], n., a place left bare at low water, a marsh, estuary.
- aestus, -ūs, m., (lit. burning or boiling); applied to heat, and to the waves; heat, tide.—cum ex alto se aestus incitavisset, at flood tide.—aestu minuente, at ebb tide.
- aetās, -tātis, [for aevitas, from aevum, age], f., age, old age.
- aeternus, -a, -um, [contraction for aeviternus, from aevum, age], adj., everlasting, eternal, unbroken, perpetual.
- afferō, -ferre, attulī, allātum, [ad+fero], irr., a., bring, present, bring cause, cause, occasion, produce, allege.
- afficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, [ad + facio], 3, a., do something to, affect, treat, visit with.— supplicio (poena) afficere, to punish.— magno dolore affici, to be greatly annoyed or mortified.
- affigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum, [ad + figo, fix], 3, a., fix on, attach to, fasten upon.
- affingō, -fingere, -finxī, -fietum, [ad + fingo], 3, a., invent, add falsely.
- affinitās, -tātis, [ad + finis], f., relationship by marriage, kinship, connection.
- affirmātiō, -ōnis, [affirmo, assert], f., declaration, assurance, assertion.
- affixus, pf. pass. part. of affigo, fastened upon, attached to.
- afflictō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, (freq. of affligo), I, a., knock or dash against, toss or dash about, damage, trouble, strand, wreck.
- afflīgō, -flīgere, -flīxī, -flīctum, [ad + fligo, strike], 3, a., dash

- against, cast or knock down, collide, shatter.
- affore (= affutūrus esse), fut. infin. of adsum.
- Africus, -ī, m., (properly an adj. agreeing with ventus understood), the southwest wind, still called affrico by the Italians.
- Agedincum, -ī, n., the capital of the Senones, on the Yonne, a tributary of the Seine; now called Sens.
- ager, agrī, m., land, a field, country, territory; plur., lands, territory. — nihil agri, no land.
- agger, -geris, [ad + gero], m., a pile, mound, rampart, mole, dike, materials for a mound, etc. See p. 35.—aggerem petere, to get materials for the mound.—aggerem exstruere, to raise a mound.—multo aggere, with plenty of earth.
- aggredior, -gredī, -gressus, [ad + gradior, walk, go], 3, dep., go to, go against, attack. [English aggressive.]
- aggregō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ad + grex, flock], I, a., bring together into a flock, assemble, attach one's self to, join. se aggregare, to attach one's self to, to cluster round.
- agitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ago], I, a., drive, trouble, vex; propose, discuss, consider.
- agmen, -minis, [ago], n., anything set in motion, an army on the march, column (marching); the main line, the line of march. See pp. 29-31.— novissimum agmen, the rear.— primum agmen, the van.
- agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, 3, a. and n., set in motion, drive, drive away or forward, pursue, move forward, extend; do, act, transact,

perform, manage; of time, spend; treat, negotiate, plead, express.—
agere conventum, to hold court.—
agere gratias, to thank.—
agere vineas, to bring up the vineae.— agere cuniculos, to extend the mines.— agere hiemem, to spend the winter.

agricultūra, -ae, [ager + colo], f. agriculture, farming, husbandry.

alacer, -cris, -cre, adj., active, eager, quick, impetuous, ardent, spirited, fierce.

alacritās, -tātis, [alacer], f., ardor, spirit, eagerness, zeal, readiness.

ālārius, -a, -um, [āla, wing], adj., on or at the wings. Pl. alarii, the allies, who were placed on the wings of the army.

albus, -a, -um, adj., white. — album plumbum, tin. v. 12.

alces, -is, f., the elk. vi. 27.

Alēsia, -ae, f., the chief town of the Mandubii, in Central Gaul, famous for its siege by Caesar; now called *Alise St. Reine*.

aliās [alius], adv., elsewhere; at another time.—alias...alias, at one time...at another; partly....partly.

aliēnō, āre, -āvī, -ātum,[alienus], 1, a., make another's, alienate, estrange, take away. — alienata mente, deprived of reason. vi. 41.

aliēnus, -a, -um, [alius], adj., belonging to another, another's; strange, foreign, hostile; unsuitable, ill-adapted, disadvantageous, unfavorable. — non alienum videtur, it does not seem out of place, or foreign to the subject. vi. II. — aes alienum, debt. — alienissimus, as noun, an entire stranger. aliō [alius], adv., etsewhere. vi. 22. aliquamdiū [aliquis+diu], adv.,

for some time, some time.

aliquando [alius+quando], adv., at some time or other, at length, sometime, sometimes.

aliquantō [aliquantus], adv. somewhat, considerably, rather.

aliquantus, -a, -um, [alius + quantus], adj., somewhat, considerable, some; as noun, somewhat, a great deal. — aliquantum itineris, some distance.

aliquis, -qua, -quid, [alius + quis], and aliquī, -qua, -quod, [alius + qui], indef. pron. [The usual distinction in the use of these forms is that aliquis, -quid are used substantively and aliquī, -quod adjectively], some one or other, some, any one, anything, any. — aliquid novi consilii, some new scheme or other. — aliquid calamitatis, some disaster. — aliquid sublevare, to help somewhat.

aliquot [alius + quot], indef. indecl. adj., some, several.

aliter [alius], adv., otherwise, differently. — habere se aliter ac, to be other than or different from what.

alius, -a, -ud, (gen. alīus), adj., another, other, different, else. alius... alius, one... one, another... another;—pl. some, ... others.— alia re, with anything else.— alius alia causa illata, one alleging one reason, another, another.—longe aliam atque, very different from.—alio atque oportuerit, other than was proper.

allātus, pf. pass. part. of affero. alliciō, -licere, -lēxī, -lectum, [ad

allicio, -licere, -lexi, -lectum, [ad + lacio, entice], 3, a., entice, allure to.

Allobroges, -um, m., (acc. pl. Allobrogas, i. 14, vii. 64), a Gallic people, separated from the Helvetii by the Rhone.

alō, alere, aluī, alitum and altum, 3, a., nourish, increase, maintain, keep, rear, foster, raise.

Alpēs, ium, 3, f., the Alps. These mountains separate Italy from France, Switzerland, and Germany. They were divided into four parts: 1. The Maritime Alps, from the sea-coast to Mt. Viso. 2. The Cottian Alps, from Mt. Viso to Mt. Cenis. 3. The Graian Alps, from Mt. Cenis to Aosta. 4. The Pennine Alps, from Mt. Blanc to the Great St. Bernard. West of the Pennine range other names and divisions occur.

alter, -era, -erum, (gen. alterīus), adj., one of two, the other, a second. — alter. ... alter, the one ... the other. — alteri. ... alteri, the one party ... the other. —

alter e quibus, one of whom.

alternus, -a, -um, [alter], adj., alternate, one after the other, mutual. altitūdō, -inis, [altus], f., height, depth, thickness.

altum, -ī, [altus], n., the deep, deep water, the open sea.

altus, -a, -um, [alo], adj., high, deep.

alūta, -ae, f., tanned skin, soft leather, made soft by means of alum. iii. 13.

ambactus, -ī, m., [Keltic word], a vassal, dependant. vi. 15.

Ambarrī, -ōrum, m., Aedui Ambarri, a tribe on the Saône closely related with the Aedui.

Ambiānī, -ōrum, m, a small tribe in Northern Gaul. Their chief town was Samarobriva, now Amiens.

Ambibariī, -ōrum, m., a small tribe in Normandy. vii. 75.

Ambiliātī, -ōrum, m., a small tribe in Northern Gaul.

Ambiorix, -igis, m., a chief of the Eburones.

Ambivaretī, -ōrum, m., a tribe in Northern Gaul.

Ambivarītī, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe along the Meuse. iv. 9. ambō, -ae, -ō, adj., both.

āmentia, -ae, [a+mens], f., mad-

ness, senselessness, folly.

āmentum, -ī, (contraction for agmentum), n., a thong or strap, used in hurling javelins. v. 48.

amfractus, -ūs, [amb-+frango], m., a winding path. vii 46.

m., a winding path. vii. 46. amīcē [amicus], adv., kindly.

amīcitia, -ae, [amicus], f., friend-ship, alliance.

amīcus, -a, -um, [amo], adj., friendly, faithful, well-disposed.

amīcus, -ī, [amo], m., a friend, an ally.

āmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, [a + mitto], 3, a., send away, lose, let go. [love.

amor, -ōris, [amo], m., affection, amplē [amplus], adv., largely, abundantly, liberally.

amplificō, -āre -āvī, -ātum, [amplus + facio], I, a., make large, increase, enhance, extend.

amplitūdō, -inis, [amplus], f., size, bulk, greatness, dignity.

amplius[amplus], adv., (comp. of ample), more, further. — amplius obsidum, more hostages.

amplus, -a, -um, adj., large, spacious, considerable, extensive, distinguished, splendid, noble.

an, interrog. conj., or, or rather, or indeed. In direct questions it is frequently not translated; in double questions it is generally preceded by utrum or -ne. — -ne . . . an, or utrum . . an, whether . . . or.

Anartes, -ium, m., a Dacian tribe, on the Theiss. vi. 25.

- Ancalītes, -um, m., a British tribe, near Oxford, that surrendered to Caesar. v. 21.
- anceps, -cipitis, [ambo + caput],
   two headed, twofold, double;
   doubtful.
- ancora, ae, f., an anchor.—ancoram iacere, to anchor.—in ancoris, at anchor.—tollere ancoram, to weigh anchor.
- Andecumborius, -ī, m., a leading man among the Remi. ii. 3.
- Andes, -ium, or Andī, -ōrum, m., a people of Central Gaul, north of the Loire. The name survives in the province of Anjou.
- angulus, -ī, m., an angle, corner.
- angustē [angustus], adv., closely, narrowly, in close quarters, scantily.
- angustiae, -ārum, [angustus], f., a narrow part, defile, narrowness, narrows; straits, difficulties, perplexity; scarcity.
- angustus, -a, -um, [ango, squeeze], adj., limited, confined, narrow, close, steep. — esse in angusto, to be in a critical condition, at a crisis.
- anima, -ae, f., breath, soul, life.
- animadvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, [animus+ad+verto], 3, a., turn the mind to, notice, observe, perceive.—in aliquem, to punish, i.e. "attend to."
- animal, -ālis, [anima], n, a living thing, an animal.
- animus, -ī, m., mind, disposition, feelings, courage, will, spirit, temper, resolution. bono animo in, favorably disposed towards. animum offendere, to wound the feelings. esse in animo, to intend. relinquit animus Sextium, Sextius faints.
- annōtinus, -a, -um, [annus], adj., a year old, of the year before, last year's.

- annus, -ī, m., a year.
- annuus, -a, -um, [annus], adj., annual, annually, year by year.
- anser, -eris, m., a goose.
- ante, (1) as adv., previously, before, in front. — paucis ante diebus, a few days before. (2) as prep. with acc. only, before, in front of, in advance of. — ante diem, see N. to p. 50, 9.
- anteā, adv., previously, before, once. antecēdō, -cēdere, -cēssī, -cēssum, [ante + cedo], 3, n. and a., go in front or forward, get the start, precede, surpass, excel.
- antecursor, -ōris, [ante+curro], m., one who runs in front, a courier; pl. the advanced guard, the pioneers.
- anteferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, [ante + fero], irr., a., carry in front, place before, prefer; pass., become first, have the superiority.
- antemna, -ae, f., a sail-yard.
- antepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, [ante + pono], 3, a., place in front, prefer.
- antequam, conj., before.
  - antevertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, [ante + verto], 3, a., place before, prefer.
  - antiquitus [antiquus], adv., of old, in former times, long ago, anciently.
- antīquus, -a, -um, [ante], adj., old, former, ancient.
- Antistius, -ī, m., Gaius Antistius Regīnus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.
- Antōnius, -ī, m, (1) Marcus Antonius, usually known as Mark Antony. He was one of Caesar's lieutenants at Alesia, and played a very important part in Roman history; (2) Gaius Antonius, a brother of Marcus, also a lieutenant of Caesar.

- aperiō, -perīre, -peruī, pertum, 4, a., open, disclose, uncover.
- apertē [apertus], adv., openly,
   clearly.
- apertus, -a, -um, (part. of aperio, used as adj.), open, exposed, unprotected, undefended. loca aperta, open country. latere aperto, on the exposed flank.
- Apollō, -inis, m., Apollo, a god, son of Jupiter and Latona, identified by Caesar with a Gallic divinity. Apollo was god of poetry, music, archery, and healing. vi. 17.
- apparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ad + paro], I, a., provide, prepare, get ready, equip.
- appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ad+pello, bring one's self to another in order to address him], I, a., call to, call by name, name, style, address, appeal to.
- appellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, [ad + pello], 3, a., drive to, bring; of ships, make for, land.
- appetö, -petere, -petīvī or -petīī,
   -petītum, [ad + peto], 3, a. and
   n., aim at, desire, seek; approach.
- Appius, -ī, m., a Roman praenomen.
- applicō, -plicāre, -plicāvī or -plicuī, -plicātum or -plicitum, [ad + plico, fold], attach; lean against.
- apportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ad + porto], I, a., carry to, bring, convey, bring in. v. I.
- approbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ad + probo], 1, a., approve of, assent to, favor. vii. 21.
- appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ad + propinquus], approach, come near.
- appulsus, pf. pass. part. of appello (3d conjugation).
- Apr. = Aprilis.

- Aprīlis, -e, [aperio], adj., of April. aptus, -a, -um, adj., fitted, adapted, suited, fit, suitable, appropriate.
- apud, prep. with acc. only, at, with, near, close to, by, among, in the presence of.
- aqua, -ae, f., water. mensurae ex aqua, water-clocks. — aqua et igni interdicere, to forbid the use of fire and water = to banish.
- aquātiō, -ōnis, [aqua], f., getting water.
- aquila, -ae, f., an eagle. As the cagle was the chief ensign of the Roman legion, aquila came to mean a standard.
- Aquilēia, -ae, f., a city in upper Italy. See N. to p. 51, 33.
- aquilifer, -erī, [aquila + fero], m., standard-bearer. See aquila.
- Aquītānia, -ae, f., Aquitania, one of the three chief divisions of Gaul. See p. 38.
- Aquītānus, -a, -um, adj., of Aquitania. As a noun, an Aquitanian; pl. m., the Aquitani.
- Arar, -aris, (acc. -im), m., the Saône. It rises in the Vosges, and flows slowly through the territory once occupied by the Aedui and Sequani into the Rhone.
- arbiter, -trī, m., a witness; arbiter, umpire, commissioner. arbitros dare, to appoint commissioners.
- arbitrium, -ī, [arbiter], n., decision, judgment, will, power.
- arbitror, ārī, -ātus sum, [arbiter], I, dep., think, suppose, consider.
- arbor, -oris, f., a tree.
- arcessō, -sere, -sīvī, -sītum, [accedo], 3, a., send for, fetch, summon, call in, invite.
- ardeō, -ēre, arsī, arsum, 2, n., be hot or in a blaze; be eager, be excited.

- Arduenna, -ae, f., the Ardennes, a great forest in Gaul west of the Rhine.
- arduus, -a, -um, adj., steep, high, difficult.
- **Arecomicī,** -**ōrum,** m., a division of the Volcae.
- Aremoricus, see Armoricus.
- argentum, -ī, n., silver, silver-ware. argilla, -ae, f., clay.
- āridus, -a, -um, [areo, be dry], adj., dry; aridum as a noun, dry land, shore.
- ariēs, -ietis, m., a battering-ram, so called because the head of the beam was capped with iron in the shape of a ram's head. See p. 35. Also a prop, buttress, support.
- Ariovistus, -I, m., king of the Germans. He entered Gaul, and subdued several tribes, but was defeated by Caesar. See N. to p. 62, 31.
- Aristius, -ī, m., Marcus Aristius, a tribune of the soldiers.
- arma, -ōrum, n. pl., arms, weapons, equipment, outfit (of a ship). non poterant esse in armis, they could not bear arms.
- armāmenta, -ōrum, [armo], n. pl., implements, fittings, tackle, rigging.
- armātūra, -ae, [armo], f., armor, equipment. levis armaturae Numidae, light-armed Numidians.
- armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [arma], 1, a., equip, arm, fit out (a ship).
- Armoricus, -a, -um [ar, on + mor, the sea, Keltic], adj., Armorican. The Armorican states in Gaul comprised modern Brittany and part of Normandy. See N. to p. 96, 7.
- Arpinēius, -ī, m., Gaius Arpineius, a Roman knight.

- arripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, reptum, [ad + rapio], 3, a., snatch, seizė, appropriate.
- arroganter [arrogans, arrogant], adv., insolently, arrogantly, haughtily, presumptuously. i. 40.
- arrogantia, -ae, [arrogans], f., arrogance, insolence, haughtiness.
- ars, artis, f., skill, cleverness, art, science.
- artē, [artus], adv., closely, tightly. articulus, -ī, [dim. of artus, joint], m., a small joint, a joint, a knot.
- artificium, -ī, [artifex, artist], n., an art, trade; a trick, craft, cunning.
- artus, -a, -um, [arceo, shut up], adj., dense, close.
- Arvernus, -a, -um, adj., of the Arverni, Arvernian. Pl. m., the Arverni, a leading tribe in Central Gaul. Their capital was Gergovia. The modern name of their territory is Auvergne.
- arx, arcis, f., a fortress, stronghold, citadel.
- ascendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsum, [ad + scando, climb], 3, a. and n., ascend, mount, climb up.
- ascensus, -ūs, [ascendo], m., an ascending, ascent; means of approach.
  aspectus, -ūs, [aspicio, look at],
  m., appearance, look, sight.
- asper, -era, -erum, adj., rough, sharp, uneven; wild, fierce.
- assiduus, -a, -um, [ad+sedeo, sit], adj., incessant, constant, diligent.
- assistō, -sistere, -astitī, [ad + sisto, place, stand], 3, n., stand by or near; support, assist.
- assuēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, [ad + suesco + facio], 3, a., accustom, familiarize, train.
- assuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum, [ad + suesco, become accustomed], 3, n., become accustomed to

at, conj., but, yet, at least.

atque, ac, conj., and also, and even, and; after words of likeness or unlikeness, as, than.—idem atque or par atque, the same as.—aliam atque, other than.—similis atque, just as.—contra atque, contrary to what.—simul ac, as soon as.

Atrebas, -atis, 3, m., an Atrebatian; pl. m., the Atrebates, a people in northeastern Gaul. Their capital was Nemetocenna, now Arras.

Atrius, -ī, m., an officer in Caesar's army, left to look after the fleet while Caesar invaded Britain.

attexō, -texere, -texuī, -textum, [ad + texo, weave], 3, a., weave to or on, add, join. v. 40.

attingō, -tingere, -tigī, -taetum, [ad + tango], 3, a., touch upon, border on, touch, reach.

attribuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum, [ad + tribuo], 3, a., allot, assign, appoint.

### attulī, see affero

auctor, -ōris, [augeo], m., lit., producer or author: an adviser, promoter, contriver, originator, instigator.—auctore hoste, at the suggestion of the enemy.

auctoritas, -tatis, [augeo], f., influence, weight, prestige, authority, power.

auctus, -a, -um, part. of augeo, as adj., increased, advanced; distinguished.

audācia, -ae, [audax], f., boldness, daring; insolence, impudence.

audācter [audax], adv., boldly, courageously, fearlessly; presumptuously; comp. audacius, sup. audacissime.

audāx, -ācis, [audeo], adj., bold, spirited, courageous, fearless; audacious. audeō, audēre, ausus sum, 2, semi-dep., venture, dare, risk; attempt.

audiēns, -entis, pres. part. of audio, as adj., obedient. — dicto audiens, obedient (to the word of command).

audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, 4, a., hear, hear of, listen to.

audītiō, -ōnis, [audio], f., report, rumor, hearsay.

augeō, augēre, auxī, auctum, 2, a., increase, enlarge, magnify add to; advance.

Aulerous, -ī, m., an Aulercan; pl. the Aulerci, a people of Central Gaul, in four tribes: 1. Aulerci Brannovīces; 2. Aulerci Cenomāni; 3. Aulerci Eburovīces; 4. Aulerci Diablintres.

Aulus, ī, m., a Roman praenomen. aureus, -a, -um, adj., of gold, golden. aurīga, -ae, [aurea, a headstall + ago], m., a charioteer, driver.

auris, -is, f., an ear.

Aurunculēius, -ī, m., Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, a lieutenant of Caesar.

Auscī, -ōrum, m., a people in Aquitania. iii. 27.

ausus, pf. part. of audeo.

aut, conj., or; aut . . . aut, either . . . or.

autem, conj., but, moreover, yet; also, now.

autumnus, -ī, [augeo], m., autumn. vii. 35.

auxiliāris, -e, [auxilium], adj., auxiliary; pl., auxiliaries.

auxilior, -ārī, -ātus sum [auxilium], I, dep., assist, help.

auxilium, -ī, [augeo], n., help, aid, assistance, relief, remedy; pl., auxiliary troops, auxiliaries, as opposed to the heavy-armed Roman legionaries.

Avāricēnsis, -e, adj., of Avaricum.

Avāricum, -ī, n., a town of the Bituriges, in Central Gaul, now Bourges.

avāritia, -ae, [avārus, greedy], f., greed, avarice, covetousness.

āvehō, -vehere, -vēxī, -vēctum, [a+veho], 3, a., carry off or away. vii. 55.

aversus, -a, -um, part. of averto, used as adj., turned away; behind, in the rear. — aversum hostem, a retreating enemy, or an enemy in flight. — aversi ab hoste circumveniri, to be surrounded in the rear by the enemy (i. e., with their backs to the enemy).

averto, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, [a + verto], 3, a., turn away or aside, avert, repulse, divert, alienate, estrange.

avis, -is, f., a bird. iv. 10. avus, -ī, m., a grandfather.

Axona, -ae, f., a river of Northern Gaul, flowing into the Isara (Oise), and now called Aisne.

## В.

Bacēnis, -is, (sc. silva), f., a forest in Germany, separating the Suebi from the Cherusci. vi. 10.

Baculus, -ī, m., Sextius Baculus, a centurion in Caesar's army.

Baleāris, -e, adj., Balearic. The Balearic isles (Majorca, Minorca, Iviza, and two smaller islands) lie in the Mediterranean off the coast of Spain; they were conquered by the Romans B.C. 123. The inhabitants were noted slingers.

balteus, -ī, m., a belt, a sword-belt. See p. 24. v. 44.

Balventius, I, m., Titus Balventius, a brave Roman centurion. v. 35.

barbarus, -a, -um, adj., foreign, wild, savage, uncivilized, barba-

rous. As noun, pl. m., strangers, foreigners, barbarians, i. e., the Gauls or Germans.

Basilus, -ī, m., L. Minucius Basilus, one of Caesar's officers; afterwards one of the conspirators against him.

Batavī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Batavians; they lived on an island formed by the Rhine, Meuse, and Waal. iv. 10.

Belgae, -ārum, m. pl., the Belgians, a warlike people, of Keltic and German origin. They inhabited the country between the Seine, the Marne, and the Rhine. See N. to p. 78, 17.

Belgium, -ī, n., the land of the Belgae, Gallia Belgica.

bellicosus, -a, -um, [bellicus], adj., lit., full of war; warlike, fierce.

bellicus, -a, -um, [bellum], adj., of war, martial, military.

bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [bellum], I, n., wage or carry on war, fight.

**Bellovacī**, -ōrum, m. pl., a powerful tribe of the Belgae. Their territory was represented by the former diocese of *Beauvais*.

bellum, -ī, (for duellum, from duo), n., war, warfare. — bellum gerere, to wage war. — bellum inferre, to make war.

bene [bonus], adv., well, ably, successfully. Comp. melius, sup. optime.

beneficium, -ī, [bene + facio], n., kindness, favor, service, benefit.

benevolentia, -ae, [bene + volo], f., good-will, friendly disposition, friendship.

Bibracte, -is, n., the capital of the Aedui, afterwards called Augustodunum, and now Autun. Bibrax, -actis, f., a town of the Remi, now called Bièvre. ii. 6.

Bibrocī, -ōrum, m. pl., a British tribe who surrendered to Caesar.

biduum, -ī, [bis + dies], n., a space of two days, two days.

biennium, -ī, [bis + annus], n., a space of two years, two years' time.

**Bigerriones**, -onum, m. pl., a people of Aquitania, whose territory is now called *la Bigorre*.

bīnī, -ae, -a, [bis], distrib. adj., two by two, two each, two apiece for each, by twos.

bipedālis, -e, [bis + pes], measuring two feet in width, length, or height; two feet long, wide, or thick. iv. 17.

bipertītō [bis+pars], adv., in two

bis [for duis, from duo], num. adv., twice.

Bituriges, -um, m. pl., a tribe in Central Gaul, separated from the Aedui by the Loire. Their capital was Avaricum, now *Bourges*.

Boduōgnātus, -ī, m., a leader of the Nervii. ii. 23.

Bōia (or Bōja), -ae, f., the country of the Boii.

Bōiī (or Bōji), -ōrum, m. pl., a people widely diffused over Central Europe, whose name survives in *Bohemia*. A portion joined the Helvetii, went with them into Gaul, and after their defeat were absorbed in the Aedui.

bonitās, -tātis, [bonus], f., goodness, excellence. — bonitas agrorum, fertility.

bonus, -a, -um, adj., (comp. melior, sup. optimus), good, advantageous; pleasant, well-disposed, friendly. — bono animo esse, to be favorably disposed. As noun, bonum, n., profit, advantage; pl., bona, -orum, goods, property.

bōs, bovis, c., an ox, a cow.

brāchium, -ī, n., *an arm.* 

Brannovīces, -um, see Aulerci. Brannoviī, -ōrum, m. pl., a Gallic

Brannoviī, -ōrum, m. pl., a Gallic tribe in Central Gaul, tributary to the Aedui. vii. 75.

Bratuspantium, -ī, n., a town of the Bellovaci, probably the modern *Breteuil*. ii. 13.

brevis, -e, adj., short.

brevitās, -tātis, [brevis], f., shortness, smallness, small stature.

breviter [brevis], adv., shortly, briefly, with few words. vii. 54.

Britannī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Britons.

Britannia, -ae, f., Britain.

Britannicus, -a, -um, adj., of Britain, Britannic, British. v. 4.

brūma, -ae, [contr. from brevissima, sc. dies], f., the winter solstice; winter. v. 13.

Brūtus, -ī, m., Decimus Brutus, one of Caesar's most active officers. Afterwards he became a leading member of the conspiracy against Caesar. Cf. N. to p. 97, 37.

### C.

**C.** as an abbreviation stands for *Gaius*. As a designation of number = **centum** = 100.

Cabillonum, -ī, n., an important town of the Aedui on the Arar, now *Chalons-sur-Saône* in Burgundy.

Cabūrus, -ī, m., Gaius Valerius Caburus, the father of C. Valerius Donnotaurus.

cacumen, -inis, n., point, end, peak, summit.

cadāver, -eris, [cado], n., corpse, dead body.

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsum, 3, n., fall, be slain, die.

- **Cadurcī**, -ōrum, m. pl., a tribe in Aquitania; their capital was Divōna, now *Cahors*. vii. 4, etc.
- caedēs, -is, [caedo], f., slaughter, destruction, murder.
- caedō, caedere, cecīdī, caesum, [causat. from eado], 3, a., cut, fell, slay, cut down, cut to pieces, vanquish.
- caelestis, -e, [caelum, the sky], adj., celestial, heavenly. pl. m., as noun, the gods. vi. 17.
- caerimonia, -ae, f., a religious ceremony or rite.
- Caeroesī, -ōrum, m. pl., a tribe in Northern Gaul, on the river Chiers, near Sedan. ii. 4.
- caeruleus, -a, -um, adj., deep blue. Caesar, -aris, m., (1) Gaius Iulius Caesar. See pp. 1-20. (2) Lucius Caesar, a relative and lieutenant of Iulius Caesar. vii. 65.
- calamitās, -tātis, f., misfortune, disaster, defeat.
- Calētī, -ōrum, also Calētes, -um,
   m. pl., an Armorican tribe living
   in Normandy.
   callidus, -a, -um, adj., crafty, cun-
- ning, expert, skilful.
  cālō, -ōnis, m., a soldier's servant,
- cālō, -ōnis, m., a soldier's servant, camp servant.
- campester, -tris, -tre, [campus], adj., on level or open ground, flat,
- campus, -ī, m., a plain.
- Camulogēnus, -ī, m., an Aulercan, invested with the supreme command against Labienus. vii. 57.
- Canīnius, -ī, m., C. Caninius Rebilus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.
- canō, canere, cecinī, cantum, 3, a. and n., sing, play, sound a musical instrument. — receptui canere, to sound a retreat.
- Cantaber, -brī, m., a Cantabrian, belonging to a warlike tribe in the north of Spain.

- Cantabrī, -ōrum, pl. m., the Cantabri, Cantabrians, a tribe in the north of Spain.
- Cantium, -ī, n., Kent, a district in England. v. 13, 14, 22.
- capillus, -ī, [caput], m., the hair.
- capiō, capere, cēpī, captum, 3, a., take, get, seize, capture, occupy, select; of vessels, reach, make.—initium' capere, to begin.—consilium capere, to form a plan.—dolorem capere, to be grieved.

  See IDIOMS.
- capra, -ae, [caper, a goat], f., a she-goat.
- captīvus, -ī, [capio], m., a captive, prisoner. vi. 27.
- captus, -a, -um, pf. pass. part. of capio, taken, captured, influenced, charmed.
- captus, -ūs, [capio], m., capacity, comprehension, understanding, notion, idea. iv. 3.
- caput, itis, n., the head; a person or man; mouth of a river.— duo milia capitum, two thousand souls.— capitis poena, capital punishment.— capite demisso, with the head bowed down.
- careō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, 2, n., be without, lack, want.
- carīna, -ae, f., the keel of a ship.
- Carnûtes, -um, m. pl., a tribe in Central Gaul; their capital was Cenabum, now Orléans.
- caro, carnis, f., flesh.
- carpō, -ere, -si, -tum, 3, a., pluck; censure, criticise, slander, revile, "pick to pieces."
- carrus, -ī, m., a cart, wagon. See N. to p. 48, 20.
- cārus, -a, -um, adj., dear, precious, valued.
- Carvilius, -ī, m., a British king in Kent. v. 22.
- casa, -ae, f., a hut, cabin, cottage, barrack.

cāseus, -ī, m., cheese. vi. 22.

Cassī, -ōrum, m. pl., a small British tribe who surrendered to Caesar. v. 21.

Cassianus, -a, -um, [Cassius], adj., of Cassius.

cassis, idis, f., a helmet. Cf. p. 24. Cassius, -ī, m., the name of an important Roman family. L. Cassius Longinus was slain, when consul, in a battle with the Helvetii, 107 B. C.

Cassivellaunus, -ī, m., Cassivellaunus, Caswallon, commanderin-chief of the British army against Caesar. v. 11 et seq.

castellum, -ī, (dim. from castrum), n., a fort, redoubt, citadel.

Casticus, -ī, m., a leading Sequanian. i. 3.

castīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, I, a., punish, reprove, censure.

castra, -5rum, n. pl. (of castrum, a fortress), a camp; a day's march.

— castra movere, to break up camp.— castra ponere, to pitch a camp.— quintis castris, in five marches, i. e. days.

cāsus, ·ūs, [cado], m. lit., what happens; an event, chance, risk, accident, misfortune, evil plight, death.— casu, by chance.— ad extremum casum, to the last extremity.

Catamantaloedēs, -is, m., for a long time the chief man among the Sequani. i. 3.

catēna, -ae, f., a chain; pl., fetters. Caturigēs, -um, m. pl., a Gallic tribe in the Province. i. 10

Catuvolcus, .ī, m., a chief of the Eburones, who poisoned himself after the failure of an insurrection he had promoted. v. 26, vi. 31.

causa, -ae, f., a cause, reason, pretext, excuse; condition, case, situation. — causā (abl., with a gen.), for the sake of, on account of. See IDIOMS.

cautē [cautus, caveo], adv., cautiously, carefully.

cautes, -is, f., a jagged rock, crag,

cautus, pf. pass. part. of caveo.

Cavarillus, -ī, m., a chief of the Aedui. vii. 67.

Cavarīnus, -ī, m., a chief of the Senones. v. 54; vi. 5.

caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautum, 2, n. and a., be on one's guard, beware of, take precautions; give security.

cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum, 3, n., go away, retire, retreat, yield, abandon.

celer, -eris, -ere, [cello, impel], adj., quick, fleet, swift, sudden.

celeritās, -tātis, [celer], f., speed, swiftness, rapidity, despatch.

celeriter [celer], adv., quickly, speedily, at once.

cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, a., con-ceal, keep secret, hide.

Celtae, -ārum, m. pl., the Celts, the inhabitants of that part of Gaul between the Garonne and the Seine, and extending from the Atlantic to the Alps. They belonged to the great Keltic family, and were divided into many tribes or states. See pp. 38, 39.

Celtillus, -ī, m., an Arvernian, the father of Vercingetorix. vii. 4.

Cenabēnses, -ium, m. pl., the inhabitants of Cenabum. vii. 11.

Cenabum, -ī, n., chief city of the Carnutes, later called Civitas Aureliana, whence comes the modern name of Orléans.

Cenimāgnī, -ōrum, m. pl., a British tribe in Suffolk, who surrendered to Caesar. v. 21.

- Cenomānī, see Aulerci.
- cēnseō, -ēre, -uī, -um, 2, a, estimate, think, hold, judge, decree, determine, vote for.
- cēnsus, -ūs, [censeo], m., a census, count, enumeration. i. 29.
- centēnī, -ae, -a, [centum], distrib. adj., a hundred each.
- centum, indecl. num. adj., a hundred.
- centurio. See p. 22.
- cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētum, 3, a., separate, discern, see; decide.
- certāmen, -inis, [certo, fig/ht], n., a conflict, struggle, battle, engagement.
- certē [certus], adv., certainly, yet surely, at least.
- certus, -a, -um, part. of cerno used as adj., certain, fixed, definite, positive, undoubted, trustworthy, true.—certiorem facere, to inform.— certior fieri, to be informed.
- cervus, -ī, m., a stag, vi. 26; in military language, a forked stake (i. e. like a stag's horns), vii. 72.
- cespes, -itis, m., a turf, sod.
- cēterus, -a, -um, (nom. sing. m. not in use), the rest, remainder, the other or others.
- Ceutrônes, -um, m. pl., (1) a Belgic tribe in the neighborhood of Courtray in West Flanders, subject to the Nervii. v. 39. (2) a tribe in the Province. i. 10.
- Cevenna, -ae, f., the Cévennes, a mountain range in the south of Gaul, separating the Arverni from the Helvii. See p. 38.
- Cheruscī, -orum, m. pl., a German tribe between the Weser, the Elbe, and the Hartz mountains.
- cibāria, -ōrum, [cibus], n. pl., provisions, rations.
- cibus, -I, m., food, nourishment.

- Cicerō, -ōnis, m., Q. Tullius Cicero, the brother of the famous orator, M. Tullius Cicero. He was a lieutenant of Caesar's in Gaul.
- Cimberius, -ī, m., leader, with his brother Nasua, of 100 cantons of the Suebi who were trying to cross, the Rhine into Gaul. i. 37.
- Cimbrī, -ōrum, m. pl., a Germanic people, originally in the Cimbric peninsula, the present Jutland. They invaded Gaul and the Province and were defeated by Marius, 101 B. C. See N. to p. 67, 36.
- Cingetorix, -igis, m., (1) a Gaul, attached to Caesar, and the rival of Indutiomărus for the chief power among the Treviri. v. 3, 56. (2) a British chief in Kent. v. 22.
- cingō, eingere, einxī, einctum, 3, a., surround, enclose, invest.
- cippus, -ī, m., a stake, post, palisade. vii. 73.
- circā, adv., and prep. with acc., about, around.
- circinus, ī, m., a pair of compasses. i. 38.
- circiter [circus, a circle], adv., and prep. with acc., about, not far from, near.
- circueo, see circumeo.
- circuitus, -ūs, [circumeo], m., a circuit, winding path, way around.—in circuitu, all around.
- circum [eircus, a circle], adv., and prep. with acc., around, about, near, in the neighborhood of.
- circumcīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, [circum + caedo], 3, a., cut around or off; clip.
- circumcisus, -a, -um, part. of circumcido as adj., cut off, inaccessible, steep.

- circumclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, [circum + claudo], 3, a., shut in, surround, encircle, hem in.
- circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, [circum+do], 1, a., place around, encompass, surround.
- circumdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī,
  -ductum, [circum + dūco], 3,
  a., lead around, draw around;
  trace.
- circumeō (and circueo), -īre,
  -īvī or -iī, -itum, [circum + eo],
  irr. n. and a., go around; surround.
- circumfundō, -fundere, -fūdī,
   -fūsum, [circum + fundo], 3, a.,
   pour around, surround, hem in;
   pass. used reflexively, crowd
   around.
- circumiciō (or circumjicio), -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, [circum + iacio], 3, a., throw or place around.
- circumiectus, part. used as an adj., surrounding.
- circummittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, [circum+mitto], 3, a., send around.
- circummūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, [circum+mūnio], 4, a., surround with walls, surround, fortify, secure.
- circummūnītiō, -ōnis, [circum + mūnio], f., investment of a town by siege.
- circumplector, -plectī, -plexus, 3 dep., clasp around, embrace, encompass, surround.
- circumsistō, -sistere, -stitī or -stetī, [circum + sisto], 3, a. and n., take one's stand around, surround.
- circumspiciō, -icere, -ēxī, -ectum, [circum+specio, look], 3, n. and a., look about, survey, examine, consider.

- circumstō, -stāre, -stetī, [circum + sto], I, n. and a., stand about or around, surround.
- circumvallō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [circum+vallo], 1, a., surround with a rampart, blockade, invest.
- circumvehor, -vehī, -vectus, [circum+veho], 3, pass. as dep., ride or sail around.
- circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, [circum + venio], 4, a., encompass, surround, ensnare, deceive.
- cis, prep. with acc. only, on this side.
- Cisalpīnus, -a, -um, [cis +Alpes], adj., Cisalpine, lying on this (the Italian) side of the Alps. See p. 38.
- Cisrhēnānus, -a, -um, [cis + Rhenus], adj., on this side the Rhine, i. e. the western side.
- citātus, -a, -um, [cito, move rapidly], part. used as adj., hurried, quick, rapid, speedy.—equo citato, at full gallop.
- citerior, -us, (cis), adj., on this side, hither, nearer. Gallia citerior, Cisalpine Gaul. Hispania citerior, hither Spain, i. e. the eastern part, afterwards called Tarraconensis.
- citissimē, (sup. of cito, quickly), adv., with the utmost rapidity.
- citrā [cis], prep. with acc. only, on this side of.
- citro [cis], adv., hither. ultro citroque, to and fro.
- cīvis, -is, c., a citizen.
- cīvitās, -tātis, [civis], f., citizenship; the body of citizens; the state or nation. — multi ex civitate, many of the citizens.
- clam [celo], adv., secretly.
- clāmitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [freq. of clamo, cry out], I, a., cry out violently, exclaim, shout.

- clāmor, -ōris, [clamo, cry out], m., outcry, shout, din.
- clandestīnus, -a, -um, [clam], adj., secret, hidden.
- clārus, -a, -um, adj., clear, distinct; loud; famous.
- clāssis, -is, f., a fleet.
- Claudius, -ī, m., Appius Claudius, consul with L. Domitius, B. C. 54. v. I.
- claudo, claudere, clausī, clausum, 3, a., shut, close. claudere agmen, bring up the rear.
- clāvus, -ī, m., a nail, spike.
- clēmentia, -ae, [clēmens, kind], f, kindness, mercy, clemency.
- cliens, entis, [= cluens, from clueo, hear], c., a client, adherent, vassal, dependant.
- cliëntēla, -ae, [cliens], f., clientship, vassalage; alliance, protection.
- clīvus, -ī, [clino, lean], m., a slope, hill.
- Clōdius, -ī, m., P. Clodius Pulcher, a riotous tribune of the people. He was the bitter enemy of Cicero, and was killed near Rome by Milo, B. C. 52. vii. I.
- Cn., abbreviation for *Gneus* or *Gnaeus*, a Roman praenomen.
- coacervō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [con + acervus], I, a., heap up, collect. coāctus, pf. pass. part. of cogo.
- coāctus, -ūs, [cogo], m., compulsion.
- coagmentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [cogo], I, a., fasten together, connect.
- coartō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [con + arto, make close], 1, a., to press or squeeze together.
- Cocosātēs, -um, m. pl., a people of Aquitania. iii. 27.
- coëmō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, [con+emo], 3, a., buy up, pur-chase.

- coëo, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -itum, [con + eo], irr. n., go or come together, meet, combine.
- coepī, -isse, def. a. and n., began, started, commenced. The pass. form is used (as coeptus est) with a pass. infinitive.
- coërceō, -ercēre, -ercuī, -ercitum, [con + arceo, shut up], 2, a., confine, restrain, check.
- cōgitātiō, -ōnis, [cogito], f., a thinking, deliberation, reflection.
- cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [con + agito], I, a., think about, consider, weigh; intend, purpose.
- cognātio, -onis, [con + (g)nas-cor), f., relationship; kindred.
- cognosco, -gnoscere, -gnovi,
  -gnitum, [con+(g)nosco], 3, a.,
  become acquainted with, learn,
  ascertain; know thoroughly; examine, investigate.
- cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum, [con + ago], 3, a., drive together, collect, assemble; compel, force, oblige.
- cohors, -hortis, f., a cohort, the tenth part of a legion. See p. 21.
- cohortātiō, -ōnis, [cohortor], f., an harangue; encouraging, encouragement.
- cohortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [con + hortor], 1, dep., exhort, encourage, animate, urge.
- collatus, pf. pass. part. of confero.
- collaudo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [con + laudo], I, a., praise highly, extol, commend.
- colligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [con + ligo, bind], I, a., bind or fasten together.
- colligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, [con + lego, gather], 3, a., collect, assemble; obtain, get: — se colligere, recover one's self, rally.
   collis, -is, m., a hill, height.

- collocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [con + loco, place], I, a., place, post, station; pack, stow away; arrange; give in marriage, in this sense usually with nuptum (supine), as, nuptum...collocare, to give in marriage.
- colloquium, -i, [colloquor], n., conference, interview.
- colloquor, -loqui, -locutus sum,
  [con + loquor], 3, dep., talk with,
  hold a parley or conference.
- colō, colere, coluī, cultum, 3, a., cultivate, till; honor, worship.
- colonia, -ae, [colo], f., a colony, settlement.
- color, -ōris, m., color, complexion. combūrō, -ūrere, -ūssī, -ūstum, [con + (b)ūro, burn], 3, a., burn up, consume.
- comes, itis, [con + eo], c., a companion, associate, comrade.
- comitium, -ī, [con + eo], n., the place in the Roman Forum where the elections were held; pl. the assembly of the people, the election. vii. 67.
- comitor, -ārī, -ātus, [comes], I, dep., accompany, attend. vi. 8.
- commeātus, -ūs, [commeo], m., passing to and fro; expedition, voyage; transport; common meaning, supplies, provisions.
- commemorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [con+memor], 1, a., call to mind, recount, mention, relate.
- commendo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [con + mando], I, a, commit to one for protection, etc., intrust, recommend.
- commentārius, -ī, [commentor], m., note-book; commentary, memoir.
- commeō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [con + meo, go], I, n., go to and fro, visit, resort to.
- **commīlitō**, -ōnis, [con + miles], m., a fellow-soldier, comrade.

- comminus [con + manus], adv., hand to hand, at close quarters.
- commissūra, -ae, [con + mitto], f., a joint, juncture. vii. 72.
- committō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, [con + mitto], 3, a., join, bring together; intrust, commit; act so that, cause, do.—committere proclium, to join battle, begin the engagement.
- Commius, -i, m., a leader of the Atrebătes.
- commodē [commodus], adv., conveniently, opportunely, to advantage, readily, easily, fitly, suitably, properly.—non minus commodē quam, just as readily as.—non satis commodē, not very conveniently.
- commodum, -ī, [commodus], n., convenience, advantage, profit.
- commodus, -a, -um, [con + modus, i. e. having full measure], adj., convenient, advantageous, favorable, suitable, fit, easy.
- commonefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, [con + moneo + facio], 3, a., remind, impress upon. i. 19.
- commoror, -ārī, -ātus, [con + moror], I, dep., stay, linger, remain, stop.
- commoveō, movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, [con + moveo], 2, a., agitate, disturb, alarm, move, excite, influence.
- commūnicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [commūnis], I, a., share together or with, communicate, consult, impart, bestow.
- commūniō, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -ītum, [con + mūnio], 4, a., fortify on all sides or strongly, intrench.
- commūnis, -e, [con + mūnus], adj., common, in common, general, public. ex commūni consensu, by common consent. res commūnis, the public interest.

- commūtātiō, -ōnis, [commūto], f., a change.
- commūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [con + mūto], I, a., change, alter; exchange.
- comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [con + paro], 1, a., prepare, get ready, get together, acquire, procure.
- comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [compar, like], I a., compare. i. 31.
- compello, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum, [con + pello], 3, a., drive together, collect; drive, force.
- compendium, -ī, [con + pendo], n., a saving, gain, profit.
- comperiō, -perīre, -perī, -pertum, [con + per- (root in experior, try)], 4, a., ascertain, learn, discover, find out.
- compertus, -ā, -um, part. of comperio used as adj., known, certain.
   compertum habere, to learn.
   res comperta, a settled fact.
- complector, -pleetī, -plexus sum,
  [con + pleeto, braid], 3, dep., embrace, surround, include.
- compleŏ, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, [con + pleo, fill], 2, a., fill up, fill, cover; complete; occupy.
- complūrēs, -a and -ia, [con + plūs], adj., several, a great many, very many.
- comportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [con + porto], 1, a., bring together, collect, carry.
- comprehendō, hendere, hendī, hēnsum, [con + prehendo], 3, a., catch, grasp, seize, lay hold of, arrest, capture. — comprehendere ignem, catch fire.
- comprob5, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [con + probo], 1, a., approve fully, assent to, justify; confirm.
- conatum, i, [conor], n., an attempt.

- conātus, -ūs; [conor], m., an attempt.
- 2. conātus, pf. part. of conor.
- concēdō, -cēdere, -cēssī, -cēssum, [con + cēdo], 3, a. and n., withdraw, depart; give up, yield, bow, submit; allow, grant, grant permission.
- concertō, -āre, -avī, -ātum, [eon + certo, fight], I, n., fight, contend. vi. 5.
- concēssus, -ūs, [concēdo], m., permission, leave. vii. 20.
- concidō, -eidere, -eidī, [con + cado], 3, n., fall, perish.
- concido, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum,
  [con + caedo], 3, a., cut up, cut
  off, cut to pieces, destroy.
- conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [concilium], 1, a., win over, make friendly, reconcile; win, gain, procure.
- concilium, -ī, [con + calo, call, summon], n., a meeting, assembly, council.
- concitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [con + cito, move rapidly], 1, a., rouse, excite, provoke.
- conclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [con + clāmo, shout], I, n., shout or cry aloud, call out.
- conclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, [con + claudo], 3, a., shut up, enclose, confine. mare conclusum, a confined sea, i. e. the Mediterranean.
- Conconnetodumnus, -ī, m., a chief of the Carnutes. vii. 3.
- concrepō, -āre, -uī, -itum, [con + crepo, rattle], I, n., rattle, clash.
- concurro, -currere, -curro or -cucurro, -cursum, [con + curro], 3, n., run together, run up, rush, charge. — concursum est eo, a rush was made to that point.
- concurso, -are, no pf. nor supine,

- (freq. of concurro), 1, n., rush to and fro, run about.
- concursus, -ūs, [con + cursus], m., a running together, rushing about; collision, onset, charge.
- condemnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [con + damno], I, a., condemn, sentence.
- condiciō, -ōnis, [condo, put together], f., condition, position, situation, state; terms, stipulation.
- condōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [con + dōno], I, a., give up, forgive, excuse, pardon.
- Condrūsī, -ōrum, m. pl., a Belgic tribe on the right bank of the Meuse, near Liège, district Condroz.
- condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -dūctum, [con + dūco], 3, a., bring together, collect; hire. — manus conducta, a hired band.
- confectus. See conficio.
- confercio, .ire, .sī, .tum, [con + farcio, stuff], 4, a., press closely together.
- confero, ferre, tuli, latum, [con + fero], irr. a., bring together, gather, collect, convey; ascribe to; confer, compare; with in or ad, put off, postpone.—se conferre, betake one's self.—conferre culpam, throw the blame.
- confertus, -a, -um, part. of confercio used as adj., crowded together, closely packed, close, dense, compact.
- confestim, adv., immediately, at once.
- conficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, [con + facio], 3, a., do thoroughly, complete, finish, accomplish; bring to an end, wear out, exhaust; prepare, draw up, furnish.— bello confecto, when the war was over.— ante confectam primam vigiliam, before the end of the first

- watch. confecto magno itinere, having made a forced march.
- confido, -fidere, -fisus sum, [con + fido, trust], 3, n., trust firmly, rely upon, believe.
- configo, -figere, -fixi, -fixum, [con + figo, fasten], 3, a., fasten together, join.
- confinis, -e, [con + finis], adj., bordering on, adjoining, touching.
- confinium, -ī, [confinis], n., boundary line, frontier. v. 24.
- confio, -fieri, [con + fio], irr. pass. of conficio, sometimes used for the regular conficior (see vii. 58).
- confirmatio, -onis, [confirmo], f., assurance, assertion, encouragement.
- confirmo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [con + firmus], I, a., confirm, strengthen, establish, reassure, encourage; assert, declare. confirmare inter se, to give mutual assurances.
- confisus, -a, -um. See confido, trusting in, relying on.
- confiteor, -fiteri, -fessus sum, [con + fateor, confess], 2, dep., confess, own, avow, acknowledge.
- confixus, -a, -um. See configo. conflagro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [con + flagro, blaze], I, n., be in flames, be burned up. v. 43.
- conflicto, -are, -avi, -atum, [freq. of confligo], 1, a., dash against or together, struggle with. pass., be harassed.
- confligo, fligere, flixi, flictum, [con + fligo, strike], 3, a. and n., knock or strike together; contend, fight.
- confluens, -entis, [confluo], m., the place where two streams unite, confluence.
- confluo, fluere, fluxi, no supine, [con + fluo], 3, n., flow or run together, flock together.

- **confugio**, -fugere, -fugi, no supine, [con + fugio], 3, n., flee for refuge.
- confundo, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, [con + fundo], 3. a., pour together, mix, mingle, blend, unite.
- congerō, -gerere, -gessi, -gestum, [con + gero], 3, a., bear, bring, or carry together, collect, heap, or pile up.
- congredior,-gredi,-gressus sum,
  [con + gradior, step], 3, dep.,
  come together, unite with, meet;
  come into conflict, engage, contend.
- congressus, -a, -um. See congredior.
- congressus, -ūs, [congredior], m., an encounter, engagement.
- cōniciō, (or conjicio), -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, [con + iacio], 3, a., throw together, hurl, cast; throw, place. cōnicere in fugam, put to flight. cōnicere se in fugam, betake one's self to flight. culpam cōnicere in, cast the blame on.
- coniectūra (or conjectūra), -ae, [cōnicio], f., a conjecture, inference.—caperet coniecturam, he could form an idea.
- coniunctim (or conjunctim),
   [coniungo], adv., jointly, in common. vi. 19.
- coniunctus. See coniungo.
- coniungō (or conjungo) -iungere, -iunxī, -iunctum, [con + iungo], 3, a., unite, join. coniungere civitatem, to form a state.
- coniunx (or conjunx), coniugis, [coniungo], c., a husband or wife, spouse.
- coniūrātiō (or conjūrātio), -ōnis, [coniūro], f., conspiracy, plot.
- coniūrō (or conjūro), āre, āvī, ātum, [con + iūro], I, a., take oath together, conspire.

- conor, -ārī, -ātus sum, I, dep., endeavor, attempt, try. — idem conari, make the same attempt.
- conquiëscō, -ere, -quiëvī, -quiētum [con + quiësco, rest], 3, n., rest, repose.
- conquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, [con + quaero], 3, a., seek for, hunt up, bring together.
- conquisitus. See conquiro.
- consanguineus, -a, -um, [con + sanguis], adj., of the same blood; as noun, m., relative, kinsman; pl., kinsfolk, relatives.
- conscendo, -scendere, -scendi, -scensum, [con + scando, climb], 3, a., mount, ascend. in navem conscendere, to embark.
- conscientia, -ae, [con + scientia], f., consciousness, knowledge, feeling.
- cōnscīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītum, [con + scīsco, approve], 3, a., decree, appoint. — sibi mortem cōnscīscere, to commit suicide.
- conscius, -a, -um, [con + scio], adj., conscious; accessory to.
- conscribo, -seribere, -seripsi, -seriptum, [con + seribo], 3, a., write; enrol, levy.
- conscriptus. See conscribo.
- consecro, -are, -avi, -atum, [con + sacro, hallow], I, a., consecrate.
- consector, -ārī, -ātus, [con + sector, sequor], I, dep., pursue.
- consecutus, see consequor.
- consensio, -onis, [con + sentio], f., agreement, unanimity.
- consensus, -ūs, [con + sentio], m., consent, assent, united opinion. — ex communi consensu, by common consent.
- consentio, -sentire, -sensi, -sensum, [con + sentio], 4, n., agree, combine; conspire.

- consequor, -sequi, -secutus, [con + sequor], follow, pursue, overtake; obtain, attain, acquire.
- conservo, are, avi, atum, [con + servo], I, a., save, spare, maintain.
- Considius, -ī, m., Publius Considius, an officer in Caesar's army. i. 21, 22.
- cōnsīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessum, [con + sīdo, sit down], 3, n., settle; halt, encamp, take up an abode, establish one's self.
- consilium, -ī, [consulo], n., plan, design, scheme, advice, proceeding; wisdom, prudence; authority, council of war. aliquid consilii aut dignitatis, any weight or standing. de superioris temporis consilio, for their previous conduct. consilium inire or habere, to form a plan. ipsorum esse consilium, to be for them to decide. See IDIOMS.
- **consimilis**, -e, [con + similis], adj., like, quite like.
- consisto, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum,
  [con + sisto, set, place], 3, n.,
  stand, stop, stay, remain, halt,
  post one's self, be posted, make a
  stand; consist, depend.—in orbem consistere, to form a circle.
  —spes in velis consistit, their
  hope depends on the sails.
- consobrinus, -ī, born of a sister, cousin. vii. 76.
- consolor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [con + solor, comfort], I, dep., console, comfort, cheer.
- conspectus, -ūs, [conspicio], m., sight, presence. in conspectu Caesaris, under Caesar's eyes.
- cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, [con + specio, look], 3, a., observe, see, perceive.
- conspicor, -arī, -atus sum, I, dep., see, observe, catch sight of.

- conspīro, -are, -avī, -atum, [con + spiro, breathe], 1, n., agree, conspire.
- constanter [con + sto], adv., steadily, resolutely, uniformly.
- constantia, -ae, [con + sto], f., firmness; constancy, resolution.
- consterno, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [con + sterno], I, a., alarm, terrify.
- consterno, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātum, [con + sterno], 3, a., strew over, cover.
- constīpo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [con + stipo, press], I, a., crowd together. v. 43.
- constituo, -stituere, -stitui, -stitutum, ·[con + statuo], 3, a., set up, construct, erect; appoint, fix, settle, determine, bring to a stand; draw up, station, moor (of a ship).
- consto, -stare, -stitī, -statum, [con+sto], I, n., stand still, remain; consist in, depend on; cost.—constat, it is certain, well known, evident, or clear.
- constratus, see consterno.
- consuesco, -suescere, -suevi, -suetum, [con + suesco, become used], 3, n., acquire a habit, become accustomed, be wont; pf. used as pres., and plpf. as impf.
- consuetudo, -inis, [consuesco], f., habit, practice, custom, usage, mode. See Idioms.
- consuetus, see consuesco.
- **cōnsul**, -ulis, m., consul. The consuls were the chief magistrates at Rome. There were two chosen annually.
- consulatus, -ūs, [consul], m., consulship. i. 35.
- consulo, -sulere, -sului, -sultum, 3, a. and n., consult, deliberate; consult for, care for the interests of; with acc., consulere aliquem, to consult any one, to ask advice; with dat., consulere ci-

- vitati, take measures for the good of the state. See IDIOMS.
- consulto [consulo], adv., on purpose, designedly.
- consulto, -are, -avī, -atum, [intensive from consulo], I, a. and n., consult.
- consultum, -ī, [consulo], n., resolution, decree, decision.
- cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum, [con + sūmo], 3, a., spēnd; waste, consume, destroy; spend, pass.
- consumptus, see consumo.
- consurgo, -surgere, -surrexi, -surrectum, [con + surgo, rise], 3, n., rise together, arise.
- contabulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [tabula, board], I, a., construct of boards, board, build. murum turribus contabulare, to cover the wall with towers.
- contāgiō, -ōnis, [contingo], f., contact. vi. 13.
- contāminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [con+tango], I, a., taint, pollute. contegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctum,
- contegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctum, [con+tego], 3, a., cover up, conceal.
- contemnō, -temnere, -tempsī, -temptum, [con + temno, despise], I, a., despise, hold in contempt.
- contemptio, -onis, [contemno], f., contempt, scorn.
- contemptus, -ūs, [contemno], m., contempt, scorn. — contemptui esse, to be an object of contempt. ii. 30.
- contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, [con+tendo], 3, a. and n., strive for, strive, hasten, push forward; fight, strive, contend.
- contentio, -onis, [contendo], f., struggle, contest, dispute.
- contestor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [con + testor, call to witness], I, dep.,

- to call as witnesses, supplicate, appeal to. iv. 25.
- contexō, -texere, -texuī, -textum, [con + texo, weave], 3, a., weave, bind together, join.
- continens, -entis, pres. part. of
   contineo as adj., uninterrupted,
   continuous, adjoining; as noun
   (sc. terra), f., continent, mainland.
- continenter [continens, con + teneo], adv., constantly, incessantly, without interruption.
- continentia, -ae, [continens], f., self-restraint.
- contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, [con + teneo], 2, a., hold together; contain, include; hold, confine, bound, hem in, restrain. — continere se, to restrain one's self; remain.
- contingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tactum, [con + tango], 3, a., touch, extend to, reach; happen.
- continuatio, -onis, [continuo], f., continuation, succession.
- continuo [continuus], adv., forthwith, immediately.
- continuus, -a, -um, [con+teneo], adj., successive, uninterrupted.
- contiō, -ōnis, [for conventio, an assembling], f., an assembly; an address. habitā contiōne, having delivered an address or speech.
- contionor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [contio], I, dep., address, harangue.
- contrā, prep. with acc. only, against, opposite to, opposite, facing; adv., in opposition, on the other hand. contra atque, contrary to what.
- contrahō, -trahere, -traxī, -tractum, [con + traho], 3, a., bring together, collect, assemble; contract.
- contrārius, a, -um, [contrā], adj., opposite, contrary. ex contrāriō, on the contrary.

- controversia, -ae, [contra + verto], f., debate, dispute. minuere controversiam, to settle a dispute.
- contumēlia, -ae, f., insult, injury, indignity; violence.
- convalēscō, -valēscere, -valuī, no supine, [con + valeo], 3, n., grow strong, get well, recover.
- convallis, -is, [con + vallis, valley], f., valley (enclosed).
- convehō, vehere, vēxī, vēctum, [con + veho], 3, a., bring together, collect, convey. vii. 74.
- conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, [con + venio], 4, n. and a., come together, meet, assemble; to be agreed upon, to be convenient or fitting. See IDIOMS.
- conventus, -ūs, [convenio], m., assembly, meeting, court.
- conversus. See converto.
- convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, [con + verto], 3, a., turn, direct, turn about, wheel around; change. — signa conversa inferre, to face about and advance.
  - convertere aciem, to face about.
     itinere converso, turning
  - round. in fugam convertere, to put to flight.
- Convictolitāvis, -is, (acc. Convictolitāvim, vii. 55), a prominent Aeduan, made chief by Caesar.
- convictus. See convinco.
- convincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victum, [con + vinco], 3, a, conquer completely; prove guilty, convict, establish, prove. i. 40.
- convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [con + voco], I, a., call together, summon.
- coörior, -orīrī, -ortus sum, [con + orior], 4, dep., arise; spring up, break out.
- coörtus. See coörior.

- cōpia, -ae, [= co-opia, from con + ops], f., quantity, abundance, supply, plenty; pl., forces, troops, supplies, means, resources, wealth.
- cōpiōsus, -a, -um, [cōpia], adj., well supplied, wealthy, rich.
- cōpula, -ae, [con + apo, bind], f., band; pl., grappling irons or hooks. iii. 13.
- cor, cordis, n., heart. cordi esse, to be agreeable or dear. vi. 19.
- cōram, adv., [con + ōs, face], face to face, in person. — cōram adesse, to be present. — cōram perspicit or cernit, he sees with his own eyes.
- corium, ī, n., (thick) skin, hide. cornū, -ūs, n., horn; trumpet; wing of an army.
- corona, -ae, f., crown; circle.—
  sub corona vendere, to sell into
  slavery. See N. to p. 100, 19.
- corpus, -oris, n., body. tōtum
   corpus, the entire works. vii. 72.
  corripiō,-ripere,-ripuī, -reptum,
   [con + rapio, seize], seize violently; carry off.
- corrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, [con + rumpo, break], 3, a., break to pieces; spoil, destroy, ruin. cortex, corticis, m. and f., bark of a tree. ii. 33.
- Cōrus, -ī, m., the northwest wind. coss., contraction for consulibus. See N. to p. 48, 2.
- cotīdiānus, -a, -um, [cotīdiē], adj., daily; ordinary, usual.
- cotīdie [quot + diēs], adv., daily, every day.
- Cotta, -ae, m. See Aurunculeius. Cotus, -ī, m., a prominent Aeduan. crassitūdō, -inis, [crassus, thick], f.. thickness.
- Crassus, -ī, m.; three of this celebrated family are mentioned in the Gallic War. — M. Licinius Crassus, who crushed the army

- of Spartacus, B. C. 71. He was triumvir with Caesar and Pompey. See p. 4. He and his son Publius went to Parthia and perished there B. C. 53. Publius, his son, a lieutenant in Caesar's army. Marcus, another son, quaestor in Caesar's army.
- **crātēs,** -is, f., wicker-work; hurdle, fascine.
- crēber, -bra, -brum, adj., thick, numerous, frequent.
- crēbrō [crēber], adv., frequently, often.
- crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditum, 3, n. and a., trust, believe, think, suppose; intrust, consign.
- cremō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, I, a., burn.—ignī cremāre, to burn to death.
- creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, I, a., create, make; choose, elect, appoint.
- crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētum, 3, n., grow, increase; become great or powerful.
- Crētēs, -um, m., Cretans, the inhabitants of Crete, now Candia.
- **crīmen**, -inis, [cerno], n., charge, accusation; fault, crime.
- **Critognātus**, -ī, m., a chief of the Arverni. vii. 77.
- cruciātus, -ūs, [crucio, torture], m., torture, cruelty, torment, suffering.
- **crūdēlis**, -e, [crūdus, bloody], adj., cruel, hard-hearted.
- crūdēlitās, -tātis, [crūdēlis], f., cruelty, barbarity.
- crūdēliter [crūdēlis], adv., cruelly. crūs, crūris, n., leg. vi. 27.
- cubīle, -is, [cubo, lie down], n., bed. vi. 27.
- culmen, -inis, n., height, summit, top. iii. 2.
- culpa, -ae, f., blame, fault, crime. conferre culpam in, to throw blame on.

- cultus, -ūs, [colo], m., cultivation, care, mode of life, civilization.
- cum, prep. with abl. only, with, along with, at the same time with.

   Enclitic with abl. of ego, tu, sui, and qui, as mecum, nobiscum, etc. In composition the older form com- is used; it implies doing anything in concert with others, or thoroughly and completely.
- cum, conj., when, while, after, since, inasmuch as, although. See N. to p. 47, 13. cum primum, as soon as; cum . . . tum, both . . . and, not only . . . but also.
- cunctātiō, -ōnis, [cunctor], f., delay, tardiness.
- cunctor, -ārī, -ātus sum, I, dep., delay, hesitate, doubt.
- cunctus, -a, -um, [for coniunctus, con + iungo], adj., all together, all.
- cuneātim [cuneus], adv., in the form of a wedge. vii. 28.
- cuneus, -ī, m., wedge; troops, arranged in a wedge-like column.
- cunīculus, -ī, m., lit., rabbit, coney; burrow; in military language, a mine.
- cupidē [cupidus], adv., eagerly, earnestly.
- cupiditās, -tātis, [cupidus], f., an ardent desire, longing, eagerness, greediness.
- cupidus, -a, -um, [cupio], adj., desirous, fond, eager for.
- cupiō, cupere, cupīvī or -iī, cupītum, 3, a., long for, wish, desire, wish well to.
- cūr, adv., why? for what purpose? cūra, -ae, f., care, attention, anxiety, trouble. — cūrae mihi erit, I will attend to it. See IDIOMS.
- Curiosolites, -um, m., a people of the west of Gaul, one of the Armorican states. Their name

survives in *Corscult*, a village with Roman remains, not far from St. Malo.

cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [cūra], 1, a., take care, provide for, superintend, arrange. — pontem faciendum cūrāre, to cause a bridge to be built.

currō, currere, cucurrī, cursum, 3, n., run.

currus, -ūs, [curro], m., chariot. cursus, -ūs, [curro], m., a running, speed; course. — adaequāre cursum, to keep up with. — cursum tenēre, to maintain a straight course. — magnō cursū, at full speed.

custodia, -ae, [custos], f., guard, charge.

custōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, [custōs], 4, a., guard, defend.

custos, -todis, c., guard, keeper, watch.

### D.

**D.**, before proper names, stands for **Decimus**.

 $\mathbf{D} = 500.$ 

**Dācus**, -ī, m., a *Dacian*. The Dacians occupied the southeast provinces of the modern kingdom of Austria. vi. 25.

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [damnum], I, a., condemn, sentence.

damnum, -ī, n., loss. vi. 44.

**Dānuvius**, -ī, m., the *Danube*, the great river of Central Europe. vi. 25.

dē, prep. with abl. only, from, down from; during, in the course of, in; of, about, concerning, after, in accordance with, for. — dē improviso, unexpectedly.

dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitum, [de + habeo], 2, a., owe; pass.,

be due; when joined to an infinitive of another verb, it may be rendered by ought.

dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, [de + cēdo], 3, n., retire, with-draw; avoid, shun; die.

decem, indecl. num. adj., ten.

dēceptus, see dēcipio.
dēcernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētum, [de + cerno], 3, a., decide,

tum, [de + cerno], 3, a., decide, decree, determine. decerto, -are, -avi, -atum, [de +

dēcertō, -āre, -āvĭ, -ātum, [de + certo, contend], I, n., fight, engage in battle.

dēcēssus, -ūs, [de + cēdo], m., retreat, withdrawal. — dēcēssus aestūs, ebbing of the tide.

Decetia, -ae, f., a town on the Loire (now Décize), in the territory of the Aedui. vii. 33.

dēcidō, -cidere, -cidī, no supine,
 [de + cado], 3, n., fall down or
 off.

decimus, -a, -um, [decem], num. adj., tenth.

Decimus, -ī, m., Decimus, a Roman praenomen.

dēcipiō, -eipere, -eēpī, -eeptum, [de + capio], 3, catch, deceive, cheat.

dēclārō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [de + elārus], 1, a., make clear, declare, announce. i. 50.

dēclīvis, -e, [de + clīvus], adj., sloping, on the descent, descending.

dēclīvitās, -tātis, [dēclīvis], f., declivity, descent. — ad dēclīvitātem, downwards.

dēcrētum, -ī, [dēcerno], n., decree, decision. — dēcrētō stāre, to abide by the decision.

decumānus, -a, -um, [decimus], adj., decuman; the decumāna porta was the main gate of the camp, farthest away from the enemy, and opposite the porta

- praetoria. It was called decumāna because near it were encamped the tenth cohorts of the legions. See p. 32.
- decurio, -onis, [decem], m., a decurion, a cavalry officer at the head of 10 men (= a decuria).
- dēcurrō, -currere, -cucurrī or -currī, -cursum, [de + curro], 3, n., run down, hasten, move off.
- dēdecus, -oris, [de + decus, honor, n., disgrace, dishonor.
- dēditīcius, -a, -um, [dēdo], adj. and noun, one who has surrendered, subject.
- dēditiō, -ōnis, [dēdo], f., surrender. - accipere or recipere in dēditionem, to admit to a surrender. - venīre in dēditionem, to surrender.
- dēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, [de+ do], 3, a., give up, surrender, devote.
- dēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, [de + dūco], 3, a., draw or lead down or away, withdraw, lead, induce, conduct, bring; launch; bring home (as a bride), marry.
- dēfatīgātiō, -onis, [dēfatīgo], f., weariness, fatigue, exhaustion.
- dēfatīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [de + fatigo, weary], I, a., tire out, exhaust, fatigue.
- defectio, -onis, [deficio], f., desertion, revolt.
- dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum, 3, a., ward off, repel, defend, guard.
- dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, [dēfendo], f., de-
- dēfēnsor, -ōris, [dēfendo], m., defender.
- dēfēnsus, see dēfendo.
- dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, |de + fero], irr., a., bring down or away, bring; report, announce; confer upon.

dēfessus, -a, -um, [pf. part. of dēfetiscor, grow weary], adj., wearied, worn out, exhausted.

DELIBERO

- dēficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, |de + facio], 3, a. and n., fail, desert; revolt. - deficere animo, to lose
- dēfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxum, [de + fīgo, fasten], 3, a., drive down, fix, fasten.
- dēfīniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, [de + finio], 4, a., set bounds to, limit, define, fix, assign.
- dēfluo, -fluere, -flūxī, -flūxum, [de + fluo], 3, n., flow down, flow
- dēfore, see dēsum.
- dēformis, -e, [de + forma], adj., ill-shaped, misshapen, ugly.
- dēfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, no supine, [de + fugio], 3, a. and n., flee from, flee away, shun, avoid.
- dēiciō (or dējicio), -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, |de + iacio|, 3, a., throw down, cast down, dislodge; kill; disappoint. - eā spē dēiectī, disappointed in this expectation.
- dēiectus, see dēicio.
  - $d\bar{e}iectus$ ,  $\bar{u}s$ , [de + iacio], m., descent, slope, declivity.
  - deinceps [deinde + capio], adv., one after the other, in succession, in turn.
  - deinde [de + inde], adv., thereafter, afterwards, then, next.
  - dēlātus, see dēfero.
- dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [freq. of delicio, I, a., delight, please; in pass., take or find pleasure in. dēlectus, see dēligo.
- dēlectus, -ūs, [dēligo], m., selection; levy (of soldiers).
- dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, 2, a., destroy, annihilate, overthrow.
- $d\bar{e}l\bar{i}ber\bar{o}$ ,  $\bar{a}re$ ,  $\bar{a}v\bar{i}$ ,  $\bar{a}tum$ ,  $\bar{d}e + \bar{e}v\bar{i}$ lībra, balance], 1, a. and n., weigh well (in one's mind), deliberate,

- ponder, consult. dēlīberātur, the question is discussed.
- délibrő, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [de + liber, bark], 1, a., strip off the bark, peel. vii. 73.
- dēlictum, -ī, [neut. pf. part. of dēlinquo, do wrong], n., offence, fault, crime.
- dēligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [de + ligo, bind], 1, a., bind fast, tie, fasten.
- dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, [de + lego], 3, a., choose, select; levy.
- dēlitēscō, -litēscere, -lituī, no supine, [de + lateo], 3, n., hide or conceal one's self, lie in wait.
- dēmentia, -ae, [de + mēns], f., madness, folly. iv. 13.
- dēmessus, see dēmeto.
- dēmetō, -metere, -messuī, -messum, [de + meto], 3, a., cut down, reap, mow. iv. 32.
- dēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [de + migro, depart], 1, n., move from, depart, migrate.
- dēminuō, -minuere, -minuī, -minūtum, [ de + minuo], 3, a., lessen; take away from, impair.
- dēmissus, see dēmitto.
- dēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, [de + mitto], 3, a., send down, let down, let fall. sē dēmittere, to descend. sē animō dēmittere, to lose heart. capite dēmissō, with bowed head.
- dēmō, dēmere, dēmpsī, dēmptum, [de + emo], 3, a., take down or off, remove. v. 48.
- dēmonstro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [de + monstro, show], I, a., point out, show, state; explain.
- dēmoror, -ārī, -ātus sum, [de + moror], I, dep., delay, linger, hinder.
- dēmptus, see dēmo.
- dēmum, adv., at length, finally.

- dēnegō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [de + nego], I, a., refuse, deny.
- dēnī, -ae, -a, [decem], num. adj., ten by ten, ten each or apiece.
- dēnique, adv., at last, finally; in a word, in short.
- dēnsus, -a, -um, adj., thick, closely packed, dense, crowded.
- dēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [de + nūntio], I, a., announce, declare; threaten; order.
- dēpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, [de + pello], 3, a., drive away, dislodge, turn aside.
- dēperdō, -perdere, -perdidī, -perditum, [de + perdo, destroy], 3, a., lose, forfeit.
- dēpereō, -perīre, -perī, no supine, [de + pereo], irr., n., perish, be lost.
- dēpono, -ponere, -posuī, -positum, [de + pono], 3, a., lay aside, lay down, place; give up.
- dēpopulor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [de + populor], 1, dep., lay waste, plunder.
- dēportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [de + porto], 1, a., carry off, remove, convey away.
- dēposcō, -poscere, -poposcī, no supine, [de + posco], 3, a., demand, require.
- dēpositus, see dēpono.
- dēprecātor, -ōris, [dēprecor] m., intercessor. — eō dēprecātōre, by his intercession.
- dēprecor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [de + precor, pray], 1, dep., avert by prayer, pray to be delivered from, beseech; ask for quarter, iv. 7.
- dēprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsum, [de + prehendo], 3, a., capture, seize; surprise.
- dēprehēnsus, see dēprehendo.
- dēprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, [de + premo], 3, a., press down, sink.

- dēpūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [de + pugno], I, a., fight (fiercely).
- dēpulsus, see depello.
- dērīvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [de + rīvūs], I, a., draw off; (of a stream), turn aside. vii. 72.
- dērogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [de + rogo], I, withdraw, take away.
- dēscendō, -scendere, -scendī,
  -scēnsum, [de + scando, climb],
  3, n., come down, descend; resort
  to; yield.
- dēsecō, -āre, -secuī, -sectum, [de + seco], 1, a., cut off. vii. 4.
- dēserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertum, [de + sero, join], 3, a., leave, abandon, desert.
- desertor, -ōris, [desero], m., a deserter. vi. 23.
- dēsertus, see dēsero.
- dēsertus, -ā, -ūm, pf. part. of dēsero as adj., desert, solitary.
- dēsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, a., wish for, want, long for, miss; lack, lose.
- dēsidia, -ae, [de + sedeo, sit], f., sloth, indolence, idleness. vi. 23.
- dēsīgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [de + sīgno, mark], 1, a., mark out, point out, describe; appoint; mean, signify.
- dēsiliō, -silīre, -siluī, -sultum, [de + salio, leap], 4, n., leap down, dismount.
- dēsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum, [de+sisto], 3, n., stand off from; leave off, cease, desist, stop. — dēsistere sententiā, to give up the notion.
- dēspectus, see dēspicio.
- dēspectus, -ūs, [dēspicio], m., a looking down from an elevation, view; pl., heights. dēspectus in mare, view of the sea.
- dēspērātiō, -ōnis, [dēspēro], f., despair, hopelessness.

- dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [de + spēro], I, a. and n., give up hope, despair. dēspērātus, -a, -um, despaired of, desperate.
- dēspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, [de + specio, look], 3, a., look down upon, despise.
- dēspoliō, āre, āvī, ātum, [de + spolio], I, a., despoil, rob, plunder. ii. 31.
- dēstinō, -ārc, -āvī, -ātum, I, a., make fast, bind; determine, appoint.
- dēstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, [de + statuo], 3, a., put aside, desert, abandon.
- dēstrictus, see dēstringo.
- dēstringō, -stringere, -strinxī, -strictum, [de + stringo, pluck off], 3, a., strip off, unsheathe, draw.
- dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, [de + sum], irr., n., be wanting, fail, be lacking.—hoe ūnum dēfuit, this was the only drawback.—omnia deesse, to be a lack of everything.
- dēsuper [de + super], adv., from above. i. 52.dēterior, -us, comp. adj., inferior,
- worse. i. 36. Sup., dēterrimus. dēterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territum, [de + terreo], 2, a., frighten (off); prevent, deter. dēterrēre
- nē or quīn, to prevent from. dētestor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [de + testor, call to witness], I, dep., call the gods to witness, curse.
- dētineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, [de + teneo], 2, a., keep back, detain, delay, stop.
- dētractus, see dētraho.
- dētrahō, -trahere, -traxī, -tractum, [de + traho], 3, a., draw off; take away, withdraw, remove.
- dētrecto, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [de + tracto, take in hand], 1, a., avoid, refuse, escape. vii. 14.

- dētrīmentōsus, -a, -um, [dētrīmentum], adj., injurious, hurtful.
- detrimentum,-i,[de+tero, wear
   away], n., injury, loss, damage;
   defeat.
- dētrūdō, -trūdere, -trūsī, -trūsum, [de + trūdo, thrust], 3, a., thrust off, strip off, remove.
- dēturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [de + turbo, disturb], I, a., cast down; dislodge, drive away.
- deūrō, -ūrere, -ūssī, -ūstum, [de + ūro, burn], 3, a., burn up, consume. vii. 25.
- deus, -ī, m., a god, deity.
- dēvehō, -vehere, -vēxī, -vēctum, [de + veho], 3, a., carry away, remove.
- dēveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, [de + venio], 4, n., come from; go to, arrive at. ii. 21.
- devexus, -a, -um, [deveho], adj., on the descent, sloping, steep. vii. 88.
- dēvincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -vīctum, [de + vinco], 3, a., conquer completely, overcome. vii. 34.
- devoco, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [de + voco], I, a., call down or away.
   in dubium devocāre, to risk, endanger. vi. 7.
- dēvotus, pf. part. of dēvoveo as adj., attached, faithful; pl. as noun, faithful followers. iii. 22.
- dēvoveō, -vovēre, -vōvī, -vōtum, [de + voveo], 2, a., vow, devote; give up.
- dexter, -era, -erum, and -tra, -trum, adj., right.
- dextra, -ae, (sc. manus), f., the right hand.
- Diablintres, -um, pl., m., a branch of the Aulerci and allies of the Veneti. iii. 9.
- diciō, -ōnis, f., sway, dominion, authority, lordship.
- dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, I, a., dedi-

- cate, devote, vow, offer. dicare in clientelam, to proclaim themselves clients, vi. 12.
- dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dīctum, 3, a., say, converse, speak, mention, tell; appoint. causam dīcere, to plead a case. See IDIOMS.
- dictio, -onis, [dico], f., speaking, pleading.
- dictum, -ī, [dīco], n., saying, word, speech; order. — dictō audientēs, obedient to his order.
- dīdūco, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, [dis, apart, + dūco], 3, a., lead in different directions, draw apart, divide, separate, distribute, scatter.
- diēs, diēī, m. and f., day. multō diē, late in the day. quantum fuit diēī spatium, as long as daylight allowed. in diēs, from day to day. diem ex diē, day after day.
- differō, differre, distulī, dīlātum, [dis, apart, + fero], irr., a. and n., carry different ways, spread, scatter; put off, delay; differ.
- difficilis, -e, [dis (negative) + facilis], adj., difficult, hard.— iter difficile, a road difficult to pass over, impracticable, i. 6. Comp. difficilior, sup. difficilimus.
- difficultās, -tātis, [difficilis], f., difficulty, trouble.
- difficulter [difficilis], adv., with difficulty. Comp. difficilius, vii. 58.
- diffido, -fidere, -fisus sum, [dis (negative) + fīdo, trust], 3, n., distrust, lack confidence in, despair
- diffīsus, -a, -um, part. of diffido as adj. distrusting, doubtful.
- diffundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, [dis apart, + fundo], 3, a., spre.d out in different directions, extend.

- digitus, -ī, m., finger. As a measure, the 16th part of a Roman foot, translated inch, finger's breadth, vii. 73.—digitus pollex, thumb, iii. 13.
- dīgnitās, -tātis, [dīgnus], f., worth, merit; greatness, rank.
- dīgnus, -a, -um, adj., worthy, worth, deserving.
- dīiūdicō (or dījūdico), -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [dis + iūdico], 1, a. and n., decide, determine.
- dīlēctus, see dīligo.
- diligenter [diligo], adv., carefully, punctually, exactly, with painstaking.
- dīligentia, -ae, [dīligo], f., care, painstaking, activity, earnestness.
- dīligo, -ligere, -lēxī, -lēctum, [dis+lego, choose], 3, a., choose from a number; esteem, esteem highly, love.
- dīmensus, see dīmētior.
- dīmētior, -mētīrī, -mēnsus sum, [dis + mētior], 4, dep., measure, measure off.
- dīmicātiō, -ōnis, [dīmicō, fight], f., combat, hot engagement, furious encounter.
- dīmicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [dis + mico], I, n., fight.
  - dīmidius, -a, -um, [dis + medius], adj., half; as a noun, dimidium, -ī, n., a half.
- dīmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, [dis + mitto], 3, a., send in different directions, dismiss, send off; let go, lose, abandon.
- dīrēctē [dīrigo], adv., straight, directly. iv. 17.
- dīrēctus, -a, -um, (pf. part. of dīrigo), adj., made straight, straight.
- dīrigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctum, [dis+rego], 3, a., set in a straight line, make straight, arrange, draw up.

- dīrimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, [dis+emo, take], 3, a., take apart, break up, break off, put an end to.
- dīripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum, [dis + rapio, seize], 3, a., tear asunder, ravage, plunder, pillage.
- dis-, or (abbreviated) di-, adv., always in composition, apart, asunder, in pieces.
- **Dīs,** Dītis, m., *Pluto*, god of the lower world. vi. 18.
- discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, [dis + cēdo], 3, n., depart, with-draw, leave, march off, forsake, come off. ab armīs discēdere, to lay down one's arms.
  - disceptātor, -ōris, [discepto, decide], m., arbitrator, umpire, judge. vii. 37.
- discernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētum, [dis + cerno], 3, a., distinguish between, distinguish. vii. 75.
- discēssus, -ūs, [discēdo], m., departure, a marching off, decamping.
- disciplīna, -ae, [disco, learn], f., instruction, training, discipline, system.
- disclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, [dis + claudo], 3, a., keep apart, hold apart, separate, divide. discō, discere, didicī, no supine,
- 3, a. and n., *learn*. discrīmen, -inis, [discerno], n.,
- risk, danger, crisis. vi. 38. discutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussum, [dis+quatio, shake], 3, a.,
- shatter, disperse, remove, clear away. dīsiciō (or dispicio), -icere, -iēcī, -icetum, [dis- + iacio], 3, a., drive asunder, disperse, scatter, rout.
- dispār, -paris, [dis + par], adj., unequal, unlike, different.
- disparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [dis + paro], 1, a., divide, part, separate. vii. 28.

dispergō, -spergere, -spersī, '-spersum, [dis + spargo, scatter], 3, a., scatter, scatter about, disperse.

dispersus, see dispergo.

dispōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, [dis + pōno], 3, a., set in various places, distribute, station, post.

disputatio, -onis, [disputo], f., discussion, debate, dispute.

disputō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [dis + puto], I, a. and n., treat of, investigate, discuss. vi. 14.

dissēnsiō, -ōnis, [dissentio], f.,
difference of opinion, disagreement.

dissentiō, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum, [dis + sentio], 4, n., differ in opinion, disagree.

disserō, -serere, -sēvī, -situm, |dis + sero, sow], 3, a., plant here and there, place at intervals in the earth, vii. 73.

dissimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [dissimilis], ī, a. and n., (lit. make unlike), disguise, conceal.

dissipō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, I, a., scatter.

dissuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, [dis + suādeo], 2, a., advise against, dissuade, oppose. vii. 15.

distineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, [dis + teneo], 2, a., keep apart, hold off, separate, hinder.

distō, -stāre, no pf. or supine, [dis + sto], I, n., stand apart, be separated.

distrahō, -trahere, -traxī, -traetum, [dis + traho, draw], 3, a., wronch asunder, pull apart, divide.

distribuō, -tribuere, -tribuī, -tribūtum, [dis + tribuo], 3, a., distribute, assign, divide.

dītissimus, see dīves.

diū, adv., long, for a long time. quam diū, as long as.—Comp., diūtius, longer, too long.—Sup.. diūtissimē. diurnus, -a, -um, [diēs], adj., of the day, by day.

diūtinus, -a, -um, [diū], adj., long continued.

diūtissimē, see diū.

diūturnitās, -tātis, [diūturnus], f., long continuance, length of time, long duration.

diūturnus, -a, -um, [diū], adj., tong, prolonged.

dīversus, -a, -um, (part. of dīverto), adj., opposite, contrary; separate, apart; in different directions, different; as part., scattered, ii. 24.

dīves, -itis; comp. dītior, sup. dītissimus, adj., rich, wealthy.

Divicō, -ōnis, m., a chief of the Helvetii, who led their army in the struggle with Cassius, B. C. 107, and headed an embassy to Caesar B. C. 58. i. 13, 14.

dīvidō, -videre, -vīṣī, -vīsum, 3, a., divide, separate.

dīvīnus, -a, -um, [dīvus], adj., divine, sacred.

Divitiacus, -ī, m., (1) A Druid and chief of the Aedui, who went to Rome to plead the cause of his countrymen when they were opposed by the Sequani and the Arverni in alliance with Ariovistus. He was faithful to Caesar, who rewarded him by pardoning his brother Dumnorix (i. 18–20) and the Bellovaci (ii. 14, 15) at his intercession. (2) A chief of the Suessiones, who held sway over a large part of Gaul and even Britain. ii. 4.

do, dare, dedī, datum, irr. a., give, give up, grant; offer, furnish, allow. — dare negōtium, to commission, direct. — dare sē ventō, to run before the wind. — dare in fugam, to put to flight. — dare operam, to take pains. — dare manūs, to yield. See IDIOMS.

- doceō, docere, docuī, doctum, 2, a., teach, inform, point out, state.
- documentum, -ī, [doceo], n., evidence, proof, warning. vii. 4.
- doleō, dolēre, doluī, dolitum, 2, n., suffer; be griéved or annoyed. dolor, -ōris, [doleo], m., pain.
- dolor, -ōris, [doleo], m., pain, grief, distress, annoyance, vexation.
- dolus, -ī, m., fraud, deceit, strata-gem.
- domesticus, -a, -um, [domus], adj., home, at home, internal, their own. domesticum bellum, civil war, v. 9.
- domicilium, -ī, [domus], n., dwelling, abode, habitation.
- dominor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [dominus], I, dep., be master, have dominion.
- dominus, -ī, [domo, tame, conquer], m., master, lord.
- Domitius, -ī, Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus, consul with Appius Claudius Pulcher, B. C. 54.
- **domus**, -ūs, [locative form **domī**; cf. A. 70 f; G. 67, 2; H. 119, 1], f., house, home.
- **Donnotaurus**, -ī, m., *Gaius Valerius Donnotaurus*, a Gaul, son of Gaius Valerius Caburus. vii. 65.
- dono, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [donum, gift], I, a., give, present, confer.
- dōnum, -i, [do, give], n., gift, present.
- dorsum, -ī, n., and dorsus, -i, m., back; top or ridge of a mountain.
- dōs, dōtis, [do], f., dowry, marriage portion. vi. 19.
- Druidēs, -um, [Two derivations are given; one from the Greek  $\delta \rho \hat{v}s$ , an oak; the other from the Keltic, der an oak, wydd, mistletoe, and dyn, a man, "a man who derives supernatural information from the mistletoe on the oak"], m., the Druids. See p. 40.

- **Dūbis**, -is, m., a river of Gaul, tributary of the Arar (Saône); to-day called *Doubs*. i. 38.
- dubitātiō, -ōnis, [dubito], f., doubt, hesitation.
- dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [freq. from du-hibeo, i. e., duo-habeo], I, n., be uncertain, doubt, hesitate.
- dubius, -a, -um, [for du-hibius, duo-habeo], adj., doubtful, uncertain. — non dubium est quin, there is no doubt that.
- ducentī, -ae, -a, [duo + centum], adj., two hundred.
- dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, 3, a., lead, guide, bring, take; construct; think, consider, reckon; protract, prolong, put off. — dūcere in mātrimōnium, to marry. — dūcere uxōrem, to marry.
- ductus, -ūs, [dūco], m., lead, generalship, command. vii. 62.
- dum, conj., while; until.
- Dumnorix, -igis, m., a chief of the Aedui, and brother of Divitiacus. He married the daughter of Orgetorix, and obtained permission for the Helvetii to pass through the territory of the Sequani. He was always hostile to the Romans, and was killed in B.C. 55 when trying to escape from Caesar.
- duo, -ae, -o, [acc. m. duo, vii. 33; gen. duūm, iii. 17], adj., two.
- duodecim [duo + decim], indecl. adj., twelve.
- duodecimus, -a, -um, [duo + decimus], adj., twelfth.
- duodēnī, -ae, -a, [duo+dēni, by tens], adj., twelve at a time, by twelves.
- duodēvīgintī, -ae, -a, [duo + dē + vīginti], adj., eighteen.
- duplex, -icis, [duo + plico, fold], adj., twofold, double.

duplicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [duo + plico, fold], 1, a., double.

dūritia, -ae, [dūrus], adj., hardiness; severe mode of life. vi. 21.

dūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [dūrus], I, a., harden, make hardy. vi. 28.

Durocortorum, -ī, n., capital of the Remi, now *Rheims*, situated on the Vêle, a branch of the Aisne. vi. 44.

dūrus, -a, -um, adj., hard, severe, difficult; inclement.

dux, ducis, [dūco, lead], m., general, leader, guide.

#### E.

ē, [ē before consonants, ex generally before vowels], prep., with abl. only. The fundamental idea is, proceeding from the interior of an object; from, out of, in accordance with, instead of, in consequence of, on.— ex unā, alterā, tertiā, utrāque parte, on one, the other, the third, on both sides.— ex ūsū, of advantage, advantageously. See IDIOMS.

eā, [properly abl. of is, sc. parte or viā], adv., there, on that side. v.51.

Eburōnes, -um, m., a Belgic tribe, situated between the Meuse and the Rhine, clients of the Treveri. Under Ambiorix and Catuvolcus they attacked a Roman camp and treacherously murdered those who surrendered under promise of a safe passage. Caesar avenged this by the almost complete extinction of the tribe.

Eburovices, -um, m., a division of the Aulerci on the south side

of the Seine and west of Paris. Their chief town was Mediolanum, now *Evreux*.

ēdīcō, 'dīcere, 'dīxī, 'dīctum, [ē+dīco], 3, a., make known, command.

ēdiscō, -discere, -didicī, no supine, [ē + disco], 3, a., learn by heart, commit to memory. vi. 14.

ēditus, -a, -um, [properly part. of edo], adj., elevated, high.

ēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, [ē + dō], 3, a., put forth, exhibit, elevate.

ēdoceō, -ēre, -docuī, -doctum, [ē+doceo], 2, a., teach, instruct, inform, tell.

ēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, [ē+dūco], 3, a., lead out, lead forth, draw out.

effarciō, -īre, -farsī, -fartum, [ex+farcio, stuff], 4, a., stop up, fill. vii. 23.

effēminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ex + fēmina], I, a., make womanish, weaken, enervate.

efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātum, [ex + fero], irr. a., bring or carry out, carry away; spread abroad, pubish; lift up.

efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, [ex + facio], 3, a., form, bring about, bring to pass, accomplish, effect; produce; build; make, render.

effodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossum, [ex + fodio, dig], 3, a., dig out, tear out. vii. 4.

effossus, see effodio.

effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitum, [ex + fugio, flee], 3, a, escape.

egēns, egentis, pres. part. of egeō, as adj., needy.

egeō, egēre, eguī, no supine, 2, n., need, lack, be in want.

egestās, -tātis, [egeo], f., poverty, want, need. vi. 24.

ego, meī, personal pron., I; pl. nōs, nostrum, we.

- egomet, pl. nosmet, strengthened form of ego. vii. 38.
- ēgredior, -gredī, -gressus, [ē + gradior, step], 3 dep., go out, come forth, leave, land (from ships).
- ēgregiē, [ēgregius], adv., admirably, remarkably well, splendidly. ēgregius, -a, -um, |ē+grex, herd],
- adj., eminent, marked, excellent.
- ēgressus, see ēgredior.
- ēgressus, -ūs, [ēgredior], m., departure, disembarking, landing.
- ēiciō (or ējicio), -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, [ē + iacio], 3, a., throw or cast out, thrust out; expel. sē ēicere, rush.
- ēiusmodī (or ējusmodī), [ēius modī], adv., of this kind, such.— ēiusmodī ut, of such a sort that.
- ēlābor, -lābī, -lapsus sum, [ē + lābor], 3, dep., escape, slip away, get off.
- ēlātus, see effero.
- Elaver, Elaveris, n., the Allier, a river of France, which rises in the Cévennes, and after a northerly course of nearly 200 miles falls into the Loire near Nevers.
- ēlectus, [properly part. of ēligo], chosen, picked (men).
- elephantus, -ī, m., elephant. vi. 28. Eleuteti, -ōrum, m. pl., a people of Central Gaul, clients of the Arverni. vii. 75.
- ēliciō, -licere, -licuī, -licitum,  $[\bar{e} + lacio, entice]$ , 3, a., entice forth, bring or draw out.
- ēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, [ē + lego], 3, a., choose out, select, choose. Elusātes, -ium, m., a people of Aquitania, between the Ausci
- and the Tarusates. The name survives in *Eauze*. iii. 27. **ēmigrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ē+migro, depart], I, n., go forth,

remove, emigrate. i. 31.

- ēmineo, -minēre, -minuī, no supine, 2, n., project, stand forth.
- ēminus [ē + manus, hand], adv., at a distance, from afar.
- ēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, [ē+mitto], 3, a., send out; hurl, cast, shoot, discharge; throw away; let go.
- emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptum, 3, a., buy, purchase.
- enim [nam], conj., for, in fact. ēnītor, -nītī, -nīsus and -nīxus sum, [ē+nītor], 3, dep., struggle, strive, make an effort.
- ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ē + nūntio], I, a., tell, reveal, disclose, report.
- eō, adv., thither, there; to such a degree; before comp., all the; if quō follows, quō = as. eō minus, all the less. eō magis, all the more.
- eō, īre, īvī or iī, itum, irr. n., go, pass, march.
- eodem [idem], adv., to the same place, to the same purpose.
- ephippium, -ī, [Greek], n., saddle-cloths.
- ephippiātus, -a, -um, adj., furnished with saddle-cloths. iv. 2. epistola, -ae, [Greek], f., letter. v. 48.
- Eporedorix, igis, m., (1) a chief of the Aedui, who, before Caesar's arrival, had led his tribe against the Sequani. He joined Vercingetorix and was taken prisoner. (2) Another Aeduan chosen to a command in the army which marched to relieve Vercingetorix.
- epulae, -ārum, f., banquet, feast. vi. 28.
- eques, -itis, [equus], m., rider,

horseman; knight; pl. horse, cavalry.

equester, -tris, -tre, [equus], adj., of cavalry, cavalry.

equitātus, -ūs, [equito, ride], m., cavalry.

equus, -ī, m., horse.

Eratosthenēs, -is, a Greek, born at Cyrene, in Africa, B.C. 276; appointed librarian to the Alexandrian Library, and died B.C. 192, of starvation, because he was tired of life. He acquired fame as a geographer, mathematician, and critic. vi. 24.

ērēctus, -a, -um, (pf. part. of ērigo), adj., high.

ēreptus, see eripio.

ergā, prep. with acc. only, towards. ergō, adv., therefore, then.

ērigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctum, [ē+rego], 3, a., set up, erect, build.

ēripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum,
[ē + rapio, seize], 3, a., take or snatch away; rescue, deprive, save:
— sē ēripere, flee, escape.

errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, I, n., wander, be mistaken.

ērumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, [ē + rumpo, break], 3, a., break out, sally, make a sortie.

ēruptiō, -ōnis, [ērumpo], f., sally, sortie.

essedārius, -ī, [essedum], m., a charioteer, one who fights from a chariot.

essedum, -ī, [Keltic word], n., war-chariot.

Esubiī, -ōrum, m. pl., a Gallic people, in Normandy.

et, conj., and, also: after idem, as. — et . . . et, both . . . and.

etiam [et + iam], conj., also, even.
etsi [et + sī], conj., although,
 even if.

ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsum, [ē +vādo, walk], 3, n., escape. iii. 19.

ēvellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsum, [ē + vello, pluck], 3, a., pull out. i. 25.

ēveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, [ē + venio], 4, n., turn out, happen. iv. 25.

ēventus, -ūs, [ēvenio], m., outcome, issue, chance, result, fate.

ēvocātus, -ī, [part. of ēvoco used as noun], m., a veteran serving voluntarily after the completion of his time of service; see p. 21.

ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ē + vo-co], 1, a., call out, summon, invite.

ēvolō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, [ē + volo, fly], 1, n., rush out, dash out. iii. 28, vii. 27.

ex, see ē.

exactus, see exigo.

exagito, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ex + agito, drive], 1, a., drive out, annoy, harass.

exāmino, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [exāmen, tongue of a balance], I, a., weigh. v. 12.

exanimātus, -a, -um, pf. part. of exanimo, as adj., out of breath, breathless.

exanimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ex + animo, anima], I, a., kill; pass., be weakened or exhausted, die.

exardēscō, -ardēscere, -arsī, -arsum, [ex + ardēsco, burn], 3, n., take fire; be incensed. v. 4.

exaudiō, -audīre, -audīvī, -audītum, [ex + audio], 4, n., hear distinctly, clearly perceive.

excēdō, -cēdere, -cēssī, -cēssum, [ex + cēdo], 3, n., leave, with-draw, remove.

excellō, -cellere, -celluī, -celsum, 3, a., be eminent, surpass, excel.

excelsus, -a, -um, (pf. part. of excello), adj., high, elevated, lofty.

exceptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [freq., excipio], I, a., catch up, with the hands. vii. 47.

- exceptus, see excipio.
- excīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, [ex + caedo], 3, a., cut out, cut down, destroy. vii. 50.
- excipiō, -cipere, cēpī, -ceptum,
  [ex + capio], 3, a., take out, take
  up; encounter; cut off, catch; receive.
- excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ex + oito, move], 1, a., erect, raise rapidly; stir up, rouse, unimate.
- exclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, [ex + claudo], 3, a., shut out or off, cut off, separate, exclude.
- excogito, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ex + cogito], I, a., think out, devise.
- excruciō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ex+crucio, from crux, cross], I, a., torment, torture.
- excubitor, -ōris, [excubo], m., sentinel. vii. 69.
- excubō, -cubāre, -cubuī, -cubitum, [ex + cubo, lie down], I, n., lie out of doors, keep watch.
- exculcō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ex + calco, from calx, heel], I, a., tread down. vii. 73.
- excursiō, -ōnis, [ex + curro], f., a running out, sally, sortie. ii. 30.
- excūsātiō, -ōnis, [excūso], f., apology, defence, an excusing. vi. 4.
- excūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ex + causa], excuse. iv. 22.
- exemplum, -ī, [eximo, lit. that which is taken out], n., example; warning, punishment.
- exeō, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -itum, [ex + eo], irr. n., go forth or out, with-draw, leave.
- exerceō, -ercēre, -ercuī, -ercitum, [ex + arceo], 2, a., exercise, practice, train.
- exercitātiō, -ōnis, [exercito, freq. from exerceo], f., practice, exercise, training.

- exercitātus, -a, -um, [exercito], adj., skilled, trained.
- exercitus, -ūs, [exerceo], m., army, as a trained and disciplined body of men.
- exhauriō, -haurīre, -hausī, -haustum, [ex + haurio, drink up], 4, a., take out, empty out. v. 42.
- exigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, [ex + ago], 3, a., drive out, finish, pass, come to an end, spend.
- exiguē [exiguus], adv., barely,
   hardly. vii. 71.
- exiguitās, -ātis, [exiguus], f., smallness, shortness, small number, small extent.
- exiguus, -a, -um, [exigo], adj., small, scanty.
- eximius, -a, -um, [eximo], adj., eminent, distinguished, excellent, uncommon.
- exīstimātiō, -ōnis, [existimo], f., a judging, opinion, judgment.
- exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ex + aestimo, compute], 1, a. and n., think, consider.
- exitus, -ūs, [exeo], m., a going out; conclusion, result; issue, event.
- expediō, -pedīre, -pedīvī or -pediī, -pedītum, [ex + pēs], 4, a., disengage, set free; get ready.
- expedītiō, -ōnis, [expedio], f., an expedition, campaign.
- expeditus, -a, -um, (pf. part. of expedio), adj., ready, unincumbered, light-armed; rapid. As noun, m., a light-armed soldier; see p. 23.
- expellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, [ex + pello], 3, a., drive out or away, remove.
- experior, -perīrī, -pertus sum, 4, dep., put to the test, try; await.
- expiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ex + pio, appease] I, a., expiate, atone for, make amends for, remedy.

- expleo, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, [ex + pleo, fill], 2, a., fill up or full, complete.
- explorator, -oris, [exploro], m., spy, scout.
- explōrātus, -a, -um, (pf. part. of explōro), adj., established, certain, sure.
- exploro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, I, a., search out, investigate, choose out.
- expōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -posituri, [ex + pōno], 3, a., set or place out; land from a ship; state, explain.
- exportō, -are, -āvī, -ātum, [ex + porto], 1, a., carry out. iv. 18.
- exposcō, -poscere, -poposeī, no supine, [ex + posco], 3, a., demand. vii. 19.
- exprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, [ex + premo], 3, press or force out, extort, raise.
- expūgnātiō, -ōnis, [expūgno], f., a storming, attack.
- expūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ex + pugno], I, a., storm, attack; capture.
- expulsus, see expello.
- exquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, [ex+quaero, seek], 3, a., seek for, inquire, ask, ask for.
- exquīsītus, see exquīro.
- exsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, [ex + sequor], 3, dep., follow out, maintain, enforce. i. 4.
- exserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertum, [ex+sero], 3, a., thrust out; bare, make bare (i. e. thrust out from the garments). vii. 50.
- exsertus, see exsero.
- exsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum, [ex + sisto], 3,n., make come out; appear, spring up, arise, project.
- exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ex+ specto], I, a. and n., look out for, wait to see, wait for, wait.

- exspoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ex + spolio, strip off], 1, a., deprive, rob. vii. 77.
- exstinguō, -stinguere, -stinxī, -stinctum, [ex + stinguo, quench], 3, a., quench, extinguish, destroy utterly. v. 29.
- exstō, -stāre, no pf. or supine, [ex + sto], 1, n., stand out, project. v. 18.
- extruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, [ex + struo, place], 3, a., pile up, raise, rear, build.
- exter or exterus, -a, -um, adj., outward, outer. Comp. exterior, outer. Sup. extrēmus, last, extreme, at the extremity. See IDIOMS.
- exterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, [ex + terreo, scare], 2, a., frighten, strike with terror.
- extimēscō, -timēscere, -timuī, no supine, [ex + timēsco, fear], 3, a. and n., fear greatly, dread, be much afraid of.
- extorqueō, -torquēre, -torsī, -tortum, [ex + torqueo, twist], 2, a., twist out, extort, force from.
- extrā [contr. from exterā, sc. parte; exter], prep. with acc. only, outside of, beyond, without.
- extrahō, -trahere, -traxī, -traetum, [ex + traho, draw], 3, a., draw out; wāste [i.e., draw out to no purpose], v. 22.
- extrēmum, -ī, [extrēmus, exter], n., end, termination.
- extrūdō, -trūdere, -trūsī, -trūsum, [ex + trūdo, push], 3, a., push out, shut out. iii. 12.
- exul, -ulis, m., an outlaw, exile. v. 55.
- exuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum, 3, a., strip, strip off, despoil, deprive.
- exūrō, -ūrere, -ūssī, -ūstum, [ex + ūro, burn], 3, a., burn up.

F.

faber, fabrī, m., artisan, workman, principally in iron and wood. In the army the fabri formed a separate body. Their chief was called praefectus fabrum [i. e. fabrorum].

Fabius, -I, m., (I) Quintus Fabius, later called Allobrogicus, was consul B. C. 12I, and defeated the Arverni and Ruteni, together with the Allobroges, near the junction of the Isère (Isara) and the Rhone. i. 45. (2) Gaius Fabius, a lieutenant of Caesar. v. 24, vii. 90. (3) Lucius Fabius, a centurion of the VIIIth legion, the first to enter Gergovia, but subsequently killed. vii. 47, 50.

facile, [facilis], adv., easily, readily, with no trouble. Comp. facilius, sup. facilimē.

facilis, -e, [facio], adj., easy, convenient, not difficult or hard. — comp. facilior, sup. facillimus.

facinus, -oris, [from facio; lit. something done, whether good or bad], n., action, deed, crime.—facinus admittere or in sē admittere, to become guilty of a crime.

faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, 3, a., do, make, act, form; for pass., fīō, fierī, factus sum, see fīo.— certiōrem facere, to inform.— iter facere, to march.— vim facere, to use violence.— facere imperāta, to obey commands.— facere fidem, to convince. See Idioms.

factiō, -ōnis, [facio], f., party, side, political party.

factū, pass. supine of facio.

factum, ī, [facio], lit. what is done; deed, action, achievement. facultās, ātis, [facul, facilis], f., ability, capability; opportunity, means, supply; — pl., resources, goods.

fāgus, -ī, f., beech (tree). v. 12. fallō, fallere, fefellī, falsum, 3, a. and n., deceive, disappoint.

falsus, -a, -um, [part. of fallo], adj., false, ungrounded. vi. 20.

falx, falcis, f., a sickle, hook like a sickle. See N. to vii. 22.

fāma, -ae, [for, speak], f., report, rumor, the common talk.

famēs, ·is, f., hunger, starvation. familia, ·ae, [famulus, servant], f., body of slaves, vassals; household, family; sometimes familia includes the whole body of serfs, or retainers, under the authority of a nobleman, = retinue, as i. 4.

familiāris, -e, [familia], adj, belonging to a family, private. — rēs familiārēs, property. As noun, familiāris, -is, m., an intimate friend, confidant.

familiāritās, -ātis, [familiāris],
f., intimacy, familiar friendship.

fas [for, fari, speak], indecl. n., def., what is allowable, lawful, right; applied to things allowable by the laws of God and nature.

fastīgātē [fastīgātus], adv., sloping. iv. 17.

fastīgātus, -a, -um, [part. of fastīgo, to make pointed], adj., sloping, sloping down. ii. 8.

fastīgium, -i, n., the top of a roof or hill; sloping side, slope, descent, declivity.

fātum, -ī, [for, fāri, speak], n., what is declared, ordained, in accordance with the laws of God or nature; fate, destiny.

faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautum, 2, n., be favorable, inclined toward, favor, countenance.

fax, facis, f., torch, firebrand. vii. 24.

fēlīcitās, -ātis, [fēlīx, happy], f., good fortune, success.

fēlīciter [fēlīx], adv., with good fortune, luckily, happily, prosperously.

femen, inis. See femur.

fēmina, -ae, f., woman, female.

femur, -oris and (from an old nom. femen) -inis, n., thigh. v. 35; vii. 73.

fera, -ae, [f. of ferus, used as noun], f., wild beast.

ferāx, -ācis, [fero], adj., fertile. Sup. ferācissimus, ii. 4.

ferē, adv., almost, nearly, for the most part, as a rule, usually, chiefly; with words denoting space or time, about.

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, irr. a., bear; endure; bring, receive, report.—sīgna ferre, to advance. ferre condiciōnem, to propose terms. See IDIOMS.

ferrāmentum, -ī, [ferrum], n., an iron tool. v. 42.

ferrāria, -ae, [ferrārius], iron mine. vii. 22.

ferrārius, -a, -um, [ferrum], of iron, made of iron.

ferreus, -a, -um, [ferrum], adj., iron, of iron.

ferrum, -ī, n., iron; figuratively, iron point, i. 25; sword, v. 30.

fertilis, -e, [fero], adj., fertile, fruitful, productive.

fertilitās, -ātis, [fertilis], f., fertility. ii. 4.

ferus, -a, -um, adj., wild; rude, savage, fierce.

fervēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum,
 [ferveo + facio], 3, a., make hot,
 heat.

fervēns, -ntis, [part. of ferveo, be hot], hot, glowing.

fībula, -ae, [fīgo, fasten], f., brace. iv. 17.

fidelis, -e, [fides], adj., faithful, trustworthy, true (friend).

fides, et, f., good faith, fidelity; pledge of good faith, promise; alliance, confidence, trust. See IDIOMS.

fīdūcia, -ae, [fidēs], f., trust, reliance, confidence, assurance.

figura, -ae, [connected with fingo, to shape], f., form, shape.

fīlia, -ae, f., daughter.

fīlius, -ī, m., son.

fingō, fingere, finxī, fictum, 3, a, make, shape; feign, invent. See IDIOMS.

fīniō, fīnīre, fīnīvī, fīnītum, [fīnis], 4, a., bound, define, measure, limit.

finis, -is, m., limit, border, boundary, end; pl. borders, hence territory, country, land.

finitimus, -a, -um, [fīnis], adj., bordering on, neighboring; — as a noun, pl. fīnitimī, -ōrum, m., neighbors.

fiō, fierī, factus sum, 3, n., be made; become, take place, happen; come about, come to pass. — certior fieri, to be informed.

firmiter [firmus], adv., steadily, firmly. iv. 26.

firmitūdō, -inis, [firmus], f., firmness, strength.

firmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [firmus], 1, a., make firm or fast, strengthen, fortify, secure.

firmus, -a, -um, adj., strong, vigorous, powerful.

fistūca, -ae, f., rammer, pile-driver. iv. 17.

Flaccus, -ī, a Roman cognomen.

flägitö, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, a., ask earnestly, importune, demand. i.16. flamma, -ae, f., flame, fire.

flecto, flectere, flexī, flexum, 3, a., bend, turn.

fleo, flere, flevī, fletum, 2, n. and a., weep.

flētus, -ūs, m., weeping.

flō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, blow. v. 7. flōrēns, -ntis, [part. of flōreo, bloom], adj., blooming, flourishing, prosperous, influential.

flös, flöris, m., flower. vii. 73.

fluctus, -ūs, [fluo], m., flood, flow, wave, billow.

flümen, -inis, [fluo], n., flowing water, current, stream, river.—adversō flümine, up stream.

fluō, fluere, flūxī, flūxum, 3, n., flow. i. 6, 12.

fodiō, fodere, fōdī, fossum, 3, a., dig. vii. 73.

foedus, foederis, n., treaty, compact, league. vi. 2.

fore = futurum esse, see sum.

forem, = essem, see sum.

forīs [old abl., connected with foris, door], adv., out of doors, outside. vii. 76.

forma, -ae, f., shape, form.

fors, fortis, [fero, bring], f., chance, lick.

forte [abl. of fors], adv., by chance,by accident.fortis, -e, adj., strong, brave, cour-

fortis, -e, adj., strong, brave, courageous.

fortiter [fortis], adv., bravely, courageously. Comp. fortius, sup. fortissimē.

fortitūdo, -inis, [fortis], f., courage, bravery. i. 2.

fortuītō [abl. of fortuītus, from forte], adv., by chance. vii. 20.

fortūna, -ae, [fors], f., luck, lot, fate, chance, fortune, good fortune.

fortūnātus, -a, -um, [fortūno, fortūna], adj., prosperous, in good circumstances. vi. 35.

forum, -i, n., forum, an open public place in ancient cities used for markets and gatherings of the people.

fossa, -ae, [fodio], f., ditch, trench, intrenchment.

fovea, -ae, f., pit, pitfall. vi. 28.

frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctum, 3, a., break; wreck, dash in pieces; wear out. i. 31.

frāter, -tris, m., brother; as a name of honor applied to allies, brethren, i. 33, 44.

frāternus, -a, -um, [frāter], adj., of a brother, brotherly.

fraus, fraudis, f., deceit, deception. fremitus, ūs, [fremo, make a noise], m., uproar, noise, din.

frequens, entis, adj., crowded, in large numbers.—quam frequentissimī, in as large numbers as possible. iv. II.

frētus, -a, -um, adj., relying on, followed by abl.

frīgidus, -a, -um, [frīgeo, be cold], adj., cold. iv. 1.

frīgus, frīgoris, n., cold, cold weather, "cold spell."

frons, frontis, f., forehead, front.

— ā fronte, in front.

fructuōsus, -a, -um, [fructus], adj., fruitful, fertile. i. 30.

fructus, -ūs, m., fruit, product, profit; income, advantage, enjoyment; crops, i. 28.

frümentārius, -a, -um, [frümentum], having to do with grain or supplies; rich in grain. i. 10.—rēs frümentāria, supply of grain.

frumentātio, -onis, [frumentum], f., foraging, pl., foraging expeditions.

frümentor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [frümentum], I, dep., get grain or supplies, forage.

frümentum, -ī, n., grain; pl., crops of grain, grain-crops. Cf. p. 28.

fruor, fruī, fruitus and frūctus sum, 3 dep., enjoy, followed by abl. iii. 22.

frūstrā, adv., in vain, without effect, for nothing.

Fufius, -ī, m., Gaius Fufius Cita, a Roman knight. vii. 3. fuga, -ae, f., flight. — dare in fugam, put to flight, rout.

fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitum, 3, a. and n., flee; avoid, shun; escape. fugitīvus, -a, -um, [fugio], adj., fleeing; — as noun fugitīvus, -ī, m., a runaway (slave). i. 23.

fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [fugio], 1, a., put to flight, rout. vii. 68.

fūmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [fūmus], I, a., smoke. vii. 24.

fūmus, -ī, m., smoke.

funda, -ae, f., sling. Cf. pp. 23, 24. funditor, -ōris, [funda], m., a

slinger.
fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsum, 3,
a., pour; scatter, rout, vanquish.

fungor, fungī, functus sum, 3, dep., discharge, perform, do, followed by abl. vii. 25.

fūnis, -is, m., rope, cable.

fūnus, -eris, n., burial, funeral; pl., funeral rites. vi. 19.

furor, -ōris, [furo, to rage], m., rage, madness, fury.

furtum, -ī, [fūr, thief], n, theft. fūsilis, -e, [fundo], adj., molten. v. 43.

futūrus, -a, -um, see sum.

# G.

Gabalī, -ōrum, pl. m., The Gabali, a people of Central Gaul, subject to the Arverni. They lived west of the Cévennes.

Gabīnius, -ī, m., Aulus Gabinius, a Roman, consul with L. Piso, B. C. 58. i. 6.

gaesum, -ī, n., [Keltic], a heavy javelin used by the Gauls. iii. 4.

Gāius, Gāiī or Gāī, m., a Roman praenomen, sometimes improperly spelled Caius; abbreviation, C.

Galba, -ae, m., (1) Servius Sulpicius Galba, a lieutenant of Caesar. (2) Galba, a chief of the Suessiones, ii. 4, 13.

galea, -ae, f., helmet (of leather).
ii. 21.

Gallia, -ae, [Gallus], f., Gaul; see p. 38.

Gallicus, -a, -um, [Gallus], adj., Gallic.

gallīna, -ae, [gallus, a cock], f.,
hen. v. 12.

Gallus, -a, -um, adj., Gallic; as a noun, m., a Gaul; m. pl., Galli, -ōrum, the Gauls. See pp. 38, 39.

Garumna, -ae, f., the Garonne. It rises in the Pyrenees, flows to the northwest and joins the Dordogne below Bordeaux, where both fall into an estuary called the Gironde. i. I.

Garumnī, -ōrum, pl. m., a tribe in Aquitania near the sources of the Garonne. iii. 27.

Gates, -ium, m., a tribe in Aquitania, on the Garonne. iii. 27.

gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, 2, n., semi-dep., rejoice, be pleased, be glad. iv. 13.

gāvīsus, see gaudeo.

**Geidumnī, -ōrum,** pl. m., a people of Belgic Gaul dependent on the Nervii. v. 39.

Genāva, -ae, f., Geneva, Genf, a town of the Allobroges, situated at the southwest corner of the lake of the same name. See N. to p. 50, 14.

gener, generī, m., son-in-law. v. 56. generātim [genus], adv., by tribes or peoples.

gēns, gentis, f., nation, race, tribe, clan.

genus, generis, [geno, = gigno], n., birth, descent; family, class, race; kind, method, nature.

- Gergovia, -ae, f., Gergovia, the capital of the Arverni, situated on a lofty plateau about four miles south of Clermont in Auvergne. Caesar besieged the city, but did not take it.
- Germānī, -ōrum, m., Germans. Cf. p. 43; N. to p. 106, 4; N. to p. 79, 7.
- Germānia, -ae, [Germāni], f., Germany, bounded, according to the Roman conception, by the Rhine, the Danube, the Vistula, and the Ocean.
- Germānicus, -a, -um, [Germāni], adj., German. iv. 16.
- Germānus, -a, -um, adj., of or from Germany, German.
- gerö, gerere, gessī, gestum, 3, a., bear, carry; manage, transact, do, carry out; wage, perform, accomplish, fill the office of. See IDIOMS.
- gladius, -ī, m., sword. The sword in use in the Roman army was called Spanish (gladius Hispānicus) to distinguish it from the Gallic sword. It was about two feet long, double-edged and sharppointed, used for both stabbing and cutting. The Gallic sword was used only for cutting.
- glāns, glandis, f., acorn; ball.
- glēba, -ae, f., lump of earth, clod. vii. 25.
- glōria, -ae, f., glory, fame, renown. glōrior, -ārī, -ātus sum, [glōria], 1, dep., boast of, glory in.
- Gnēus, -ī, m., a Roman praenomen; abbreviation, Cn.
- Gobannitiō, -ōnis, m., uncle of Vercingetorix. In concert with others, he expelled Vercingetorix from Gergovia for trying to stir up a revolt against the Romans. vii. 4.
- Gorgobina, -ae, f., a city in the land of the Aedui, inhabited by

- the Boii, and probably situated at the junction of the Allier and the Loire. vii. 9.
- Graecus, -a, -um, adj., Greek, Grecian; as a noun, a Greek.
- Grāiocelī (or Grājocelī), -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe in the Graian Alps, who joined the Ceutrones and Caturiges in opposing Caesar's passage over the mountains. i. 10.
- grandis, -e, adj., large, great.
- grātia, -ae, [grātus], f., favor, courtesy; influence, return, requital; friendship, popularity.—pl., grātiae, -ārum, thanks.—grātiā, for the sake of, vii. 43. See IDIOMS.
- grātulātiō, -ōnis, [grātulor], f., joy, rejoicing, congratulation.
- grātulor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [grātus], I, dep., congratulate. i. 30.
- grātus, -a, -um, adj., acceptable,
  pleasing; as a noun, n., a favor.
- gravis, -e, adj., heavy, heavily laden, ponderous; severe, hard, serious, troublesome. — gravior aetās, more advanced age.
- gravitās, -ātis, [gravis], f., weight, importance; power.
- graviter [gravis], adv., severely, violently, seriously, with great displeasure or annoyance. Comp. gravius, sup. gravissimē. See IDIOMS.
- gravō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [gravis], 1, a., load, weigh down; pass. as dep., feel displeasure, hesitate, be unwilling. i. 35.
- Grudiī, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe, subject to the Nervii. v. 39.
- gubernātor, -ōris, [guberno, steer], m., pilot.
- gustō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [gustus, a tasting], 1, a., taste. v. 12.
- Gutruātus, -ī, m., a leader of the Carnutes. vii. 3.

# H.

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum, 2, a., have, hold, possess, keep; regard, think, consider, account, repute.—habēre sē aliter ac, to be different from what. See IDIOMS.

haesitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, I, n., [freq. from haereo], stick, stick fast, remain fixed. vii. 19.

hāmus, -ī, m., hook. vii. 73.

harpago, -ōnis, m., grappling-iron, a pole with an iron hook at the end. vii. 81.

Harūdes, -um, m., a German tribe that, to the number of 24,000, crossed over into Gaul and joined the army of Ariovistus. They are thought to have come from Jutland.

haud, adv., not at all, by no means, not.

Helvētia, -ae, f., Helvetia, a counftry lying between the Jura mountains, the Rhine and Lake of Constance, the Rhone and Lake Geneva, comprising a large part of modern Switzerland. It was divided into four cantons, the names of two of which, Verbigenus and Tigurīnus, are known.

Helvēticus, -a, -um, adj., Helvetian. vii. 9.

Helvētius, -a, -um, adj., Helvetian; as a noun, Helvetiī, -ōrum, pl. m., the Helvetians.

Helviī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe in the Province, in the Cévennes. Their capital was Alba, now Alps, in Languedoc.

Hercynius, -a, -um, adj., Hercynian. The Silva Hercynia was a great forest in Germany extending over the central and southern parts.

hērēditās, -ātis, [hērēs, heir], f., heirship, inheritance.

hīberna, -ōrum, [properly neuter pl. of the adj. hībernus, from hiems, with castra understood], pl. n., winter quarters.

hībernāculum, -ī, [hīberno], n., winter abode.—pl., hībernācula, -ōrum, winter quarters. ii. 35.

Hibernia, -ae, f., Ireland. v. 13. hīc, haee, hōc, dem. pron., this, he, she, it, as follows. When contrasted with ille, hīc means the latter, ille, the former. When followed by ut, hīc frequently = such.

hīc, adv., here, at this point.

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [hiems], I, n., winter, pass the winter.

hiems, hiemis, f., winter, a storm. hino,[locative form from hīc], adv., hence, from this place or point.

Hispānia, -ae, f., Spain.

Hispānus, -a, -um, adj., Spanish. v. 26.

hodiē [hōc + diē], adv., to-day.

homō, hominis, c., human being, man. — pl., hominēs, -um, m., people, mankind in general.

honéstus, -a, -um, [honor], adj., honorable, upright, distinguished, noble.

honor or honos, -ōris, m., honor, respect, dignity; public office or honor.

honorificus, -a, -um, [honor + facio], adj., conferring honor. full of honor. i. 43.

hora, -ae, f., hour. The Roman hora was not a fixed period, as with us, but the twelfth part of the day, from sunrise to sunset, or of the night, from sunset to sunrise; the hours therefore varied in length with the season of the year.

horreō, horrēre, horruī, no supine, 2, n. and a., dread, shudder at. i. 32.

horribilis, -e, [horreo], adj., frightful, horrible. vii. 36.

horridus, -a, -um, [horreo], adj., frightful, wild. v. 14.

hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, dep., exhort, urge, encourage, incite.

hospes, hospitis, m., guest, friend. hospitium, -ī, [hospes], n., the relation of guest and host, hospitality, friendship.

hostis, -is, m., (public) enemy, foe.

— pl., hostes, -ium, m., the enemy. See inimicus.

hūc [hīc], adv., hither, here, to this place.

hūiusmodī or hūjusmodī [hūius + modī], of this sort, such.

hūmānitās, -ātis, [hūmānus], f., humanity; refinement, culture.

hūmānus, -a, -um, [homo], adj., lit., pertaining to man; cultivated, refined, civilized.

humerus, -ī, m., shoulder. vii. 50. humilis, -e, [humus, ground], adj., low; poor, humble, insignificant.

humilitās, -ātis, [humilis], f., lowness, weakness, insignificance.

#### I.

iaced (or jaceo), iacere, iacuī, no supine, 2, n., lie on the ground, lie, lie prostrate or dead.—iacens, entis, one fallen, the fallen. ii. 27, vii. 25.

iaciō (or jacio), iacere, iēcī, iactum, 3, a., throw, cast, hurl; throw up, construct.

iactō (or jacto), -āre, -āvī, -ātum,
 [freq. of iacio], 1, a., fling, toss
 about; discuss.

iactūra (or jactūra), -ae, [iacio], f., throwing away, loss, sacrifice.

iaculum (or jaculum), -ī, [iacio], n., javelin. See p. 23.

iam (or jam), adv., already, now; indeed. — ubi iam, as soon as. iam anteā, some time before.

ibī, adv., in that place, there.

Iccius, -ī, m., a leading man among the Remi. ii. 3, 6, 7.

ictus, -ūs, [ico, strike], m., blow, stab. stroke.

Id., abbreviation for Idus.

idcirco, [id + circa], adv., on that account, therefore. v. 3.

idem, eadem, idem, dem. pron., the same.

identidem, [idem, doubled], adv., from time to time, repeatedly, again and again.

idoneus, -a, -um, adj., suitable, convenient, fit; capable.

Idūs, -uum, f. pl., the Ides, a name given to the thirteenth of the month except in March, May, July, and October, when the fifteenth was so called. i. 7.

ignis, -is, m., fire. — pl. ignēs, watch-fires, ii. 33.

**īgnōbilis**, -e, [in + (g)nōbilis], adj., *unknown*, *obscure*. v. 28.

Ignōminia, -ae, [in + (g)nōmen],
f., lit., loss of one's good name;
disgrace, dishonor.

**īgnōrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [in + (g)nōsco, know], 1, a., be ignorant of, not to know, overlook.

Ignōsco, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnōtum, [in + (g)nōsco, know], 3, a. and n., lit., not to know; pardon, overlook, forgive.

īgnōtus, -a, -um, part. of ignōsco, as adj., unknown, unfamiliar.

illātus. See īnfero.

ille, illa, illud, dem. pron., that; he, she, it. — ille . . . hīc, the former . . . the latter.

illīc [ille], adv., there, in that place.

illigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [in + ligo, bind], 1, a., bind, fasten in or on.

- illo [ille], adv., thither, to that place; to that end.
- illustris, -e, [in + lustro, make bright], adj., prominent, distinguished, remarkable.
- Illyricum, -ī, n., Illyricum, a general designation of the territory bordering on the east side of the Adriatic.
- imbēcillitās, -ātis, [imbēcillus, weak], weakness, feebleness.
- imber, imbris, m., rain, rainstorm. imitor, -ārī, -ātus sum, I, dep., copy, imitate.
- immānis, -e, adj., huge, enormous, immense.
- immineō, -minēre, -minuī, no supine [in + mineo, overhang], 2, n., project over, overhang; be near at hand. vi. 38.
- immittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, [in + mitto], 3, a., send into, send agaiņst, hurl; sink, let in.
- immolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [in + mola, meal, i. e. to sprinkle meal on a victim for sacrifice], I, a., sacrifice, offer as a sacrifice.
- immortālis, -e, [in + mortālis, mortal], adj., immortal.
- immūnis, -e, [in + mūnus], adj., free from taxes or public duty.
- immūnitās, -ātis, [immūnis], f., freedom from public service.
- imparātus, -a, -um, [in + parātus], adj., not ready, unprepared.
- impedīmentum, -ī, [impedio] n., a hindrance. — pl. impedīmenta, baggage, heavy baggage. See p. 23.
- impediō, pedīre, pedīvī, pedītum, [in + pēs], 4, a., hinder, obstruct, prevent, embarrass, disorder.
- impedītus, -a, -um, pf. part. of impedio, as adj., incumbered with baggage, hindered, obstructed, embarrassed.

- impellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, [in + pello], 3, a., urge, urge on, drive on; instigate, incite.
- impendeō, -pendēre, no pf., no supine, [in + pendeo, hang], 2, n., hang over, overhang.
- impēnsus, -a, -um, [pf. part. of impendo, expend], as adj., dear (in price). iv. 2.
- imperātor, -ōris, [impero], m.,
   commander-in-chief, commander,
   general.
- imperātum, -ī, [impero], n., command, order.
- imperfectus, -a, -um, [in + perfectus], adj., unfinished, incomplete. vi. 12.
- imperītus, -a, -um, [in + perītus], adj., unskilled, inexperienced, unacquainted with.
- imperium, -ī, [impero], n., command, dominion, control, government, military anthority, orders.
   nova imperia, a revolution.
- imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, a. and n., command, order, exercise authority; order to furnish, levy, demand. After impero, ut is to be translated by to, and ne by not to. See IDIOMS.
- impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, a., obtain (by request), accomplish, bring to pass; gain; succeed in obtaining one's wish.
- impetus, -ūs, [in + peto], m., attack, assault; fury, impetuosity.
- impius, -a, -um, [in + pius], adj., wicked, impious. vi. 13.
- implicō, -āre, -āvī or -uī, -ātum or -itum, [in + plico, fold], 1, a., entwine, entangle, involve.
- implōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [in + plōro, call out], 1, a., beseech, implore, invoke, appeal to.
- impono, -ponere, -posui, -positum, [in + pono], 3, a., put or place on, put; impose; mount.

importō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [in +
porto], I, a., bring or carry into,
import.

imprīmīs [in + prīmīs, abl. pl. of prīmus], adv., among the first, in the first place, chiefly, especially.

improbus, -a, -um, [in + probus, good], adj., bad, shameless.

imprōvīsus, -a, -um, [in + prō + video], adj., unforeseen, unexpected. — dē imprōvīsō, unexpectedly, suddenly.

imprūdēns, -entis, [contr. from improvidens, in + pro + video], adj., not foreseeing, unawares, off one's guard.

imprūdentia, -ae, [imprūdens], f., want of foresight, indiscretion, imprudence, ignorance.

impūbēs, -eris and is, [in + pūbēs], adj., under age, youthful; unmarried.

impūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [in + pūgno], I, a. and n., attack, assail, charge; fight.

impulsus, -ūs, [impello], m., instigation, incitement. v. 25.

impulsus, pf. pass. part. of impello.

impūne [impūnis, in + poena], adv., without punishment, with impunity. i. 14.

impūnitās, -ātis, [impūnis, in + poena], freedom or exemption from punishment, impunity. i. 14. īmus, see Inferus.

in, prep. with acc. and abl.: with acc. after words implying motion, to, into, towards, against, upon, over; with abl., in, at, during, among, in case of. See IDIOMS.

inānis, -e, adj., empty; vain, useless.

ineautē [ineautus], adv., carelessly. Comp. ineautius, vii. 27. ineautus, -a, -um, [in + caveo], adj., off one's guard. vi. 30. incēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, [in + cēdo], 3, n., advance, proceed; come to, seize (as grief or fear).

incendium, -ī, [incendo], n., fire, conflagration.

incendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsum, [in + candeo, shine], 3, a.,
set on fire, burn; rouse, excite.

incēnsus, see incendo.

inceptus, see incipio.

incertus, -a, -um, [in+certus], adj., uncertain, doubtful, unreliable.

incidō, -eidere, -cidī, -cāsum,
[in + eado], 3, n., fall in with,
meet, befall; occur, happen.

incīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, [in + caedo], 3, a., cut into, lop off. ii. 17.

incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, [in + capio], 3, a. and n., begin, commence, undertake.

incīsus, see incīdo.

incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [in + cito, move rapidly], I, a., urge, urge on, incite, rouse, encourage.

incōgnitus, -a, -um, [in + cōgnōsco], adj., unknown.

incolō, -colere, -coluī, -cultum,
 [in + colo], 3, a. and n., live,
 dwell, settle; inhabit.

incolumis, -e, adj., safe, un-harmed, uninjured.

incommodē [incommodus, in +
commodus], adv., inconveniently,
unfortunately. v. 33.

incommodum, -ī, [n. of incommodus], n., inconvenience, misfortune, disaster, injury, defeat.

incrēdibilis, -e, [in + crēdo], adj., not capable of belief, extraordinary, incredible.

increpitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [freq. of increpo, reprove, chide], 1, a., reproach, blame, taunt.

incumbo, -cumbere, -cubui, -cu

- bitum, [in + cubo, lie], 3, n., lie or lean upon, devote one's self to, attend to.
- incursio, -onis, [in + curro], f., invasion, inroad, attack.
- incursus, -ūs, [in + curro], m., assault, attack.
- incūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [in + causal, I, a., bring a charge against, accuse, chide, blame.
- inde, adv., from that place, thence; after that, then.
- indicium, -ī, | index, from indico, reveal], n., hint, information, discovery. - per indicium (= per indices), through, or by, informers, i. 4.
- indīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dīctum,  $[in + d\bar{i}co]$ , 3, a, proclaim, declare, appoint.
- indictus, -a, -um, [in negative + dietus], adj., unsaid. — indietā causā, without a hearing.
- indīctus, pf. pass. part. of indīco. indīgnē [indīgnus], adv., worthily, shamefully - sup. indīgnissimē. vii 38.
- indīgnitās, -ātis, [indīgnus], f., unworthiness, unbecoming havior; indignity, disgrace, insult.
- indīgnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [indīgnus], I, dep., think unworthy, be indignant or angry at.
- indīgnus, -a, -um, |in + dīgnus], adj., unworthy, disgraceful.
- indīligēns, -entis, [in + dīligēns, attentive], adj., careless, heedless. vii. 71.
- indīligenter [indīligens], adv., carelessly, heedlessly. Comp., ii.
- indīligentia, -ae, [indīligēns], f., want of energy, carelessness, negligence. vii. 17.
- indūco, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum,  $[in + d\bar{u}co]$ , 3, a., lead on or in, induce, influence; cover.

- inductus, see induco.
- indulgentia, -ae, [indulgeo], f., favor, kindness. vii. 63.

INFESTUS

- indulgeo, -dulgere, -dulsī, -dultum, 2, n., favor, be kind to.
- induō, -duere, -duī, -dūtum, 3, a., put on. - sē induere, to get entangled.
- industrië [abl. of industrius], adv., industriously, diligently.
- indūtiae, -ārum, pl., f., a truce, armistice.
- Indutiomarus, -ī, m., a leading man among the Treveri, and rival of Cingetorix, who sided with the Romans.
- ineo, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -itum, [in + eo], irr., a., enter, enter upon, begin. - inīre consilium, to form a plan. - inīre numerum, to estimate the number.
- inermis, -e and inermus, -a, -um, [in negative, + arma], adj., unarmed.
- iners, -ertis, [in negative, + ars], adj., indolent, idle, unmanly. iv. 2.
- înfāmia, -ae, [in + fāma], f., discredit, disgrace, dishonor.
- infans, antis, in negative, + for, speak], c., lit., one not speaking; child, infant.
- īnfectus, -ε, -um, [in negative, + factus], adj., not made or done, unperformed. - infectā rē, without gaining one's object.
- īnferō, -ferre, intulī, illātum, [in + fero], irr., a., bring in, introduce, bring, throw; inflict, infuse, cause, produce, inspire. - bellum inferre, to make war. - inferre sīgna, to advance. See IDIOMS.
- Inferus, -a, -um, adj., below, underneath. Comp. Inferior, lower, inferior. Sup., Infimus or Imus, lowest, at the bottom or base.
- infestus, -a, -um, adj., hostile, dangerous.

- Inficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, [in + ficio], 3, a., stain. v. 14.
- infidēlis, -e, [in + fidēlis], adj.,
  unfaithful. vii. 59.
- infigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixum, [in + figo, fix], 3, a., fasten in. vii. 73. infimus. See inferus.
- īnfinītus, -a, -um, [in negative, + fīnītus, from fīnis], adj., boundless, vast, enormous.
- **Infirmitās**, -ātis, [Infirmus], f., want of steadiness, feebleness, fickleness.
- Infirmus, -a, -um, [in negative + firmus], adj., not strong, weak, feeble, depressed.
- inflecto, -flectere, -flexī, -flexum, [in + flecto], 3, a., bend.
- īnflēxus. See inflecto.
- influō, -fluere, -flūxī, -flūxum, [in
  + fluo], 3, n., flow into, flow.
- infodio, -fodere, -fodi, -fossum,
   [in + fodio, dig], 3, a., bury.
   vii. 73.
- infrā, (1), adv., below. (2), prep. with acc. only, below.
- ingēns, -entis, adj., large, vast.
- ingrātus, -a, -um, [in + grātus], adj., displeasing. vii. 30.
- ingredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, [in + gradior, step], 3, dep., enter. iniciō (or injicio), -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, [in + jacio], 3, a., throw
- in, infuse; lay on.
   iniectus (or injectus). See inicio.
   inimīcitia, -ae, [inimīcus], f., enmity. vi. 22.
- inimīcus, ī, [in negative + amīcus], m., enemy, personal enemy as distinguished from hostis, a public enemy.
- inimīcus, -a, -um, [in negative +
   amīcus], adj., unfriendly, hostile.
- inīquitās, -ātis, [inīquus], f., unfairness, inequality, injustice; bad character; unfavorable position.

- inīquus, -a, -um, [in negative + aequus], adj., uneven, unjust, unfavorable.
- initium, -ī, [ineo], n., beginning.
- iniungō (or injungo), -iungere,
  -iunxī, -iunctum, [in + iungo],
  3, a., fix or fasten upon. vii. 77.
- iniūria (or injūria), -ae, [in + iūs], f., wrong, outrage, injustice, violence.
- iniūssū (or injūssū), [in + iubeo], m., abl. of obsolete nom., without orders.
- innītor, -nītī, -nīsus or -nīxus sum, [in + nītor], 3, dep., lean on. ii. 27.
- innīxus. See innītor.
- innocēns, -entis, [in + noceo], adj., harmless, blameless, innocent.
- innocentia, -ae, [innocēns], f., blamelessness, integrity. i. 40.
- inopia, -ae, [inops, needy], f., want, lack, scarcity, poverty.
- inopīnāns, -antis, [in + opīnor, think], adj., not expecting, unawares, off one's guard.
- inquam, inquis, inquit, def. verb, say. Cf. A. 144 b; G. 190, 2; H. 297 II. 2.
- insciens, entis, [in negative +
   seio], adj., not knowing. Insciente Caesare, without Caesar's
   knowledge.
- inscientia, -ae, [insciens], f., ignorance, lack or want of knowledge.
- inscius, -a, -um, [in + scio], adj., not knowing, ignorant.
- īnsecūtus. See īnsequor.
- insequor, -sequi, -secutus sum,
   [in + sequor], 3, dep., pursue,
   follow up.
- Inserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertum,
   [in + sero], 3, a., fasten into or
   to. iii. 14.

Insidiae, -ārum, [in + sideo], pl. f., ambush; artifice; treachery.

īnsidior, -ārī, -ātus sum, [insidiae], I, dep., *lie in wait for*, vi. 34

**īņsīgnē**, -is, [insīgnis], n., sign, mark, badge, decoration.

insignis, -e, [in + signum], adj,
noted, remarkable.

Īnsiliō, -silīre, -siluī, -sultum, [in + salio, leap], 4, a., leap or spring upon. i. 52.

īnsimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [in +. simulo, make like], I, a., charge, accuse.

īnsinuō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [in + sinuo, curve], I, a., get into, worm one's way into. iv. 33.

insistō, -sistere, -stitī, no supine, [in + sisto], 3, a., stand, stand upon; press on, pursue.

insolenter [insolens], adv., haughtily, insolently. i. 14.

inspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [freq. of inspicio], I, a., look on. vii. 25. instābilis, -e, [in + stābilis, from sto], adj., unsteady. iv. 23.

instans, -antis, (part of insto),
 adj., impending. vi. 4.

instar, n., indecl., image; followed
by gen., like. ii. 17.

īnstīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, a., stir up, urge on. v. 56.

instituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, [in + statuo], 3, a., huild, establish; draw up, arrange, devise, form; train; provide, begin.

īnstitūtum, -ī, [īnstituo], n., plan, custom, usage, institution.

īnstitūtus. See īnstituo.

īnstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātum, [in + sto], 1, a., be near at hand, press on, approach.

instrümentum, -ī, [īnstruo], n., tool, appliance; furniture.

īnstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, [in + struo, build], 3, a.,

build, construct; set in order, draw up.

īnsuēfactus, -a, -um, [in + sueo + facio], adj., accustomed, trained. iv. 24.

īnsuētus, -a, -um, [in negative + suēsco, be wont], adj., unaccustomed.

īnsula, -ae, f., an island.

**insuper** [in + super], adv., above, overhead; on the top.

integer, -gra, -grum, [in + root tag in tango], adj., untouched, fresh, vigorous. — rē integrā, at the outset.

īntegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tectum, [in+tego], 3, a., cover, cover over. intellegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum,

[inter + lego], 3, a., understand, see clearly, perceive, ascertain, know.

intendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, [in + tendo], 3, a., strive. iii. 26.

intentus, -a, -um, (pf. part. of intendo], adj., attentive, eager, intent.

inter, prep. with acc. only, between, among, during.

intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, [inter + cēdo], 3, n., go between, lie between, intervene, pass, happen.

intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, [inter + capio], 3, a., cut off, intercept.

interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, [inter+claudo], 3, a., shut off, cut off, block up, hinder.

interdīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dīctum, [inter + dīco], 3, a., forbid, exclude, interdict. See Idioms.

interdiū [inter + diēs], adv., in the daytime, by day.

interdum [inter + dum], adv., in
 the mean time, meanwhile; sometimes.

- interea [inter + ea], adv., in the mean time, meanwhile.
- intereo, -īre, -iī, -itum, [inter + eo], 4, n., go to decay, perish, die.
- īnterficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, [inter + facio], 3, a., slay, kill.
- intericio (or interjicio), -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, [inter + iacio] 3, a., throw, lay, or place between; of time, elapse, intervene.
- interiectus (or interjectus), see intericio.
- interim [inter + old acc. of is], adv., in the mean time, meanwhile.
- interior, -ius, comp. (no positive), [inter], adj., inner, interior. pl. m., interiores, those living in the interior, v. 14: those within (the city), vii. 82. Sup. intimus.
- interitus, -ūs, [intereo], m., death, destruction. v. 47.
- intermitto, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, [inter + mitto], 3, a. and n., leave off, cease, stop, break, discontinue, abate.
- internicio, -onis, interneco, destroy], f., slaughter, massacre, utter destruction. i. 13, ii. 28.
- interpello, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [inter + pello], I, a., interrupt, disturb, hinder. i. 44.
- interpono, -ponere, -posui, -positum, [inter + pono], 3, a., place or put between, interpose; of time, let pass or elapse; put forward. fidem interponere, to pledge one's
- interpres, -pretis, m., interpreter. interpretor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [interpres], explain, expound. vi. 13.
- interrogo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [inter + rogo], I, a., ask, question.
- interrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, [inter + rumpo], 3, a., break down, break up.

interscindo, -scindere, -scidī, -scissum, [inter+scindo], 3, a., cut down, cut through, destroy.

INTRORUMPO

- intersum, -esse, -fuī, irr., n., be between, be present, take part in. - Impers., interest, it concerns, is important. - magnī interesse, to be of great importance.
- intervallum,  $-\bar{\imath}$ , [inter + vallum], n., properly room between two palisades; distance, interval.
- intervenio, -venīre, -venī, -ventum, [inter + venio], 4, n., come upon, arrive, appear.
- interventus, -ūs, [intervenio], m., coming (up), intervention. iii. 15.
- intexō, -texere, -texuī, -textum, [in + texo, weave], 3, a., weave in, interlace. ii. 33.
- intoleranter [intolerans], adv., excessively, earnestly. Comp. intolerantius, vii. 55.
- intrā [contracted from interā, sc. partel, prep. with acc. only, inside of, within.
- intrītus [in negative + tero, rub], adj., unworn, unfatigued. iii. 26. intrō, -are, -avī, -atum, [intrō, adv., within], 1, a., enter, go in.
- introduco, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum, [intro + dūco], 3, a., lead in or into.
- intrōeō, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -itum,  $[intr\bar{o} + eo]$ , irr., n. and a., come in, enter. v. 43.
- introitus, -ūs, [introeo], m, an entering, entrance. v. 9.
- intrōmissus, see intrōmitto.
- intromitto, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum,  $[intr\bar{o} + mitto]$ , 3, a., send in or into, let in.
- introrsus [intro+versus, verto], adv., within, inside.
- introrumpo, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, [intro + rumpo, break], 3, a., burst in, break into. v 51.

intueor, -tuerī, -tuitus sum, [in + tueor], 2, dep., look upon. i. 32. intuleram, see infero.

intus, adv., within, on the inside.

inūsitātus, -a, -um, [in negative + ūsitātus, usual], adj., strange, unfamiliar, novel.

inūtilis, -e, [in negative + ūtilis], adi., useless, unserviceable, of no use, disadvantageous.

invenio, -venīre, -venī, -ventum, [in + venio], 4, a., come upon, find, discover, learn.

inventor, -oris, [invenio], m., discoverer, inventor. vi. 17.

inveterasco, -veterascere, -veter- $\bar{a}v\bar{i}$ , -veter $\bar{a}tum$ , [in + vetus], 3, n., grow old; settle, become established.

invictus, -a, -um, [in + vinco], adj., unconquerable, invincible. i. 36.

invideo, -videre, -vidī, -vīsum, [in + video], 2, a., look askance at, be jealous of, envy. ii. 31.

invidia, -ae, [invideo], f., envy. vii. 77.

inviolatus, -a, -um, [in negative + violatus, violo], adj., sacred, inviolable. iii. 9.

invītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, a., invite, entice, summon.

invītus, -a, -um, adj., unwilling. - sē invītō, against his will.

ipse, -a, -um, dem. pron., self; himself, herself, itself, themselves; he, they (emphatic); very. — ipsīus castra, his own camp, i. 21. - hōc ipsō tempore, just at this moment, vi. 37. - ipsum esse Dumnorigem, that Dumnorix was the very man, i. 18.

īrācundia, -ae, [īrācundus], f., anger, rage, passion.

īrācundus, -a, -um, [īra, wrath], adj., irritable, passionate. i. 31. irrīdeō, -rīdēre, -rīsī, -rīsum, [in + rīdeo, laugh], 2, a., laugh at, make fun of, mock. ii. 30.

IUDICIUM

irrīdiculē [in negative + rīdiculē], adv., without wit. — non irridicule, wittily, humorously, i. 42.

irrumpo, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, [in + rumpo, break], 3, a., break into, burst or rush into.

irruptio, .onis, [irrumpo], f., sortie, dash, attack. vii. 70.

is, ea, id, dem. pron., this or that; he, she, it. - ēius (or ējus), his. Before ut, is = talis, such. -With comparatives, eo (abl.) = the, all the. - eo magis, all the more.

iste, -a, -ud, dem. pron., that, that of yours. vii. 77.

ita [is], adv., in this way, so, thus; in the following manner, in such a way, accordingly.

Italia, -ae, f., Italy.

itaque [ita + que = et ita], adv., and so, accordingly, therefore, consequently.

item, adv., just so, also, in like manner.

iter, itineris, [eo, īre], n., a journey, march, road. - māgnum iter, a forced march, from 20 to 25 miles a day See IDIOMS, and pp. 29-31.

iterum, adv., again, a second time. Itius, -ī, m., a harbor in Gaul from which Caesar sailed to Britain, probably Boulogne. See Desjardins, "Géographie Historique et Administrative de la Gaule Romaine," Vol. i. pp. 348-390. iūba (or jūba), -ae, f., mane. i. 48. iubeō (or jubeo), iubēre, iūssī,

 $i\bar{u}ssum$ ,  $[i\bar{u}s + habeo]$ , 2, order, command; give orders.

iūdicium (or jūdicium), -ī, [iūdex, judge], n., (legal) judgment, decision; trial; decree; opinion

— iŭdieium optimum facere, to pass a very favorable opinion. i. 41.

iūdicō (or jūdicō), -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [jūs + dico], I, a., judge, decide, think, be of the opinion; pronounce, declare.

iugum (or jugum), -i, [īungo], n., yoke, ridge. — sub iugum mittere, to send under the yoke. See N. to p. 50, 24.

itimentum (or jümentum), -ī, [for iugimentum, from iungo], n., beast of burden, draught animal, — horse, mule, or donkey. iunctūra (or junctūra), -ae, [iungo], f., joining, joint. iv. 17. iunctus (or junctus), see iungo. iungō (or jungō), iungere, iunxī, iunctum, 3, a., join, unite, contactum, 3, a., join, un

iūnior, see iuvenis.

nect.

**Iŭnius** (or **Jūnius**), **Q.**, m., *Quintus Junius*, one of Caesar's officers, by birth a Spaniard. v. 27 et seq.

Iuppiter (or Juppiter), Iovis, m., Jupiter, son of Saturn, chief god of the Romans. He presided specially over the heavens, and was supposed to hurl the thunderbolts.

Iūra (or Jūra), -ae, f., the Jura, a chain of mountains, extending from the Rhine to the Rhone (about 170 miles), and forming the western frontier of Switzerland.

1ūrō (or jūro), -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [iūs], 1, n., take an oath, swear.
iūs (or jūs), iūris, n., right, justice, authority. — iūre bellī, by the laws of war, i. 44. — iūra in hōs, rights over these, vi. 13. See IDIOMS:

iūsiūrandum (or jūsjūrandum), iūrisiūrandī, [iūs + iūro], n., an oath. iūssus (or jūssus), -ūs, [iubeo], (used only in abl. sing.), m., order, command. vii. 3.

iūstitia (or jūstitia), -ae, [iūs], f., justice, uprightness, fair-dealing.

itustus (or justus), -a, -um, [ius], adj., just, fair, due. — iusta funera, proper, complete, funeral rites.

iuvenis (or juvenis), -e, adj., young. Comp. iūnior (or iuvenior), younger.

iuventūs (or juventūs), -ūtis, [iuvenis], f., youth; young men (capable of bearing arms, i. e. from the seventeenth to the forty-sixth year).

iuvō (or juvō), -āre, iūvi, iūtum, 1, a., help, assist.

iūxtā (or jūxtā), adv., near.

# K.

Kal. = Kalendae.

Kalendae, -ārum, f. pl., the Calends, the Roman name for the first day of the month. — Kalendae Aprīlēs, the first of Aprīl. i. 6.

#### L.

**L**. with proper names = **Lucius**. **Laberius**, -**i**, **Q**uintus, m., *Quin* 

tribune in Caesar's army. v. 15.

Lābiēnus, -ī, m., Titus Attius Labienus, a lieutenant of Caesar's, and the one in whom he placed the most confidence. In the Civil War, however, Labienus sided with Pompey, and was killed at the battle of Munda, B. C. 45.

lābor, lābī, lapsus sum, 3, dep., slip; go astray, v. 3; fail, be deceived or disappointed. v. 55.

labor, -ōris, m., toil, exertion, labor, hardship.

laboro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [labor], I, n., strive; be in distress or difficulty, be anxious.

labrum, -ī, [root lab, cf. lambo, lick], n., lip; edge, rim.

lāc, lactis, n., milk.

lacessō, -ere, -īvī or -iī, -ītum, [lacio, entice], 3, a., arouse, provoke, annoy, assail, attack.

lacrima, -ae, f., a tear.

lacrimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [lacrima], 1, n., weep. vii. 38.

lacus, -ūs, m., lake.

laedo, laedere, laesī, laesum, 3, a., injure, violate. vi. 9.

laetātiō, -ōnis, [laetus], f., joy, rejoicing. v. 52.

laetitia, -ae, [laetus], f., joy, delight, pleasure.

laetus, -a, -um, adj., glad, pleased. iii. 18.

languidē [languidus], adv., feebly. Comp. languidius, vii.

languidus, -a, -um, [languor], adj., faint, exhausted. iii. 5.

languor, -ōris, [langueo, be faint], m., faintness, exhaustion. v. 31.

lapis, -idis, m., stone.

lapsus, see labor.

laqueus, -ī, m., noose. vii. 22.

largior, largīrī, largītus sum, 4, dep., give freely, bribe.

largiter, adv., greatly, much. largiter posse, to have great influence. i. 18.

largītiō, -ōnis, [largior], f., liberality, bribery. i. 9.

lassitūdō, -inis, [lassus, weak], f., faintness, weariness, exhaustion. lātē [lātus], adv., widely, broadly, extensively, to a great extent.—longē lātēque, far and wide. Comp. lātius, sup. lātissimē.—quam lātissimē, as far as possible.

latēbra, -ae, [lateo], f., hidingplace, covert. vi. 4?.

lateō, latēre, latuī, no supine, 2, n., lie hid, be unnoticed. ii. 19, iii. 14.

l**ātissimē,** see lātē.

lātitūdō, -inis, [lātus], f., width, breadth, extent.

lātius, see lātē.

Latobrigī, -ōrum, pl. m., a tribe about the headwaters of the Danube in South Baden. i. 5, 28, 29.

lātrō, -ōnis, robber, freebooter.

lātrōcinium, -ī, [lātrō], n., freebooting, piracy, robbery, plundering.

lātūrus, see fero.

lātus, -a, -um, adj., broad, wide.

latus, -eris, n., side; flank of an army. — latus apertum, exposed flank, i. 25. — ab latere, on the flank. iii. 29.

laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [laus], 1, a., praise, commend. v. 8.

laus, laudis, f., praise, fame, glory. lavō, -āre, lāvī, lavātum, lautum, or lōtum, I, a., wash; pass. used reflexively, bathe, iv. I.

laxō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, a., spread or open out, extend. ii. 25.

lēgātiō, -ōnis, [lēgo, despatch], f., embassy, deputation, legation.

lēgātus, ī, [lēgo, despatch], m., (lit. one given a commission), envoy, ambassador, legate; lieutenant.

legiō, -ōnis, [lego, choose], f., (lit. a chosen number), a legion. The Roman legion consisted regularly of 10 cohorts of infantry and 300 cavalrymen, having a total number of 4200 to 6000 men. But there is evidence ato show that in Caesar's army the legions averaged not far from 3600 men each. See N. to p. 121, 24, and study p. 21.

legionārius, -a, -um, [legio], adj.,

of or belonging to a legion, legionary.

**Lemannus**, -ī, m., (in Caesar always with lacus), *Lake Geneva*.

Lemoyīces, -um, pl. m., a Gallic tribe between the Santones and the Arverni. Their capital was Augustoritum, now Limoges. They joined the uprising under Vercingetorix, and sent 10,000 men to Alesia.

lēnis, -e, adj., gentle, smooth.

lēnitās, -ātis, [lēnis], f., smoothness, gentleness. i. 12.

lēniter [lēnis], adv., gently, slightly, slowly.

Lepontii, -ōrum, pl. m., a people on the south side of the Alps, between St. Gothard and Lake Maggiore. iv. 10.

lepus, -oris, m., hare. v. 12.

Leucī, -ōrum, pl. m., a Gallic tribe in the upper part of the Meuse valley, between the Mediomatrici and the Lingones. Chief city, Tullum, now *Toul*. i. 40.

**Levacī**, -ōrum, pl. m., a Belgic tribe about Ghent, dependents of the Nervii. v. 39.

levis, -e, adj., light, weak, slight. levitās, -ātis, [levis], f., lightness, fickleness, instability.

levō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [levis], 1, a., lighten, relieve. v. 27.

lēx, lēgis, f., law, enactment, decree. Lexoviī, -ōrum, pl. m., a Gallic tribe on the coast west of the mouth of the Seine, conquered by Sabinus. They joined the uprising under Vercingetorix with 3000 men. Their capital was Noviomagus, now Lisieux, in the department of Calvados.

libenter [libens, glad], adv., willingly, cheerfully.

līber, -era, -erum, adj., free, independent. līberālitās, -ātis, [līber], f., generosity, liberality, kindness.

līberāliter [līberālis], adv., graciously, courteously, kindly.

līberē [līber], adv., freely, boldly.
līberī, -ōrum, [from līber, i. e. the free part of the family], pl. m., children.

līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [līber], I, a., set free, free, release.

lībertās, -ātis, [līber], f., freedom, independence, liberty.

lībrīlis, -e, [lībra, scales], adj., weighing a pound, of a pound weight. vii. 81.

licentia, -ae, [licet], f., lawlessness, presumption. vii. 52.

liceor, liceri, licitus sum, 2, dep., bid (on goods at an auction). i.

licet, licere, licuit and licitum est, 2, n., impers., it is allowed, lawful, permitted.—licet mihi, I am allowed, I may.—petere ut liceat, to ask permission.

Liger, eris, m., the Loire, the largest river in France. It rises in the Cévennes, and after a course of over 500 miles empties into the Atlantic.

līgnātiō, -ōnis, [līgnum], f., cutting wood, getting wood. v. 39.

līgnātōr, -ōris, [līgnum], m., woodcutter, one sent to get wood. v. 26.

līlium, -ī, n., *lily*. Cf. N. to p. 203, 20.

līnea, -ae, [līnum, thread], f., line. vii. 23.

**Lingones**, -um, pl. m., a Gallic tribe situated about the sources of the Marne and Seine. Their chief town was Andematunnum, now *Langres*.

lingua, -ae, f., tongue; language. lingula, -ae, [lingua], f., a tongue of land. iii. 12. **linter**, -tris, f., rarely m., boat, skiff. līnum, -ī, n., flax. iii. 13.

līs, lītis, f., strife, lawsuit, damages (adjudged by law). v. I.

Liscus, -ī, m., chief magistrate of the Aedui with Divitiacus. i. 16, 17.

Litaviccus, -ī, m., a prominent Aeduan who entered into a conspiracy against Caesar, and took refuge in Gergovia. vii. 37, etc.

līttera, -ae, f., a letter of the alphabet. - pl. lītterae, -ārum, writing, vi. 14; letter, despatch.

lītus, -oris, n., shore of the sea, strand, beach.

locus, -ī, pl. locī (not in Caesar), and loca, m., place, ground; room; position, rank, situation. See IDIOMS.

locūtus. See loquor.

longe [longus], adv., at a distance, far, by far. Comp. longius, sup. longissimē. — quam longissimē, as far as possible.

longinquus, -a, -um, [longus], adj., far removed, remote, distant; long-continued, prolonged, lasting.

longitūdō, -inis, [longus], f.,

longurius, -ī, [longus], m., a long pole.

longus, -a, -um, adj., long, of space (distance) or of time; distant. nāvis longa, a war-ship, galley. — Comp. longior, sup. longissimus.

loquor, loqui, locutus sum, 3, dep., speak, say, converse.

lorīca, -ae, f., a (leather) cuirass, coat of mail; as a military term, breastwork, v. 40 and vii. 72, 86.

Lucānius, Q., -ī, m., Quintus Lucanius, a brave centurion. v. 35. Lucterius, -ī, m., a Cadurcan, an

efficient helper of Vercingetorix

in the great uprising of the Gauls, B. C. 52. vii. 5, etc.

Lugotorix, igis, m, a British chief who was captured in an attack on Caesar's camp. v. 22. lūna, -ae, f., moon; goddess of the

moon, vi. 21.

Lutētia, -ae, f., a city of the Parisii on an island in the Seine, Paris. Cf. N. to p. 151, 10.

lūx, lūcis, f., light, daylight. prīma lūx, daybreak.

luxuria, -ae, [luxus, excess], f., high living, luxury.

# M.

**M.** with proper names = Marcus.

 $\mathbf{M}$ '. with proper names = Manius. **M** as designation of number = 1000.

māceria, -ae, [mācero, soften], f., (originally applied to a wall built of soft clay), wall, enclosure.

māchinātiō, -onis, māchinor, contrive], f., contrivance, machine.

maestus. -a, -um, maereo, mourn], adj., sad, dejected. vii. 80.

magis (comp. of māgnus), adv., more, rather. — eō magis, all the more Sup. māximē, very greatly, exceedingly, chiefly, especially .quam māximē, as much as possible.

magistrātus, -ūs, [magister], m., magistracy, (high) civil office; magistrate.

māgnificus, -a, -um, [māgnus + facio], adj., splendid, magnificent.

māgnitūdō, -inis, [māgnus], f., greatness, extent; stature, size.

māgnoperē [for māgnō opere, māgnus + opus], adv., very much, greatly, specially, deeply.

māgnus, -a, -um, adj., great, large, powerful. Comp. māior (or mājor); sup. māximus, greatest, very great, largest, very large.

māiestās (or mājestās), -ātis, [māgnus], f., greatness, dignity.

māiōrēs (or mājōrēs), -um, (properly comp. of māgnus), pl. m., those greater or older. — māiōrēs nātū, old men, ancestors.

malacia, ae, [Greek], f., a calm, dead calm. iii. 15.

male [malus, bad], adv., badly, ill, unsuccessfully. Comp. pēius (or pējus), sup. pessimē.

maleficium, -ī, [male + facio], n., mischief, outrage, harm.

Mallius, -ī, L., m., Lucius Mallius, a Roman proconsul; see N. to p. 102, 9.

mālō, mālle, māluī, no supine, [magis + volo], irr. a., prefer, had rather.

malus, -a, -um, adj, bad, evil.

Comp. pēior (or pējor), sup.

pessimus.

mālus, -ī, m., upright pole or beam; mast of a ship.

mandātum, -ī, [mando], n., order, commission, injunction, instruction.

mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [manus + do], I, a., commission, entrust, order, command.

Mandubiī, -ōrum, pl. m., a people of Gaul situated between the Aedui and Lingones. Their capital was Alēsia, now Alise Ste. Reine. vii. 68, etc.

Mandubracius, -i, m., a chief of the Trinobantes in Britain who attached himself to Caesar, v. 20, 22.

mane, adv., in the morning.

maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum, 2, n., stay, remain; abide by.

manipulāris, -e, [manipulus], m., of or belonging to a maniple or company.

manipulus, -ī, [manus + pleo, because the first standard of a maniple was a handful of hay or straw raised on a pole], m., a company of soldiers, maniple. See p. 21.

Manius, -ī, m., a Roman praenomen.

mānsuēfaciō, facere, fēcī, factum, [mānsuētus, tame, + . facio], 3, a., tame. vi. 28.

mānsuētūdō, -inis, [mānsuētus, tame], f., gentleness, compassion.

manus, -ūs, f., hand; band or troop of men, (military) force.

Marcomanī, -ōrum, pl. m., [German word, = men of the border], a German tribe situated between the Neckar, Main, and Danube. i. 51.

Mārcus, -ī, m., a Roman praenomen, from which our "Mark" comes.

mare, -is, n., the sea.

maritimus, -a, -um, [mare], adj., of, by, near, bordering on, the sea; sea-. — rēs maritimae, naval operations, iv. 23.

Marius, -ī, m., a Roman praenomen.

Marius, C., -I, m., Gaius Marius, a Roman born B. C. 157, near Arpinum, and famous for his victories over the Cimbri and Teutones. He was seven times consul, and the bitter foe of the aristocratic party. He died B. C. 86. i. 40.

Mars, Martis, m., Mars, the Roman god of war, vi. 17. — aequō Marte, see aequus.

mās, maris, m., male. vii. 26.

matara, -ae, [Keltic word], f., Keltic javelin, pike.

māter, -tris, f., a mother. — mātrēs familiae, matrons.

- māteria, -ae, (acc. māteriem, from nom. māteriēs, vii. 24), f., material; timber, wood.
- māterior, -ārī, -ātus sum, [māteria], 1, dep., procure timber, get wood. vii. 73.
- Matisco, -ōnis, f., a town of the Aedui, on the Saône, now Maçon. vii. 90.
- mātrimōnium, -ī, [māter], n., marriage. See IDIOMS under dūcere.
- Mātrona, -ae, f., the Marne, the most important tributary of the Seine, into which it flows a little above Paris. i. 1.
- mātūrē [mātūrus], adv., early. Comp. mātūrius, sup. mātūrrimē. — quam mātūrrimē, as early as possible, i. 33.
- mātūrēscō [mātūrus], -tūrēscere, -tūruī, no supine, 3, n., ripen. vi. 29.
  - mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [mātūrus], I, a. and n., make haste, hasten.
  - mātūrus, -a, -um, adj., *ripe, early.* māximē [māximus], see magis. māximus, see māgnus.
  - medeor, -ērī, no pf. or supine, 2, dep. n. and a., heal, remedy (with dat.). v. 24.
  - mediocris, -cre, [medius], adj., common, ordinary, moderate.
  - mediocriter [mediocris], adv., moderately, in a slight degree. non mediocriter, in a high degree, i. 39.
  - Mediomatrici, -ōrum, or Mediomatrices, -um, m. pl., a Gallic people between the head-waters of the Meuse and the Rhine. Their capital was Divodurum, later called Mettis, now Metz. iv. 10, vii. 75.
  - mediterrāneus, -a, -um, [medius + terra], adj., inland, central.

- medius, -a, -um, adj., in the middle, intermediate, mid. — medius utrīusque, half way between both, i. 34. — de mediā nocte, after midnight. — ad mediam noctem, to (about) midnight.
- Meldī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Meldi, a Gallic people on the Marne, east of the Parisii. v. 5.
- melior, adj., see bonus.
- melius, adv., see bene.
- membrum, -ī, n., limb (as part of the body).
- meminī, -isse, def., a. and n., (only in tenses formed from the pf.), remember, bear in mind.
- memoria, -ae, [memor, mindful], f., memory, recollection, remembrance.— memoriā tenere, recollect.— memoriā nostrā, in our own day.— memoriā proditum, reported, handed down, by tradition.
- Menapiī, -ōrum, m. pl., a Belgic people between the Meuse and the Schelde.
- mendācium, -ī, [mendāx, false], n., lie, falsehood. vii. 38.
- mēns, mentis, f., the mind. mente et animō, heart and soul. mēnsis, -is, m., month.
- mēnsūra, -ae, [mētior], f., a measure. — mēnsūra ex aquā, waterclock.
- mentiō, -ōnis, [root men in memini], f., mention. vi. 38.
- mercātor, -ōris, [mercor, trade], m., trader, merchant.
- mercātūra, -ae, [mercor, trade], f., trade, traffic; merchandise. vi. 17. mercēs, -ēdis, [merco, earn], f., pay, hire. i. 31.
- Mercurius, -ī, [mercēs], m., Mercury, son of Jupiter and Maia, the messenger of the gods, the source of prosperity, the patron of traders and thieves; also the god of eloquence and the con-

- ductor of departed souls to the lower world.
- mereō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, 2, a. and n.; and
- mereor, -ērī, -itus sum, 2, dep., gain, earn, deserve; serve.
- merīdiānus, -a, -um, [merīdiēs], adj., of mid-day or noon.—merīdiānō fere tempore, about noon, v. 8.
- merīdiēs, -ēī, [medius + diēs], m., mid-day; the south.
- meritum, -ī, [mereor], n., desert, merit, service.
- meritus, see mereor.
- Messāla, -ae, m., Marcus Messala, a Roman, consul B. C. 61. i. 2, 35.
- met, enclitic, self. nōsmet, ourselves, vii. 38.
- mētior, mētīrī, mēnsus sum, 4, dep., measure, measure out, distribute; used passively, be measured out, i. 16, 23.
- Metiosedum, 1, n., a town of the Senones, on an island in the Seine, 28 miles above Paris; later called Melodūnum, now Melun.
- Metius, -ī, m., Marcus Metius, a Roman sent by Caesar as an envoy to Ariovistus, detained by him, but afterwards rescued by Caesar. i. 47, 53.
- metō, metere, messuī, messum, 3, a., reap. iv. 32.
- metus, -ūs, m., fear, apprehension. Cf. n. to p. 67, 2.
- meus, -a, -um, adj., my, mine.

war, military operations.

- mīles, -itis, c., soldier, foot-soldier. mīlitāris, -e, [mīles], adj., military. — rēs mīlitāris, the art of
- mīlitia, -ae, [mīles], f., military service.
- mīlle, indecl. adj., (sometimes used as noun), a thousand. pl. mīlia, -um, as noun, n., thousand, thousands.

- Minerva, -ae, f., Minerva, the goddess of wisdom and the arts. vi. 17.
- minimē [minimus, sup. of parvus], adv., least, very slightly, by no means.
- minimus, -a, -um, adj., (sup. of parvus), least, smallest.
- minor, -us, adj., comp. of parvus, less, smaller.
- Minucius, -ī, m., L. Minucius Basilus, one of Caesar's officers, employed in the war against Ambiorix, and later stationed in winter quarters among the Remi. He took part with Caesar in the Civil War, but became one of Caesar's assassins, and the year after Caesar's death was killed by his own slaves. vi. 29, vii. 90.
- minuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum, [minus], 3, a. and n., lessen, diminish, reduce, put an end to; settle (controversies).
- minus [minor], adv., comp. of parvē, less, not so much, not.—
  nihilō minus, notwithstanding, not a whit the less, none the less.
- mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, I, dep., wonder at, wonder, be astonished.
- mīrus, -a, -um, [mīror], adj., strange, marvellous, astonishing.
- miser, -era, -erum, adj., wretched, unfortunate, pitiable.
- misericordia, -ae, [miser + cor], f., pity, compassion, mercy.
- miseror, -ārī, -ātus sum, [miser], 1, dep., lament, deplore.
- missus, -ūs, [mitto], m., a sending, despatching. — missū Caesaris, being sent by Caesar.
- missus, -a, -um, pf. pass. part. of mitto.
- mītissimē, adv., sup. of mītē, very gently, very kindly. vii 43.

- mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, 3, a., send, despatch; of weapons, throw, hurl, launch, shoot.
- mobilis, -e, [moveo], adj., fickle, changeable. iv. 5.
- mõbilitās, -tātis, [mōbilis], f., speed, rapid movement; fickleness, changeableness.
- mōbiliter, [mōbilis], adv., easily. moderor, -ārī, -ātus, [modus], 1, dep., check, manage, regulate.
- modestia, -ae, [modus], f., self-control; subordination. vii. 52.
- modo [modus], adv., only, even, just, at least; of time, lately, just now.—non modo,... sed etiam, not only,... but also.
- modus, -ī, m., manner, fashion, style, measure, amount.
- moenia, -ium, n. pl., walls (of a city), fortifications.
- moles, -is, f., mass, mound, dam.
- molestē, [molestus, troublesome], adv., with trouble or annoyance. ferre molestē, to be annoyed or vexed. ii. 1.
- molimentum, -i, n., effort, (great) exertion. i. 34.
- molitus, see molo.
- molliō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, [mollis], 4, a., soften, make easy. vii. 46.
- mollis, -e, adj., pliant, gentle, smooth; weak, yielding.
- mollitia, -ae (vii. 77) and
- mollitiēs, -ēī, (vii. 20), [mollis], f., weakness, irresolution.
- molō, -ere, -ui, -itum, 3, a., grind.
  i. 5.
- mömentum, -ī, [for movimentum, from moveo], n., influence, weight, importance, account.
- Mona, -ae, f., the island Anglesey in the Irish sea. v. 13.
- moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, 2, a., advise, warn, remind.

- mons, montis, m., a mountain, height. summus mons, top of the height, i. 22. radices montis, foot of the mountain or height. mora, -ae, f., delay.
- morātus, -a, -um, see moror.
- morbus, -ī, m., disease, sickness.
- Morinī, -ōrum, m. pl., a powerful Belgic tribe, on the sea coast to the north of the Somme and opposite Kent.
- morior, morī, mortuus sum, 3, dep., die.
- Moritasgus, -ī, m, chief of the Senones and brother of Cavarinus. v. 54.
- moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, [mora], 1, dep., delay, stay, stop, linger.
- mors, mortis, [morior], f., death. mortuus, -a, -um, pf. part. of morior.
- mos, moris, m., usage, custom, wont;—pl. customs; character, manners.
- Mosa, -ae, f., the Meuse, or Maas, which rises in the hills west of the Vosges, pursues a northerly course till joined by the Waal, then flows westward into the North Sea.
- motus, -ūs, [moveo], m., movement, disturbance; revolt, uprising.
- moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, 2, a., move, set in motion, remove. — castra movēre, to break camp mulier, -eris, f., woman.
- mūliō, -ōnis, [mūlus], m., a muleteer, mule-driver. vii. 45.
- multitūdō, -inis, [multus], f., a multitude, large body, great number.
- multō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [multa, a fine], I, a., fine, deprive of by way of fine. vii. 54.
- multo or multum [multus], adv., comp. plūs, sup. plūrimum,

much, by far, greatly. — multum posse or valère, to have great power, influence.

MULTUM

multum, adv., see multo.

multus, -a, -um, adj., comp. plūs, sup. plūrimus, much; pl. many.
— multō diē, when the day was far spent. — multum esse, to be much engaged. See IDIOMS.

mūlus, -ī, m., mule. vii. 45.

Mūnātius, -ī, m., L. Munatius Plancus, a lieutenant of Caesar's, appointed with M. Crassus and C. Trebonius to the command of three legions which wintered in Belgium. v. 24, 25.

mundus, -ī, m., the world, universe. vi. 14.

mūnīmentum, ī, [mūnio], n., fortification, defence. ii. 17.

mūniō, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -ītum, [moenia], 4, n. and a., fortify, protect, secure, guard. — munīre iter, build a road, vii. 58.

mūnītiō, -ōnis, [mūnio], f., a fortifying; the building of fortifications; the fortified works, intrenchments, defences.

mūnītus, -a, -um, see mūnio.

mūnus, -eris, n., duty, service, function; present, gift. — mūnus mīlitiae, military service, vi. 18.

mūrālis, e, [mūrus], adj., of or belonging to a wall, wall. — mūrāle pīlum, wall-pike, v. 40.

mūrus, -ī, m., wall.

musculus, -ī, [dimin. of mūs], a little mouse; in military language, a strongly built, wooden shed, used in sieges to shelter soldiers who were approaching the walls of the town.

mutilus, -a, -um, adj., maimed, broken. — mutilae cornibus, without horns, vi. 27.

mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [treq. of moveō], t, a and n., alter, change, vii. 45.

N.

nactus, -a, -um, see nanciscor.

**nam**, conj., *for*, introducing a confirmation or explanation.

Nammēius (or Nammējus), -ī, m., a Helvetian sent to ask Caesar's permission to pass through the Province. i. 7.

Namnētes, -um, m. pl., a Gallic tribe near the mouth of the Loire, invited by the Veneti to aid in opposing Caesar. Their chief town was Condivincum, now *Nantes*. iii. 9.

namque [nam + que], conj., for
indeed, for truly; and with good
reason, for.

nanciscor, -ciseī, nactus and nanctus sum, 3, dep., obtain, get, find, secure; gain, get hold of.

Nantuātes, -um, m. pl., a Gallic tribe south of Lake Geneva, in the region now called *Chablaix*.

Narbō, -ōnis, m., a town in the Province, now called *Narbonne*.

nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, 3, dep., be born, produced, reared; rise, spring.

Nasua, ae, m., a chief of the Suebi, with his brother Cimberius at the head of 100 cantons of the Suebi that resolved to cross the Rhine. i. 37.

nātālis, -e, [nātus], adj., natal, birth-. — diēs nātālis, birth-day. vi. 18.

nātiō, -ōnis, [nāscor], f., tribe, people, nation.

nātīvus, -a, -um, [nātus], adj., natural. vi. 10.

nātūra, -ae, [nātus, nāscor], f., ·
nature, character; natural features, situation. — nātūra flūminis, the current of the river,
iv. 17. nātūrā et opere (manū),
naturally and artificially.

- nātus, -ūs, [nāscor], (used only in abl. sing.), m., birth. — māiōrēs nātū, old men.
- nauta, -ae, [contracted from nā-vita], m., sailor, seaman.
- nautious,-a,-um,[nauta], nautical. nāvālis, -e, [nāvis], adj., naval. — nāvālis pūgna, sea-fight.
- nāvicula, -ae, [dim. of nāvis], f., a small vessel, boat, skiff. i. 53.
- nāvigātiō, -ōnis, [nāvigo], f., a voyage, sailing.
- nāvigium, -ī, [nāvigo], n., a vessel, boat. — speculātōrium nāvigium, spy-boat. iv. 26.
- nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [nāvis + ago], I, n. and a., sail, go by water.
- nāvis, -is, f., a ship, vessel. nāvis longa, war-ship, galley. nāvis onerāria, a transport.
- nāvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [(g)nāvus, husy], I, a., do with zeal. — nāvāre operam, act vigorously, do one's best. ii. 25.
- nē, (1) conj., that . . . not, lest, not to; after words of fearing, that; after words of beseeching, ordering, commanding, not to. nē quis, that no one. nē qua spēs, that no hope. dēterrēre nē, to frighten from.
- (2) adv., not, (a) in nē ... quidem, not ... even; the word emphasized is always put between nē and quidem. (b) In negative imperative sentences, not; as nē tribueret, he should not assign.
- -ne, enclitic interrog. particle, whether. -ne . . . an or -ne . . . -ne, whether . . . or.
- nec, conj., see neque.
- necessāriō [necessārius], adv., unavoidably, of necessity.
- necessārius, -a, -um, [necesse], adj., urgent, necessary, needful

- necessārius, -ī, m., [adj. used as noun], intimate friend, relative; pl., relatives, kinsmen.
- necesse, indecl. adj., necessary, unavoidable, inevitable, needful.
- necessitās, -tātis, [necesse], f., necessity, need, urgency, pressure.
- necessitūdō, -inis, [necesse], f., friendship, intimacy. i. 43.
- necne, conj., or not. i. 50.
- necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, I, a., put to death, kill, destroy.
- necubi, [nec + ubi], conj., that nowhere, lest anywhere. vii. 35.
- nefārius, -a, -um, [nefās], adj., wicked, atrocious.
- nefās [ne + fās], n., indecl., a crime against divine law, impious deed. nefās est, it is wrong, is not permitted. vii. 40.
- nēglegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum, [nec + lego], 3, a., slight, neglect, be indifferent to, despise.
- negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ne + āio, ājo], I, n. and a., deny, say . . . not or no, refuse; often = dicit non.
- negōtior, -ārī, -ātus sum, [negōtium], I, dep., transact or carry on business.
- negōtium, -ī, [nec + ōtium], n., business, enterprise, effort, labor.
   nihil negōtii or nōn quicquam negōtii, no trouble.
- Nemētes, -um, m. pl., a German tribe, living, in Caesar's time, west of the Rhine and north of the Triboces. Their capital was Noviomagus, now Spires (or Speier).
- nēmō, -inis, [nē + homō], c., no one, nobody.
- nēquāquam [nē + quāquam, anywhere], adv., not at all, by no means.
- neque or nec (in Caesar nec is not found before vowels), [nē +

que], adv., nor, and . . . not. — neque . . . neque or nec, neither . . . nor.

nē . . . quidem, see nē.

nēquīquam [nē + quīquam], adv., in vain, to no purpose.

Nervicus, -a, -um, adj., Nervian, of the Nervii. iii. 5.

Nervius, 1, m., a Nervian.—
Nervii, ōrum, pl., m., the Nervii, a leading tribe of Belgic Gaul, east of the Atrebates. Their capital was Bagacum, now Bavay. Caesar defeated them at the Sambre with great slaughter; but afterwards they joined the Eburones in an attack on Cicero's camp, and sent 5000 men to Alesia. ii. 15; v. 24, etc.

nervus, -ī, m., sinew, muscle. — pl. power, force.

neu, see neve.

neuter, -tra, -trum, gen. neutrīus, [ne + uter], pron, neither.

nēve, or neu, [nē + ve, or], conj.,
nor; and . . . not. — nēve . . .
nēve, neither . . . nor.

nex, necis, f., death by violence, slaughter. — vitae necisque potestas, power over life and death, absolute power.

nihil [nē + hilum, a trifle], n., indeel., nothing, nqt at all. See IDIOMS.

nihilō, abl. of degree of difference from nihilum, by nothing, none the . . .; as, nihilo minus, none the less.

nimis, adv., too much, excessively. vii. 36.

nimius, -a, -um, [nimis], adj., excessive, too much, too great. vii. 29.

nisi  $[n\bar{e} + s\bar{i}]$ , conj., if not, unless, except.

Nitiobroges or Nitiobriges, -um, m. pl., a tribe in Aquitania on the Garonne. Chief town, Agīnum, now Agen. vii. 7, et al.

nītor, nītī, nīsus or nīxus sum, 3, dep., strive, endeavor; rely upon.

nix, nivis, f., snow. vii. 8, 55.

nōbilis, -e, [nōsco], adj., noted, famous, noble.

nobilitas, -tatis, [nobilis], f., nobility; the nobles, men of rank.

nocēns, entis, pres. part. of noceo, used as adj., guilty; used as noun, a criminal, vi. o.

noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, 2, n., hurt, harm, injure, molest. — neque eīs nocērī pōsse, and that no harm could be done them, iv. 14.

noctū [nox], adv., by night, at

nocturnus, -a, -um, [noctū], adj., nightly, by night.

nodus, -ī, m., knot; node or knob on the joint of an animal, vi. 27.

nölö, nölle, nöluï, [ne + volo], irr., n. and a., be unwilling, not wish, not want. — nölï or nölïte, do not.

nomen, -inis, [nosco], n., name, title, reputation, renown; account. — suo nomine, on his (their) own account.

nominatim [nomino], adv., by name.

nomino, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [nomen], 1, a., name, call by name; mention, ii. 18.

non, adv., not, no.

nonāgintā, num. adj., ninety.

nondum [non + dum], adv., not yet.

nonnihil [non + nihil], adv., to some extent, somewhat. iii. 17.

nonnullus, -a, -um, [non + nullus], adj., some, several.

nonnumquam [non + numquam], adv., sometime, sometimes. nonus, -a, -um, [for novnus, from novem], adj., ninth.

Nōrēia (or Nōrēja), -ae, f., the chief town of the Nōrici, where the Romans were defeated by the Cimbri B. C. 113; now Neumarkt. i. 5.

Noricus, -a, -um, adj., of the Norici, Norican, i. 5; nom. sing. fem. as noun, a Norican woman, i. 53.

nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtum, 3, a., obtain a knowledge of, learn. In pf. tense and its derivatives, know, be acquainted or familiar with.

**nōsmet**, acc. pl. of **ego** with met added. See **met**.

noster, -tra, -trum, [nos], adj., our, our own. — m. pl., nostri as noun. our men. our side.

nötitia, -ae, [nösco], f., knowledge. nötus, -a, -um, part. of nöscö used as adj., known, well-known, familiar.

novem, indecl. num. adj., nine.

Noviodūnum, -ī, [Keltic word meaning Newtown], n., (1) a town of the Bituriges on the Loire, now Nouan, near Orléans, vii. 12, 14. (2) a town of the Aedui on the Loire, now Nevers, vii. 55. (3) a town of the Suessiones on the Aisne, now Soissons, ii. 12.

novitās, -tātis, [novus], f., novelty, rareness, strangeness.

novus, -a, -um, adj., new, fresh. Sup. novissimus. — novissimum agmen or novissimī (m. pl.), the rear. — novae rēs, a revolution.

nox, noetis, f., night. — prīmā noete, at nightfall, i. 27. — dē mediā noete (just) after, about, midnight. — multā noete, late at night, when the night was far spent.

noxa, -ae, [for nocsa from noceo], f., offence, crime. vi. 16.

nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūptum, 3, n., veil one's self; marry or wed a man. i. 18.

nūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [nūdus], 1, a., strip, expose, lay open or bare. nūdus, -a, -um, adj., naked, unprotected, bare.

nullus, -a, -um, gen. nullīus, dat. nullī, [nē + ullus], adj., none, no; as noun. no one. none.

num, interrog. particle, expects the answer No. — num etiam, etc., could he also? he could not, could he? i. 14.

nūmen, inis, [nuō, nod], n., power, majesty (of the gods), divinity. vi. 16.

numerus, -ī, m., number, amount, account.

Numidae, -ārum, [Greek, νομάs, wanderer], m. pl., the Numidians, a people living on the north coast of Africa, in the modern Algiers. See N. to p. 80, 9.

nummus, -ī, m., money, piece of money. v. 12.

numquam [nē+umquam], adv., never.

nunc, adv., now.

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [nūntius], I, a., \*tell, announce, send word, report. — quā rē nūntiātā, after the news of this. — nūntiātur, word is brought, it is reported.

nūntius, -ī, m., messenger; message, tidings.

nuper [for novum-per from novus], adv., lately, recently.

nusquam [nē + usquam], adv., nowhere, in no place. vii. 17.

nūtus, -ūs, [nuo, nod], m., nod, hint, command.

0.

- ob, prep. with acc. only, on account of, for. ob eam (hanc) causam, for this reason. ob eam rem, on that account, therefore. quam ob rem, wherefore.
- obaerātus, -a, -um, [ob + aes], adj., in debt; as noun, a debtor.
- obdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, [ob + dūco], 3, a., lead towards, prolong. ii. 18.
- obeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, [ob + eō], irr., a., attend to, perform. v. 33.
- obicio (or objicio), -icere, -iēci, -iectum, [ob + iacio], 3, a., throw or put in the way, place in front, expose.
- obiectus (or objectus), -a, -um, [obiciō], adj., lying in the way, situated between, opposite.
- obitus, -ūs, [ob + eo], m., destruction, death. ii. 29.
- oblātus, see offero.
- oblīquē [oblīquus], adv., slantingly, obliquely. iv. 17.
- obliquus, -a, -um, adj., oblique, slanting. vii. 73.
- **oblīviscor**, -līviscī, -lītus sum, 3, dep., forget (with gen. of thing forgotten).
- obsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ob + sacer, sacred], I, a., beseech in the name of all that is sacred, imflore, beg.
- obsequentia, -ae, [obsequor, comply], f., compliance. vii. 29.
- observō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ob + servo], I, a., observe, regard, watch, mark.
- obses, -idis, [obsideo], c., a hostage. Cf. N. to p. 51, 21.
- obsessiō, -ōnis, [obsideo], f., siege, blockade.
- obsessus, see obsideo.
- obsideo, -sidere, -sedī, -sessum,

- [ob + sedeo], 2, a., besiege, blockade, occupy.
- obsidiō, -ōnis, [obsideo], f., siege, blockade; oppression.
- obsīgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ob + sīgno, mark], I, a., seal. i. 39.
- obsīstō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum, [ob + sisto], 3, n., resist, with-stand. vii. 29.
- obstinātē [obstinātus, obstinō, from obsto], adv., firmly. v. 6.
- obstrictus, -a, -um, [part. of obstringo], bound, under obligation.
- obstringō, -stringere, -strinxī, -strictum, [ob + stringo, tie], 3, a., hind.
- obstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, [ob + struo, pile], 3, a., close or stop up.
- obtempero, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ob + tempero], 1, n., submit.
- obtestor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [ob + testor], I, dep., *implore*, *adjure* (with invocation of the gods).
- obtineō, -tinere, -tinuī, -tentum, [ob + teneo], 2, a., get possession of, obtain; hold, occupy, possess, inhabit.
- obveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, [ob + veniō], 4, n., fall in with, encounter, fall to the lot of.
- obviam [ob + via], adv., in the way, towards. obviam venīre, to come to meet, make an advance. vii. 28.
- occāsiō, -ōnis, [occido], f., opportunity, favorable moment; dash, surprise. vii. 45.
- occāsus, -ūs, [occido], m., a going down, setting. occāsus solis, sunset, ii. 2, et al.; the west, i. I, iv. 28.
- occidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsum, [ob + cado], 3, n., fall, vi. 37; of the sun, set, v. 13.
- occīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, [ob + caedo], 3, a., kill, slay.

- occultătio, -onis, [occulto], f., concealment. vi. 21.
- occultē [occultus], adv., secretly. vii. 83.
- occulto, āre, -āvī, -ātum, [freq. of occulo, cover, ob + colo], I, a., hide, conceal; keep secret.
- occultus, -a, -um, [part. of occulo, cover, ob + colo], adj., hidden, secret, concealed. in occultō, in a secluded place, in secret.
- occupātiō, -ōnis, [occupo], f., engagement, loccupation. occupātionēs reīpūblicae, business of state, iv. 16.
- occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ob + capio], I, a., seize, seize upon, get or take possession of, hold, engage.
   occupārī in (with abl.), to be engaged in, busy with.
- occurro, -currere, -curri (rarely -cucurri), -cursum, [ob+curro], 3, n., run to meet, meet; meet with, fall in with, find; encounter. ab nostris occurrebatur, our men arranged.
- Oceanus, -ī, m., the ocean, the sea, often referring to the Atlantic.
- Ocelum, -ī, n., a city of the Graioceli in the Cottian Alps, now *Usséau* (or *Oulx*), in Piedmont, west of Turin. i. 10.
- octāvus, -a, -um, [octo], adj., eighth.
- octingentī, -ae, -a, [octo + centum], adj., eight hundred.
- octo, indecl. adj., eight.
- octodecim, indecl. adj., eighteen.
- Octodūrus, -ī, m., chief city of the Veragri, on the river Dranse not far from its junction with the Rhone; now Martigny. iii. I.
- octonī, -ae, -a, [octo], distributive num. adj., eight each, eight at a time. vii 73, 75.

- oculus, -ī, m., the eye.
- ōdī, ōdisse, def., (only pf. and tenses formed from pf. in use; pf. translated as if present), hate.
- odium, -ī, [ōdī], n., hatred.
- offendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum, 3, a., harm, hurt, wound.
- offensio, -onis, [offendo], f., a hurting, wounding. i. 19.
- offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum, [ob + fero], irr. a., bring before, present, offer, confer, expose.
- officium, -ī, [for opificium, opus + facio], n., service, duty, allegiance. officium praestāre, to do one's duty. in, ab officiō, in, from allegiance.
- Ollovico, -onis, m., a king of the Nitiobroges. vii. 31.
- omittō, -mittere, -misī, -missum,
  [ob + mitto], 3, a., lay aside,
  throw away, neglect, pass over.
- omnīnō, [omnis], adv., in all, altogether, in general; after negatives = at all; with numerals = in all, altogether, only. nihil omnīno, nothing at all.
- omnis, -e, adj., every, all. Gallia omnis, Gaul as a whole.
- onerārius, -a, -um, [onus], adj., with a load. nāvis onerāria, transport-ship, freight-ship.
- onerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [onus], I, a., load. v. I.
- onus, -eris, n., load, burden, weight, cargo.
- opera, -ae, [opus], f., work, pains, aid, assistance. dare operam, to take pains.
- opīniō, -ōnis, [opīnor, think], f., belief, notion, good opinion, report, reputation, expectation. opīniō timōris, impression of fear. iūstitiae (gen.) opīniō, reputation for fair dealing. praeter opīniōnem, contrary to expectation. celerius omni opīniōne,

- sooner than any one had expected.

  oportet, oportere, oportuit, 2,
  impers., it is necessary, needful;
  (I, you, he, they) ought; it behooves; usually with infin. and
  acc.
- oppidānus, -a, -um, [oppidum], adj., of the town. m. pl. oppidānī, as noun, townspeople, inhabitants of the town.
- oppidum, -ī, n., a (fortified) town, walled town.
- oppōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, [ob + pōno], 3, a., place or set against or opposite; oppose.
- opportune [opportunus], adv., conveniently, seasonably.
- opportūnitās, -ātis, [opportūnus], f., fitness, favorable condition or situation, advantage.
- opportunus, -a, -um, [ob + portus, i. e. at or before the port], adj., fit, suitable.
- opprimō, primere, pressī, pressum, [ob + premo], 3, a., weigh down; overwhelm, crush, destroy; surprise.
- oppūgnātiō, -ōnis, [oppūgno], f., a storming (of a city), assault, attack, besieging.
- oppūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ob + pūgno], 1, a., attack, storm (a city or camp).
- ops, opis, f., power, might, help. pl. opēs, wealth, resources, means, influence, strength.
- optātus,-a,-um, (pf. part. of opto), adj., desired, agreeable. vi. 42.
- optimē [optimus], adv., sup. of bene, best, in the best manner, most excellently.
- optimus, see bonus.
- opus, n., indecl., necessity, need.—
  opus est, there is need, it is necessary; the thing needed is put
  either in the nom. or in the
  abl.

- opus, operis, n., work, labor; structure, fortification; siege-engine. māgnō opere or māgnopere, very much, exceedingly. quantō opere, how much, how deeply. tantō opere or tantopere, so much, so greatly, as.
- ōra, -ae, f., coast, shore. ōra maritima, sea-coast.
- ōrātiō, -ōnis, [ōro, speak], f., speech, words, address.
- ōrātor, -ōris, [ōro, speak], m., (lit. speaker), envoy. ōrātōris modō, as an ambassador, iv. 27.
- orbis, -is, m., circle. in orbem consistere, to form a circle (miliitary phrase), v. 33. orbis terrārum, the world, vii. 29.
- Orcynia, -ae, f., the Greek name for the Hercynian forest. vi. 24.
- ordō, -inis, m., row, company, order; rank; century (half a maniple); centurion. — ordinēs servāre, to keep the ranks.
- Orgetorix, -igis, m., Orgetorix, a prominent Helvetian, who formed a conspiracy with a view to the conquest of Gaul and becoming its king. On discovering the plot the Helvetii sought to bring him to trial, but he evaded judgment by suicide. i. 2, et seq.
- oriens, entis, (pres. part. of orior), adj., rising. orientem solem, the rising sun, i. e. the east.
- orior, orīrī, ortus sum, 4, dep., rise, arise, begin, spring from.—
  oriente sole, at sunrise, vii. 3.—
  ortā lūce, at daybreak, v. 8.
- ōrnāmentum, -ī, [orno], n., decoration, adornment, honor. i. 44, vii. 15.
- ōrnātus, -a, -um, part. of ōrno as adj., equipped. — sup. ōrnātissimus, completely equipped. iii. 14

ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, I, a., furnish, equip. vii. 33.

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ōs, mouth], 1, a., lit. speak), plead, beg, entreat. ortus, -ūs, [orior], m., rising. vii. 41.

ortus, see orior.

ōs, ōris, n., mouth, face, countenance.

Osismī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe in Brittany (*Bretagne*) that assisted the Veneti in the war with Caesar, B. C. 56. ii. 34, iii. 9, vii. 75.

ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tēnsum or tentum, [ob + tendo], 3, a., show, display, point out, set forth, declare.

ostentātiō, -ōnis, [ostento], f., display, show.

ostentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [freq. of ostendo], I, a., display, show. ōtium, -ī, n., rest, peace. vii. 66. ōvum, -ī, n., egg. iv. 10.

## Ρ.

P. with proper names = Publius. pābulātiō, -ōnis, [pābulum], f., a foraging, getting fodder.

pābulātor, -ōris, [pābulum], m., forager. v. 17.

pābulor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [pābulum], ī, dep., forage, seek fodder. pābulum, -ī, n., fodder, forage.

pācātus, -a, -um, (pf. part. of pāco), adj., peaceful, quiet.

pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [pāx], I, a., subdue, pacify.

pactum, -ī, n., bargain, agreement; manner. vii. 83.

Padus, .i., m., the Po, the largest river of Italy, which rises in the Cottian Alps, and after an easterly course of 400 miles empties into the Gulf of Venice. v. 24. Paemānī, -ōrum, m, a Belgic tribe east of the Meuse and south of the Aduatuci. ii. 4.

paene, adv., almost, nearly.

paenitet, -ēre, -uit, impers. 2, it repents. — eōs paenitet, they are sorry, regret. iv. 5.

pāgus, -ī, m., district, canton. The word still survives in "pays," as "Pays de Vaud" in Switzerland.

palam, adv., openly, publicly. palma, -ae, f., the palm of the hand,

the hand. vi. 26. palūs, -ūdis, f., marsh, swamp,

bog, morass.
palūster, -tris, -tre, [palūs], adj.,
marshy, swampy. vii. 20.

pandō, pandere, pandī, pānsum or passum, 3, a., stretch, stretch out. — passīs manibus, with outstretched hands.

pār, paris, adj., like, similar, equal, same. — pār atque, same as.

parātus, -a, -um, (pf. part. of paro), adj., ready, prepared, equipped

parcē [parcus], adv., sparingly. vii. 71.

parco, parcere, peperco and parso,
parcitum and parsum, 3, n.,
spare, give quarter (with dat.).
non parcitur, no quarter is given.

parēns, entis, [pario], c., father or mother, parent.

parentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [parens], I, n., (lit to make a solemn offering to the gods in honor of deceased parents or relatives, hence), avenge, take vengeance for the death of any one. vii. 17.

pāreō, pārēre, pāruī, pāritum and paritum, 2, n., obey, submit to, be subject to.

pariō, parere, peperī, partum and paritum, 3, a, bring forth, produce, obtain, get, acquire. Parīsiī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic people on the Seine; their capital was *Lutetia*, now Paris.

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, a., prepare, get ready; obtain, equip, intend; purchase, iv. 2.

pars, partis, f., part, portion, share, number; region, district; side, direction. — pars māior, the majority. — ūnā ex parte, on one side. — in omnēs partēs or in omnīs partīs, in every direction.

partim [old acc. of pars], adv., partly.

partior, partīrī, partītus sum, [pars], 4, dep., divide; part. partītus used in a pass. sense, vi. 6, 33; vii. 24.

partus, see pario.

parum, adv., too little, not enough.
parvulus, -a, -um, [parvus], adj.,
very small or young, trifling; as
noun, parvulus, -ī, m., a child.—
ab parvulīs, from early childhood.

parvus, -a, -um, adj., comp. minor, sup. minimus. small, trifling, insignificant. — quam minimum spatiī. as little time as possible, iii. 19.

passim [passus, from pando], adv., in all directions. iv. 14.

passus, -ūs, m., step, pace; as a measure of length reckoned from heel to heel (like our military step) = 2 ordinary steps = 5 Roman feet = 4 feet, 10½ inches by English measurement. — mīlle passuum, pl. mīlia passuum, a mile, = 5000 Roman feet = 4854 English feet.

passus, see pando.

patefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, [pateo + facio], 3, a., open; pass., patefīo, -fieri, -factus sum.

patēns, -entis, (pres. part. of pateo), adj., open.

pateo, patere, patuī, no supine, 2, n., be open, stand open, extend.

pater, -tris, m., a father. — pl. patrēs, fathers, forefathers.

patienter [patior], adv., patiently. vii. 77.

patientia, -ae, [patior], f., endurance, forbearance.

patior, patī, passus sum, 3, dep., suffer, bear, permit, endure

patrius, -a, -um, [pater], adj., ancestral, of (their) forefathers, ii. 15.

patronus, -ī, [pater], m., protector, patron. vii. 40.

patruus, -ī, [pater], m., a father's brother; uncle. vii. 4.

paucitās, -ātis, [paucus], f., fewness, small number.

paucus, -a, -um, adj., few, little. — pl. m., paucī, -ōrum, as noun, a few, only a few; pl. n., pauca, -ōrum, a few words, i. 44.

paulātim [paulum], adv., a little, gradually.

paulisper [paulum], adv., a short time.

paulō [properly abl. of degree of difference, from paulus], adv., (by) a little, just a little.

paululum [paulus], adv., a little, gradually. ii. 8.

paulum [properly neut. acc. of paulus], adv., a little.

paulus, -a, -um, adj., little.

pāx, pācis, f., peace. — pāce üti, to keep quiet.

pecco, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, n., do wrong. i. 47.

pectus, -oris, n., the breast. vii. 47.
pecunia, -ae, [pecus, cattle], f.,
money.

pecus, -oris, n., cattle.

pedālis, -e, [pēs], adj., measuring a foot, a foot thick. iii. 13.

pedes, -itis, [pēs], m., foot soldier; pl. peditēs, -um, infantry.

pedester, -tris, -tre, [pēs], adj.,
on foot.— pedestrēs copiae, infantry.— pedestre proelium, a
battle on land

peditātus, -ūs, [pedes], m., infantry.

Pedius, Q., -ī, m., Quintus Pedius, nephew and lieutenant of Caesar. He was also Caesar's heir, and consul with Augustus, B. C. 43, but soon died.

pēior, see malus.

pellis, -is, f., skin, hide.

pello, pellere, pepuli, pulsum, 3, a., drive out or off, defeat, conquer.

pendō, pendere, pependī, pēnsum, 3, a., weigh; pay.

penes, prep. with acc. only, in the power of, in the possession of.

penitus, adv., entirely, completely.

per, prep. with acc. only, through, by means of, by; in composition, through, thoroughly, very.

peragō, -agere, -ēgī, -āctum, [per + ago], 3, a., finish, complete.

perangustus, -a, -um, [per + angustus], adj., very narrow. vii. 15.

perceptus, see percipio.

percipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, [per + capio], 3, a., get, receive; hear.

percontātiō, -ōnis, [percontor, inquire], f., asking, questioning, inquiry.

percurrō, -currere, -cucurrī or -currī, -cursum, [per + curro], 3, n., run through; run along. iv. 33.

percussus, see percutio.

percutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussum, [per + quatio, shake], 3, a., strike down, kill. v. 44.

perdisco, -discere, -didici, no supine, [per + disco], 3, a., learn thoroughly, get by heart. vi. 14. perditus, -a, -um, (pf. part. of perdo, destroy), adj., abandoned, desperate; often used as noun.

perdűcő, -dűcere, -dűxī, -ductum, [per + dűco], 3, a., bring, conduct, convey; bring over, persuade, construct, prolong.

perendinus, -a, -um, [perendiē, day after to-morrow], adj., after to-morrow. v. 30.

pereō, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -itum, [per + eo], irr., n., perish, be lost.

perequitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [per + equito, ride], 1, a., ride about or around, ride through.

perexiguus, -a, -um, [per + exiguus], adj., very small. v. 15.

perfacilis, -e, [per + facilis], adj, very easy.

perfectus, see perficio.

perferō, ferre, -tulī, -lātum, [per + fero], irr., a., lit. carry through; convey, carry, bring, report; submit to, endure.

perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, [per + facio], 3, a., finish, complete, perform, carry out, cause.

perfidia, -ae, [perfidus], f., faithlessness, treachery.

perfringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctum, [per + frango], 3, a., break through.

perfuga, -ae, [perfugio], m., run-away, deserter.

perfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitum, [per + fugio], 3, n., flee, desert.

perfugium, -ī, [perfugio], n., place of refuge, refuge. iv. 38.

pergō, pergere, perrēxī, perrēctum, [per + rego], 3. n., go on, advance. iii. 18.

perīclitor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [perīculum], I, dep., try, risk, venture, be in danger.

perīculōsus, -a, -um, [perīculum], adj., dangerous.

- perīculum, -ī, n., trial, attempt; risk, danger.
- perītus, -a, -um, skilled, practised; familiar with.
- perlātus, see perfero.
- perlectus, see perlego.
- perlego, -legere, -lēgī, -lēctum, [per + lego], 3, a., read through. v. 48.
- perluō, -luere, -luī, -lūtum, [per + luo, wash], 3, a., wash thoroughly; pass. used reflexively, bathe. vi. 21.
- permāgnus, -a, -um, [per + māgnus], adj., very large or great. vii. 31.
- permaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, [per + maneo], 2, n., continue, stay, remain.
- permisceō, -miscēre, -miscuī, -mīxtum or -mīstum, [per + misceo, mix], 2, a., mix, mingle. vii. 62.
- permittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, [per + mitto], 3, a., grant, allow, permit; give over, entrust, permīxtus, see permisceo.
- permotus, see permoveo.
- permoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, [per + moveo], 2, a., rouse, greatly disturb, alarm; influence, induce.
- permulceō, -ēre, -sī, -sum [per + mulceo, soothe], 2, a., calm, soothe. iv. 6.
- permulsus, see permulceo.
- perniciës, ēī, [per + nex], f., ruin, destruction.
- perpaucī, -ae, -a, [per + paucus],
   adj., very few; often as noun, a
   very few.
- perpendiculum, -ī, [perpendo, weigh carefully], n., plumb line. — ad perpendiculum, perpendicularly, iv. 17.
- perpetior, -petī, -pessus sum, [per + patior], 3, dep., bear, endure, vii. 10.

- perpetuo [abl. of perpetuus],
   adv., continually, constantly; al ways, for ever.
- perpetuus, -a, -um, [per + peto], adj., continuous, unbroken, entire, perpetual. — in perpetuum, for ever, ever after.
- perquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, [per + quaero], 3, a., inquire about. vi. 9.
- perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, [per + rumpo, break], 3, a., break through, make a way through, demolish.
- perruptus, see perrumpo.
- perscrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, [per + scrībo], 3, a., write a full account of, report in writing.
- persequor, sequi, secutus, [per + sequor], 3, dep., follow up, pursue, avenge.
- persevērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [persevērus, very strict], I, n., continue steadfastly, persist.
- persolvō, -solvere, -solvī, -solvītum, [per + solvo], 3, a., pay in full, pay. poenās persolvere, to pay the penalty, i. 12.
- perspectus, see perspicio.
- perspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, [per + specio, look], 3, a., see, inspect, survey; perceive, ascertain, recognize, prove.
- perstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātum, [per+sto], I, n., stand firmly, persist. vii. 26.
- persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, [per + suādeo, persuade], 2, a. and n., convince, persuade, prevail upon, induce. mihi persuādētur, I am convinced.
- perterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territum, [per + terreo], 2, a., greatly alarm, frighten, terrify, dismay.

pertinācia, -ae, [pertināx, per + tenāx, from teneo], f., obstinacy. pertineō, -tinere, -tinuī, no su-

pine, [per + teneo], 2, n., reach out, extend; pertain to, concern, belong to, have to do with.

perturbātiō, -ōnis, [perturbo], f., confusion. iv. 29.

perturbo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [per + turbo, disturb], I, a., disturb greatly, disorder, confuse, embarrass.

pervagor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [per + vagor], I, dep., roam about. vii. 9.

pervenio, -venire, -veni, -ventum, [per + venio], 4, n., come, arrive, reach; fall to, vi. 19.

pēs, pedis, m., foot. - pedem referre, to retreat.

petītus, see peto.

petō, petere, petīvī or petiī, petītum, 3, a., aim at, attack; seek; try to get or reach, ii. 23; ask, request. - petere ut liceat, to ask permission.

Petrocorii, -orum, pl. m., a Gallic people north of the Dordogne (Duranius); their chief city was Vesunna, now Périgueux. vii. 75.

Petronius, -ī, m., Marcus Petronius, a centurion of the eighth legion who at Gergovia sacrificed his life to save his men. vii. 50.

Petrosidius, L., -ī, m., Lucius Petrosidius, a standard bearer in Caesar's army. v. 37.

phalanx, -angis, (Greek acc. pl. phalangas, i. 52), [φάλαγξ], compact host or mass, phalanx; see N. to p. 59, 9.

Pictones, -um, m., a Gallic people bordering on the Atlantic south of the Loire, who furnished Caesar with ships for his campaign against the Veneti. The name survives in Poitou.

pietās, -ātis, [pius, dutiful], f., duty to country or parents, loyalty, patriotism. v. 27.

PLACO

pīlum, -ī, n., a kind of javelin; pike. See p. 23.

pīlus, -ī, [pīlum], m., (usually joined with prīmus), a maniple of the triarii, composed of the oldest and bravest soldiers: for the triarii, though having the third place from the front in the usual battle order, held the first rank in honor. - prīmī pīlī centurio, the first centurion of the first maniple of the triarii, i. e. the first centurion of the legion in

pinna, -ae, f., feather; in military language, battlement, v. 40, vii. 72. Pirustae, -ārum, m., a tribe in Illyricum. See N. to p. 123, 15.

piscis, -īs, m., fish. iv. 10.

Pīsō, -ōnis, m., (1) L. Piso, consul B. C. 112; killed B. C. 107, when serving as lieutenant with the consul Cassius, who was utterly defeated by the Tigurini in the territory of the Allobroges, i. 12. (2) L. Calpurnius Piso Caesonius, consul with Aulus Gabinius, B. C. 58. and father-in-law of Caesar, i. 6, 12. - (3) M. Pupius Piso Calpurnianus, consul with M. Messala, B. C. 61, i. 2, 35. — (4) Piso, an Aquitanian killed in a skirmish with the Germans, iv. 12.

pix, picis, f., pitch.

placeo, placere, placui, placitum, 2, n., please, be agreeable or welcome to; often used impersonally, as Caesari placuit, Caesar resolved.

placide, [placidus], adv., quietly, calmly. vi. 8.

plāco, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, I, a., appease. vi. 16.

plānē, [plānus], adv., clearly, en-Plancus, I, m., Lucius Munatius Plancus, a lieutenant of Caesar's.

plānitiēs, -ēī, [plānus], f., a plain; level ground.

plēbs, plēbis, or plēbēs, -ēī, f., the plānus, -a, -um, adj., level, flat. common folk, the common people, the populace.

plēnē [plēnus], adv., fully, com pletely. iii. 3•

plēnus, -a, -um, adj., full. plērumque [acc. of plērusque], for the most part. mostly, generally, usually,

**plērusque,** -aque, -umque, [plē part, the majority, most. most; often in pl. as noun, plērīque, etc., the most, the greater rus, very many], adj., very many,

Pleumoxii, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe, dependents of the Nervii, Suessiones. v. 39. in West Flanders, east of the

plumbum, -ī, n., lead. — plumbum, tin, v. 12.

plūrēs and plūrimus, see mul-

pluteus, ī, m., a breastwork, made plūs and plūrimē, see multum. an advancing party, sometimes forward on rollers to protect with hides, of planks or wickerwork covered sometimes pushed

placed on walls or towers.

pōculum, -ī, n., drinking cup, beaker. vi. 28.

poena, -ae, f., compensation, punpenalty. ishment, penalty. — poenās pendere or persolvere, to pay the

pollex, pollicis, m., thumb, great toe. — digitus pollex, thumb, iii

polliceor, -licērī, -licitus sum, 2, dep., promise, offer.

> pollicitus, see polliceor. pollicitātiō, -ōnis, [polliceor], f.,

Pompēius (or Pompējus), Cn., sālus, and murdered in Egypt born B. C. 106, conquered by Caesar at the battle of Phari, m., Gneus Pompeius, Pompey, Caesar's father-in-law and rival;

pondus, ponders, ..., pendo, weight, just as our word "weight" from "weigh"], weight. pono, ponere, posui, positum, ent. — castra ponere, to pitch aside; appoint, station, regard; pitch; pass. to be situated, depend-3, a., place, put, lay down, set aside; appoint, station, regard; B. C. 48. See pp. 3-6. ondus, ponderis, n., camp, encamp.

**pōns**, pontis, m., bridge.

populātiō, -ōnis, [populor], .5. a laying waste, ravaging.

populor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, dep., lay waste, devastate, desolate.

populus, I, m., people (as a political whole).

porrigo), adj., latel.

porrigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctum, [por, = pro, + rego], 3, a., reach out, stretch forth, extend.

porro, adv., moreover, furthermore. v. 27.

porta, -ae, f., gate (of a city camp). -ātum, I, a.,

portō, -āre, -āvī, -carry, bring, convey. portorium, -I, [root por in porto, carry], n., toll, tax, cus (duties). See N. to p. 56, I. customs

portus, -ūs, [root por in porto], Itius, Boulogne. m., harbor, port, haven. - portus

poscō, gently. pine, 3, a., demand, ask poscere, poposci, no sufor

positus, -a, -um, pf. part. of pono, used as adj., situated, de-fendent.

possessiō, ·ōnis, [possīdo], f., possession.

possideō, sidēre, sēdī, sessum, [sedeo], 2, a., hold, occupy, possess. possīdo, sīdere, sēdī, sessum, [causat. of possideo], 3, a., take possession of. iv. 7.

possum, posse, potui, no supine, [potis, able + sum], irr., n., be, able; pres. = I can, impf. and pf. = I could. — multum, plūrimum posses, to have great, very great power.

post, adv., after, later; often with abl. of degree of difference, as anno post, a year later, the following year. — pancīs post diōbus, a few days later or after.

bus, a few days later or after.

post, prep. with acc. only, behind,
after.—post torgum, in the rear.
post mediam noctem, after mid-

posteā [post ea], adv., afterwards.
posteāquam [posteā + quam],
con]., after that, after.

posterus, -a, -nm, [post], adj, the following, next. — pl. m., posterī, -ōrum, as noun, posterity. — Comp. posterior, sup. postrēmus or postumus.

postpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, [post + pōno], 3, a., fut after or second, esteem less, lay aside.—omnibus rebus postpositīs, laying everything else aside,

postpositus, see postpono.

postquam [post + quam], conj.,

after that, after, when; post and
quam are often separated by interrening words.

postrēmō [abl. neut. of postrēmus, from posterus], adv., at last, finally.

postrīdiē [locative form from posterus + diē], adv., the next day.

— postrīdiē ēius diēī, the next day, the following day.

postulātum, ī, [postulo], n., de

mand, request.

postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, a ask, request, require, claim, drmand.

potēns, entis, [pres. part. of possum], adj., powerful.

potentātus, -ūs, [potens], m., power, headship, supremacy. i. 31. potentia, -ae, [potens], f., might, power, influence.

potestās, -ātis, [possum], f., might, power, lordship; possibility, opportunity, permission.

potior, potiri, potitus sum, [potis, able], 4, dep., get possession of, become master of, acquire, obtain, followed by either abl. or gen.; old form of gerundive, potiundi (ii. 7), potiundorum (iii. 6).

potius, [comp. of potis, able], adv., rather, more, preferably.
Sup. potissimum.

prae, prep. with abl. only, in comparison with (ii. 30), on account of (vii. 44).

praeacūtus, -a, -um, [prae + acūtus], adj., sharpened at the end, sharpened, pointed.

praebeo, praebēre, praebuī, praebitum, [prae + habeo], 2, a., hold forth, offer, show, furnish, present (to view).

praecaveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautum [praeca + caveo], 2, n.

tum, [prae + caveo], 2, n., guard against take precautions.

1. 38.

praecēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum, [prae + cēdo], 3, a., go before; surpass. i. i.

praeceps, cipitis, [prae + caput], adj., headlong, with great

- speed, head over heels; steep, precipitous.
- praeceptum, -ī, [praecipio], n., teaching, counsel; order, command, instructions.
- praecipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, [prae+capio], 3, a., order, direct, instruct; suspect, vii. 9.
- praecipitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [praeceps], I, a., hurl headlong, fling.
- praecipue [praecipuus], adv., especially, specially, particularly.
- praecipuus, -a, -um, [praecipio], adj., special, particular. v. 54.
- praeclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, [prae + claudo], 3, a., close, block. v. o.
- praecō, -ōnis, m., herald, crier. v. 51.
- Praeconinus, see Valerius.
- praecurrō, -currere, -cucurrī or
  -currī, -cursum, [prae + curro],
  3; n., run forward, outstrip.
- praeda, -ae, [for praehenda, from praehendo], f., lit. that which is caught: booty, spoil.
- praedicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [prae + dico], I, a. and n., make known, assert, declare, proclaim, announce; boast, i. 44.
- praedor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [praedō, plunderer], I, dep., pillage, plunder, get booty.
- praedūcō, -dūcerē, -dūxī, -ductum, [prae + dūco], 3, a., draw before, build before.
- praefectus, see praeficio.
- praefectus, -ī, [praeficio], m., officer, leader, commander, of troops in general, vii. 76; of auxiliary troops, i. 39, iii. 7, iv. 22; of cavalry, cavalry captain, iii. 26, iv. 11, vii. 66.
- praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, [prae + fero], irr., a., put before, prefer.

- praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, [prae + facio], 3, a., put over, place over or in command of, appoint.
- praefigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum,
   [prae + figo, fasten], 3, a., fix or
   place in front sudibus praefixīs, by driving stakes in front.
- praemetuō, -metuere, -metuī, no supine, [prae + metuo, fear], 3, a. and n., fear for, be anxious. vii. 49.
- praemittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, [prae + mitto], 3, a., send forward, send before or in advance.
- praemium, -i, [lit. what one gets before or better than others, from prae + emo], n., reward.
- praeoccupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [prae + occupo], 1, a., take possession of beforehand, preoccupy; gain complete control of, vi. 41.
- praeparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [prae + paro], I, a., make ready beforehand, prepare.
- praepono, -ponere, -posui, -positum, [prae + pono], 3, a., set over, place in command of.
- praerumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī,
  -ruptum, [prae+rumpo, break],
  3, a., break, break off.
- praeruptus, -a, -um, [pf. part. of praerumpo], adj., steep, precipitous.
- praescrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī,
  -scrīptum, [prae + scrībo], 3, a.,
  order, direct, command.
- praescrīptum, -ī, [praescrībo], n., order, instructions. i. 36
- praesēns, -entis, (pres. part. of
   praesum), adj., at hand, present.
  in praesentia (sc. tempora), for
   the present, at hand, for the moment.

praesentia, -ae, [praesēns], f., presence, v. 43. For in praesentia, see praesēns.

praesentiō, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum, [prae + sentio], 4, a., perceive beforehand.

praesēpiō, -sēpīre, -sēpsī, -sēptum, [prae + sēpio, fence in], 4, a., fence in close, block up. vii. 77. praesēptus, see praesēpio.

praesertim [prae + sero, join], adv., especially, particularly.

praesidium, I, [praeses, guard], n., guard, garrison, protection; fortress, redoubt.

praestō, stāre, stitī, stitum, [prae + sto], I, a. and n., show, display, supply; excel, surpass; discharge, perform. Impers, praestat, it is preferable, it is better.—officium praestāre, to do one's duty.

praestō, adv., at hand. — praestō esse, to meet. v. 26.

praesum, -esse, -fuī, no supine, [prae + sum], irr., n., be or preside over, be at the head of, have command of.

praeter, prep. with acc. only, beyond, except, contrary to.

praetereā [praeter + ea], adv., besides.

praetereō, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -itum,
[praeter + eo], irr., a and n.,
pass over, pass, go by.

praeteritus, see praetereo.

praetermittō, -mittere, -mīsī,
-missum, [praeter + mitto], 3,
a., pass over, let slip or go by.

praeterquam [praeter + quam], adv., except, beyond, besides.

praetor, -ōris, [for praeitor, from praeëo], m. (1) general, commander, i. 21. (2) praetor, a Roman magistrate whose duties were judicial; judge. The praetor urbanus decided cases between

Roman citizens, the *praetor pere*grinus cases between citizens and foreigners.

praetōrius, -a, ·um, [praetor], adj., of or belonging to the commander, praetorian. — praetōria cohors, general's cohort, general's body-guard. — porta praetōria, the gate of the camp on the side facing the enemy, directly opposite the porta decumāna.

praeūro, -ūrere, -ūssī, -ūstum,

[prae + ūro], 3, a., burn at the end. praeūstus, -a, -um, (pf. part. of praeūro), adj., burnt at the end (in order to make hard).

praevertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, [prae + verto], 3, a., outstrip, anticipate (in order to hinder). vii. 33.

prāvus, -a, -um, adj., bad, wicked. vii. 39.

premō, premere, pressī, pressum, 3, a., press, harass, oppress; pass., be hard pressed, weighed down or oppressed, be in need or in danger.

prendō (for prehendo), prendere, prendī, prēnsum, 3, a., take, grasp. i. 20.

pretium, -ī, n., price, value.

prex, precis, f., generally used in plural, prayer, entreaty, supplication; curse.

prīdiē [root, pri, in prior, + diē], adv., the day before.

prīmipīlus, -ī, [prīmus + pīlus],
 m., chief centurion; = prīmus
 pīlus. See pīlus.

prīmō [abl. of prīmus], adv., at first, in the first instance.

prīmum [acc. of prīmus], adv., first, in the first place.— quam prīmum, as soon as possible.— cum prīmum, as soon as.

prīmus, -a, -um, adj., first, foremost. Compared, prior, prīmus. — prīmā lūce, at daybreak. — prīmā nocte, at nightfall.

prīnceps, -ipis, [prīmus + capio], as adj., first, chief, at the front; as noun, m., head man, chief, prince.

prīncipātus, -ūs, [prīnceps], m., chief authority (in a state); headship, leadership.

prior, -us, adj., former, previous, first; pl. m., priores, as noun, those in advance, ii. 11. Sup. primus.

prīstinus, -a, -um, [prior], adj., former, old.

prius [prior], adv., before, sooner, earlier.

priusquam [prius + quam], conj., before, sooner than; prius and quam are often separated by intervening words.

prīvātim [prīvātus], adv., privately, individually, as individuals (opposed in meaning to pūblicē).

prīvātus, -a, -um, [prīvo, set apart from the state], adj., private; as noun, m., private individual.

prō, prep. with abl. only, in front of, before; for, in behalf of; in proportion to; as, on account of. See IDIOMS.

probō, āre, -āvī, -ātum, [probus],
 I, a, approve, think highly of;
 show to be worthy, v. 44; prove,
 v. 27.

procedo, -cedere, -cessi, -cessum, [pro + cedo], 3, n., advance, press forward.

prōclīnō, āre, āvī, ātum, [pro + clīnō, bend], ī, a., bend or lean forward; pf. pass. part., tottering to its fall, vii. 42.

prōcōnsul, -ulis, [pro + cōnsul], m., a proconsul, one who, having held the office of consul, was assigned to the government of a province. iii. 20, vi. 1. procul, adv., at a distance, from afar, far off.

prōcumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, -cubitum, [pro + cumbo, cubo, lie down], 3, n., fall, sink down, be beaten down; lie down, vi. 27.

prōcūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [pro + cūro], 1, a., look after, have charge of. vi. 13.

prōcurrō, -currere, -cucurrī or -currī, -cursum, [pro + curro], 3, n., rush forward, hasten forward.

prodeo, -ire, -ivi or -ii, -itum,
 [pro + eo], irr., n., advance, come
 out or forth.

prodesse, see prosum.

prōditiō, -ōnis, [prōdo], f., a betraying, treachery.

proditor, -oris, [prodo], m., traitor, betrayer. vi. 23.

proditus, see prodo.

prodo, -dere, -didi, -ditum, [pro + do], 3, a., give forth, make known; transmit; betray, surrender.

prōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, [pro + dūco], 3, a., bring out, lead forth: cxtend, prolong.

productus, see produco.

proelior, -ārī, -ātus sum [proelium], 1, dep., fight.
proelium, -ī, n., battle, combat, en-

gagement.
profectio, -onis, [proficiscor], f.,

departure, setting out.

profectus, see proficio.
profectus, see proficiscor.

profectus, see professor. profero, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, [pro

+ fero], irr., a., bring out, bring forth.

proficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectum,
 [pro + facio], 3, a., advance;
 effect, gain.

proficiscor, ficise, fectus sum, [pro + facio, faciscor], 3, dep., set out, depart, proceed.

profiteor, -fitērī, -fessus sum, [pro + fateor, confess], 2, dep., profess, declare, promise.

profiligo, are, avi, atum, [pro +
filigo, strike], i, a., put to flight,
rout.

prōfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, -flūxum, [pro+fluo], 3, n., flow from, rise (of a river). iv. 10.

profugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitum, [pro + fugio], 3, n., flee, escape.

prōgnātus, -a, -um, [pro+(g)nātus, from (g)nāscor], adj., sprung from.

progredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, [pro + gradior, step], 3, dep., advance, go forward, proceed.

progressus, see progredior.

prohibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitum, [pro + habeo], 2, a., hold, restrain, keep off; cut off, shut off.

proicio (or projicio), -icere, -iecī,
 -iectum, [pro + iacio], 3, a.,
 throw, throw away; fling, cast;
 reject.

proinde [pro + inde], adv., henceforth, therefore.

prōmineō, -minere, -minuī, no supine, 2, n., bend forward. vii. 47.

promiscue [promiscuus, pro +
 misceo, mix], adv., in common,
 promiscuously.

promissus, -a, -um, (pf. part. of
 promitto), adj., long, flowing (of
 hair). v. 14.

prōmōtus, see promoveo.

prōmoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, [pro + moveo], 2, a., move or push forward.

prōmptus, -a, -um, [pf. part. of prōmo, bring forward], adj., ready. iii. 19.

prōmuntūrium, -ī, [prōmineo], n., headland. iii. 12.

prone [pronus], adv., bending forward, leaning forward. iv. 17.

prönüntiö, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [pro + nūntio], 1, a., tell, announce, declare. — prönüntiātur, notice is given.

prope [comp. propius, sup. proximē], adv., near, nearly, almost; often followed by the acc., near.—proximē or proxumē, nearest, next, very near; last, latest, most recently.

propello, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum, [pro + pello], 3, a., drive away, put to flight, rout, repel, defeat.

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [properus, quick], I, a. and n., hurry, make haste, hasten.

propinquitās, -ātis, [propinquus], f., nearness, vicinity; near approach, relationship.

propinquus, -a, -um, [prope], adj., near, neighboring; pl. m. and f., as noun, relatives.

propior, -us, sup. proximus, [propis, prope], adj., positive wanting, nearer. — proximus, -a, -um,
nearest, next, last, of space or
time. — proximā nocte, on the
following night.

propius, see prope.

prōpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, [pro + pōno], 3, a., put forward, present; declare, explain; promise, intend; raise, ii. 20.

propositus, see propono.

prōprius, -a, -um, adj., one's own, particular, peculiar.

propter, prep. with acc. only, on account of, in consequence of.

proptereā [propter + ea], adv.,
for this reason, therefore. — proptereā quod, because; see N. to p.
47, 6.

prōpūgnātor, -ōris, [prōpūgno], m., combatant, defender. vii. 25.

propugno, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [pro + pūgno], I, n., fight, attack.

- prōpulsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [freq. of propello], 1, a., drive off, ward off, repel.
- prōra, -ae, f., prow, forepart of a ship. iii. 13. [down.
- prōruō,-ere,-uī,-utum, 3, a., hurl prōsequor,-sequī,-secūtus sum, [pro+sequor], 3, dep., follow up or after, pursue; address.
- prospectus, -ūs, [prospicio], m.,
  view, sight. in prospectū, in
  sight, visible, v. 10.
- prospicio, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, [pro + specio, look], 3, a., look out; provide for.
- prosterno, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātum, [pro + sterno, scatter], 3, a., destroy. vii. 77.
- prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, no supine, irr., n., be of advantage to. vi. 40.
- protego, -tegere, -text, -tectum,
   [pro + tego], 3, a., cover, protect.
   v. 44.
- proterreo, -ere, -ui, -itum, [pro + terreo], 2, a., frighten away, scare off.
- prōtinus [pro + tenus], adv., forthwith, at once, immediately. prōturbō, āre, -āvī, -ātum, [pro
- proturbo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [pro + turbo, disturb], 1, a., drive away, repulse.
- provectus, see proveho.
- proveho, -vehere, -vēxī, -vēctum, [pro + veho], 3, a., carry forward: pass provehor, -vehī, -vēctus sum, often used in a middle sense, proceed, drive, sail, sail along.
- provenio, -venīre, -venī, -ventum, [pro + venio], 4, n., come forth; grow, v. 24.
- proventus, ·ūs, [provenio], m., result, issue, outcome.
- provideo, -videre, -vidi, -visum,
  [pro + video], 2, a., foresee, perceive, provide.

- prōvincia, -ae, f., province, subject territory; in Caesar often the Province, i. e. that part of Gaul subdued by the Romans before Caesar's campaigns. It was bounded on the north by the upper part of the Rhone, on the west by the Cévennes Mts. and the Upper Garonne, and on the south by the Mediterranean. See p. 38 and map.
- provincialis, -e, [provincia], adj.,
   of or belonging to the province.
   vii. 7.
- provisus, see provideo.
- prōvolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [pro + volo, fly], I, n., dash forth. ii. 19. proximē, proxumē, see prope.
- proximus, -a, -um, see propior.
- prūdentia, -ae, [prūdens, which
  is contracted from prō-vidēns,
  far-seeing], f., foresight, prudence.
  ii. 4.
- Ptianiī, -ōrum, pl. m., a tribe in Aquitania south of the Tarusates; the name perhaps survives in the town *Pau*.
- pūberēs, -um, [adj. pūbēs used as noun], pl. m., adults. v. 56.
- pūblicē [pūblicus], adv., in the name of the state, as a state, opposed in meaning to prīvātim.
- pūblicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [pūblicus], I, a., make public; confiscate.
- pūblicus, -a,-um, [contracted from populicus, from populus], adj., of or belonging to the state, public, common. lītterae pūblicae, state documents, v. 47. pūblicum consilium, state decision.
- **Publius, -ī,** a Roman praenomen.
- pudet, pudere, puduit or puditum est, 2, impers. form of pudeo, it causes a feeling of shame, one is or feels ashamed. vii. 42.

pudor, -ōris, [pudeo], m., shame, sense or feeling of shame.

puer, puerī, m., child, boy.

puerIlis, -e, [puer], adj., of a child or boy. — puerIli aetāte, while a child, during the age of childhood. vi. 18.

pūgna, -ae, f., fight, combat, battle. pūgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, [pūgna], I, n., fight, combat, engage. - pūgnātum est, the battle raged.

pulcher, -cra, -crum, adj., beautiful, vii. 15; noble, vii. 77.

Puliō, -ōnis, m., a centurion, the rival of Vorenus. v. 44.

pulsus, see pello.
pulsus, -ūs, [pello], m., stroke.
iii. 13.

pulvis, pulveris, m., dust. iv. 32. puppis, -is, f., stern, hinder part of a ship, iii. 13, 14.

purgō, āre, āvi, ātum, [for pūrigo, from pūrum + ago], I, a., clean; free from blame, excuse.—
suī purgandī causā, in order to excuse themselves.

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, a., think, consider, decide.

Pyrenaeus, -2, -um, [Greek word], adj., in Pyrenaei montes, the Pyrenees, the mountain range dividing France from Spain.

#### Q.

Q. with names = Quintus.

quā [abl. fem. of quī, originally sc. viā or parte], adv., where; as far as, vii. 36.

qua, nom. sing. fem., and neut. pl., of the indefinite pron., quis or quī.

quadrāgēnī, -ae, -a, [quadrāgintā], num. distributive adj., forty each.

quadrāgintā, adj., indecl., forty.

quadringenti, -ae, -a, [quattuor + centum], adj., four hundred.

quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, 3, a., seek or look for, ask, inquire.

quaestiō, -ōnis, [quaero], f., inquiry; examination, investigation.

quaestor, -ōris, [quaero], m., (1)
questor, state-treasurer, the lowest
in rank of the great officers of
state. (2) quarter-master, an officer accompanying the army on
campaigns in charge of money
and supplies, sometimes also
detailed for military service in
charge of troops.

quaestus, -ūs, [quaero], m., getting money, gain. vi. 17.

quālis, -e, [quis], interrogative adj., of what sort? what sort of?

quam [quis], adv., how much, how; with superlatives (with or without possum), as possible; after comparatives and comparative expressions, than, as; with expressions of time, after.—quam vetus, how old.—quam diū, as long as.— nāvēs quam plūrimās, as many ships as possible.—quam celerrimē, as quickly as possible.—post diem quartum quam, the fourth day after. See IDIOMS.

quamobrem [quam+ob+rem], adv., wherefore.

quamvīs [quam + volo], adv., (lit. as or however much yoù will), however much or many. — quamvīs paucī, no matter how few, iv. 2.

quando, adv., ever, at any time. iii. 12.

quantō [abl. of degree of difference, from quantus], adv., by how much.—quantō...tantō, as ... so.

quantopere [quantus + opus],
 adv., how much, how deeply or
 greatly.

quantum [acc. of quantus], adv., how much, how far, as far as.

quantus, -a, -um, adj., how great, how much, how large; after tantus, as; tantum — quantum, so much (or far) — as; as noun with partitive gen., quantum bonī, how much advantage; quantum agrī, as much land, etc.

quantusvīs, quantavīs, quantumvīs, [quantus + volo], adj., however great, no matter how great. v. 28.

quāre [quā + rē], adv., wherefore, why; often = propter quod, as in i. 14, or propter quās (rēs or causās), as in i. 33.

quartus, -a, -um, [quattuor], adj., fourth.

quasi [quam  $+ s\bar{i}$ ], conj., as if. vii. 38.

quattuor, adj., indecl., four.

quattuordecim [quattuor + decem], adj., indecl., fourteen.

**que**, conj., and, always appended to another word, which in construction belongs after it.

quemadmodum [quem + ad + modum], adv., in what way, how. queror, querī, questus sum, 3, dep., complain, lament.

questus, see queror.

quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., who, which; at the beginning of a clause often best rendered by a personal or demonstrative pron., with or without and; when with the subj. expressing cause, since he (or they), because he (or they); when with the subj. expressing characteristic result, often rendered as, so that he (it, they), that he (it, they), etc. Cf. p. 378. —idem quī, the same as.

quī, quae or qua, quod, indef. pron., any, any one, or anything, used both as adj. and as noun. — sī quī, if any one.

quicquam, see quisquam.

quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, indef. pron., whoever, whatever, whichever.

quīdam, quaedam, quoddam and quiddam, indef. pron., a certain, a certain one; pl. some, certain.

quidem, adv., indeed, at least. — nē . . . quidem, not even; the word emphasized is always placed between nē and quidem.

quiës, -ētis, f., rest, repose, quiet.

quiētus, -a, -um, [part. of quiēsco, from quiēs], adj., at rest, calm, quiet, peaceful.

quīn [old abl. quī + nē], conj., that not, but that, without; after words expressing doubt or suspicion, that; after retineo, prohibeo, etc., trans. by from with a participle. — quīn etiam, moreover.

quīnam, quaenam, quodnam, interr. pron., who pray? what then? used as noun (= uter), which of the two, v. 44.

quīncunx, -uncis, [quīnque + ūncia], f., a quincunx, i. e. an arrangement of trees or other objects like the five spots on the dice (quincunx), thus:

quindecim [quinque + decem], indecl. adj., fifteen.

quingenti, -ae, -a, [quinque + centum], adj., five hundred.

quīnī, -ae, -a, num. distributive adj., five each, five at a time. quīnquāgintā, indecl. adj., fifty.

quinque, indecl. adj., five.

quintus, -a, -um, [quinque], adj., fifth.

Quintus, -ī, m., a Roman praenomen.

quis, quae, quid, interr. pron., who? which? what? — Neut. quid, with partitive gen., quid consilii, what plan? etc.; neut. quid, as adverbial acc. (= cur), why? quid sectāminī, why do ye pursue?

quis, quae or qua, quid, indef. pron., any one or anything, any. — sī quis, if any one. — nē quis, that not any one = that no one. — Neut. quid, with partitive gen., any; as, sī quid cōnsiliī, if any plan.

quispiam, quaepiam, quodpiam and quidpiam, indef. pron., some, any, some one.

quisquam, quaequam, quicquam, indef. pron., any one, anything.

quisque, quaeque, quidque or quodque, indef. pron., each, every, every one. — With superlatives quisque = all, the adj. being translated as positive; as, optimus quisque, all the nobles.

quisquis, quaequae, quicquid or quodquod, indef. rel. pron., whoever, whatever.

quīvīs, quaevīs, quidvīs or quodvīs, [qui + volo], indef. pron., any one you please, any.

quō, see quī.

quō [dat. or abl. of quī], adv.,
(I) relative and interrogative
adv., whither, where; (2) indefinite adv., after sī and nō, to any
place, at any point, anywhere.

quō [abl. of quī], final conj., used especially with comparatives and followed by subj., in order that, that, that thereby. quō minus, that not, often best trans. by from with a participle.

quoad [for quod ad, ad + quod], conj., as long as; until, till.

quod [acc. of quī], conj., because, inasmuch as, supposing that, as to or in regard to the fact that, so far as. — proptereā quod, because; see N. to p. 47, 6. — quod sī, but if, now if.

quō minus, see quō.

quoniam [quom, old form of cum, + iam], conj., since, seeing that, because.

quoque, conj., following the emphatic word of a clause, also, too.
quōque, abl. of quisque, which see.

quoque = et quo.

quōqueversum and quōqueversus, [quōquō+versus], adv., in every direction, in all directions.

quot, indecl. adj., how many.

quotannīs [quot + abl. pl. of annus], adv., yearly, every year. quotiēns [quot], adv., how often, as often as.

#### В.

rādīx, -īcis, f., root; with montis or collis, foot. — rādīcēs montis, the foot or base of the height.

rādō, rādere, rāsī, rāsum, 3, a., shave. v. 14.

rāmus, -ī, m., branch, bough (of a tree).

rapiditās, -ātis, [rapidus, swift], f., swiftness. iv. 17.

rapīna, -ae, [rapio, seize], f., pillage, plundering. i. 15.

rārus, -a, -um, adj., not thick; few, scattered, in small parties.

rāsus, see rādo.

ratiō, -ōnis, [reor, reckon], f., reckoning, calculation, account;

plan, theory, method, science; reason, ground.

ratis, -is, f., raft.

Rauricī, -ōrum, pl. m., a tribe near the Rhine in the vicinity of Bâsle, that joined the Helvetii in their great migration. i. 1, etc.

re-, red-, an inseparable particle, used only in composition, again, back.

rebelliō, -ōnis, [re + bellum], f., renewal of fighting, uprising.

recēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, [re + cēdō] 3, n., go back, with-draw. v. 43.

recēns, -ēntis, adj., recent, late, fresh.

recēnseō, -cēnsēre, -cēnsuī, -cēnsum and cēnsītum, [re+cēnseo], 2, a., review. vii. 76.

receptāculum, -ī, [recipio], n., place of shelter, retreat. vii. 14.

receptus, see recipio.

receptus, -ūs, [recipio], m., drawing back, retreat.

recēssus, -ūs, [recēdo], m., a going back, receding. — recēssum dare, to give a chance to draw back, retreat, v. 43.

recidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsum, [re + cado], 3, n., fall back, return. vii. I.

reciperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [re + capio], I, a., get back or again, recover.

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, [re + capio], 3, a., take back, get back, receive, recover, win; admit; retreat. — sē recipere, to retreat. — recipere in dēditiōnem, to admit to a surrender, receive into submission.

recitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [re + eito, quote], 1, a., read aloud. v 48.

reclīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [re + clīno, lean], I, n., lean back; pf.

part. reclinātus, leaning back, vi. 27.

rēctē [rēctus], adv., rightly, properly.

rēctus, -a, -um, [rego], adj., straight, direct.

recuperō, āre, āvī, ātum, [re + capio], 3, a., get back, regain, recover.

recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [re + causa], I, a., refuse, decline, shrink; when followed by quō minus or quīn with the subj. these are to be trans. by to with the infin.

rēda, -ae, [Keltic word], f., wagon (with four wheels).

redactus, see redigo.

redditus, see reddo.

reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, [red + do], 3, a., give back, restore, return; render, dispense.

redēmptus, see redimo.

redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, [red + eo], irr., n., go back, return; sink back, vii. 54; be reduced, v. 48; fall to the lot of, be referred, vi. 11.

redigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum, [red + ago], 3, a., drive back, reduce; render, make, iv. 3, ii. 27.

redimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, [red + emo], 3, a., buy back, purchase; farm (revenues).

redintegro, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, [red + integro, make whole], 1, a., commence again, renew; revive.

reditiō, -ōnis, [redeo], f., a going back, returning. i. 5.

reditus, -ūs, [redeo], m., a returning, return.

**Redones**, -um, m. pl., a Gallic people in Brittany (Bretagne); the name survives in the town *Rennes*.

redūcō, dūcere, dūxī, dūctum, [re + dūco], 3, a., lead back, bring or conduct back; draw back; pull back, vii. 22; prolong back, vii. 72.

refectus, see reficio.

- referō, ferre, -tulī, -lātum, [re+fero], 3, a., bring or carry back; report, announce. pedem referre, retreat. gratiam referre, make return, requite.
- reficio, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, [re + facio], 3, a., repair, refit; refresh.
- refrāctus, see refringo.
- refringo, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctum, [re + frango], break, break down.
- refugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitum, re + fugio], 3, n. and a., flee back or away, retreat, escape.
- regiō, -ōnis, [rego, keep straight], f, direction, line; boundary; region, tract, territory. rēctā regione, in the direct line, parallel with, vi. 25.
- rēgius, -a, -um, [rēx], adj. kingly, royal. vii. 32.
- rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [rēgnum], I, n. and a., be king, reign. v. 25.
- **rēgnum**, -**i**, [rēx], n., kingship, sovereignty; absolute power or authority.
- regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum, regulate, manage, iii. 13; conduct, vi. 17.
- regredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, [re + gradior, step], 3, dep., step back, withdraw. v. 44.
- rēiciō (or rējicio), -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, [re + iacio], 3, a., hurl back; drive back, repulse; throw away, i. 52.
- rēiectus, see rēicio.
- relanguēscō, -ere, -uī, no supine, [re + languēsco], 3, n., become enfeebled or enervated. ii. 15.
- relātus, see refero.
- relēgō, -āre, -āvī, ātum, [re +

- lēgo, depute], I, a.. banish, remove. v. 30.
- relictus, see relinquo.
- religiō, -ōnis, [re + root lig in ligo, bind], f., religious scruple, religious feeling or obligation. See IDIOMS.
- relinquō, -linquere, -līquī, -lictum, [re + linquō, quil], 3, a., leave, leave behind.
- reliquus, -a, -um, [relinquo], adj, remaining, left, the rest. nihil esse reliqui, that nothing is left. in reliquum tempus, for all time to come.
- remaneō, -manēre, -mānsi, no supine, [re + maneō], 2, n., remain, stay behind.
- rēmēx, -igis, [rēmus + ago], m., rower. iii. 9.
- Rēmī, -ōrum, m. pl., a leading Gallic tribe, situated about the headwaters of the Aisne; capital, Durocortorum, now *Rheims*. They sided with Caesar, and were rewarded by him with great privileges.
- rēmigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [rēmēx], I, n. and a., row. v.
- remigrō, -āre, -āvī, no supine, [re + migro, remove], I, n., move back, return.
- reminiscor, -miniscī, no pf., no supine, [re + root men in mēns], 3, dep., remember, recollect, followed by the gen. i. 13.
- remissus, -a, -um, [remitto], adj., relaxed; comp. remissior, less severe, v. 12.
- remittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, [re + mitto], 3, a., send back, give up; relax.
- remollēscō, ·lēscere, no pf., no supine, [re+mollēsco, grow soft], 3, n., become weak, lose their strength. iv. 2.

- remotus, -a, -um, [removeo], adj., far off, remote.
- removeō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, [re + moveo], 2, a., remove, dismiss, get rid of.
- remūneror, -ārī, -ātus sum, [re + mūnus], I, dep., recompense, repay. i. 44.
- rēmus, -ī, m., oar.
- Rēmus, -ī, m., one of the Remi.
- rēnō, ōnis, [Keltic word], m., reindeer skin. vi. 21.
- renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [re + novus], I, a., renew.
- renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [re + nūntio], 1, a., bring back word, report; declare elected.
- repellō, -pellere, reppulī, repulsum, [re + pello], 3, a., drive back, repulse.
- repentë, [abl. of repēns, sudden], adv., suddenly.
- repentīnō [abl. of repentīnus], adv., suddenly, unexpectedly, ii. 33.
- repentīnus, -a -um, [repēns, sudden], adj., hasty, sudden, unexpected.
- reperiō, -perīre, repperī or reperī, repertum, [re + pariō], 4, a., find, discover, ascertain.
- repetō, petere, petīvī or petīi, petītum, [re + peto], 3, a., seek again, demand, exact.
- repleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, [re+pleo, fill], 2, a., fill up, sup-ply amply. vii. 56.
- reportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [re+porto], I, a., carry back.
- reposcō, -poscere, no pf., no supine, [re + posco], 3, a., demand, require. v. 30.
- repraesentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [re + praesens], I, a., do at once or forthwith. i. 40.
- reprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsum, [re+prehendo], 3, a.,

- hold back; criticise, blame, rebuke.
- repressus, see reprimo.
- reprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, [re+premo], 3, a., restrain, check.
- repudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [repudium, *divorce*, from pudet], 1, a., reject, scorn. i. 40.
- repūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [re + pūgno], I, n. and a., oppose, resist. repulsus, see repello.
- requīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, [re + quaero], 3, a., require, demand; wish back again, vii. 63.
- rēs, reī, f., matter, affair; circumstance, fact, transaction; object, project, business.— rēs mīlitāris, warfare, military science.— rēs novae, a revolution.— rēs pūblica, the state, public business. See IDIOMS.
- resarciō, -sarcīre, -sarsī, -sartum, [re + sarcio, mend], 4, a., repair, make good. vi. 1.
- rēscindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissum, [re + scindo], 3, a., cut down, break up.
- rēscīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī or -sciī, -scītum, [re + scīsco, inquire], 3, a., discover, find out. i. 28.
- rēscrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, [re + scrībo], 3, a., transfer from one service to another; re-enlist. i. 42.
- reservō, -are, -āvī, -ātum, [re + servo], I, a., keep back, reserve, keep.
- resideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, no supine, [re + sedeo, sit], 2, n., remain behind, be left. vii. 77.
- resīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, no supine, [re + sīdo, sit down], 3, n., settle down, subside. vii. 64.
- resistō, -sistere, -stitī, no supine, [re + sisto, set], 3, n., resist, oppose, withstand; halt.

rēspiciō, -spicere, -spēxī, -spectum, [re + specio, look], 3, n. and a., look back; be mindful of, regard.

rēspondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, [re + spondeo, promise], 2, n., answer, reply.

rēsponsum, -ī, [rēspondeo], n., answer, reply.

rēspūblica, reīpūblicae, [rēs + pūblica], f., the state.

rēspuō, -spuere, -spuī, no supine, [re + spuō, spit], 3, a., spit out; reject. i. 42.

rēstinguō, -stinguere, -stinxī, -stinctum, [re + stinguo, quench], 3, a., put out, extinguish.

rēstituō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum, [re + statuō], 3, a', replace, restore, rebuild.

retineō, -tinēre, -tinū, -tentum, [re + teneo], 2, a., restrain, detain, retain, keep back, keep, maintain.

retrahō, ·trahere, ·trāxī, ·tractum, [re + traho], 3, a., bring back (by force). v. 7.

revellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsum, [re + vello, pull], 3, a., pull back, tear away, tear down.

reversus, see revertor.

revertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, [re+verto], 3, n., common only in pf. tenses, return.

revertor, -vertī, -versus sum, [re + vertō], 3, dep., return.

revinciō, -vincīre, -vinxī, -vinctum, [re + vinciō], 4, a., bind together, fasten.

revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [re + vocō], 1, a., call back, recall.

rēx, rēgis, [rego, rule], m., king, ruler.

Rhēnus, -ī, m., the Rhine, which rises in Switzerland and enters the German Ocean by several mouths, after a course of over

800 miles. Caesar bridged it twice. See N. to p. 106, 4; 109, 30; notes to Book IV., Chap. 17.

Rhodanus, -ī, m., the Rhone; it rises in Switzerland, and, after running through the Valais, the Lake of Geneva, and France, empties into the Gulf of Lyons, after a course of about 500 miles.

rīpa, -ae, f., bank of a stream.

rīvus, -ī, m., stream, brook.

rōbur, -oris, n., oak. iii. 13.

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, I, a., ask, request.

Rōma, -ae, f., Rome.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj., Roman; as noun, Romānus, -ī, m., a Roman.

Roscius, -ī, m., Lucius Roscius, one of Caesar's officers sent to winter with a legion in the territory of the Esubii. v. 24, 53.

rostrum, -ī, [rodo, gnaw], n., beak, especially the projecting end of a ship's prow, which was covered with iron, and in fighting used as a ram. See p. 36.

rota, -ae, f., wheel.

rubus, -ī, m., bramble-bush. ii. 17. Rūfus, -ī, m., a Roman surname.

rūmor, -ōris, m., rumor, report.

rūpēs, is, [rumpo, break], f., cliff, steep rock. ii. 29

rūrsus [for revorsus, from reverto], adv., on the contrary, again, anew.

Rūtēnī, -ōrum, m. pl., a Gallic tribe, west of the Cévennes, who were induced by Lucterius, the Cadurcan, to join Vercingetorix. Chief city Segodunum, later called Civitas Rutenorum, now Rhodez.

Rūtilus, -ī. m., M. Sempronius Rutilus, one of Caesar's cavalry officers. vii. 90. S.

Sabīnus, see Q. Titurius.

Sabis, -is, m., the Sambre, a river in Belgic Gaul which joins the Meuse at Charleroi. On its banks Caesar defeated the Nervii, B. C. 57. ii. 16, 18.

sacerdos, -dotis, [sacer, sacred + do], c., priest.

sacrāmentum, -ī, [sacer, sacred], n., oath.

sacrificium, -ī, [sacer, sacred + facio], n., sacrifice.

saepe [saepis, frequent], adv., often, frequently. — minime saepe, very seldom. Comp. saepius, too often, repeatedly.

saepenumerō [saepe + numero],
adv., frequently, repeatedly.

saevio, -īre, -iī, -ītum, [saevus, fierce], 4, n., rage, be furious. iii.
ii3.

sagitta, -ae, f., arrow.

sagittārius, -ī, [sagitta], m., archer, bowman.

sagulum, -ī, [dim. of sagum, mantle], n., a small cloak.

saltus, -ūs, m. wooded valley, defile in the forest.

salūs, -ūtis, [salveo, be well], f., health, welfare, safety, protection.

Samarobrīva, -ae, f., a town of the Ambiani on the Samara (Somme), later called Ambiani, now Amiens.

sanciō, sancīre, sanxī, sanctum, 4, a., render sacred, bind, confirm, ratify.

sanctus, -a, -um, [sancio], adj., hallowed, sacred.

sanguis, -inis, m., blood.

sānitās, -tātis, [sānus], f, soundness of mind, good sense.

sānō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [sānus], 1, a., make sound, cure, remedy.

Santones, -um, m. pl., or

Santonī, -ōrum, m. pl., a Gallic people on the sea-coast north of the Garonne; they helped Caesar against the Veneti, but sent 12,000 men to the aid of Alesia; chief city, Mediolanum, now Saintes; the name survives also in Saintonge.

sānus, -a, -um, adj., sound, healthy, rational. — prō sanō, as a prudent man, v. 7.

sapiō, -ere, -īvī or -iī, no supine, 3, n. and a., taste; be sensible, understand. v. 30.

sarcina, -ae, [sarcio], f., baggage, pack, the load that each soldier carried on his back. See p. 23.

sarmentum, -ī, [sarpo, prune], n., twig; in pl. faggot, fascine. iii. 18.

satis, adv., enough, sufficiently, tolerably, rather; often used with partitive gen., as satis causae, sufficient reason.

satisfaciō, facere, fēcī, factum, [satis + facio], irr., n., satisfy, apologize, give satisfaction.

satisfactio, -onis, [satisfacio], f., apology, excuse.

satus, see sero.

saucius, -a, -um, adj., wounded.

saxum, -ī, n., stone, rock.

scāla, -ae, [scando, climb], f., ladder.

**Scaldis**, -is, m., the Schelde, which rises in France in the department of the Aisne, and enters the sea below Antwerp.

scapha, -ae,  $[\sigma \kappa \acute{a}\phi \eta]$ , f., skiff, light boat.

scelerātus, -a, -um, [scelus], adj., wicked, infamous.

scelus, sceleris, n., sin, crime.

scienter [scio], adv., cleverly, wisely. Comp. scientius, vii. 22.

scientia, -ae, [scio], f., knowledge, skill.

- scindō, scindere, scidī, scissum, 3, a., tear or break down.
- sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum, 4, a., know, understand.
- scorpiō, -ōnis, m., scorpion, a military engine for throwing darts, stones, and other missiles. vii. 25.
- scrībö, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, 3, a., write, write down.
- scrobis, -is, m. and f., pit, wolfpit; see p. 203, 19-28, and N.
- scutum, -i, n., (oblong) shield, buckler. See p. 24, and Plate IV. 3.
- secius, see secus.
- secō, -āre, -uī, -tum, I, a., cut, cut off. vii. 14.
- sēcrētō [sēcerno, separate], adv., secretly, privately.
- sectio, -onis, [seco], f., booty. ii
- sector, -ārī, -ātus sum, [freq. of sequor], I, dep., pursue, chase. vi. 35.
- sectūra, -ae, [seco], f., diggings, excavations. iii. 21.
- secundum [sequor], prep. with acc. only, along, next to, by the side of, according to.
- secundus, a, -um, [sequor], adj., second; propitious, fortunate, favorable.
- securis, -is [seco], f., axe; with reference to the axe of the lictor, authority, power, vii. 77.
- secus, adv., otherwise; comp. secius. nihilo secius, none the less, nevertheless.
- sed, conj., but; yet, but yet.
- sēdecim [sex + decem], indecl. num. adj., sixteen.
- sēdēs, -is, [sedeo, sit], f., seat; habitation, abode, settlement.
- sēditiō, -ōnis, [sēd, = sine, + itio, from ire, lit. a going apart], f., mutiny, revolt, sedition.

sēditiosus, -a, -um, [sēditio], adj., seditious, mutinous.

SENI

- Sedulius, -ī, m., a chief of the Lemovices, killed in an engagement outside the lines around Alesia. vii. 88.
- Sedūnī, -ōrum, m. pl., a tribe near the head-waters of the Rhone; chief town, Sedunum, now Sion (Sitten).
- Sedusiī, -ōrum, m. pl., a German tribe situated between the rivers Main and Neckar. i. 51.
- seges, -etis, f., crop, standing grain. vi. 36.
- Sēgnī, -ōrum, m. pl., a tribe between the Eburones and the Treveri: the name survives in Sègne. vi. 32.
- Segontiacī, -ōrum, m. pl., a British tribe living in Hampshire. v. 21.
- Segovax, -actis, m., one of the four rulers in Kent at the time of Caesar's invasion. v. 22.
- Segusiāvī, -ōrum, m. pl., a Gallic tribe, clients of the Aedui, near modern Lyons.
- semel, adv., once.
- sēmentis, -is, [sēmen, seed], f., sowing, planting.
- sēmita, -ae, f., path, by-way.
- semper, adv., always, ever, constantly.
- Semprōnius, I, m., M. Sempronius Rutilus, an officer under Caesar. vii. 90.
- senātor, -ōris, [senex], m., originally, member of the Roman Senate, Senator; applied by Caesar to members of the Gallic statecouncils, councillor, senator.
- senātus, ūs, [senex], m., council of elders, Senate.
- senex, -is, m., an old man.
- sēnī, -ae, -a, [sex], num. distrib. adj., six each.

- Senones, -um, m. pl., a powerful Gallic tribe west of the Seine and Yonne; capital, Agedincum, now Sens.
- sententia, -ae, [sentio], f., opinion, view, notion; decision, judgment.
- sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsum, 4, a., perceive, think; be aware, feel, know.
- sentis, -is, m., thorn, brier. ii. 17. sēparātim [sēparo], adv., separately, apart.
- sēparātus, -a, -um, [part. of sēparo], adj., separated, marked off, iv. 1.
- sēparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [sē, aside, + paro], I, a., separate, part. vii. 63.
- sēpēs, -is, f., hedge.
- septem, indecl. num. adj., seven.
- septentriō, -ōnis, [septem + trio, a plough-ox], m., generally in pl. septentriōnēs, -um, the seven plough oxen, properly the seven stars which form the constellation of the Great Bear; hence the North.
- septimus, -a, -um, [septem], adj., the seventh.
- septingentī, -ae, -a, [septem +
   centum], num. adj., seven hundred.
- septuāgintā, indecl. num. adj., seventv.
- sepultūra, -ae, [sepelio, bury], f., burial. i. 26.
- **Sēquana**, -ae, *the Seine*, which rises in the Côte d' Or, flows northwesterly, and after a course of 470 miles enters the sea at Hâvre.
- Sēquanī, -ōrum, m. pl., a powerful Gallic tribe west of the Jura; chief town Vesontio, now Besancon, on the Doubs. In order to protect themselves from the Aedui their neighbors, they, together

- with the Arverni, sought the help of Ariovistus, who demanded a large part of their territory in payment, and held them in subjection. Cf. N. to p. 62, 12.
- Sēquanus, -a, -um, adj., Sequanian, i. 31; as noun, m., a Scquanian, i. 3.
- sequor, -quī, -cūtus sum, 3, dep., follow, pursue; ensue.
- **sermō**, -ōnis, [sero, weave], m., lit. connected discourse; talk, conversation, discourse.
- sērō [sērus, late], adv., too late.
- serō, serere, sēvī, satum, 3, a., plant, sow. v. 14.
- Sertōrius, -ī, m., Quintus Sertorius, a famous Roman general of the party of Marius. He was an Italian, born at Nursia, and the opponent of Sulla, against whom he carried on war in Spain for several years, till he was murdered, B. C. 72. iii. 23.
- servīlis, -e, [servus], adj., servile, of slaves. i. 40, vi. 19.
- serviō, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -ītum, [servus], 4, n., be the slave of, follow, devote one's self to.
- servitūs, -tūtis, [servus], f., slavery, bondage, subjection.
- Servius, -ī, m., a Roman praenomen.
- servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, I, a., save, keep, watch.
- **servus**, -ī, [servo, save, because slaves were generally captives whose lives were spared], m., slave.
- sēsquipedālis, -e, [sēsqui, one half more, +pēs], adj., a foot and a half in width or thickness. iv.
- seu or sīve, [sī, if + ve, or], conj.,
  whether, either.—'seu . . . seu,
  whether . . . or, either . . . or.

- sevēritās, -tātis, [sevērus, severe], f., sternness, rigor, stringency. vii. 4.
- sēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [sē, aside, +voco], I, a., call apart or aside. v. 6.
- sēvum, -ī, n., fat, tallow. vii. 25. sex, indecl. num. adj., six.
- sexāgintā, indecl. num. adj., sixty.
  sexcentī, -ae, -a, [sex + centum],
  num. adj., six hundred.
- **sexdecim** [sex + decem], indecl. num. adj., sixteen.
- Sextius, -ī, m., (1) Titus Sextius, one of Caesar's lieutenants. (2) P. Sextius Baculus, a brave centurion in Caesar's army.
- sī, conj., if, whether. quod sī, but if, and if, now if.
- Sibuzātes, -um, m. pl., a people of Aquitania, near the Pyrenees. iii. 27.
- sīc, adv., so, in this way, thus. sīc... ut, just as, v. 31.
- siccitās, -tātis, [siccus, dry], f., dryness, drouth.
- sīcut [sīc + ut], adv., just as.
- sīcutī [sīc + utī], adv., just as if. sīdus, -eris, n., constellation. vi. 14. sīgnifer, -ferī, |sīgnum + fero],
- m., standard-bearer, ensign. ii. 25. sīgnificātiō, -ōnis, [sīgnum +
- facio], f., sign, signal, intimation; demeanor, vii. 12.
- sīgnificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [sīgnum + facio], I, a. and n., show by signs, show, intimate, give an intimation.
- signum, -i, n., standard, signal. See IDIOMS, and p. 26.
- Silānus, -ī, m., Marcus Silanus, a lieutenant of Caesar. vi. 1.
- silentium, -ī, [silēns, silent], n., silence.
- Silius, -ī, m., T. Silius, a military tribune under P. Crassus. iii. 7, 8. silva, -ae, f., a wood, forest.

- silvestris, -e, [silva], adj., wooded, woody.
- similis, -e, adj., like. Comp. similior; sup., similimus.
- similitūdō, -inis, [similis], f., re-semblance, similarity.
- simul, adv., at the same time, at once. simul . . . simul, both . . . and, partly . . . partly. simul atque, as soon as.
- simulācrum, -ī, [simulo, make like], n., image, representation.
- **simulātiō**, -ōnis, [simulo], f., pretence, deceit.
- simulatque or simulae, = simul atque, adv., as soon as.
- simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [similis], I, a., make like; pretend, feign.
- simultās, -tātis, [simul], f., rivalry, jealousy.
- sin [si + ne], conj., but if.
- sincērē [sincērus, pure], adv., frankly, honestly. vii. 20.
- sine, prep. with abl. only, without.
  singillātim, [singulī], adv., one
  by one, singly.
- singulāris, -e, [singulī], adj., one by one, solitary, single; singular, matchless, extraordinary.
- singulī,-ae, -a, num. distributive adj., one to each, one by one, one apiece; separate, single.
- sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., left.
- sinistra, -ae, [sc. manus], f., the left hand. sub sinistrā, on the left, v. 8.
- sinistrorsus [sinister + verto], adv., to the left. vi. 25.
- sinō, sinere, sīvī, situm, 3, a., permit, let. iv. 2.
- sīquidem [sī + quidem], conj., if only, in so far as. vi. 36.
- situs, -ūs, [sino], m., situation, site.
- sive or seu [si + ve], conj., or if. sive . . . sive, whether . . . or, either . . . or, it might be . . . or.

- socer, erī, m., father-in-law. i.12. societās, -tātis, [socius], f., alliance, league.
- socius, -ī, m., comrade, ally, confederate.
- sol, solis, m., the sun. ad orientem solem, towards the rising sun, i. e. the east. ad occidentem solem, towards the setting sun, i. e. the west.
- solātium, -ī, [solor, console], n., consolation. vii. 15.
- soldurius, -ī, m., retainer, follower.
  iii. 22. See N. to p. 103, 3.
- soleō, -ēre, -itus sum, semi-dep. 2, n., be wont.
- solitūdo, -inis, [solus], f., solitude; a wilderness.
- sollertia, -ae, [sollus, all + ars], f., skill, cleverness, versatility. vii. 22.
- sollicitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [sollicitus, agitated], I, a., instigate, urge, incite, tamper with, tempt.
- sollicitūdō, -inis, [sollicitus], f., anxiety, apprehension.
- solum, -I, n., the soil. solum agrI, the bare ground, i. II. solum fossae, the bottom of the trench, vii. 72.
- sölum [acc. of sölus], adv., only. sölus, -a, -um, gen. sölüus, adj., only, alone.
- solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtum, 3, a., loose; set sail. solvit (nāvēs understood), he set sail, iv. 23.
- sonitus, -ūs, [sono, sound], m., noise, sound. vii. 60, 61.
- Sontiātes, -um, m. pl., a tribe in Aquitania, south of the Garonne. iii. 20, 21. See N. to p. 102, 29.
- sonus, -ī, m., a sound. vii. 47.
- soror, -ōris, f., sister. soror ex matre, half-sister on the mother's side, i. 18.
- sors, sortis, f , lot, chance.
- spatium, -ī, n., space, distance, interval, time, period, duration.—

- quantum fuit diel spatium, as the length of the day permitted.— ab tantō spatiō, at such a distance.—nactus spatium, having gained time.
- speciës, -iēi, [specio, look], f.,
  sight, show, appearance, pretence.
  ad speciem, for show, i. 51.
- spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [freq. of specio, look], I, a. and n., look at, regard, face.
- speculātor, -tōris, [speculor], m., spy, scout.
- speculātōrius, -a, -um, [speculor], adj., scouting, spying. nāvigium speculātōrium, spy-boat, iv. 26.
- speculor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [specio, look], 1, dep., watch, reconnoitre. i. 47.
- spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, I, a. and n., hope, expect, wish.
- spēs, speī, f., hope, expectation. in spem venīre, entertain the hope, begin to have hopes.
- spīritus, -ūs, [spīro, breathe], m., breath, air. pl. pride, airs.
- spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [spolium, booty], I, a., strip, despoil, plunder.
- sponte, abl., and spontis, gen. (only forms in use of an obsolete nom. spons), f., of one's own accord, willingly. sua sponte, by their own influence, i. 9.
- stabiliō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, [stabilis, steady], 4, a., keep steady, fix. vii. 73.
- stabilitās, -tātis, [stabilis, steady], f., firmness, steadiness. iv. 33.
- statim [sto], adv., instantly, at once, straightway. i. 53, ii.
- statiō, -ōnis, [sto], f., outpost, picket, guard. in statiōne, on guard. iv. 32, vi. 38.
- statuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum,[status],

- 3, a., place, determine, judge; resolve; take measures.
- statūra, -ae, [sto], f. height, stature.
- status, -ūs, [sto], m., position, situation, condition.
- stimulus, -ī, m., a goad; a sharp stake set in the ground as an obstacle to the advance of the enemy, vii. 73, 82.
- stīpendiārius, -a, -um, [stīpendium], adj., tributary, subject to tribute. stīpendiāriī, m. pl., tributaries.
- stīpendium, -ī, [stips, gift + pendo, weigh], n., tribute.
- stīpes, -itis, m., log, trunk of a tree. vii. 73.
- stirps, -is, f. and m., stock, race, family.
- stō, stāre, stetī, statum, 1, n., stand; stand one's ground.
- strāmentum, -ī, [sterno, strew], n., thatch of houses, v. 43; packsaddle, vii. 45.
- strepitus, -ūs, [strepo, make a noise], m., noise, uproar.
- studeō, -ēre, -uī, no supine, 2, n., desire, be eager for, strive at, give attention to, pay heed to. novīs rēbus or imperiīs studēre, to desire a revolution.
- studiōsē [studiōsus, eager], adv., eagerly.
- studium, -ī, [studeo], n., zeal, eagerness, energy, enthusiasm; goodwill; a pursuit.
- stultitia, -ae, [stultus, foolish], f., folly, lack of foresight. vii. 77.
- sub, prep. with acc. after verbs of motion, otherwise with abl., under, near to, close to, at the foot of; with words denoting time, about, during. See IDIOMS.
- subāctus, see subigo.
- subdolus, -a, -um, [sub + dolus], adj., crafty, cunning. vii. 31.

- subdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, [sub + dūco], 3, a., draw up, haul on shore.
- subductio, -onis, [subduco], f., hauling on shore. v. 1.
- subeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, [sub+eo],
  irr. a., come up, approach, enter;
  undergo, suffer.
- subfodiō, fodere, fōdī, fossum, [sub + fodio], 3, a., stab underneath or in the belly. iv. 12.
- subfossus, see subfodio.
- sūbiciō (or subjicio), ·icere, ·iēcī, ·icetum, [sub + iacio], 3, a., throw from beneath, throw up, expose; subdue.
- subject to; lying near, adjacent.
- subigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, [sub + ago], 3, a., subdue, conquer. vii. 77.
- subitō, [abl. of subitus], adv., suddenly, on a sudden.
- subitus, -a, -um, [subeo], adj, sudden, unexpected.
- sublātus, see tollo.
- sublevō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [sub + levo], 1, a., raise up, sustain; assist, relieve.
- sublica, -ae, f., stake, pile.
- subluō, -luere, no pf., -lūtum, [sub + luo], 3, a., wash. vii. 69.
- subministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [sub + ministro, serve], I, a., supply, provide.
- submittō or summittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, [sub + mitto], 3, a., send or despatch secretly.
- submoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, [sub + moveo], 2, a., drive off, disperse.
- subruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum, [sub+ruo, fall], 3, a., undermine.
- subsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, [sub + sequor], 3, dep., follow close upon, follow.

- subsidium, -ī, [subsideo], n., a reserve, reserve force, auxiliaries; support, relief, re-enforcement, aid, resource. mittere subsidiō, to send help, i. 52.
- subsīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessum, [sub + sīdo, sit], 3, n., stay, remain behind. vi. 36.
- subsistō, -sistere, -stitī, no supine, [sub + sisto, set], 3, n., halt, make a stand, hold out.
- subsum, -esse, -fuī, [sub + sum], irr. n., be near or close at hand.
- subtrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, [sub+traho], 3, a., carry off, withdraw.
- subvectiō, -ōnis, [subveho], f., transportation, conveyance, vii. 10.
- subvehō, -vehere, -vēxī, -vēctum, [sub+veho], 3, a., carry up. i. 16.
- subveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, [sub + venio], 4, n., come to the help of, assist.
- succēdō, -cēdere, -cēssī, -cēssum, [sub + cēdo], 3, n., come up, approach, advance; prosper, succeed.
- succendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsum, [sub + candeo], 3, a., set on fire, kindle.
- succēssus, -ūs, [succēdo], m., an advance, rapid approach. ii. 20.
- succīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum,
   [sub+caedo], 3, a, cut down;
   ravage.
- succumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, -cubitum, [sub + cumbo, = cubo], 3, n., yield. vii. 86.
- succurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, [sub + curro], 3, n., run up, rush to aid, succor.
- sudis, -is, f., stake, pile.
- sūdor, -ōris [sudo, sweat], m., xweat; toil, fatigue. vii. 8.
- Suēba, -ae, f., a Swabian woman.
  i. 53.

- **Suēbī,**-ōrum, m pl., the Swabians, a numerous German people settled in the regions now known as Bayaria and Würtemberg.
- Suessiones, -um, m. pl., a Gallic tribe between the Marne and the Isère; their name survives in *Soissons*.
- sufficio, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, [sub + facio], 3, a., suffice, hold out. vii. 20.
- suffrāgium, -ī, n., vote.
- Sugambrī, -ōrum, m. pl., a powerful German tribe between the Sieg and the Lippe. They gave protection to the fugitives of the Usipetes and Tencteri, and Caesar thereupon invaded their territory.
- suggestus, -ūs, [suggero, raise], m., elevation, platform. vi. 3.
- suī, sibi, sē or sēsē, (nom. wanting), reflex. pron., himself, herself, itself, themselves, him, her, etc.
- Sulla, -ae, m., L. Cornelius Sulla, the great Dictator, the champion of the aristocracy and the foe of Marius. He was born B.C. 138, and died B.C. 78. i. 21.
- Sulpicius, -ī, m., Publius Sulpicius Rufus, one of Caesar's lieutenants. iv. 22; vii. 90.
- sum, esse, ful, irr. n., be, exist; with gen. belong to, be the part or duty of; with dat., be for, serve for; with abl. have, possess. See IDIOMS.
- summa, -ae, [summus], f., the total, whole amount; main thing, chief point; general management, control. See IDIOMS.
- summum, I, [neut. of summus], the highest point or part, top, summit. — ab summo, from the top, from above; from the point, vi. 26.

- summus, -a, -um, (sup. of superus), adj, highest, greatest, very great, very large, chief, most important; utmost, extreme, consummate, all.— summus mons, the top of the height. See Idioms.
- sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, [sub + emo, take], 3, a., take, assume, employ, spend. See IDIOMS.
- sūmptuōsus, -a, -um, [sūmptus], adj., costly. vi. 19.
- sūmptus, -tūs, [sūmo], m., expense. i. 18.
- superbē [superbus, proud], adv.,
  haughtily. i. 31.
- superior, -us, (comp. of superus), adj., higher, superior, upper; former, previous. superiore nocte, the previous night.
- superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [super, above], I n. and a., surmount, conquer, vanquish, defeat, triumph; survive, remain.
- supersedeō, -sedēre, -sēdī, -sessum, [super, above + sedeo, sit], 2, n., refrain from. ii. 8.
- supersum, -esse, -fuī, [super, above + sum], irr. n., remain, survive.
- superus, -a, -um, [super, above], adj., above, on high. Comp. superior, sup. summus or suprēmus, which see.
- suppetō, -petere, -petīvī or petīī, petītum, [sub + peto], 3, n., be at hand, hold out.
- supplēmentum, -ī, [suppleo, fill up], n., re-enforcement.
- supplex, -icis, [sub + plico, bend], c., a suppliant. ii. 28.
- supplicatio, -onis, [supplico, implore], f., thanksgiving.
- **suppliciter** [supplex], adv., humbly. i. 27.
- supplicium, -ī, [supplex], n., punishment, execution.

- supportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [sub + porto], I, a., carry or bring up, convey.
- suprā, adv., and prep. with acc. only, above, before, over.
- suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, [sub + capio], 3, a., undertake, assume.
- suspectus, -a, -um, adj., mistrusted, suspected. v. 54.
- suspīciō, -ōnis, [suspicor], f., mistrust, suspicion.
- suspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [suspicio], I, dep., suspect, mistrust, surmise.
- sustentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [freq. of sustineo], 1, a., sustain, endure, bear, hold out.
- sustineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, [sub + teneo], 2, a., bear, hold up', check, uphold; pull up.

sustulī, see tollo.

suus, -a, -um, adj. pron., his, her, its, their, with or without own; as noun, m. pl. suī, one's friends, party, side. — neut. pl. sua, his or their property.

# T.

- T. with proper names = Titus.
- tabernāculum, -i, [taberna, booth], n., tent, hut. See pp. 32,
- tabula, -ae, f., writing-tablet; list. i. 29.
- tabulātum, -ī, [tabula], n., floor, story. vi. 29.
- taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, 2, n. and a., be silent; say nothing, pass over in silence. i. 17.
- tacitus, -a, -um, [taceo], adj., silent. i. 32.
- tālea, -ae, f., rod, bar.
- tālis, -e, adj., such.
- tam, adv., so, so very.

tamen, adv., yet, still, for all that, however, nevertheless.

**Tamesis,** is, m., the Thames. v.  $r_1$ ,  $r_2$ .

tametsī [tamen + etsī], adv.,

tandem [tam], adv., at length, finally.—In questions, pray, now.

tangō, tangere, tetigī, tactum, 3, a., touch, border on. v. 3. tantopere [= tantō opere], adv., vehemently.

tantulus, -a, -um, (dim. of tantus), adj., so very small, slight, trifling.

tantum [acc. of tantus], adv., only, so much, so fur, merely.
tantummodo [tantum + modo], adv., only. iii. 5.

tantundem [acc. neut. of tantus-dem], adv., just so much. vii. 72.

tantus, -a, -um, adj., so great, so large, such, so extensive or important. — tanti, as gen. of value, of so great account, so great, i. 20.

**Farbelli**, Jorum, m. pl., a people in the southwest corner of Aquitania; the name survives in the city *Turbes*, iii. 27.

tardē [tardus], adv., slozuly; comp. tardius, iv. 23.

tardō, āre, āvī, -ātum, [tardus], I, a., check, delay, impede, hinder, tardus, -a, -um, adj., slow; comptardior, less active, ii. 25.

Tarusates, Jum, m. pl., a people in the west part of Aquitania; the name survives in the town *Turtas*. iii. 23, 29.

Tasgetius, I, m., a chief of the Carnutes whom Caesar restored to supreme power. v. 25, 29.

taurus, I, m., bull. vi. 28.

Taximagulus, I, m., a Briton, one of the four kings in Kent. v. 22. taxus, I, f., yew (a tree). vi. 31.

Tectosages, -um, m. pl., a division of the Volcae, who lived in the western part of the Province. Their capital was Tolōsa, now

Toulouse. vi. 24.
tectum, -ī, [tego], n., roof; house.
tegimentum, -ī, [tego], n., a
covering: ii. 21.

tegō, tegere, tēxī, tectum, 3, a, cover; hide, conceal, protect.

tēlum, -ī, n., dart, spear. temerārius, -a, -um, [temerē], adj., rash, heedless, reckless.

temerē, adv., rashly, blindly, without good reason.

temeritās, -tātis, f., rashness, hastiness, foolhardiness.

tēmō, -ōnis, m., the pole of a wagon or chariot. iv. 33.

temperantia, -ae, [temperans, temperate], f., moderation, self-control. i. 19.

temperatus, -a, -um, [tempero], adj., temperate, mild. v. 12.

tempero, are, avi, atum, [tempus], i, a, and n, refruin, control one's self, forbear.

tempestās, -tātis, [tempus], f., weather; bad weather, a storm.
temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [freq. of tendo], 1, a., by, attempt; attack, assati; try to win over,

tempus, -oris, n., a period of time; time, period; season; occasion, circumstances.— pro tempore, according to the emergency.— in reliquum tempus, for the funce.—omni tempore, always.

**Tenoteri**, -ōrum, m. pl., a German tribe who, being hard pressed by the Suebi, with the Usipetes settled in the lower Rhine region near the Lippe.

tendo, tendere, tetendi, tensum and tentum, 3, a., stretch, extend; pitch one's tent or tents, encamp.

tenebrae, ārum, f, darkness. vii. 81.

teneo, tenõre, tenui, tentum, 2, a., hold, have possession of, keep; hold in, keep in, restrain, hem in, bind.— sē tenēre, to remain.— memoriā tenēre, to remember.

tener, ers, erum, adj, tender, young. ii. 17.
tenuis, -ē, adj, thin; little, poor,

tenus, -e, adj., tani; titte, poor, slight; weak, feeble, infirm, delicate.

tenuitās, -ātis, [tenuis], f., thinness; weakness; poverty, vii. 17.

tenuiter [tenuis], adv., thinly.
iii. 13.
ter, num. adv., three times, thrice.
i. 53.

i. 53.
teres, -etis, [tere, rub], adj., wellturned, round, smooth, tapering.

tergum, I, n., back. — ā tergō, post tergum, in the rear. — terga vertere, to flee.

vii. 73.

ternī, -ae, -a, [trēs], distrib. adj,, three by three, by threes, three each. terra, -ae, f., earth; land, ground, soil; territory, district, region.—orbis terrārum, the world.

Terrasidius, I, m., a Roman officer despatched to the Esubii to procure grain. iii. 7, 8.

terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, 2, a., frighten, terrify, alarm; deter or frighten from any action.
territō, -āre, āvī, -ātum, [freq. of terreo], 1, a., frighten greatly, terrify. — territāre metū, to fill with apprehension.

terror, -ōris, [terreo], m., fear, dread, alarm, terror. — inferre terrorem, to inspire alarm.
tertius, -a, -um, [trēs], num. adj.,

testamentum, I, [testis], n., will, testament (in a legal sense). i. 39. testimonium, I, [testis], n., witness, proof, evidence, testimony.

testis, -is, c., witness.

testūdō, -inis, f., tortoise; testudo, a covering formed by the soldiers' Teutomatus, i, m. a king of the sieging a city (see Plate V. I, 10). which soldiers worked when bethem from above (see Plate V. 6); off weapons thrown down upon and overlapping so as to shields held above their heads Gergovia. prisoner by the and barely escaped being taken getorix with a large cavalry force, Nitiobroges who joined Vercinto different kinds of sheds under the term testudo was applied also vii. 31, 46. Romans before ward

Teutones, -um, or Teutoni, -5rum, m., the Teutones, Teutons. They appeared in Gaul
about B. C. 113, and were wellnigh annihilated by Gaius Marius at Aquae Sextiae (Aix),
B. C. 102. The survivors established themselves between the
Meuse and the Schelde, and became the ancestors of the Aduatuci. See N. to p. 67, 36.

tignum, -ī, n., log, beam, pile.

Tigurinus, a, um, adj., of the Tigurini; pl. as noun, m., the Tigurini, one of the four divisions of the Helvetti, occupying the pagus Tigurinus. i. 12.

timeo, -ēre, -uī, no supine, 2, a.
and n., fear, be afraid of, be apprehensive, dread, be fearful or anxious.

timidē [timidus], adv., fearfully, timidly.

timidus, -e, -um, [timeo], adj., fearful, afraid, alarmed, cowardly, timid.

timor, -ōris, [timeo], m., fear, dread, apprehension, alarm, timidily. See N. to p. 67, 2.

Titurius, I. m., Quintus Titurius Sabinus, a lieutenant of Caesar in Gaul, who lost his life in an ambuscade contrived by Ambiorix, king of the Eburones.

tolerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, I, a., bear, support, endura, sustain, naintain; hold out.

tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātum, 3, a., lift, raise, tuke on board; take avoty, do avoty with, set aside, remove, break off, destroy.— victory. aublātus, elated by wictory.— ancorās tollero, to weigh ancher.

Tolosa, -ae, f., a town of the Province, and capital of the Volcae Tectosages; now *Toulouse*. , iii. 20.

Tolosates, -ium, m., the inhabitants of Toulouse.

tormentum, I, [torqueo, twist],

tormentum, 4, [torqueo, twist], n., rope; military engine for throwing missiles; windlass (vii. 22); instrument of torture; hence torture, torment, suffering.

torreō, torrēre, torruī, tostum, 2, a., burn, scorch. v. 43.

2, a., burn, scorch. v. 43. tot, indecl. adj., so many.

totidem [tot], indecl. adj., just as many.

tōtus, -a, -um, [gen. tōtīus], adj., the whole, all, all the, entire; often with adverbial force, wholly, entirely.

trabs, trabis, f., beam, timber.

tractus, see traho.

tracto, -cre, -didi, -ditum, [trans + do], 3, a, hand over, give up, deliver, surrender; intrust, confide; bransmit, teach, hand down to posterity.

trādūcō, dūcere, dūxī, dūctum, [trans + dūco], 3, a., lead or

bring over or across, lead, transport, transfer.

trāgula, -ae, f., lance, javelin. trahō, trahere, traxī, tractum, 3. a., draw, drag, drag along, pass

along: i. 53, vi. 38.
trāiciō (or trājiciō), icere, iēcī,
iectum, [trans + iacio], 3, a.,
throw or cast over; carry across;
strike (through), pierce, transfix.
trāiectus, see trāicio.

trāiectuz, -ūs, [trāicio], m., crossing over, passage.

trānō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [trāns + no, swim], I, n., swim across or over. i. 53.

over. i. 53.
tranquillitās, -ātis, [tranquillus, still, caim], f., calmness, stillness, calm. — summa tranquillitās, a profound calm, v. 23.

trāns, prep. with acc. only, across, over, on the further side of, beyond.

Trānsalpīnus, -a, -um, [trāns + Alpēs], adj., beyond the Alps,

Transalpīne. vii. 1, 6.

trānscendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scensum, [trāns + scando, climb], 3, n. and a, climb over, vii. 70. — transcendere in nāvēs, to board the ships, iii. 15.

trānseō, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -itum, [trāns + eo], irr. n. and a., go over or across, pass over, cross over; pass or march through; with diēs, etc., as subject, pass by or away, elapse.

transfero, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, [trāns+fero], irr. a., bear, bring, or carry over or across; transport, transfer.

trānsfigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixum, [trāns + figo, fix, fasten], 3, a., pierce through, transfix.
trānsfodiō, -fodere, -fōdi, -fos-

trānsfodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossum, [trāns + fodio], 3, a., pierce through, stah, transfix. vii.

trānsgredior, sum, [trāns + gradior, walk, ye], 3, dep., a. and n., go or pass over or across; cross. -gredī, -gressus

trānsitus, -ūs, ing or crossing over, passage, cross-[trānseo], m., go-

trānslātus, see trānsfero.

trānsmarīnus -a, -um, [trāns + mare], adj., across or beyond the vi. 24.

trānsmissus, -ūs, [trānsmitto], m., passing over, passage.

trānsmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, [trans + mitto], 3, a., send across or over. vii. 61.

trānsportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [trāns + porto], I, a., carry over or across, transport.

Trānsrhēnānus, -a, -um, [trāns + Rhēnus], adj., beyond or on the other side of the Rhine; pl. as Rhine. noun, m., those dwelling across the

trānstrum, ī, [trāns], n., thwart, cross-timber, cross-beam. iii. 13. trānsversus, part. of trānsverto as adj., crosswise, athwart, trans-11. 8.

verse.

Curiosolitae. iii. 7, 8. Trebōnius, ī, m., (1) Gaius Tre-Trebius, -ī, m., M. Trebius Gallus, a military tribune sent by P. Crassus to get grain from the

curing the province of Gaul for him for five years. Later, how-ever, Trebonius joined the assas-sins of Caesar, but was himself at last put to death by Dolabella bonius, a Roman made lieutenant by Caesar as a reward for pro-Smyrna, в. с. 43. (2) Gaius

trecenti, -ae, -a, [trēs + centum], num. adj., Trebonius, a Roman knight. vi. 40. three hundred.

tredecim [trēs + decem, indecl. num. adj., thirteen.

trepidō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, I, n, alarmed, hurry through fear. in alarm or fear;
d, be agitated tren tremble

trēs, tria, num. adj., three

Trēverī, -ōrum, m., a power-ful Belgic people between the Meuse and the Rhine; capita] Augusta Treverorum, now

**Tribōces**, -um, or Tribōcī, -ōrum, borhood of Strassburg. m., a German tribe in the neigh-

tribūnus, -ī, [tribus, tribe], m., tribune. See p. 22. tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, 3, a., as-

grant, pay, render. sign, ascribe, allot, give, concede;

tribūtum, ī, [tribuo], n., tax, tribute.

of three days, three days. triennium, I, [trēs + annus], n., trīduum, -ī, [trēs + diēs], n., space

iv. 4. space of three years, three years.

trīgintā, indeci. num. adj, thirty.

vi. 35.
trīnī, -ae, -a, [trēz], distrib. adj.,
three each, three by three; threefold, triple.

Trinobantee, um, m, a people in the east of England, occupying ter. tal Camalodūnum, now Colches-Essex and part of Suffolk; v. 20, et al.

tripertītō in three divisions. [trēs + partēs], adv.,

triplex, ·icis, [trēs + plico, fold], adj., threefold, triple.

triquetrus, -a, -um, cornered, triangular. adj., sad, sorrowful, de v. 13. adj., three-

tristis, -e, adj jected. i. 32 tristitia, -ae, [tristis], f., sadness,

dejection. i. 32.

truncus, -ī, m., trunk of a tree. iv. 17, vii. 73.

tū, tuī, pl. vōs, pers. pron., thou, you.

tuba, -ae, f., trumpet.

tueor, tuerī, tuitus or tūtus sum, 2, dep. a., look at, behold, see; support, maintain, guard, protect, defend.

tulī, see fero.

Tulingī, -ōrum, m., a German tribe along the Rhine, about Schaffhausen.

tum, adv., then, thereupon; moreover. — cum . . . tum, both . . . and, not only . . . but also.

tumultuor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [tu-multus], I, dep. n., make a disturbance, be in confusion. vii. 61.

tumultuōsē, [tumultus], adv., with bustling, confusion. vii. 45.

tumultus, -ūs, [tumeo, swell], m., disturbance, confusion, disorder, uproar; uprising, rebellion.

tumulus, -ī, |tumeo, swell], m., mound of earth, heap, hillock.

tune, adv., then, at that time, at this juncture. v. 41.

turma, -ae, f., troop or squadron of horsemen. See p. 22.

Turones, -um, and Turonī, -ōrum, m., a people on the Loire. Their capital was Caesarodunum (now *Tours*), and their country is now called *Touraine*.

turpis, -e, adj., ugly; disgraceful, base, infamous, dishonorable.

turpiter [turpis], adv., basely, shamefully, dishonorably.

turpitūdō, -inis, [turpis], f., baseness, disgrace, dishonor. ii. 27.

bulatoria, is, f., tower. — turns ambulatoria, movable tower, built on wheels so that it could be moved up to the wall of a besieged city. See p. 35 and Plate VI. 7.

tūtē [tūtus], adv., safely, securely.

tūtō, [abl. of tūtus], adv., in safety, safely, securely.

tūtus, part. of tueor as adj., safe, out of danger, secure.

tuus, -a, -um, [tū], poss. pron., thy, thine, your. v. 44.

# U.

ubi, adv., where, when. — ubi iam, as soon as. — ubi prīmum, as soon as.

ubicumque, adv., wherever. vii. 3. ubīque [ubi + que], adv., anywhere, everywhere. iii. 16.

Ubius, -a, -um, adj., of the Ubii, Ubian; pl. as noun, m., Ubiī, -ōrum, m., a people of Germany, on the right bank of the Rhine, opposite Cologne. They were oppressed by the Suebi and appealed to Caesar, sending him cavalry to aid against the Gauls. Under Augustus they were transferred to the west bank of the Rhine, and their capital was Agrippina Colonia, now Cologne.

ulciscor, ulciscī, ultus sum, 3, dep., a., take vengeance on, avenge, punish.

ullus, -a, -um, (gen. ullīus), adj., any; as noun, any one.

ultērior, -ius, [ultrā], comp. adj., farther, beyond, more remote or distant.

ultimus, -a, -um, adj., sup. of ulterior, farthest, most distant or remote; last.

ultrā, prep. with acc. only, on the farther side of, beyond.

ultro, adv., to or on the farther
side; besides, moreover; of one's
own accord, voluntarily. — ultro
... citroque, to and fro.

ultus, see ulciscor.

- ululātus, -ūs, [ululo, howl, yell], m., howling, shouting, loud cry, shout.
- umquam [ūnus + quam], adv., at any time, ever.
- ūnā |ūnus|, adv., at one and the same time, in company, together. — ūnā cum, along with, together with.
- unde, adv., from which place, whence.
- undecim [unus + decem], indecl. num adj., eleven.
- undecimus, -a, -um, [undecim], num. adj., eleventh.
- undēquadrāgintā [ūnus + dē + quadrāgintā|, indecl. num. adj., thirty-nine.
- · undique [unde + que], adv., from all sides or parts, on all sides, everywhere.
  - **ūniv**ersus, -a, -um, [ūnus + verto], adj, all together, all, the whole of, entire.
  - ūnus, -a, um, (gen ūnīus), num.
    adj., one alone, only one, only, sole;
    pl. ūnī, alone, only. ūnō tempore, at one and the same time. —
    ad ūnum omnēs, all to a man.
     Sequanī ūnī, the Sequani only.
  - urbānus, -a, -um, [urbs], adj., of the city (Rome usually being meant)
  - urbs, urbis, f., city; often THE city, referring to Rome.
  - urgeo, urgere, ursī, no supine, 2, a., press, push; press hard, oppress.
  - urus, J. m., [Keltic], bison, wild ox.
    Usipetes, um, m., a German tribe, originally in Saxony, but, being hard pressed by the Suebi, later settled along the Lippe.
    See Tencteri, with whom they were joined.
  - ūsitātus, -a, -um, part. of ūsitor

- as adj., usual, customary, common, familiar. vii. 22.
- usque, adv., even to, as far as; especially in such phrases as usque ad, up to, until, usque eo, to such an extent.
- ūsus, see ūtor.
- **ūsus**, -ūs, [ūtor], m., use, practice, exercise, employment; experience, familiarity with, skill; control; advantage, profit, benefit; need, necessity.
- ut (or utī), conj., as, as though; how; that, in order that, so that, as to; although; when.
- uter, utra, utrum, (gen. utrīus), adj., which of two, which.
- uterque, -traque, -trumque, [uter + que], adj, both, each.
  - [uter + que], adj, both, each. utī, see ut.
- ūtilis, e, [ūtor], adj., useful, serviceable, fit, profitable, advantageous.
- ūtilitās, -ātis, [ūtilis], f., usefulness, advantage, service, benefit, profit.
- ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, 3, dep., use, employ, adopt, avail one's self of, enjoy; observe. maintain; exercise, display, show.
- utrimque [uterque], adv., from or on both sides.
- utrum [uter], conj., not translated in direct questions; in indirect questions, whether.—utrum... an, whether... or, utrum... neene, whether... or not.

# uxor, -ŏris, f., wife.

## v.

- Vacalus (or Vahalis), -is, m., the Waal, a branch of the Rhine, uniting at Gorcum with the Meuse. iv. 10.
- vacātiō, -ōnis, [vaco], f., freedom, exemption, immunity. vi. 14.

vacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, I, n., ie unoccupied; be untilled, lie waste.

vacuus, -a, -um, [vaco], adj., empty, clear, free, vacant, unoccupied, destitute.

vadum, -ī, n., shoal, shallow, ford. vāgīna, -ae, f., scabbard, sheath. v. 44.

vagor, -ārī, -ātus sum, I, dep, n., wander, roam about, rove.

valeō, -ēre, -uī, no supine, 2, n., be powerful, be strong; have power, influence, or weight; avail. See IDIOMS.

Valerius, -ī, m., (1) L. Valerius Praeconinus, who was killed in Aquitania some years before Caesar's arrival in Gaul, iii. 20. (2) G. Valerius Flaccus, who during his governorship in Gaul, B. C. 83, bestowed on G. Valerius Caburus the Roman citizenship, i. 47. (3) G. Valerius Cabūrus, a Gaul who was granted Roman citizenship, i. 47, vii. 65. (4) G. Valerius Procillus, son of Cabu-Caesar employed him as interpreter in his interview with Divitiacus. Later he was also sent as envoy to Ariovistus, and forcibly detained. i. 19, 47, 53. (5) Gaius Valerius Donnotaurus, son of Caburus, vii. 65.

Valetiacus, .ī, m., a chief of the Aedui, and brother of Cotus. vii. 32.

valētūdō, -inis, [valeo], f., state of health (good or bad), health.

of health (good or bad), health.
vallis (or valles), -is, f., valley.

vallum, -ī, [vallus], n., ranpart (set with palisades, see vallus), wall, intrenchment.

vallus, -ī, m., stake, palisade.

Vangiones, -um, m., a German tribe on the left bank of the Rhine, in territory taken from the Mediomatrici; capital, Borbetomagus, now Worms. i. 51.

varietās, -ātis [varius], f., variety, difference, diversity, dappled character, mottled appearance.

varius, -a, -um, adj., varying, diverse, different, changing, various.

vastō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [vastus], I, a., lay waste, devastate, ravage, ruin.

vastus, -a, -um, adj., vast, widespreading, immense, enormous.

vāticinātiō, -ōnis, [vāticinor, predict], f., divination, foretelling, prediction. i. 50.

vectīgal, ālis, [veho], n., tax, toll; revenue. See N. to p. 56, 1.

vectīgālis, -e, [vectīgal], adj.,
tributary; as noun, especially in
pl., those paying tribute or tax,
tributaries.

vectōrius, -a, -um, [veho], adj., adapted to carry.—nāvigium vectōrium, a transport-ship. v. 8.

vehementer, [vehemēns, eager, violent], adv., vigorously, violently; very, exceedingly.

vehō, vehere, vēxī, vēctum, 3, a., bear, carry, convey. i. 43.

vel [volo, wish], conj., or; even. — vel . . . vel, either . . . or.

Velanius, -ī, m., Quintus Velanius, a military tribune sent with T. Silius to get grain from the Veneti iii. 7, et al.

Veliocasses, -ium, (dat. Veliocassīs, vii. 75), m. pl., a tribe on the right bank of the Seine; capital, Rotomagus, to-day *Rouen*.

Vellaunodünum, -ī, a town of the Senones, on the road between Sens and Orléans, to-day *Château* Landon. vii. 11, 14.

Vellavī, -ōrum, m. pl., clients of the Arverni, in the Cévennesvii. 75 vēlocitās, -ātis, [vēlox], f., swiftness, speed. vi. 28.

**vēlōciter** [vēlōx], adv., swiftly, rapidly, quickly.

vēlōx, -ōcis, adj., swift, rapid, active, quick.

vēlum, -ī, n., sail. iii. 13, 14.

velut [vel + ut], adv., just as.—velut sī, just as if, i. 32.

vēnātiō, -ōnis, [vēnor, hunt] f., hunting, the chase.

vēnātor, -ōris, [vēnor, hunt], m., hunter.

vendō, dere, didī, ditum, [vēnum, sale, + do], 3, a., sell, offer for sale.

Venellī, -ōrum, m. pl., a people on the west coast of Gaul, along the English Channel.

Venetī, ōrum, m. pl., a Gallic people on the west coast, north of the Namnetes, noted for their commercial enterprise; chief town Dariorigum, now Vannes. They were defeated by Caesar and almost exterminated. Cf. N. to p. 96, 7.

Venetia, -ae, f., the country of the Veneti. iii. 9.

Veneticus, -a, -um, [Venetia], adj., of the Veneti, Venetian.—
Veneticum bellum, the war with the Veneti.

venia, -ae, f., favor, indulgence, pardon, forgiveness.

veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, 4, n., come; come to pass, happen. See IDIOMS.

ventitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [freq. of venio], I, n., come often, keep coming, come to and fro.

ventus, -ī, m., wind.

vēr, vēris, n., spring. — prīmō vēre, at the commencement of spring, vi. 3.

Veragrī, -ōrum, m. pl., a tribe in the Valais, at the junction of the Drance with the Rhone; chief city Octodurus, now *Martigny*. iii. 1, 2.

Verbigēnus, -ī, m., one of the four cantons of the Helvetii, east of the pāgus Tigurīnus. i. 27.

verbum, -ī, n., word. — verba facere, to speak, ii. 14.

Vercassivellaunus, -ī, m., an Arvernian in command at Alesia, cousin of Vercingetorix, captured when the city fell.

Vercingetorix, igis, m., a chief of the Arverni, in B. C. 52) chosen commander-in-chief of the Gallic army which endeavored to shake off the Roman yoke. He was besieged in Alesia, and compelled to surrender. He was led in triumph to Rome, and there put to death. vii. 4, etc. See pp. 41, 43, and N. to p. 211, 2.

vereor, -ērī, -itus sum, 2, dep., a. and n., fear, be afraid of, dread, be apprehensive.

vergō, -ere, no pf., no supine, 3, n., incline, lie, slope; he situated in a certain direction.

vergobretus, ī, m., vergobret, title of the chief magistrate of the Aedui. The vergobret held office only one year, and had the power of life and death over his subjects. i. 16. Cf. N. to p. 55, 8.

vērīsimilis, e, [vērus + similis], adj., likely, probable.

veritus, see vereor.

vērō [abl. of vērus], adv., in truth, in fact, truly, certainly; but, but indeed, however.

versō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [freq. of verto], I, a., turn often; change.

versor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [verso], I, dep., n., lit. turn one's self about or move about in any place; dwell, live, be; be occupied, engaged, employed or busy. versum, see quoqueversum.

versus, -ūs, [verto], m., line, verse.
versus [verto], prep. with acc.
only, and standing after the word
it governs, towards, in the direction of.

Vertico, -ōnis, m., a Nervian nobleman friendly to the Romans. v. 45, 49.

vertō, vertere, vertī, versum, 3, a. and n., turn, turn about; change.
— terga vertere, to flee.

Verucloetius, -ī, m., a Helvetian sent as ambassador in company with Nammeius to ask Caesar's permission to march through the Province. i. 7.

vērus, -a, -um, adj., true, real; right, proper, fitting, reasonable.

verūtum, ī, [verū, spit, on which meat was roasted], n., javelin; dart, having a shaft 3½ feet long, and a triangular iron head. v. 44.

Vesontiō, -ōnis, m., a town in Gaul, now Besançon on the Doubs. It was the chief city of the Sequani. See N. to p. 66, 25. i. 38, 39.

vesper, -erī and -eris, m., evening.
vester, -tra, -trum, [vos], poss.
pron., your, yours.

vestīgium, -ī, n., footprint, footstep, track; spot; point, moment, instant. See Idioms.

vestiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, [vestis], 4, a., cover, clothe.

vestis, -is, f., covering; garment, clothing. vii. 47.

vestītus, -ūs, [vestio], m., clothing, dress, clothes.

veterānus, -a, -um, [vetus], adj., old,veteran; pl. as noun, veterānī, -ōrum, m., veteran troops, veterans. i. 24.

vetō, -āre, -uī, -itum, I, a., forbid, not allow or permit; oppose, prevent. vetus, -eris, adj., old, former, an cient, long-standing.

vexillum, -ī, n., standard, flag. See p. 25.

vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [intensive form of veho], I, a., harass, disturb, plunder, waste, overrun.

via, -ae, f., way, road, journey; passage.

viātor, -ōris, [via], m., traveller. iv. 5.

vīcēnī, -ae, -a, [vīgintī], distrib. num. adj., twenty each, twenty.

vīcēsimus, -a, -um, [vīgintī], num. adj., twentieth. vi. 21.

vīciēs [vīgintī], hum. adv., twenty times. v. 13.

vīcīnitās, -ātis, [vīcīnus, near], f., neighborhood; people in a neighborhood, neighbors. vi. 34.

vicis (gen., nom. wanting), f., change, alternation, succession.—in vicem, in turn. iv. 1.

victima, -ae, [perhaps from vincio], f., victim, sacrifice. vi. 16.

victor, - ōris, [vineo], m., conqueror; as adj., victorious, triumphant.

victoria, -ae, [victor], f., victory. victus, see vinco.

victus, -ūs, [vīvo], m., living, mode of living; food, provisions, vīcus, -ī, m., village, hamlet.

videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum, 2, a., see, perceive, observe, look at; understand; pass. as dep., videor, vidērī, vīsus sum, seem, appear; seem proper, right, or good.

Vienna, ae, f., the chief town of the Allobroges on the east side of the Rhone, a few miles south of Lyons, now *Vienne*. The modern town abounds in Roman remains. vii. 9.

vigilia, -ae, [vigil, watchman], f., sleeplessness, wakefulness; watch.

The Romans divided the night into four watches of three Roman hours each. See p. 33.

viginti, indecl. num adj., twenty. vimen, inis, [vieo, weave, bind], n., pliant twig, osier.

vinciō, vincīre, vinxī, vinctum, 4, a., bind. i. 53.

vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum, 3, a., conquer, overcome, defeat, subdue; exceed, surpass; carry one's point, have one's own way.

vinculum, -ī, [vineio], n., chain, bond, fetters.

vindicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [vīs + dīco], 1, a., claim, demand; set free, liberate; avenge, revenge, take vengeance on or for, punish (followed by in).

vīnea, -ae, f., vinea, a movable shed made with a sloping roof of planks, and with sides of wickerwork covered over with raw hides, etc., to prevent its being set on fire. It was generally 8 feet high and 16 feet long and under shelter of it the soldiers used to approach the walls of towns, or work the battering-ram and other engines. Cf. pp. 35, 36. vīnum, -ī, n., wine. ii. 15, iv.

violō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [vīs], 1, a., do violence to, injure; invade, lay waste.

vir, virī, m., man; brave or noble man; husband.

vīrēs, see vīs.

2.

virgō, -inis, f., maid, maiden, virgin. v. 14.

virguItum, -ī, n, brushwood, underbrush, brush. iii. 18, vii. 73.

Viridomarus, -ī, m., a chief of the Aedui. vii. 38, et al.

Viridovix, icis, m., chief of the Venelli, conquered by Titurius. iii. 17, 18. virītim [vir], adv., man by man, to each one individually.

Viromanduī and Veromanduī,
-ōrum, pl. m., a Belgic tribe
north of the Oise, and southeast
of the Ambiani; capital, Augusta
Viromanduorum, now St. Quentin
on the Somme. The country
was formerly called Vermandois.

virtūs, -ūtis, [vir], f., manliness, courage, bravery, valor, vigor, prowess; worth, goodness; in pl. manly qualities, virtues.

vīs, vīs, f., strength, power, force, energy; violence; influence; amount, number, quantity, multitude. See Idioms.

vīsus, see video.

vīta, -ae, [vīvo], f., life.

vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, a., shun, avoid, try to escape.

vitrum, -ī, n., woad, a plant used for dveing blue. v. 14.

vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctum, 3, n., live; live on.

vīvus, -a, -um, [vīvo], adj., living, alive.

vix, adv., with difficulty, hardly, scarcely, barely.

Vocātes, -ium, m. pl., a tribe in Aquitania who submitted to P. Crassus. iii. 23, 27.

Vocciō, -ōnis, m., a king of Noricum, a sister of whom was married to Ariovistus, and perished in Caesar's defeat of the Germans B. C. 58. i. 53.

vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [vōx], 1, a., call, summon; call for, demand; rouse, incite; name.

Vocontiī, -ōrum, pl. m., a Gallic tribe in the Province, between the Rhone and the Durance. i. 10.

Volcae, -ārum, pl. m., a tribe divided into the Volcae Arecomici and the Volcae Tectosages, and occupying the southwest part of the Province. See Arecomici and Tectosages.

Volcatius, -i, m., Gaius Volcatius Tullus, one of Caesar's officers, left in charge of the bridge over the Rhine, when Caesar went in pursuit of the Suebi. vi. 29.

volō, velle, voluī, no supine, irr., a. and n., be willing, wish, desire; mean, intend.

voluntārius, -a, -um, [volo], adj., willing, voluntary; as noun, m., volunteer. v. 56.

voluntās, -ātis, [volo], f., will, wish, inclination, desire; goodwill, affection; consent.

voluptās, -ātis, [volo], f., pleasure, enjoyment, delight.

Volusēnus, -ī, m., Gaius Volusenus Quadratus, an officer of Caesar's sent to reconnoitre Britain.

Vorēnus, -ī, m., a Roman centurion, the rival of Pulio. v. 44. Vosegus, -ī, m., the Vosges, a

range of mountains, running parallel with the Rhine for about 170 miles. iv. 10.

voveō, vovēre, vōvī, vōtum, 2, a., vow; promise solemnly, consecrate. vi. 16.

võx, võeis, f., voice, utterance, cry, sound; word; pl. võeës, words, language, speeches, statements, sayings. — māgna võx, a loud voice.

Vulcānus, -ī, m., Vulcan, the son of Jupiter and Juno, god of fire and work in metals: fire. vi. 21.

vulgō [vulgus], adv., generally, commonly, everywhere, universally.

vulgus, -ī, n. (sometimes m.), common people, mass, multitude, crowd.

vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [vulnus], 1, a., wound, hurt.

vulnus, -eris, n., wound.

vultus, -ūs, [volo, i. e. the wish expressed by the looks], m., expression, countenance, looks. i. 39.

